

Sir

Robert Dalrymple Horn Ephinstone Horn & Logie Ephinstone Bar.
Portrait of Janus Brochius

Orbis Idumei clarus topidique Canopi Hospes. Apelline non lex
artis hunc. Bravus hic ille est: quem quo sua facula norint
Ingencie medius pictus ab ipse suo est.

Janss Brochiusius.

Gedr. Knoller Eques Pins.

G. Palet Schulp. # A New and more Correct Translation

Than has hitherto appeared in Public,

OF

MR. CORNELIUS LE BRUN'S

TRAVELS

INTO

MOSCOVY, PERSIA,

And divers Parts of the

EAST-INDIES;

CONTAINING

An Accurate Description of all such Articles as are most
remarkable in each of those different Countries, and most worthy
the Attention of the curious Reader.

AS ALSO

Of their Antiquities; but more particularly those relating to the
famous Palace of Persepolis, commonly called Chelminar by the
Persians:

By a Gentleman of Oxford.

Adorn'd with a large Number of Copper-Plates.

Floriferis ut Apes in Saltibus omnia libant, Omnia Nos itidem.
LUCRET.

LONDON:

Printed for J. WARCUS, at the BIBLE, the Corner of Rackett-Court,
in Fleet-Street, M.DCC.LIX. # THE TRAVELS OF Cornelius Le
Brun, THROUGH Muscovy and Persia, TO THE EAST-INDIES,
&c. &c.

CHAP. I.

The Author's Resolution. His Departure from the Hague. And his
Arrival at Archangel.

Am highly sensible, that 'tis a duty incumbent on me, before I
enter upon the recital of this my last expedition, to return my
unfeigned thanks to the Almighty, who, through his great
goodness and divine protection, has enabled me to conquer all the
difficulties and dangers, that from time to time have attended me,
during my former travels, as well as those I have so lately
finished, in the prosecution whereof I have spent near twenty
years with the utmost satisfaction.

Upon my return to the Hague, I found myself under an irresistible
temptation to revisit several remote countries, in order that I
might reflect on the respective inhabitants, and their particular
customs and manners, with more mature deliberation than I had
done # THE TRAVELS OF

done before; and to take a second tour to the East Indies, through
Muscovy and Perfia.

Not only my friends and acquaintance, but my nearest relations
were highly displeased, when they found I was resolutely bent on
repeating my voyage. They were very warm in their
remonstrances, and endeavoured to fet before me all the
numerous inconveniences, that might in all probability attend
such a rash, and, as they called it, ill-concerted project.

Flushed, however, with the good success of my former adventures,
no arguments could prevail on me to withstand the violence of my
own inclinations.

Moreover, I considered with myself, that then I had more years
over my head, and had acquired a greater degree of experience,
and by consequence, was much better qualified to form a more
adequate idea of things than I was in my youth; besides, since my
return, I made it my business, in some measure, to converse with
men of learning and taste, and such as were very curious in their

enquiries, whereby I was fully convinced in my own mind, that by virtue of such valuable affinities, I should be rendered capable of making much more advantageous and important discoveries than hitherto I had done. Big with these hopes, I consulted, with the utmost care and attention, all the cloths of the curious; by which means, I soon informed myself of the most approved methods for preserving in spirits all kinds of birds, beasts, and fishes; and to prepare them, in such an artful manner, that I might bring them from foreign parts without their suffering the least diminution or decay. I had determined likewise to get some proper instructions from some able and experienced masters in the art of painting, for drawing, after the life, all such natural productions, both by sea and land, as I judged most worthy of my notice and attention. This qualification, however, I proposed to acquire only as an amusement; for my principal aim and design was, to pry into the antiquities of such countries as I should chance to visit, and to add such reflections thereto, as from time to time might occur by way of improvement; to examine, with all the accuracy and exactness imaginable, the several religions each nation professed, their manners, customs, politics, government, and modes of dress; as also, their more solemn rites and ceremonies in regard to births, marriages, and interments. In short, to pry into the nature of each foil, whether barren or fruitful; to take a survey of their cities, buildings, and other curiosities, with all the accuracy I was able, in order that I might give a full and true account of every particular of any moment or importance, that occurred to me in my travels, upon my return to my friends and relations.

I set out from the Hague, the place of my nativity, on the 28th of July 1701, for Amsterdam, where I tarried till the 30th, and the next day, about four in the afternoon, I arrived at the Texel in the common passage-boat. No sooner was I got ashore, but I heard, that the Oudenard, a man of war, Capt. Roemer Vlack commander, who was appointed to convoy the Russia fleet, had weighed anchor about nine o'clock that very morning, and set sail from that harbour, together with five or six merchant-men, who were bound for the port of Archangel. As the vessel, in which I proposed to make my voyage, was not at that time arrived, I went out to meet her, and on the 1st of August, I embarked about ten in the morning. She was a pretty smart sailor, had eight guns, and eighteen hands to work her. Her name was the St. John Baptist, and one Gerard Buis, of Sardam, was her commander. The wind being at west-fourth-west, we tript it, in order to get into the Texel; and there we moored between eleven and twelve.

On August the second, about nine in the morning, we weighed anchor, and got safe out at sea by one o'clock that afternoon; at which time, our pilot took his leave of us, and I delivered into his care a packet of letters, directed to some of # CORNELIUS LE BRÜN.

of my most intimate acquaintance. We made the best of our way, north-west and by north, till night came upon us, at which time we steered more to the northward, and varied our course for north-north-west. In our passage, we met nine or ten sail; some steering eastward, and others bound for Holland. At midnight we were becalmed, and so continued till the next morning. At noon we had a small breeze at west-fourth-west. On the fourth of August, about break of day, we had a brisk gale, and steered our course north and by west. The weather was very precarious, and we were within sight of several vessels, which were bound for quite different ports. The wind veered to the north and north-west on the fifth, upon which day we met with several ships, some whereof were fishermen from Greenland, who very frankly communicated to us their various successes. The next day, we met with some others of the same boat. On the eighth, the wind tacked about to the west; and as the weather was very fine, we displayed all the canvas we had for some time. The wind, however, soon after shifting about to the south and south-east, we bore away to the north-east, and before night, reached the islands which lie at a very small distance from Norway, without being conscious where we were, as the weather was dark and hazy. On the 9th, we got into 61 degrees of north latitude, the weather still continuing rainy. Whilst we were rowing about this feat, we espied a large fish, with a sharp-pointed head, which the sailors commonly call a Hillen. Soon after, several others appeared in view, called Potfkoppen; the heads of these were very large. A whole shoal of them passed by the ship's side; some of them ten times bigger than a Porpoise; and notwithstanding they were as long as our boat, yet they were broader, in proportion than they were long. These are no where to be met with but in the northern seas. After a great variation of wind and weather, the sky proved clear and serene.

On the 16th day, about seven in the morning, we made land, that is to say, we discovered the rocks or mountains that lie nearest the northern coast, distinguished, in our charts, by the name of the Loeffert rocks, which are of a considerable height, and lie at some distance from one another, as the reader will plainly perceive by consulting plate I.

As soon as we had got within due compass, I drew a sketch of the other part of the island, with the points which project, where I observed several other rocks that were much smaller, which, at the distance of about two or three leagues, seemed to be joined to the island above-mentioned.

We proceeded after this, with all the tranquillity imaginable, in company with divers other vessels which we met with by mere accident; and every now and then we could plainly perceive fifties half as long as our ship, and proportionably broad, with heads of a monstrous size: There are some of them (as we were informed by persons that had seen them dead) that appear spiral, like a flat-

cafe. Here likewise we saw a large flight of birds, not much unlike our ducks, or divers, but somewhat smaller. Their bills were very sharp; and, tho' black above, were white below. All this night and the next day, the weather was foggy, accompanied with small rain. About eight in the morning, we fell in with a vessel that set sail from Hamburg on the 30th of July, and was bound for Archangel. As the fog still continued, tho' we were near land, we could not discern it; but we perceived it plain enough as soon as the sky cleared up.

As we purfed our Voyage, we came soon into the latitude of 72 degrees, 36 minutes north, not far from the land of Loppe, and a high, rocky mountain, which lay on the fourth-east of us. There we met with a French ship, the captain whereof came on board us; and as he could talk no other language than his own, and nobody, except my self, could understand what he said, I acted the part of his interpreter. He acquainted us, that he came from Bayonne, and had been out about five months; that he had taken a Greenland voyage, and was on his return home;

Plate I.
Mountains
on the coast
of Norway.

See plate II.

August 4.

from the Hague, the place of my most intimate acquaintance. We made the best of our way, north-west and by north, till night came upon us, at which time we steered more to the northward, and varied our course for north-north-west. In our passage, we met nine or ten sail; some steering eastward, and others bound for Holland. At midnight we were becalmed, and so continued till the next morning. At noon we had a small breeze at west-fourth-west. On the fourth of August, about break of day, we had a brisk gale, and steered our course north and by west. The weather was very precarious, and we were within sight of several vessels, which were bound for quite different ports. The wind veered to the north and north-west on the fifth, upon which day we met with several ships, some whereof were fishermen from Greenland, who very frankly communicated to us their various successes. The next day, we met with some others of the same boat. On the eighth, the wind tacked about to the west; and as the weather was very fine, we displayed all the canvas we had for some time. The wind, however, soon after shifting about to the south and south-east, we bore away to the north-east, and before night, reached the islands which lie at a very small distance from Norway, without being conscious where we were, as the weather was dark and hazy. On the 9th, we got into 61 degrees of north latitude, the weather still continuing rainy. Whilst we were rowing about this feat, we espied

a large fish, with a sharp-pointed head, which the sailors commonly call a Hillen. Soon after, several others appeared in view, called Potfkoppen; the heads of these were very large. A whole shoal of them passed by the ship's side; some of them ten times bigger than a Porpoise; and notwithstanding they were as long as our boat, yet they were broader, in proportion than they were long. These are no where to be met with but in the northern seas. After a great variation of wind and weather, the sky proved clear and serene.

On the 16th day, about seven in the morning, we made land, that is to say, we discovered the rocks or mountains that lie nearest the northern coast, distinguished, in our charts, by the name of the Loeffert rocks, which are of a considerable height, and lie at some distance from one another, as the reader will plainly perceive by consulting plate I.

As soon as we had got within due compass, I drew a sketch of the other part of the island, with the points which project, where I observed several other rocks that were much smaller, which, at the distance of about two or three leagues, seemed to be joined to the island above-mentioned.

We proceeded after this, with all the tranquillity imaginable, in company with divers other vessels which we met with by mere accident; and every now and then we could plainly perceive fifties half as long as our ship, and proportionably broad, with heads of a monstrous size: There are some of them (as we were informed by persons that had seen them dead) that appear spiral, like a flat-cake. Here likewise we saw a large flight of birds, not much unlike our ducks, or divers, but somewhat smaller. Their bills were very sharp; and, tho' black above, were white below. All this night and the next day, the weather was foggy, accompanied with small rain. About eight in the morning, we fell in with a vessel that set sail from Hamburg on the 30th of July, and was bound for Archangel. As the fog still continued, tho' we were near land, we could not discern it; but we perceived it plain enough as soon as the sky cleared up.

As we purfued our Voyage, we came soon into the latitude of 72 degrees, 36 minutes north, not far from the land of Loppe, and a high, rocky mountain, which lay on the fourth-east of us. There we met with a French ship, the captain whereof came on board us; and as he could talk no other language than his own, and nobody, except my self, could understand what he said, I acted the part of his interpreter. He acquainted us, that he came from Bayonne, and had been out about five months; that he had taken a Greenland voyage, and was on his return home;

August 5.

August 6.

August 8.

August 9.

August 17.

A very remarkable fish called the Hillen.

August 16. # THE TRAVELS OF

home; that he had been very successful, had nine whales on board, and had taken the laft, not above four or five leagues diftance from the place where we then were; and that he was not without hopes of adding one or two more to his flock in hand, before he quitted that coaft; and thereupon defired, to know whether we had feen any of them pafs by us.

Our mafter having received him in the moft courteous manner, he affured us, that the teeth of one of his whales in particular were no lefs than five inches long; that the blubber extracted from him filled thirty-two cfts; and that the falt, which he had drained from behind his neck, had filled feven and an half more. And on our feeming furprifed at his account, he added, that this was not the only time of his meeting with fuch good fucces; that the falt would be refined on his arrival at Bayonne, in order to be exported to foreign parts; that amongst its feveral other good qualities, it was an exceeding fine lotion, or wash for the ladies; that it cleared their complexions, and gave them a youthful bloom; that it was a fpecific remedy bedides in divers diforders, and, in fhort, was a very valuable commodity.— He attempted, in the profecution of his difcourfe, to convince us, if he could, that the Bafques were the firft who ventured to take a voyage to Greenland.— Here we met with feveral other large veffels, and purfued our voyage in the evening, notwithstanding there was no dependance on the weather.

On the twentieth, about eight in the morning, we got within fix or feven leagues of the ifland of Loppe, which lay fouth eaft of us; but as the weather ftill continu'd dark and hazy, we could not difcern it. On the twenty-fourth the fog was fo thick, that we could fcarce diftinguifh one object from another the length of the fhip. On the twenty-fifth, we were got in the latitude of twenty-two degrees, twenty-four minutes. In the evening we were becalmed, and it was a prodigious fog all night, during which, one of our fhip's crew took a large falcon, that had fettled on one of our top fails;

but it proved fo very fullen, that it would not be tempted to touch any thing, tho' offer'd divers kinds of provifions. As the fog and the rain fill continued, we did not make land till the twenty eighth, when we had reached the northward of Lambafku, the fky cleared up, and we had then a very favourable wind at fouth fouth-weft,

which proved highly agreeable to us at this juncture; and the more so, because, had the fog continued, we could have made no use of it for fear of running aground.

The land, which at that time we had on our star-board side, was the Russian Lapland, commonly called the Terra Firma, or continent of Lapland (a). It consists of a chain of mountains that are but low, nay, very little higher than the sea-shore, but at a small distance from it, where the soil is of a dark-brown colour, and very barren. In divers parts of these hills, one might perceive several heaps of snow, which gather in caverns, where they never melt all the year round.

On the 29th, we happened to be becalmed, and in order to prevent our driving, we threw out an anchor. Soon after, however, a breeze springing up, we weighed again, and steered our course south-east, and coming in with the land we had several sail of ships in view.

On the 30th we made our entrance into the (b) white sea, the waters whereof are much clearer than those of the ocean, which upon an approach to the Russian coast are of a greenish hue, and a ruffet colour, on account of the rivers that disembogue themselves therein.

Having passed by the mountainous coast, we came to another about a league off, which was more upon the level, and covered, for the most part, with a profusion of copse-wood. On August the 30th, about eight o'clock, we arrived near the island of Croffes, which is very rocky, and lies but a small distance from the main land. This island abounds with croffes, which are more and more conspicuous, the nearer one approaches it. As soon as we had sailed clear of this coast, we could plainly discern the land of (c) Russia; whereupon we steered south # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

In the month of August, we sailed from Cape Gris on the eastward side, which projects a great way into the sea. Before sunset, we saw seventeen vessels riding at anchor upon the coast, to which number we added eleven; together with two from England, and came to an anchor, in three fathom water, before the river of Archangel, and about ten leagues from the town. On the 31st, in the morning, we found our number increased to twenty-one. There were likewise eleven Dutch, eight English, and two Hamburgers, including those that left the Texel before us into that number.

As the weather was perfectly fine, we waited only for proper pilots to bring us into the river; but as they proved very dilatory, one of the Hamburgers being too resolute and presumptuous, was determined to rely on his own conduct; but to his great detriment, for he ran with violence on the shore, upon the larboard side of the river. We were not any ways surprised at his disaster, having been informed before, that the Muscovites had taken up all the landmarks, being apprehensive of a Swedish invasion; as they had appeared, some weeks before this accident, at the mouth of the

river, and had struck all who lived in the parts adjacent, with a more than common panic. Six of the English like-wise, growing impatient at the unmerciful delay of the pilots, weighed anchor towards the morning; but as two of them unhappily ran aground, the other four defied from the too dangerous attempt. The pilots, however, coming to their affliction that afternoon, they failed up the river, accompanied by a small vessel of our country, who, by the favour of fortune and fine weather, cast anchor without the least damage, before a large spot of meadow-grounds, abounding with small trees, which extend themselves on both sides towards the river, forming a kind of crescent, or half moon, as appears by plate III.

On the second of September, all of us had pilots, one English ship only excepted, and about eleven o'clock that morning, we were all under sail, steering our course toward the east. We went over several flats, where we had not above fifteen or sixteen foot water, and cast anchor about three o'clock near those meadow-grounds, being about six leagues distant from Archangel, the hay being at that time just cocked upon the ground. The English and the rest continued there some time, as well as we; for no vessel was permitted to lie nearer the town, at which place every captain was obliged to make his personal appearance.

I embarked, therefore, with the rest about five o'clock, proposing to take the shortest way between the islands; but we found, to our no small mortification, that we had lost our way. We began, in short, to despair of getting again within our knowledge; but meeting, very providentially, with a small vessel under the care of a Muscovite, we begged the favour of him to take us likewise under his guidance and direction, as the night was coming upon us, and as the weather was very dark and gloomy; for notwithstanding there were four captains in company, I am fully persuaded we had steered the compass three times round at least.

At last, however, we discovered the beacon of one of the islands, near which we perceived soon after, a Russian bark riding at anchor. It was now, not only midnight, but it rained extremely hard, and was very dark, for which reason, we determined to tarry here till we had light sufficient to direct us to the shore; besides, the water was too shallow for us to make the attempt, had we been so inclined; for we would have landed, had not that been the real cause, and made a fire in the woods. Soon after day-break, we proceeded on our passage, and reached the New Dwinko (which lies at about three leagues distance from the city) by fix or seven o'clock. Here we continued for some time; for we were not allowed to advance any farther, till we had a free permission from the commanding officer there. As there were but a very few houses in the place, the inhabitants were all very busy in erecting forts, in order to defend themselves, in case of any sudden insult from their enemies. They # THE TRAVELS OF

They were, moreover, preparing three Branders there, and a chain, near an hundred fathom in length, and as thick as one's arm, to prevent the Swedes from making their unwelcome approaches; for they had been every day under the apprehensions of a vift, ever since their last expedition. During my stay there, I had a favourable opportunity of making a draught of the place, the houses whereof, as will plainly appear by the plate hereto annexed, lie at some small distance from the river. The commanding officer made his appearance, however, at last; and, after entertaining us with a dram or two of brandy, gave us free leave to proceed on our voyage. We embraced the opportunity, and, after the usual compliments, took our leave, and arrived safe at about nine that morning at Archangel (d).

As soon as I landed, I paid a visit to an old friend and countryman of mine, one Adolphus Bowhuifen, in order to take up my lodging there, who, amongst other conversation, informed me, that not long before, the Swedes had made their appearance amongst them with three men of war, one fly boat, two galliots, and a snow, with a resolution to demolish a village about ten leagues off, called Moetjega; and that they had most assuredly carried their design into actual execution, had not one Koereptien, who was a Muscovite, and was employed by them as their pilot, diverted them from their purpose, by representing to them, that in case they took those measures, all their designs on Archangel would be rendered fruitless and ineffectual. Upon this precaution of his, they came before the mouth of the river, with English colours, with their galliots and their snow; but before they entered, they had secured another Muscovite to act as their interpreter.

Upon the fifteenth of June, 1701, in the evening, they got the length of the New Dwinko; but were received, contrary to their expectations, with several warm discharges from the cannon of the place. Surprised at this reception, they were obliged to quit, not only the snow, but one of their galliots likewise, and to make the best of their way in their long-boats to their other galliot, which had run aground, but was then, however, afloat; upon this, they returned to their men of war that lay at the mouth of the river, leaving New Dwinko, in the dead of the night, and at a time of the year when the fun very seldom, if ever, totally disappears from above the horizon. This disappointment having exasperated them to the last degree, they vented their rage and resentment on the light-house, by setting it on fire, and by demolishing two little villages, one called Koeja, and the other Pelletse. The former, indeed, is not above seven hours distance from the city, on the same side; but the latter lies farther a great way, and on the other side of the White Sea; where, after a short cruise for some days, they feared their course homewards. The Muscovites, being overjoyed at the departure of such troublesome visitors, fell to drinking what wine the Swedes had left them against their inclinations; which, as there was plenty, they made too free with; and growing remiss, in the height of their merriment and their

falvos for their good success, they set fire to a barrel of gunpowder, which blew up the best part of the vessel. By this unforeseen misfortune, four men were killed on the spot, and twenty, or more, were wounded. The Swedes, however, lost but one man, as 'twas thought, by this unhappy accident, whose body falling into the water, the Muscovites took it up, and disposed of it in a decent manner.

On the fourth, several of our vessels cast anchor before the town, but not till they had first been duly searched for contraband goods.

The English vessel, that still lay at the mouth of the river for want of a pilot, would fain now have come up, but, upon making the too bold attempt, very unfortunately ran aground. The next day, to add to her misfortune, the wind blew so violently hard, and the waves ran so high, that there was no possibility of getting on board to save any of her cargo; and as the wind still increased, instead of abating, she opened all on a sudden to that degree, # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

degree, that in twenty minutes time she had no less than seven foot water in her hold. By the help of a few ropes, and a small vessel, the hands on board made shift, indeed, to save themselves and their cloaths; but that was all they could do; for the cargo, which principally consisted of a large quantity of tobacco, was all absolutely loft. It was great pity; for she was one of the finest vessels that had ever been seen in those parts. She carried no less than three hundred lasts, and tho' they mounted, indeed, but eighteen guns, and had no more than thirty hands on board, she was bored for forty guns. In a short time, the fank so deep, that the sea washed quite over her. She was called the Resolution, and one captain Brains was her commander. The Hamburgher, of which we took notice some time before, and hinted her running aground on the last day of August, had inevitably met with the like misfortune, had not her crew happily embraced the opportunity of the fair weather, to unlade her, and set her afloat again; for the place where this last ran aground was, in fact, a much more dangerous one, than that where the English ship was loft. To conclude, by the favour of the tide, notwithstanding all the dangers to which we had been exposed, we arrived at last, in safety, at our wished for Port.

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

1. Lapland, the most northerly part of Europe, is surrounded by the frozen Ocean on the north east and west, and lies between ten and thirty-five degrees of east longitude, and between sixty-five and twenty-two degrees of north latitude. The north

east part thereof is subject to Ruffia, and called Ruffian Lapland; the north-west part of it is subject to Denmark, and called Norwegian Lapland; and that part of Lapland which lies forth of these is called Swedish Lapland. But the exact limits of these divisions is not known, the people generally leading a wandering life, and having very few towns, but live in huts, under the snow, two thirds of the year. Here are very few animals or vegetables. The Rein-Deer is the most useful animal they have, which draws their fledge over the snow with surprising swiftness; his skin also serves them for clothing, and his flesh for food. They hunt foxes, martens, ermins, and other animals, proper to their climate, whose furs they sell to their southern neighbours. In Swedish Lapland, about Torne and the Bothnic Gulph, they have mines of copper and iron which the Swedes work, and boast they have made Christians of many of their Lapland subjects; but 'tis certain they have not improved their morals; for, when you have furnished them with any heady, strong liquors, they are seldom sober as long as they last.

2. White-Sea is a bay of the Frozen Ocean, in the north of Muftcovy, situate between Ruffian Lapland and Samoieda, at the bottom of which bay stands the city of Archangel. This was the only feat the Ruffians had any communication with, till their conquest of Livonia.
3. Ruffia, or Muftcovy, comprehends great part of the continent of Europe and Asia, extending from twenty-four to one hundred and thirty degrees of eastern longitude, and between forty-five and twenty-two degrees of northern latitude, bounded by the Frozen Ocean on the north; by the Pacific Ocean and China on the east; by Chinese Tartary, the Mogul's, Usbeck, and Circassian Tartars on the south; and by Poland, the Baltic Sea, Swedish Finland and Lapland, and Norwegian Lapland on the west; extending three thousand miles and upwards in length from east to west; and one thousand five hundred miles in breadth from north to south; but two thirds of it are not cultivated, and scarce inhabited; and the extreme north is not habitable, and produces scarce any vegetables; but the middle and southern provinces are, many of them, as fruitful as any in Europe or Asia, producing all manner of corn and fruits which do not require a very warm sun; silk and wine, and the tropical fruits they are pretty much strangers to. The Ruffians do not as yet trade much on their own bottoms; their naval flosses, linnen, leather, furs, iron, and other produce of their country are exported in foreign shipping, and the same shipping carries them the produce of the southern countries of Europe. The government, however, have, of late years, built a great many ships of war, and they are equal, if not superior at sea, either to the # THE TRAVELS OF

The Swedes or Danes. Their land-forces, which were in very little esteem before the year 1700, are so improved in military discipline, since their wars with Sweden, that they are now superior to any of their neighbours, except the Turks; and they would be a match for them, if the country was improved, and the revenues of the crown answerable to those of the Grand Signior; but here they fall miserably short. I question whether the ordinary revenues of Russia amount to 300000l. sterling, per annum; and though the government is arbitrary, and might impose what it sees fit, yet, if it should advance them much higher, it might ruin many of its subjects. As the Sovereign is not here bound by any written laws, the punishments inflicted on criminals are very speedy, and sometimes barbarous; nor has the prisoner always the privilege of a fair trial; when they want witnesses, rack and tortures are made use of to extort confessions; and the lowest punishment, the knout, is very terrible, where men of figure are liable to be whipped with an instrument that tears the flesh off their bones, or cudgelled till they are perfectly unable to stand. The Ruffians are Christians, most of them, of the Greek church, and differ both from papists and protestants in many instances; they are more rigorous in their fasts than either, those being enjoined them near two thirds of the year.

1. Archangel, east longitude 40.12. latitude 64.30. a port town of the province of Dwina in Russia, situate on the river Dwina, four miles from the White Sea, and four hundred miles north-east of Peterburgh, the only port town of Russia for many years, and first reported to by the English in the year 1553. It still continues a town of good trade, and here the Ruffians build some of their men of war.
-

CHAP. II.

A Description of the Samoëds; as also, of their Manners, Habitations, and usual Way of Living.

On the eleventh instant, I went with my friend up the river, to see a country house of his, which he kept about two or three leagues distant from the city. In our passage, we landed at a wood, where we saw several of the people called Samoëds (a), which, in the Russian language, signifies Man-eaters, or such as subsist on devouring their fellow-creatures. There are very few of them but what are perfectly wild, and extend themselves all along the sea-coast as far as (b) Siberia. Those we had a fight of amounted to about fourteen or fifteen, men and women included, who had their residence in five several tents; which were guarded by seven or eight dogs, like our mastiffs, tied fast to as many stakes, or posts, drove deep in the ground, which made a hideous barking as we approached them. When we came up to them, we found them all

in general very busy in making of oars, and bowls for throwing water out of boats; as also, little chains, and other trifles of the like nature, which they sell in the streets of the city, and amongst the sailors. They have free permission to furnish themselves with what wood they think proper for their occasions out of the forests. Both the men and women are very low of stature; and the latter are peculiarly remarkable for their little feet. As to their complexion, 'tis of a very fallow hue; and as most of them have long eyes and bloated cheeks, they are no very agreeable objects. They have a language, indeed, but 'tis peculiar to themselves; they have a smattering knowledge, moreover, of the Russian tongue. As to their dress; they are all in general clad in skins of the Reindeer: To which they have the addition of an upper garment, which hang down from their necks to their knees; the hair of these mantles (if we may call them so) being always turned outwards, and those worn by the women are of divers colours. Some of that sex, who # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

who have a little better taste for drefs than their neighbours, add slips of scarlet, or purple cloth, by way of improvement. The mens hair, which is as black as jet, hangs about their ears, in a loofe, disorderly manner, like that of real savages; which, when it begins to grow too long and troublesome, they cut off by handfuls at once, without the least regard to art or contrivance. One part of the womens hair, indeed, is tied up, and embellished here and there with round pieces of copper, fastened on by fillets of scarlet cloth, in order to give them a better air and grace. On their heads, they generally wear fur-caps; the outside whereof are for the most part black; tho' all of them are white within. Such of the women as are incurious, and wear their hair loose and disheveled, are scarcely to be distinguished from the men, who are for the most part beardless, or at most have only some few hairs upon their upper lips, which proceeds, as it is highly probable, from their strange kind of diet. Some of them wear, moreover, waistcoats and breeches made of the same skins, with white boots; and the only difference in the last particular between the men and the women is this, that the latter add slips, or lifts of black upon theirs. The thread which they generally use is made of the finews of the beasts they kill. When they are inclined to be a little more cleanly than ordinary, that is to say, when they happen to sweat, or are at their meals, they make use of very fine rappings, or birch faw-duft, with which they are all plentifully provided, instead of handkerchiefs or towels. Their tents are made of the bark of trees, which are sewn together in long slips, and hang down to the ground, in order to defend them from the inclemency of the weather; they have an opening, however, above, to prevent them from being smothered with smoke; the tops, therefore, must, by consequence, be perfectly black; tho', in all the other parts, they are of a yellow, or reddish hue; as they are supported by poles, the

tops whereof appear some feet above the roof of the tent. The door-ways to these their little huts are for the most part about four feet in height,

and are covered with a large piece of the same bark, which is made to fall up and down at pleasure, and their fire-place stands in the center.

As to their diet, they feed for the generality on the carcase of oxen, sheep, horses, or any other carrion they meet with in their way; or what is given them by strangers. Sometimes they make a hearty meal (as they are not over dainty) of the guts and garbage of the creatures above mentioned, which they boil, indeed, first; and when ready, fall to, without either bread or salt.

During the short time I was amongst them, I perceived a large kettle upon the fire, plentifully stocked with these delicious viands; which their cooks took no manner of pains with; tho' no pots in the world were ever wanted skimming more. In one part of the tent there was heaped up a profusion of raw horse-flesh, which the reader may easily imagine was a most shocking sight. After taking a full survey of the tent within, I took a draught of it with my pencil, as appears by plate VI.

Whilst I was about my little sketch, they hovered round about me, and looked upon me with more than common attention; from whence I perceived, that they were so far from being ignorant of my design, that they testified some very visible marks of their approbation. In this here represented, there lay an infant, about two months old, in a kind of cradle, or rather tray, made of a yellow coloured wood; in some measure resembling the top of a trunk. This cradle had at the head of it, a half hoop, and was hung up, hammock-like, with two ropes, upon a pole. It was covered over, in the form of a tent, with a grey cloth, but open both above and on one side, in order to take the child out or in, as occasion should require. The infant was in swaddling-cloths of the same colour, and bound about the breast, middle and feet with cords; its head, however, and part of its neck, was bare. Tho' the people themselves, it is true, make but a shocking figure, the poor, helpless babe # THE TRAVELS OF

appeared agreeable enough, and was tolerably white.

Not having time sufficient to make an end of my draught, as some of the women and children were absent and in the woods, I determined to leave it unfinished till my friend and I came back; so that we proceeded directly on our way, and was not long before our arrival at his rural habitation.

Whilst we were here, one of his servants brought us divers forts of turnips, of various colours, and more beautiful than any I had ever seen before. Some were of a purple hue; like one of our plumbs; others grey and white; others again of a yellowish cast, streaked

with a red, as fine as our finest lake, or vermillion, and more agreeable to the eye than the carnation itself. Some of these I drew upon papers in water-colours, and sent them away to Holland, in a box of dry fand, to a virtuoso of my acquaintance, who was a great admirer of all curiosities, in their kind. Those which I had painted on canvas, I brought me to Archangel, where, when I produced them in company, scarce any one of the spectators could be prevailed on to believe that I had copied them from nature; till at last, for their conviction, I produced the originals themselves. This I think is a plain demonstration, that the inhabitants of that place, pay but very little regard to such beauties of nature. In number V. you have a perfect representation of them.

On the thirteenth I returned to the Samoëds, and took a draught of the inside of one of their tents, which I laid open on both sides, in order to be the more exact.

I had my friend with me, and three female Samoëds standing by, one of whom held the cradle before mentioned, in the manner I desired her, in her husband's presence, as the plate expresses it in number VI.

These tents, for the generality, are full of the skins of the reindeer, which they make use of, not only to set on, but to rest upon at nights; so that this, together with the manner of their cookery, which

is seldom any thing better than carrion, creates such a stench as is intolerable to those who are not accustomed to it.

My friend, who sat on one side of me whilst I was taking a draught of the cradle, was so far influenced by the noisome smell, that he bled at the nose, and was forced to get into the air, notwithstanding we were plentifully provided both with brandy and tobacco. Nor is this incident in the least to be wondered at; since the people themselves, through their nativeness, smell very strong and offensive.

As soon as ever I could, with any convenience, I got out of my filthy situation, and prevailed on them to come to my lodgings at Archangel, and bring with them one of their handsomest women, drest as fine as they could make her in their way, in order that I might draw her picture. They not only assured me that they would comply with my request, but fulfilled their promise. I drew her accordingly, as she appears in plate VII.

They drest (as I observed before) in the skins of rein-deers, decorated with streaks of white, grey, and black. The woman they brought with them, was drest up like a bride, and as fine as their fashion would admit of, and, indeed, she appeared perfectly neat, as the sailors say, from head to stern. She kept her eyes steadily fixed on mine, and seemed to highly delighted with what I was

about, that one of her companions grew jealous of her, and seemed affronted because I refused to draw her picture likewise. The trouble that attended the taking a draught of the first was sufficient to determine me not to oblige the second; especially as my curiosity induced me to draw the picture of the man that accompanied them, and who was the husband of the former. For which reason, I desired him, the first time he came my way, to drest himself in his winter-habit, which he accordingly did in a day or two after. His upper garment was one entire skin, whereto the cap which he then had on his head was fastened. He put it on and off, as we do our shirts; so that nothing but his face appeared; the gloves likewise which # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

he put on were made of the same skin as his coat; and to confess the truth, had it not been for the features of his face, which were well-favoured enough, he had looked more like a bear than any human creature. As to his boots, they were fastened below his knees. As this dress of his, however, was so hot; and as I had a large fire likewise in my stove, the poor man was under an absolute necessity of pulling it off several times during his stay with me; and of taking a turn every now and then into the air to recover his lost spirits.

I have represented him, you will see in plate VIII, with a long gut in his hand, as an indication of the coarse diet which he and his countrymen are forced to feed on. On one side of him, you see several other guts, and the head of a horse calved. And the motive that induced me to add those decorations, was, his having had a horse given him, that very day, as it was just expiring, which, with inexpressible joy, he caused to be conveyed into the woods, where he killed him, and flayed him; and thereafter he sent the head to me, that I might copy after the original, he was loth to make me a present of it; for such a head, when great, is looked upon by them, as great a dainty, as a calf's head is to a poor Dutchman. This horse, at the time of his decease, was little less than thirty years of age; yet he was pretty fat, and in good case; and the man talked of his present with as much pleasure, as a Dutch peasant would of a fat ox. At the same time, I painted one of his Rein-Deer, and at his feet I delineated his bow and arrows, with the points out of the quiver, as 'tis customary with them when they go a hunting. This quiver they wear buckled upon their back, with a kind of strap or garter, which comes over their left shoulder. On one side of him, you see, I have drawn a bundle of white moths, as a representation of the favourite food of the Rein-Deer, of which I shall take more particular notice in another place. As to the Deer's head, I must confess, I have made it somewhat larger than the life; but then 'twas with this view, that my readers might have a more adequate idea of all the parts and features that belong to it.

As my lodgings were on a ground-floor, I ordered the Samoed to come to me in his fledge, drawn by one of his Rein-Deer; which accordingly he did, and I delineated him in that point of light, on purpose to give my readers an adequate idea of the manner in which those creatures are harnessed.

As to their fleges, they are for the generality about eight feet in length, and three feet four inches or thereabouts in breadth, and rise up in the front much after the form of a Dutchman's skates. He that drives sits with his legs a-crofs; there is a small board, which is rounded at top; and another behind him, but somewhat higher than the other. He has a long rod in his hand, with a knob at the end of it, which serves him instead of a whip, in order to quicken the pace of his Rein-Deer, when his affairs require more expedition than ordinary. There are two round pieces which turn like a swivel, at the end of the fledge; and the harness is passed over them; from thence it runs between the creature's legs, and from thence to his neck, where 'tis made fast to a collar. The driver holds the reins, which are tied to a strap that goes about the head of the Deer, in his right hand. However, as I was somewhat more curious than ordinary, in regard to the nature of these harnesses, and very desirous to make some further remarks on the motion of these creatures, I prevailed on this Samoed to get ready two fleges with a pair of Rein-Deer to each of them; which he did, and we crossed the river with them several times upon the ice. Nay, my curiosity carried me still farther, and I every now and then slept out of the fledge, in order to make my proper observations, and to be as accurate and exact in my draught of that machine as possibly I could. Upon a due examination, I could very plainly discern, that the fledge, which the Samoed had drove into my room, was not fitted with judgment. The reader in Number IX. will see a complete representation of it. # THE TRAVELS OF

I observed, whilst we were upon the river, that every horse fartled, and flew with fear, both from the Rein-Deer and his driver, and from every other Rein-Deer that approached them, whether har- neffed in fedges or not. Nay, the horses in the city will avoid them, if possible; which is a plain indication, that those creatures, as well as those Samoëds, are the objects of their terror.

These Rein-Deer run with an incredible velocity; they regard not in the least whether their path be beaten or not; they run, as they are directed by their driver, with an equal pace, let the road be ever so bad, with their noses in the air, and their horns upon their back. They never sweat but when they are tired; and then they loll out their tongues on one side of their mouths; and when exceedingly hot, they pant as dogs do.

The method observed by those that catch them is this. They have three different kinds of darts. The first, like common arrows, have one point only; the second two; and the third is somewhat like a

wedge, and very sharp before; but the reader will have a more perfect idea of them by consulting the representation of the quiver in the plate.

Thefe darts are called Strelli by the Samoëds, but by the Russians Sterla. Their bow is distinguished by the name of Loack. When they go out a squirrel-hunting, they make use of another fort of dart; which is blunt at the end, in the manner of a pear, and is made either of wood, bone, or horn; which kills them, however, as surely as if they were sharp; but then they no ways damage their skins or furs, which, were they pierced thro', would not be saleable, or fetch so good a price.

When they hunt the Rein-Deer in the winter feafon, the method observed is this. They furnish themselves, in the first place, with a fort of skates, made of wood, near eight feet in length, but not above half a foot in breadth, which they fasten to their feet with a fort of a strap both before and behind. When they are thus commodiously provided, they will skim over the ice and snow with a velocity almost incredible. Thefe wooden skates are lined at the bottom with Rein-Deer skins, in order to prevent them from casually falling backwards, and to enable them to flop with the greater ease, whenever they are inclined to halt, or are fatigued, as they are ascending any hill. These sportsmen carry a long staff in their hands, not unlike our paring-shovels, with which they throw the snow at the Deer, in order to make them fly the faster towards the place where they have planted proper toils to secure them; but this is practised only, when their darts are at too great a distance for their darts to do any material execution. At the head of these staffs there is a small ring, about four or five inches in circumference, with cords which cross each other, like chequer-work, by the affiance whereof, they stop themselves at pleasure; the point whereof, which runs not only through this ring, but considerably beyond it, penetrating the snow, and flopping at the ring. When they have hunted their prey into their toils, which are spread in the manner of nets for their reception, they purify them as fast as possible; and such as cannot happily release themselves are instantly dispatched. When they have thus secured them, they flea them, and either carry their skins to market, or reserve them for their own private use, as has been before hinted, and cut the flesh in proper pieces for the provision of their families. Such like-wife as they prefer, and bring tame, are equally advantageous to them; for they dispose of one part of them at the best price they can procure, and reserve the rest for drawing their respective fedges in the winter season. If a wild male happens to couple with a tame female, the foal is immediately killed; for, in the compass of three or four days time at farthest, it would most assuredly take its flight to the defarts. Such, however, as are tame, feed up and down the woods, amongst the huts; will come, as it were, at call, and are caught with ease. These tame Deer seek round about for their subsistence; and a kind of white moof, which they find in

plenty in the Moors, is their favourite food. Nature directs them to find this moof, let it lie buried ever so deep in the snow, which they gra- # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

gradually remove with their feet till they accomplish their ends. This (as we observed before) is their principal food, but when they cannot find it, which is sometimes the case, rather than farve, they will take up with grafs than hay. As to their form, they very nearly resemble our flags, but they are infinitely stronger, and have much shorter legs, as the reader may clearly perceive by the print. Tho' these creatures for the generality are of a whitish colour, yet there are some few of them grey; and their hoofs are of black horn. They change their antlets annually in the spring; at which time they are covered with a sort of black, soft skin, which goes off, however, at the approach of winter. Very few of them live longer than eight or nine years.

Besides this land-chace of their Rein-Deer; they have another by water after the Seals; of which there are whole shoals in the (c) White Sea, during the two months of March and April, where 'tis imagined, they come from (d) Nova Zembla, in order to propagate their species. They copulate on the ice, where the Samoëds lie in wait for them, disguised in such an artful manner, as renders them unsuspected, and enables them, with greater ease than otherwise they could do, to surprize them. The method they observe is this. They get upon the ice, which sometimes extends itself near half a league into the sea. They carry a staff in their hands, with a harpoon fixed at the end of it, to which is fastened a line of about twelve fathom in length. On first sight of their prey, they crawl along on their bellies, and get as near them as possible, without being discerned, whilst they are busy in the act of copulation, but lie still, and seemingly lifeless, in case their approach disturbs them. By slow degrees, however, they glide forwards, till they get within their reach, at which time they dart their harpoons at them with all their strength, and very seldom fail of wounding them. The creature, sensible of the pain, immediately takes to the water. The Samoëd holds fast, and draws the line, which is either tied round his middle, or made fast to his belt, and plays with the seal 'till he is quite spent, and then is secured in courtfe. Sometimes it happens, that the poor creature, unable to bear his agonizing pains, which are aggravated by the saltness of the water, jumps out again upon the ice, where he is killed directly. When thus taken, his flesh serves the sportsman for provision, his skin contributes towards his clothing, and the oil that proceeds from him is disposed of at public sale. This water-chace, however, frequently proves fatal to the hunter; for it sometimes falls out, that the seal, which is very strong, after he feels himself deeply wounded, hurries into the water with the utmost precipitation, and before the Samoëd can get rid of the line, so fastened as before-mentioned, round his middle or to his belt, is all on a sudden dragged down at once into the water, and inevitably lost.

They practise much the same stratagem, when they go armed in pursuit of the Rein-Deer; for they disguise themselves in the skin of one of those animals, and creep gently along in the midst of such as are tame, till they are within the reach of their dart. They take care to get on the leeward side of them; for, as the sense of smelling in these creatures is peculiarly quick, they would otherwise be liable to meet with a disappointment. But by these stratagems, for the most part they gain their ends, which sometimes turn out to a very good account.

This method of their hunting was communicated to me, by the Samoëd's wife, who came to my apartment to have her picture drawn. There was not one of their women, that, in my opinion, had such good features, or was so affable in her conversation. I made it my business, therefore, to get into her good graces, in order to procure all the information I possibly could. I found, however, that nothing was so prevailing, or proved so infallible a charm as my brandy bottle, with which she was perfectly delighted, and with which I was ready to oblige her. In this country, the women drink as hard as the men, and indulge themselves with liquor, till they can scarce stand on their legs. And this was the true state of the cafe with # THE TRAVELS OF

with my fair favourite; and her husband discerning it, fell a laughing till his sides ached. After she had rolled a little upon the floor, she got upon her legs again, and fell into a fit of tears, upon an imaginary notion, that she was child-lets, tho' she had no lets than four at the same time living. This part of the story was communicated to me by my landlady. Such odd kind of fancies will sometimes possess the brains of those who are far gone in liquor. As I was discursing with her one day on the subject of children, she acquainted me with the manner of their disposing of them after their decease, in which there is something peculiarly remarkable, and not unworthy I think of the attention of the reader. When a child at the breast, whom they always suckle for a year at least, happens to die, before it has tasted of any kind of meat, they wrap the babe up in a cloth, carry it to the wood, and there hang it on a tree.

As their customs and manners are widely different from those of all other nations, I made it my study to get all the information relating thereto that possibly I could. As soon as a child comes into the world, it is named either according to the creature that first enters their tent, be it man or beast; or else after the first they meet with, when they go abroad; nay, sometimes they name it after the first object they set their eyes on, be it animate or inanimate, beast, bird, river, or tree. Children that dye after they have done fucking, be they older or younger, are deposited in the earth between two boards.

When they are inclined to marry, they look out for one, as others do, who strikes their eye and fancy most, and enter into an agreement with her relations for the purchase, in the same manner as we do for an ox or a horse. Sometimes they give two, three, or four rein-deers for a spouse elect, each of which for the generality is worth about fifteen or twenty florins; sometimes they deposit a sum of money of equal value, according as the parties can agree. They are confined to no number of wives; but may have as many as they can well maintain; some amongst them, however, that are more continent than their neighbours, sit down well satisfied, as we do, with one only. If a wife happens to give disgust, the husband has nothing more to do, but to return her to her relations, who are obliged to receive her; but then the purchase-money, or the effects given are all funk. There are other Samoëds, as I have been informed, who are inhabitants of the feacoats, and some who reside in Siberia, who purchase their wives in the same manner as these do, but then, in case of distaste, they sell them for the best price they can procure.

When a father or mother dies, their bones are preferred and never interred; but in case they are very far advanced in years, and perfectly helpless, they are thrown into the next river, as I have been credibly informed by those who have been eye-witnesses of the inhuman action, tho' they do not look on it as such. In a word, after a man is once dead, they dress him in the same manner as he used to be clothed when living, and after having dug a pit, deep enough for the reception of him, they cover him over with the mould; with the additional ceremony of hanging up his bow, and quiver, ax, hatchet, and all his other accoutrements upon some adjacent tree. The women are interred in the same manner.

Having thus fully gratified my curiosity, in regard to their manners and customs, I was very desirous of being informed of the religion they professed, and the most essential articles of their belief. In order to answer this end, I paid a visit with my friends to a particular Samoëd, whom I entertained with a profusion of brandy; for, as I observed before, that was their favourite liquor; and without such friendly treatment, they receive you but coldly, and can seldom be prevailed on to communicate their thoughts with any manner of freedom. At that very juncture, I recollected, that it is said in the Sacred Scriptures, "the Gentiles, without the knowledge of the law, did nevertheless, by the light of nature, fulfil the law"; from whence I immediately inferred, that in all probability these poor illi- # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

illiterate people might form some idea, tho' but an imperfect one, of the Supreme Being. Having, therefore, first drank pretty freely, I began to enter into a serious discourse with this Samoed on that important topic. The result of his answers was this; that both he and most of his fellow-natives were fully persuaded there was a Heaven, and a God, that such Deity was by them called Heyha; that they firmly believed, that there was no being whatever more

powerful; and that all things in nature had their entire dependence upon him; that Adam, the common parent of all the human species, was either the work of God's hands, or proceeded from him, but that none of his posterity either went to Heaven or Hell; that all whose actions were just and praiseworthy, would, after death, be planted in some place above Hell, and there be forever in a state of uninterrupted bliss, and entirely free from all manner of pain. Notwithstanding these notions, they pay the tribute of worship to their particular idols; the sun, the moon, and all the other planets are the objects of their adoration; but sometimes, according as their fancy or interest leads them, they are so weak as to pay divine homage to some favourite birds or beasts. Before their idols, there is a kind of iron plate planted, to which they affix a large parcel of ficks, about the thickness of a common handle for a knife, of the length of two or three inches, and sharp-pointed at one end, by which they intend to perforate a man; and by little holes made in it, at a small distance, they mean to represent his eyes, nose, and mouth. These little parcels of ficks so formed are covered over with the skin of a rein-deer; to which they generally annex the tooth of a bear, a wolf, or some other wild creature.

They have one amongst their clan, whom they distinguish by the name of Siaman, or Koediinick, that is to say, a priest, or a magician; and they pay a peculiar deference to him, as vainly imagining, that by his superior wisdom, he is capable of foretelling them any future occurrences of importance, either good or ill; whether they shall prove successful in their undertakings or employments; whether persons that are sick, or within the verge of the grave, shall recover or die. In short, they entertain abundance of other idle notions of the like nature. When they apply to him for his advice on any affair of consequence, they send a messenger for him, and at his first entrance, they throw a rope about his neck, and draw it so tight that he falls down, as one dead before them: after lying speechless for some small compass of time, he begins to stir, and by slow degrees comes to himself again. Upon his offering to foretell any future event, the very blood starts out of his cheeks, and when he has ended his predictions, that bleeding ceases: if he proceeds to make farther discoveries, his cheeks bleed afresh; as I have been very credibly informed by those who have been present at these solemnities. The priests or magicians wear iron plates and rings under their vestments, which make a hideous noise at their first approach; such, however, as reside in these parts have none of them; they wear only a net made of cat-gut, or some such mark of distinction, to which they fasten the teeth of a great variety of creatures. In case one of these Siams or Koedifnicks, happens to dye, they erect a monument of timber work, clofed all round, to prevent the wild beasts from devouring his remains. When the burial-place is thus safely fenced, they lay him, stretched out at length, on the top of it, drft in his best habiliments, and plant his bow, quiver, and hatchet, in some commodious and adjacent place. To this

monument they fasten a rein-deer or two, in case the deceased was ever in his life time possessed of any of those animals, and there barbarously leave them to starve, if by their struglings, they have not strength sufficient to break their cords, and make their escape. All this particular detail of their religious ceremonies, I had from persons of indifputable veracity, who reside in those parts; and all this was furthermore confirmed by one Michael Oftalioff, a Russian merchant, whom I invited to my quarters for that very purpose, as I was well assured he had several times croffed Siberia both winter and summer, in his way to China, and that he had travelled over all those parts for # THE TRAVELS OF

for fourteen or fifteen years successively. He was a gentleman of about three score years of age, and a very sober, fede person; and he affirmed me, that these Samoëds are dispersed all along on all sides to the great rivers of Siberia; that is to say, the (e) Oby, the (f) Jenefcia, the (g) Lena, and the (h) Amur, all which discharge their waters into the great ocean. The last of these four is a boundary, which divides the dominions of Muftcovy from those of China, and for that reason, these people never perfume to crofs it. Between the two last-mentioned rivers lie the Jakotes, who are natives of (i) Tartary, and the Lamoetkis; who, like the Samoëds, make the rein-deer one principal part of their daily provisions. These people are very intrepid and expert in war; and in number, they amount to little less than thirty thousand. There is another nation, called Jacogerie, or Joegra, who are planted towards the sea coast. These in all respects whatever, act like the Samoëds; their dress is exactly the same, and they reside in the defarts. These people devour (as dogs do) the entrails of any creatures perfectly raw; and each of them speak a different language. To these may be added two more; namely those who are called Korakic, from the country in which they reside; and who live after the very same manner as the Samoëds; and those again who are called Soegtfe. These last wilfully cut a large slit in their cheeks, and infest in the orifice whilst fresh, the bones of a Narwhale to render the scar still more conspicuous, which they are proud of, and look upon as an additional beauty. The following odd custom is daily practised among them, namely, the men wash themselves with the urine of the women, and the women with that of the men. They are looked upon as vile wretches, and adept in the Black Art, yet they boast of such wicked practices, and carry about with them the bones of their predecessors for such hellish purposes. Their religion, however, is somewhat more remarkable; for they pay their tribute of divine adoration to the Devil; and their common complaisance to strangers is very extraordinary;

for, in order to testify their hospitality, they profit not only their daughters; but their wives themselves, when they are thought more agreeable companions; and they think a stranger entitled, as it were, to any favour that they are capable of conferring on him. What a surprising difference is there between the courtesy of these nations, and that of the Europeans? The Rutlian, from whom

I received my intelligence of all these extraordinary circumstances, told me more over, that after about a week's journey farther from these people, he met with a sixth kind of them towards the sea-coast, who were called Lafatie Saegtfa, or Couchant Soegtfe, from the manner of their lying, or fitting in their tents during the winter-feafon, which are composed, as he affirmed me, of the Narwhale, and are covered all over with snow, for no less than five months successively out of the twelve. These furnish themselves with a sufficient quantity of the Whale, which, when properly dried, is their principal provision; for they never stir abroad till the approach of spring.

It seems, the Samoëds of these parts, some years ago, formed a project for their better subsistence, which was this; namely, they would artfully tho' secretly wound the Muftovite cattle between their small ribs, with a particular instrument, which they made use of for that purpose, or run a very fine iron into their ears, with the anguish whereof the poor creatures would lie languishing for a short time, but inevitably die at last, and then they were sure to find them and convey them to their tents. These mal-practices, however, were in process of time discovered, and great numbers of them were taken into custody, and soon after, without any ceremony, hung up, some by the heels, and some about the middle, as a public example to deter others from such iniquitous practices. Tho' this discovery, and this infantaneous punishment struck them, no doubt, with a panic for some time, yet they ventured, it seems, but the very last winter, to enter upon the same dangerous scheme; and some of them were caught, and confined for it; but # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

but by some means or other, they all, fortunately for them, made an absolute escape, leaving only one little helpless infant behind them, who was taken particular care of by the governor of the province, and in a few days after, admitted, by baptism, into the pale of the Ruffian church.

During my residence in this place, I was likewise informed, that they had discovered, about seven years since, an island to the left of China, which had been brought under subjection to the Czar, notwithstanding it was a whole year's journey from thence to Moscow. This island, they told me, abounded in fables and furs; and might possibly afford a profusion of other commodities of equal value and importance, but what in particular they could not tell, for the place was known but to a few strangers, and the natives lived much after the same savage manner as the nations we have just been talking of.

On the eighteenth day of September there arose such a hurricane as blew off the roofs of a great number of houses: at that very juncture, I was at dinner with the Sieur Houtman, and had no apprehension in the least of the danger to which we were exposed; but when I was taking my leave, and had got a step or

two out of the doors, several large pieces of timber fell down to the ground within a few yards of me; which startled me, and made me hurry into the house again for safety. As none of the family were in the least apprized of this sudden storm, they wondered at my return; but when I acquainted them with the danger I was in, and my happy escape, one of the servants went up directly into one of the garrets, and found the roof of it totally demolished. Upon the report he made, we all returned our humble thanks to Almighty God for our preservation.

On the twenty-fifth of the same month, five hundred dragoons arrived from Moscow in four barks; and as this happened on a Sunday, there was a vast concourse of people flocked down to the water-side; who being, most of them at least, dressed in their best cloaths, made an appearance agreeable enough.

Our last ships weighed anchor, on the fourteenth of October, and set sail for Holland. All of them got safe out to sea, except the White Eagle, which unhappily ran ashore by the meadows. One half of her loading at least was taken out, before the crew could get her afloat again; but even that would never have saved her, if the weather had not proved so remarkably fair in her favour. Upon the nineteenth, however, all damages being repaired, she got out likewise safe to sea, and made the best of her way to the same port.

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

1. Samoida, the most northerly province of Russia in Europe, situate on the Frozen Ocean and the river Oby.
2. Siberia, or Asiatic Russia, formerly denominated Great Tartary, is situate between sixty and one hundred and thirty degrees of east longitude, and between forty-seven and seventy-two degrees of north latitude; being bounded by the Frozen Ocean on the north; by the Pacific Ocean, China, and Chinese Tartary, on the east; by the Mogul's and Uftec Tartars on the south; and by the rivers Oby and Irtis, which separate Asiatic from European Russia on the west; being upwards of two thousand miles in length from east to west, and one thousand five hundred miles in breadth from north to south; the north of it

a cold, barren, uninhabited country, covered with snow for eight or nine months in the year; the southern provinces, a more fruitful foil, but most of the natives lead a vagrant life, like the ancient Scythians and Tartars, depending chiefly on what they take by hunting and fishing, or the produce of their flocks and herds; there are very few towns, and very little of the land cultivated, except near Tobolski or Tobolska, the capital, to which part of it

the Swedish prisoners were banished, and to which the Ruffians send most of their prisoners, and some large colonies; but as hands are still wanted to manure the ground, great part of Siberia remains a desert. They have scarce any trade or manufactures; the principal traffic of the Muscovites of Siberia is by fleges over the lakes and frozen # THE TRAVELS OF

frozen country to China in the winter; they have been endeavouring to find a way into the sea of Japan and China by their rivers, which fall into the Frozen Ocean, but have not succeeded hitherto, as I can learn; they relate, however, that they have met with some rich mines of silver and copper in the mountains of Siberia, which they have begun to work. I include the Kalmuc Tartars within the limits of Siberia, as they acknowledge themselves subject to the Empire of Russia.

1. White Sea. See page 7. n. b.
2. Nova Zembla, or Newland, which the Dutch call the island of Weygats, is situated in the North, or Frozen Ocean, between fifty and eighty degrees of east longitude, and between twenty degrees of north latitude, and the north pole separated from the province of Samoieda in Russia by a narrow strait, called the Straits of Weygats. Whether it be an island, or part of some great continent is uncertain; no ships having ever passed to the northward of it, tho' many attempts have been made to find out a north-east passage to China that way. The Dutch, indeed, passed the Straits of Weygats, south of Nova Zembla, and wintered on the east side of it in the year 1596, but did not find it practicable to sail farther, for the fields of ice they met with. There are no constant inhabitants here, but the Samoëds and Ostiacks climb over the mountains of ice in the Straits, when they are frozen over, and hunt Elks and Rein-Deer here at the proper season.
3. Oby, a great river of Russia, which rises in the Lake Kifan in Kalmuc Tartary in Asia, and running north joins the river Irtis; and continuing its course north forms the boundary between Europe and Asia till it falls into the Frozen Ocean in twenty degrees of north latitude, having run a course of two thousand miles and upwards.
4. Jenefcia, or Jenifa, a great river of Russia, that runs from south to north, through the province of Siberia, parallel to the Oby, and falls into the Frozen Ocean east of that river in twenty-two degrees of east longitude, and twenty degrees of north latitude.
5. Lena, a great river, which rises in Siberia, in Asiatic Russia, and running north from the latitude of 55 to 72, falls into the Frozen Ocean; by which river the Russians seem to have some expectations of finding a way to Japan and China.

6. Amur, or Amour, a large river, the source whereof is in Siberia, in about one hundred and twenty degrees of east longitude, and fifty-four degrees of north latitude, runs east through Chinese Tartary, and falls into the Bay of Corea, in the Pacific Ocean in about one hundred and fifty degrees of east longitude.
7. Tartary, which is the same country as the ancient Scythia, comprehended all the north of Europe and Asia, of which the Russians possess much the greatest part at present, and have given it the name of Siberia, which extends from the rivers Oby and Irtis, that divide Asia from Europe, to the Pacific Ocean. Chinese Tartary, which lies north of China, and is bounded by Siberia on the north and west, is now the largest country that goes by the name of Tartary, possessed by one Sovereign, and for that reason is sometimes called Great Tartary. The Tartars, who lie south of Siberia and Mufov, are the Tartars of Astracan, Circassia and Dagistan, situated north-west of the Caspian Sea. The Kalmucs, who lie between Siberia and the Caspian Sea: the Urfec Tartars and Moguls, who lie north of Persia and India, and those of Tibet, which lie north-west of China: of these the Tartars of Astracan are subject to Mufov; those of Circassia and Dagistan sometimes put themselves under the protection of the Russians, and sometimes acknowledge the Turks and Persians to be their Sovereigns. The Kalmuc Tartars at present acknowledge themselves subjects of Russia. The Urfec Tartars were lately independent, but are now tributary to Koul Kan, Sovereign of Persia, who lately took possession of their capital city Bochara. The Moguls seem to be still independent, as well as those of Tibet, which occasions this country to be called Independent Tartary sometimes; and the Tartars of Tibet are so powerful, that they are frequently at war with the Chinese. The Northern Tartary is a cold, barren country, almost always covered with snow, wherein are very few houses or inhabitants. The Southern Tartars, for the most part, enjoy a temperate climate, and a fruitful foil; but as few of them have fixed habitations, or apply themselves to cultivate the foil, but are continually moving from place to place, to find pasture for their numerous flocks and herds, that fine country produces little. #
CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

CHAP. III.

A Description of Archangel. Provisions in Plenty. Revenue of the Customs, &c.

His Czarian Majefty has a spacious and pleasant dock-yard, set apart for the building of ships, about a mile and an half westward of Archangel. All shipping, both coming and going, passes by it.

When I drew the draught of the prospect in Number X. there were several vessels riding at anchor, in expectation of some others, which were to constitute a fleet homeward bound.

The dock-yard is distinguished on the plate by the letter A. At the point of land in the river, if you will consult the plate, you will find a vessel with her deck unfinished.

The village, at a small distance, which is marked with the letter B, is commonly called Strambol.

The city of (a) Archangel is situated in the north-western parts of Muscovy, and lies to the north-eastward of the river (b) Dwina, which discharges its waters into the sea, about six leagues lower. It lies along the banks of the river; and, according to the best of my remembrance, is more than two miles in length, and about three quarters of a mile only in breadth. Its principal edifice is the Royal Palace, which is composed of free-stone, and is divided into three distinct parts. The first is inhabited chiefly by the foreign merchants, who have several commodious warehouses there for the reception of their various effects. These lie to the left as you come up the river. Here likewise the merchants who come hither annually from (c) Moscow, have their several apartments, where they reside, for the generality, till the last ships return home. Strangers likewise are accommodated here in much the same manner. These, however, soon after the ships are departed, which for the most part is in the month of October, they remove from thence to other apartments till they return to Moscow in November and December following, when they can travel in sledges upon the snow and ice, at which times the rivers may be crossed without the least danger.

On your entrance into the palace, you go under a great gate, and from thence into a quadrangular court, where the warehouses lie both on the right and the left. There is a long gallery above, to which there are two separate stair-cases; both leading to the merchants' apartments as before-mentioned.

The second division of this palace has a gate, as well as the first, where there is another range of buildings; at the end whereof stands the town-house, which has several commodious apartments belonging to it. When you have gone up a short flight of steps, you come directly into a long gallery, from whence you go into their courts of judicature, above which there is a spacious door that leads into the street. In these courts, all processes are begun and ended, except in cases where sentences of death are passed on criminals, which are exhibited in that place in particular where the sentence is passed, be it where it will. Such commodities as are the peculiar property of the Czar, are deposited in this palace, in different magazines, some of wood, and others of stone, erected for that particular purpose; the merchants, however, have leave

sometimes to secure their goods there likewise. When you have passed the third gate, there is another range of buildings, # THE TRAVELS OF

buildings, for such commodities as belong to the Ruffians, and where likewise many of the merchants of that country have their residence; the natives, however, are not, in all respects, so well accommodated as the foreign merchants. The square before this palace is spacious enough, and extends quite down to the river. When any ships arrive here in the summer season, they raise two great timber bridges, which project a considerable way into the river for the better convenience of lading and unloading. The bridges likewise which they raise for the transportation of corn are considerably large.

The citadel, in which the governor himself resides, abounds with shops, where the Ruffians, who come there at such times as their fairs are kept, expose their various merchandizes to public sale. There is a wooden wall which extends to the very river, and surrounds it.

All the houses in this city are built with wood; or more properly speaking, are composed of large pieces of timber, artfully joined together; and make an odd figure enough on the outside. However, you may meet with very commodious apartments in some of the principal houses, and especially in those which are inhabited by foreign merchants. Within, the walls are very smooth and even, and are wainscoted with proper boards, large, unpolished; the pieces of timber being intended chiefly for the safety and support of the house, without any other view. For the generality, there is a stove to each room; but the fires in them are always on the outside; the greatest part of them are very large, and ornamental too, when artfully contrived. The Christian merchants, or, as they are otherwise called, The strangers from beyond sea, who reside amongst them, are as neat as they are in Holland, and their apartments are as richly furnished.

The streets are covered with broken pieces of timber, and by crofting them, without a great deal of care and precaution, a man is liable to fall, and do himself a mischief. They are so full, moreover, of rubbish, that they resemble, in many places, the ruins of fire; the snow,

however, which falls thick in winter, covers such defects, and makes all appear smooth and even.

In this city there are two churches; one set apart for the service of the Calvinists, and the other for the Lutherans; but in both, Divine service is performed twice every Sunday. They are situated near the river-side, and stand but at a small distance one from the other. Each minister resides on one side of his church; and the church-yard, where they inter their dead with the same solemnities as the Europeans do, lies between both. In winter,

however, as 'tis so excessively cold, they have no public worship, 'tis true, at church; but then they meet at the minister's habitation, which is properly heated for their reception.

I took the draught of this city upon the river, as I was on board one of our ships then riding at anchor, the representation whereof you'll find in plate XI. where each particular of any importance is distinguished by a numerical figure, as for instance, (1) Oespinge Bogeroedifza, that is to say, the church of the repose of the blessed Virgin Mary. (2) The Lutheran Church. (3) The church belonging to the Calvinists. (4) The German Palace. (5) The court of judicature, and the Grand Duke's Arsenal, or military storehouse. (6) The Ruffian Palace. (7) The Gooft-house, or the house belonging to the head commissioner of the customs, which stands upon the river. (8) The great church. (9) The citadel.

The governor of this city had formerly, indeed, a despotic power of proceeding; the form of its government, however, was changed but last year, at which time four burgo-masters were appointed; the first resides in this city; the second at Kolmegra, and the two others in the parts adjacent. From whence the reader may perceive, that the authority of the governor extends no farther than over the militia; since the Burgo-masters preside over the police, and all civil affairs.

There comes a grand commissioner, or principal inspector of the customs, once a year, that is to say, when the merchants generally arrive there, in order, not only to # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

to pry into and take care of such duties as belong to his Czarian Majesty, but to purchase such merchandizes as the court may have occasion for. This grand officer, or head-maftter, has four affihtants, or deputies, who act in his absence with equal power, and are distinguished by the title of Goftieni-Sotni, or Sub-Delegates; from amongst whom he himself is elected. There are other officers besides these, who are elected from amongst the people, and employed in the towns and villages; but their number is not absolutely fettet. These subaltern officers are obliged to serve for a whole year, without the leaf fee or reward; and to obey any orders that they receive from the head-maftter, or any other of their superiors, in regard to such matters as relate to the duties and revenues of the Grand Duke. They are dispersed every where as occasion requires, and have soldiers allowed them in cafe of any opposition, in order to prevent all clandestine practices, and to secure smugglers, and all their contraband goods. When the year is expired, they are discharged, and others substituted in their stead.

This city is plentifully furnished with all the necessaries and conveniencies of life. — They have a profusion of fowl, and at a very moderate price: you may purchase a partridge for two-pence. There are two species of these birds. One alight upon trees, and

have somewhat of the appearance of our owls; but they are delicious eating; the others, in winter, are perfectly white, which is something extraordinary; and, in the language of the country, are called Koerop tie. — They have here likewise two different kinds of Tetters, birds of the bigneſs of our turkeys, and adorned with very fine feathers: the cocks are, for the generality, black, with a mixture of a very deep blue; the hens are of a much smaller ſize, and their feathers are ſpeckled with grey. Hares likewise are here ſo plenty, that they are fold for no more than a great a-piece. Theſe are white in the winter, and their rabbits are black. You may purchaſe woodcocks too for about two-pence, or three-pence a-piece at

moſt: they have vaſt numbers likewise of ducks, and a particular fort of them called Gagares, which not only fly with prodigious velocity, but mount ſurprizingly high. Whiſt they are on the wing, they make a noiſe not unlike the human voice. Theſe ſwim as faſt as they fly, but as their feet come out from behind, they have not the faculty or power of running.

Their rivers abound with fiſh. A man would purchaſe here as many perch as would ſerve twenty reaſonable ſtomachs for twenty-pence. The beſt fort are thoſe called the Karoetfe. They are the ſmalleſt, indeed; but then they have a much finer flavour, than any we have in our country; for which reaſon, I preferred a ſmall quantity of them in ſpirits. As to their ſhape, they very much reſemble our roach; they are of a dark brown colour; but their ſcales are bright and ſhining. They have pike too in plenty, and a kind of ſmall eels, which are very delicious. In ſhort, they have vaſt numbers of ſmelts, gudgeons, roach, whittings, flounders, and a brown fiſh, by them called Garius, which is extremely fine and lucious: they are much about the bigneſs of a common cod. All this variety of fiſh are caught within twelve miles diſtance of the city, in a certain gulph or bay, formed by the river, and where the water is perfectly calm, and ſmooth. It were altogether needleſs to ſay any thing of their ſalmon; ſince 'tis univerſally known, that they are ſent from hence to all parts, both ſalted and ſmoked. Of theſe, there is likewise a white fort, which are called Meelma by the Muſcovites, and are caught upon the coaſt of (d) Lapland. Theſe are all dried before they are ſent abroad. I ſaw one of them which very much reſembled a ray, and was about two foot broad. Theſe they call Pafcifkaet. Two mice were found in the belly of him, and its oil is an excellent ingredient in ſome particular medicines.

Their markets likewise are full of all forts of meat. The beſt beef in the world may be purchaſed there for a penny a pound. A lamb, of about ſix weeks old, will # THE TRAVELS OF

will cost you no more than fifteen-pence; and a calf of the same age may be purchased, according to the season, for half a crown or three shillings at most.

All the inhabitants in general breed turkeys. One may buy four or five common fowls, or a good goose for about eight-pence.

Their beer is extraordinary good; they are not permitted, however, either to brew or vend it without a licence from the Grand Duke, which is, without any great difficulty, to be procured for a reasonable consideration; but an inhabitant may brew what quantity he thinks proper for the use of his family, provided he pays only after the rate of four shillings and two-pence for a certain number of quarters of malt that he proposes to make use of for that purpose. There are some particular tenants who are entirely exempted from that duty.

As to their wine and spirituous liquors, they are brought hither by sea from France; the last, however, is held up at an exorbitant price, by reason of the heavy duty that is laid upon it. Notwithstanding this high excise, there is a kind of malt spirit, which is wholesome enough, whereof strangers drink in plenty, and very seldom taste of any other, which is sold at as reasonable a rate as can well be defined.

His Czarian Majesty has a very considerable annual revenue levied upon this city. It was formerly reported, that the duties arising therefrom arose to no less than 300,000 rubles; in my time, however, I found, by the best calculation that could be made, that they amounted to very little more than 180, or 190,000 of the same rubles, each ruble being reckoned after the rate of five florins of Dutch money.

There used to arrive annually, about thirty, or five and thirty ships in this harbour; but in the year 1700, there came fifty at least, besides thirty three from England; to which, in case we add such ships as arrived from Hamburg, Denmark, and Bremen, the total will amount to one hundred and three sail; this, however, was occasioned by the war with

Sweden, by means whereof a stop was put to the trade which was carried on by the Muscovites with (e) Riga, (f) Nerva, and (g) Revel; nay, with (b) Koningsburg, and (i) Dantzic; in- fomuch that at this time the whole trade and commerce of Russia is centred in Archangel. According to the most exact calculations, it is computed, that the Czar has received this year (1701) upon the merchandizes from the arrival of the first vessel in this harbour to the last, no less than 130,000 rubles, which are equal to 160,000 rixdollars. The agreement was, that one moiety of these duties should be paid in rubles, and the other in golden ducats; for was payment to be offered all in ducats, they would not be taken, but rixdollars are never refused. This, however, is to be understood in regard to foreign commodities only, the principal whereof consist

in gold and silver stuffs, silks, cloths, ferges, gold and silver laces, and gold wire; besides indigo, and other ingredients requisite for dying.

But to return to such customs as are levied on foreign commodities; here 'tis to be observed, that from the year 1667 to the year 1660, the merchants paid the sum of fix and twenty rixdollars on every cask of wine; whereas for the three years last past, they paid no more than five. Notwithstanding this, they pay fix and thirty rixdollars on every barrel of brandy, and forty on a barrel of Spanish wine, which contains the quantity of two barrels.

Pot-ashes, weed-ashes for soap, leather, hemp, tallow, elks, otter skins, and furs; all the natural produce of the country, are exported from Muscovy into other parts; we are credibly informed likewise, that the muscles which are taken in the rivers of Kola, Warfga, Wufma and Solia, produce a very good sort of pearl. Sometimes they will fetch five and twenty florins a-piece; and in the parts adjacent to Ombacy, they will bear twice the value.

Thus I have given my readers an impartial account of all the information I could procure during my residence in this city; and I dedicated all my leisure hours to # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

1. Archangel. See p. 8. n. d.
2. Dvina, a river, which gives name to the province of Dvina, and running through it from south to north, discharges itself into the White Sea a little below Archangel.
3. Moscow City, east longitude 38. latitude 55. 45. the capital of the province of Moscow, situate on the river Moscowa, 360 miles south east of Peterburgh, 800 east of Stockholm; 1000 north east of Constantinople; 900 north east of Vienna, and 1400 north east of London.
4. Lapland. See p. 7. n. a.
5. Riga, east longitude 24. latitude 57. a city, and port-town of Livonia, in the division of Lettenland, situate near the mouth of the river Dvina, and a bay of the Baltic Sea, one of the best harbours and trading towns in the Baltic, from whence the Dutch import corn, naval flores, &c. and the English and other nations traffic with this city, but not with such advantage as the Dutch, who exchange their herrings for the merchandise of Russia, to which crown Riga, and the rest of Livonia, is at present subject.

6. Nerva, or Narva, east longitude 27. 35. latitude 59. situate on the river Nerva, or Narva, which divides Livonia from Russia, a thousand miles south west of Peterburgh, a large city and port-town of Livonia, besieged by the Russians in the year 1700. but relieved by Charles XII. King of Sweden, who gained a signal victory over the Russians with 20,000 men, tho' the Russians were 100,000 strong. But the Czar, Peter the Great, afterwards took Narva by storm; and transplanted the inhabitants to Astracan; and the Russians have been in possession of Narva and all Livonia ever since, making it one of the stations of their fleet.

7. Revel, east longitude 24. latitude 59. a port-town of Livonia, in the division of

'till midnight. My friend Mr. Brants contributed no small share to these evening entertainments, as he was not only a great admirer of all forts of music; but a distinguished performer on the harpsichord and organ.

Estonia, or East-Land, situate at the fourth entrance of the gulf of Finland, 140 miles north of Riga, and 110 miles west of Narva. It is a large city, and has a commodious harbour, where part of the Royal Navy of Russia is usually laid up. When the Czar invaded this country, multitudes of people fled hither to avoid the barbarous Cossacks in his Army; but the plague happening there, at the same time, upwards of 50,000 people were swept away by that distemper in this city.

1. Konigsburg, east longitude 21. latitude 54. 40. a city of Poland, capital of Ducal Prussia, and of the King of Prussia's Polish dominions, situate on the river Preggel, near a bay of the Baltic Sea, seventy miles north east of Dantzick, being one of the most considerable port-towns in the Baltic.

2. Dantzick, east longitude 19. latitude 54. the capital of Regal Prussia, in the Kingdom of Poland, situate on the western shore of the river Wefel, or Vistula, which a little below falls into the Baltic Sea. It is an excellent harbour, and has the best foreign trade of any port within the Baltic. It stands 140 miles north of Warfaw, and 70 miles south west of Konigsburg. The town is large, and encompassed with a wall, and fortifications of a great extent. The houses are well built of stone, or brick, fix or seven stories high, and the granaries, containing vast magazines of corn, and naval flores, are still higher, to which the shipping lie close, and take in their lading; for the Dutch annually import from hence a great many thousand tons of corn, timber, and naval flores, and other nations some, but the Dutch have the greatest share of this trade, paying for their merchandise with pickled herrings, the spices of India, sugars, brandy, and other produce of the more southern countries; whereas the English, and other nations, are forced to purchase

these things chiefly with treasure. The inhabitants are computed to amount to 200,000 souls, who are subject to a mixed kind of government. Their magistracy consists of thirty senators, who # THE TRAVELS OF

who continue for life; four of them burgo-masters. Besides these, there are thirteen confuls, who elect the said burgo-masters out of their own body, and chuse likewise the judges, and all other officers of the city, from whom there lies an appeal to the thirteen confuls and four burgo-masters, and from them to the republic of Poland. The King annually nominates a burgo-masters out of the confuls to represent his person in the senate, and all sentences of death must be signed by him in the King's name. One hundred burgeffes are elected to represent the people's grievances, and defend their privileges, and inspect the administration of the government; and the hundred, with the concurrence of the senate, present the clergy to vacant benefices. The established religion is the Lutheran, but Papifts, Calvinifts, and Anabaptifts are tolerated. The jurisdiction of the town extends forty miles round the city, and they maintain a garrison at their own expense, and coin money, with the effigies of the King on one side, and the city-arms on the reverse. They are said to be under the protection of Poland, but if they had not been supported by other powers against their enemies, their state had been subverted long since. In the year 1703 the English, the Dutch, and the King of Prussia entered into an alliance for their protection against the Swedes, who would have extorted a sum of money from them, as they did again in the year 1706, when the King of Sweden threatened them with a visit, on his succours against King Augustus, if they refused to acknowledge Stanislaus for their King. But in the year 1734, when they took the part of Stanislaus against the present King of Poland, and actually harboured and protected him in their city, having been purchased with French money, they were besieged by the Mufcovites and Saxons, obliged to surrender, and forced to purchase their peace with several hundred thousand pounds for suffering Stanislaus to make his escape out of the city during the siege.

CHAP. IV.

The Author's Departure from Archangel. The Russians Manner of travelling in the Winter Season. A Description of Wologda, and of the Monastery at Trooyts. His Arrival at Moscow.

On the twenty-first of December, about three in the afternoon, I set out from (a) Archangel for (b) Moscow, accompanied by one Mr. Kinfus, who had procured two soldiers to attend him, and

(what here is called) a Podwoden, that is to say, an order for horses upon the road gratis; though the persons from whose hands we receive them, indeed, expect some small gratuity as a perquisite, which is seldom refused. He had six fleges, and I one only, as I had disposed of my baggage amongst the effects of Mr. Brants.

When any one is determined to travel from Archangel to Moscow, he must furnish himself with what number of fleges he shall have occasion for, before he sets out; for there are no horses to be hired upon the road. These fleges are so contrived, that a man may lie down stretched out at his full length, and not be incommoded: he must take his own bed along with him; and other proper furniture to secure him from the cold, which, in this country, in the winter season, is excessively keen and piercing; the back-part of the fledge is covered with matting, but all the rest is lined, either with strong cloth, or leather. The top is covered with a skin, and lined in the same manner, to keep the passenger from all the inclemencies of the weather, wind, rain, or snow. The driver travels day and night, and each fledge has two horses, which are always changed at the end of every fifteen werfts, which is about three German leagues. At the end of every werft, the Russians cry Werfta, which space contains about a hundred fathom, and each fathom three # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

1701

three Arfiennes, that is to say, about three Dutch ells. The passenger gets out of his fledge for refreshment but once a day. Having passed by several villages, on the twenty-second of December, about three in the afternoon, we reached Kolmogora, which is about fifty werfts from Archangel.

This Kolmogora is a pretty large city, situate on the fourth-west of the (e) Dwina, which is one of the principal rivers in all Ruffia. Its fountain-head is in the southern parts of the province of (d) Wologda, and after a long course, and a large encrease by waters from other rivers in its way, it falls by two mouths into the (e) White Sea, at some small distance from Archangel. Mr. Kinfing, my companion, having some knowledge of the Vladika, that is to say, the Archbishop of the city, we went to pay him a visit, by whom we were very courteously received. Our first refreshment was a dram of cinnamon-water, a bottle of good wine, and as much beer as we thought proper to drink, which, tho' what we call table beer, was exceeding good. He treated us likewise with some Egyptian Dates, and other little trifles of the like nature. He was upwards of fifty, and his name was Affonaffi. His palace is his place of residence, which is spacious enough, and lies contiguous to the monastery there. After we had spent about two or three hours with this Right Reverend Prelate, whose conversation was very agreeable, as he was a man of good natural parts, and was a

great admirer of every branch of polite literature, he conducted us to an armory of his, which stood at some distance from the palace; where were, amongst other warlike stores, two small brass guns of his own casting, and two iron-pieces, which were taken out of the Swedish vessels, of which mention has been made before. When we took our leave, he ordered five of his clergy to attend us to our inn; who were all furnished with provisions. One with bread, another with fish, &c. For our farther refreshment. About ten that night, we proceeded on our journey with fresh horses; but it was with no small difficulty that we procured them; for it happened, that a considerable number of passengers had been there before us, who were furnished with Podwodens, as well as we, and had secured almost all the horses that were in the town.

On the twenty-third, the weather was exceeding fine, and we passed thro' divers woods abounding with two sorts of firs: the branches of the one shoot out of the head only, whereas those of the other proceed from the sides of the trunk. We saw likewise a great number of alders and birch-trees. From these woods we pursued our way to several villages, till at length we arrived at Safke, which is the last that stands within the jurisdiction of Archangel.

On the twenty-fourth we reached Briefnick, which lies in the province of Waeg, where we took fresh horses, and were obliged to cross the river of that name several times. On the twenty-fifth we got to Schenkerfke, which is the capital of the last mentioned province, and is situate on the same river. On the twenty-sixth we passed through a large village, called Virghowaesje, where they have a considerable market once a week. On the twenty-seventh we reached Soloti. On the twenty-eighth having passed thro' divers little villages, we crossed the great forest of Komenaf, which is twenty werfts in breadth at least, and came to a place called Dwienitfe, situate on the river of the same name; where we were informed, that three Ruffian merchants, in their passage from Archangel, had met with a gang of banditti, or highwaymen, about twenty-fix in number, who had robbed them of a considerable sum: that one of them in particular took away from the richest of the three, and a gentleman with whom I was well acquainted, a silver cross, which he wore on his breast, and is held here in great veneration, notwithstanding his associates used their utmost endeavours to prevent so gross an insult: that this particular villain, it seems, wore a cross himself, which he took off his neck, and put upon the merchant's with this farcical proverb, *Exchange, Sir, you know, is no Robbery.*

This intimation put us into a kind of panic; but upon mature deliberation, H we # THE TRAVELS OF

We determined, at all adventures, to pursue our journey, without waiting till other company might casually arrive to join us; and therefore got all our firearms in readiness, in case of distress. On

the twenty-ninth we reached Rabanga, which lies on the river Soegue, and from thence got to Wologda about three in the afternoon. This city makes an handsome appearance enough on one side. Here we got out, and went directly to the house of the Sieur Wouter Ewouts de Jough, a Dutch merchant, with whom I am intimately acquainted, and from whom we met with a very courteous reception.

The day following I took a tour round the town, and an accurate survey of the church, called Saboor, which is a very fine building, and was erected by the fame celebrated Italian architect as worked at Moscow-Castle. There are five domes to this church, which the Russians call Glaffa, that is to say, heads of churches. Each of them is covered with plate-tin, and adorned with large gilt crosses. Besides this church, there are twenty others in this city, built with stone, most of which have domes, covered and decorated in the same manner. These gilt crosses strike the eye very agreeably, when the sun shines upon them. To these stone-churches we must add forty-three more, that are built principally with timber. Here are likewise three convents, inhabited by monks, and one cloyster, by nuns; the principal ornament whereof is a little stone-church, erected in the center, which is surrounded with little commodious cells for the nuns, in a retired place, into which you enter by a small door.

After I had gratified my curiosity thus far, I took a survey of the market-place, which is very full of shops; and I observed, that there is a separate place for each particular commodity; as for instance, flesh in one place, and fish in another.

From these markets, I passed through the gate of a very spacious building which had never been perfectly finished, though begun by the Czar Ivan Vaffialiewitz,

who proposed to make a citadel, or fortrefs, of it; but the apprehensions they were at that time under of the Tartars, who had obliged this Prince to withdraw from Moscow, occasioned him to drop his design, and leave the place unfinished. From thence I took a walk on one side of the river Wologda, which runs through the city. The other side, which is called Dofrefene, is not near so pleasant; and notwithstanding one side as well as the other is part of the same city, yet each has a distinct governor, or head. It is a full league in length, and in some places about a quarter of a league in breadth, little more or less. All the goods that come from Archangel pass through this city; and there are, at this present juncture, three or four very commodious warehouses for such commodities as belong to our Dutch merchants. This city is situated in fifty-nine degrees fifteen minutes of northern latitude on the east of the river, which is pretty broad.

We fet out from hence on the thirtieth of December, about ten at night; and by fix the next morning, we got to Greenewits, which is forty werfts from Wologda. At this Greenewits we baited our horses, and 'twas highly reasonable that we should; for we had still twenty werfts farther to travel. We met with fifty fleges at least that day; some of which set out from Archangel before us, and some after. We did not, however, all take the same road; there were but twenty of them that were going to Moscow, or the parts adjacent. About noon we arrived at a place called Obfnorkoy-jain, to which place we had dispatched one of our soldiers before us, in order to secure fresh horses. From thence we proceeded to Danilofskoy, which is three-score and seven werfts from Obfnorkoy-jain last mentioned. This Danilofskoy is a very fine, large town, remarkable for the trade that is carried on there; and for a fine stud of horses, above two thousand whereof belong to his Czarian Majesty.

On the first day of the year 1702, we reached Jerelaw, one of the principal cities of Russia. The river (ff) Wolga runs hard by it, and is very broad there. # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

We croffed both that, and the Kotris, not far from whence, to the southward, the last discharges its waters into the first. In this city there are a great number of stone-churches, of which, as I took views of them all on my return, I shall speak more at large in another place. Having croffed the Kotris, we went to a suburb hard by, called Troepence, where we took fresh horses. We set out from thence about ten at night, and on the second we got to (g) Roftoff, which we only croffed. There is an archbishop, resident in this city, which abounds with fine stone-churches. It is situate on the right of the lake of the same name. Soon after we had traversed this lake, we saw, at a small distance, several little villages, where the inhabitants, or the greater part of them at least, live upon garlic and onions. About half a league from thence stands the monastery of Peter Zarowitz, which is surrounded with several houses.

We arrived at a place, called Wafke, about one in the afternoon, having travelled thirty-eight werfts. There we dined, and set out soon afterwards for Pereflaw Solefkoy, which was about twenty werfts onwards of our journey. Notwithstanding this city is the capital of the province, from whence it derives its name; yet 'tis but a poor place, and is situate on a lake. We got there by nine that night, and left it again about twelve.

On the third we went through Tieriberewa about fix in the morning, and from thence, for near the compass of thirty werfts successively, we were constantly going up and down one hill after another, till we came to Trocyts, where we arrived about one in the afternoon. There we staid some time, and took a survey of the fine monastery which bears the name of the little village, which we passed by, just before we came into the town. This monastery

is composed all of stone, and is surrounded likewise by a fine and lofty stone-wall, which is quadrangular, and at each corner thereof is a noble, spacious, round tower; between which there are square ones; and two of these which are the most ornamental, face the road. It has three gates, like-

wife, in front, and stands about a quarter of a league from the village, which lies to the right-hand of it, as we went to Moscow. The middlemost, through which we chose to enter it, has two Arcades, under which there was a little Corps de garde, where we found several soldiers on duty, as well as at the outward one. As soon as we had passed this inner gate we saw the principal church standing in the center, and separate from the rest of the buildings. His Czarian Majesty's apartment, which stands on the right-hand side, makes a very grand and magnificent appearance on the outside; and, as the front is very extensive, we went up to it by two flights of stone-steps. It is several stories high; but when we came to examine the furniture within, it was mean, and by no means correspondent with its outward grandeur. The refectory, which is another flatly edifice, stands over against it, and is built in much the same form. Each window is adorned with a small pillar, and the stones are painted in various colours. The church, just before-mentioned, stands between these two buildings. Besides these, there are nine others; four whereof are pretty large, but the other five are much smaller. On the outside, this monastery has the appearance of a citadel, or fortres; and the Abbot, or Archimandrit, has the principal command of it. For the generality, there are two or three hundred monks resident here, and some of them waited on us from one place to another, and shewed us abundance of respect. This monastery is very rich, in respect to its revenues; for there are about 60,000 peasants dependent thereon, and pay a certain annual duty towards its maintenance and support. Besides, as there are abundance of illustrious performances interred in the great church, and divers maffes solemnized therein, the profits arising therefrom make a very large addition. The village itself is of a considerable length, and on the right-hand side, there are abundance of farrier's shops, with posts to them for the better convenience of shoeing their horses. When we had travelled thirty werfts from this place, #
THE TRAVELS OF

place, we reached the village of Brato Fiena, where we were obliged to tarry till midnight, in order to have our baggage searched; which is sealed immediately afterwards, and not opened again till in the custom-house at Moscow, where we arrived safe about eight in the morning on the fourth instant.

We alighted at the Slabode, which is the privileged quarter for the Germans, and the place where the greater part of other foreigners reside, tho' there are some, indeed, that live in the city.

As soon as I had refreshed my self, I went directly to Mr Jurtfen's, to whom I had been recommended by Mr. Brants, who at that time lived in the same place, and had been but lately arrived there from Archangel. The Czar honoured him with a visit the very next day, accompanied by several Peers in their respective flegdes; amongst which, that belonging to his Majesty made the least appearance. This Majesty continued for about two hours, and this was the first time I ever had the honour of being in company with this august Monarch.

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

1. Archangel, see page 8. n. d.
 2. Moscow, see p. 23, no. (c)
 3. Dwina, see p. 23, no. (b)
 4. Wologda, east longitude 42. 20. latitude 59. Capital of the province of Wologda in Russia, situate on the river Dwina, 235 miles north of Moscow.
 5. White Sea, see p. 7. n. (b).
 6. Wolga, a river of Russia, which, rising in the north of that Empire, runs south-east, passing by the cities of Jereflat, Kafan, and Bulgar, and then entering Asiatic Russia, continues its course due south to Kamifinea, from whence it runs south-east, and passing by
 7. Roftof, or Roftova, east longitude 40. latitude 57. 20. a town of Russia, in the province of Moscow, capital of the territory of Roftof, situate one hundred and twenty miles north-east of Moscow.
-

C H A P. V.

The Author has the Honour to be admitted into the Presence of the Czar. The solemn Manner in which the Russians consecrate their Water; with a particular Description of a fine Fire-work at Moscow.

Jan. 5.

It has been a constant custom for the Czars of Muscovy, ever since the year 1649, to visit their own principal courtiers, and some foreigners of distinction, either in the city of Moscow itself, or in the Slabode of the Germans, some short time before Twelfth-Day. The person thus honoured, always makes a suitable entertainment, which, in the Russian language, is termed, their Slaw-weien. They are accompanied with the Princes, Lords, and other illustrious personages belonging to the court. In the year 1702, this ceremony was solemnized on the third of January old style. The first visit which his Czarion Majesty at that time made, was to Mr. Brandts, to whose house the Czar came about nine in the morning, attended by about three hundred persons; some in flegdes, and some # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

on horseback. The tables were all decently covered, and served immediately, first with a great variety of cold meats, and afterwards with a great number of hot dishes. The company were very jovial, and free, and there were liquors of all forts in abundance. His Majesty tarried till two in the afternoon, and then withdrew; and from thence, he and his retinue went directly to visit Mr. Lups; where they were entertained in the same elegant manner, and from thence again made divers other visits en palfant. These formal visits thus paid, they refoeted in proper time to the several houses that were prepared before-hand for their respective receptions. The next day, he honoured Mr. Hulft, our resident, and several others with his company. This minister, after having made mention of me to his Majesty, thro' the recommendation of Mr. Witfen, burgo-maister, and one of the principal counsellors at Amsterdam, was pleased to honour me with a kind invitation, and gave orders for my being planted in a particular room, thro' which his Czarain Majesty was to pass. The Knez, or Prince, of Troebetkoooy came by mere accident into the same room where I was in waiting; and having no knowledge of me, but perceiving me to be a foreigner, asked me, in Italian, with the utmost complaisance, whether I understood that language; I answered him, in the affirmative, with all due respect: whereupon, with a seeming pleasure, he entered into conversation with regard to Italy in particular, and some other countries thro' which we had both travelled. He then withdrew to give his Majesty an account of this our casual interview, who, to gratify his curiosity, came attended by a numerous train to the place where I stood. As I was no ways apprehensive of seeing his Majesty soon, I was in a kind of flutter at first; but upon an immediate recollection, I made my address to him with all due deference and respect.— He seemed a little startled at it, and asked me in the Dutch language, how I came to know he was the Czar, and by what means? — I made answer directly, that I

had seen his Majesty's picture at Sir Godfrey Kneller's, in London, which had made so deep an impression on my mind, that I was morally assured I could not be mistaken. As this answer, I found, did not give him perfect satisfaction, I added, that I had the

honour, moreover, to see him come from court, when he was pleased to visit Mr. Brandts. With this answer he seemed better pleased than the former. He then asked me what townman I was; who my parents were; what brothers and sisters I had, and whether they were living or dead. Having made proper answers immediately to these familiar interrogatories, he asked me some questions in regard to my former travels; in what year I commenced them; how long I continued abroad; in what manner I pursued my travels; and what way I returned home. After that, he conversed with me about (a) Egypt, the river (b) Nile, and the famous city of (c) Grand Cairo; its extent and particular buildings; then he asked me about what state and condition Old Cairo and (d) Alexandria were in when I was there last, and divers other adjacent places; adding withal, that he was very sensible there was another place called (e) Alexandretta, or leffer Alexandria. I thereupon informed him, that the place last mentioned was the sea-port town for Aleppo, and acquainted him with the exact distance that they were from each other. This conversation passed all in Dutch, and his Majesty was pleased to desire me to continue speaking in my own native language, as he understood me perfectly well. And it was self-evident afterwards that he did so; for he explained the whole purport of our conference to the Russian Lords that attended him, with that accuracy and freedom, that perfectly surprised both our resident, and all the natives of Holland who had the honour to hear him.— He then directed me to address my discourse to the Knez before-mentioned, in the Italian language, as he understood that better than Dutch, and so left me. After he had spent three full hours at least with our resident, he made several other shorter visits in the Slabode,

I

into the Caspian Sea, fifty at city, having run a course of and three thousand miles, being great part of the way, to carry but the mouth of it is so choked that loaded ships cannot enter thereon, the Russian ships lie at out the mouth of the Wolga. Yet, that the Russian merchants endeavouring to establish a a.

Rostova, eait longitude 40. a town of Russia, in the province, capital of the territory of one hundred and twenty miles Moltow.

The Prefence of the Czar. confiscate their Water; work at Moscow.

They are accompanied with the birds, and other illustrious persons, going to the court. In the his ceremony was solemnized of January old file. The his Czarain Majesty at that as to Mr. Brandts, to whom it came about nine in the ended by about three hundred in fedges, and some

The author's address to the Czar; with the conversation that passed between them. # THE TRAVELS OF

it being then the last day; for the grand festival appointed for the consecration of the water, was to be solemnized the next, and Monday was the sixth of January old file. That very day the son of General Bories Petrowitz Czeremetof arrived at court; and during the time that his Czarian Majesty was at church, he communicated to him the agreeable news that the Swedes had been defeated by the Muscovites in (f) Livonia, which is about five or fix leagues from the town of Deript. He affirmed him that, in this battle, the enemy loft near 4000 men; that several hundreds had been taken prisoners; and that several superior officers were amongst them. This nobleman, who was in the heat of the action himself, and had been dispatched by his father with these credentials, departed himself in such a handsome manner, that he diffused a general joy throughout the whole court. The grand festival last-mentioned is annually solemnized in commemoration of our Bleffed Saviour's Nativity, of which I was an eye-witness.

On one side of the castle, erected on the river Joufa, a square hole, of about thirteen feet from corner to corner, that is to say, fifty-two feet in circumference, was made in the ice. This hole was inclosed by an elegant piece of wood-work, having a column, or pillar, at each angle, which supported a fort of cornish, whereon four several pannels were painted in the form of arches; and at each angle, a statue representing one of the four Evangelists; and over all two of femi-domes, on the middle whereof was a large cross. These pannels, which were painted within as well as without, were embellished with the pictures of the Apostles, and other Patriarchs of the New Testament. The most beautiful picture of them all, however, facing the east of the river, was the representation of our Bleffed Lord's baptism by St. John in the river (g) Jordan, with four angels on the right. On the outside of each of these pannels were the figures of five angels heads with wings on their shoulders. On the west side of this square hole, there were four steps, to

which a large weight of lead was affixed, in order to make them sink into the water. The patriarch, or priest, who was appointed to perform the intended ceremony, flood on the highest step, which was level with the water, and the water in this place was at least eight feet deep, several large, scarlet carpets, surrounded with a square inclosure, forty-five paces from angle to angle, or one hundred and eighty paces in circumference, were spread upon the ground. This inclosure had two others, in the nature of ballustrades, each four paces distant from the other, and four feet in height, and covered in the same manner with proper carpets. On the western side, and near the brink of the hole, two altars were erected. There were four several entrances to them, the largest whereof was to the southward of the castle-gate. These doors likewise were painted, indeed, but after an inclement

manner, and embellished with one hieroglyphic or another. After I had taken a full survey of what I have been hitherto talking of, I went to a commodious eminence, not far distant from the castle, between the two gates, on one side of that which the Ruffians call Taynaimski, or the private gate, in order to have a full view of the procession as it passed through. About eleven in the forenoon it began to move, from the church of Saboor, that is to say, from the place of the assembly of the saints, situate in the castle, and the principal church, moreover, in all Moscow. This grand procession was wholly composed of the Ruffian clergy, some few laymen only excepted, drest in their common habiliments, who led the van, with standards in their hands, made fast to flaves. The priests were all drest in their canonical robes, and made a very fine appearance. The inferior clergy, and the monks, in all about two hundred, advanced first, preceded, however, by a great number of choirifters and fingering-boys, drest in their usual cloaths, and each with a book in his hand. They were guarded on each side by a detachment of foldiers, all under arms; whilst others went with flaves in their hands to clear

CORNELIUS LE BRUN

clear the way. After them walked about three hundred of their prelates, all drest in their episcopal habits. The twelve that went foremost were metropolitans, or cardinals, in a drest which the Russians commonly call a Sackofte. After these, went four archbishops, three bishops, and a great number of Archimandrites, or superiors of convents. After about two hundred of these left were gone by, every thing was displayed, that these priests carried in procession. Some had poles, with a lanthorn affixed to the end of each of them, emblematically representing the true Light of the Gospel; either to do honour to the pictures of the saints, or else to give themselves an air of grandeur and importance. Others again bore two cherubims, called in their language, Lepieds, at the end of two poles, in the same manner as the former. Then followed two croffes; after them the representation of our Blested Saviour at half-length, and almost as big as the life; then a large folio book; and after that, twenty gold and silver caps, decorated with real jewels, or other precious stones; but each was carried singly by an officer appointed for that purpose. When the ceremony was over, the principals of those that were present appeared in those caps. That of the Metropolitan, in particular, being made of gold, and decked with pearls and precious stones. The superior part of the prelates likewise wear these caps, which they call Mietris, and we mitres. This metropolitan, who personated the patriarch, followed the large book directly, holding in his hand a large crofs of gold, embellished with jewels, which every now and then touched his forehead. He had a priest on each side of him for his supporters. When they were arrived, in this order, at the river-side, and their other ceremonies, which were at least half an hour in their performance, were all over, the metropolitan approached the water, and dip't his crofs into it three several times, making use of

the patriarch's words in their own language, the purport whereof is, *May God preserve his people, and bless his inheritance!* After this benediction, they all returned towards

the cattle; the two hundred priests who preceded the solemnity only excepted; for they dispersed. All such as had either the sacerdotal, or episcopal drests on, went back in form, and in good order. I observed two men, very meanly drest, among several others, with a tub, or something like it; but as it was covered up with a cloth, I could not well tell what to make of it. There was another vessel followed this, which was carried in the same manner as the former; after that, another ordinary person went with a pewter flagon full of the river-water, which, having been blessed in form, was conveyed to the cattle, in order to sprinkle and purify the apartments as well as the paintings. No sooner was the procession returned, but they hurried away all the materials that served as an ornament to the water: and I remember, particularly, that a Muscovite plunged a large broom into the hole, with which he very plentifully besprinkled the populace round about; but I did not perceive that it had any material influence over them. In this part of the solemnity, indeed, there seemed to be something very low, and extremely absurd. This procession, which lasted till two in the afternoon, had drawn together a vast concourse of spectators; and it was a show, indeed, that would have been worth any one's seeing, had there been nothing besides, nothing to give disgust. It had a very good effect, it must be allowed, upon the river; for, as the cattle stood on a rising ground, we could from thence see all the whole crowd, even those that had got upon the wall, without the least interruption. As we were on our return home, however, and had got to the Cattle gate, there was such a throng, or mob, that it was with no small difficulty that we made our way through it. Our curiosity, in short, had like to have cost us too dear, besides the riqque we ran by flandering for many hours successively in the snow.

In former times, this grand festival was solemnized with much more pomp and magnificence than it has been for some years last past; for then their Czarrian Majesties, and all the grandees of the court # THE TRAVELS OF

court made a part of the procession; the present Czar, however, has lately made a great many very essential alterations in this public ceremony, and indeed in divers others; of which we shall give our readers a more particular and distinct account in another place.

Jan. 9.

On the ninth of this instant January, it not only began to thaw, but to rain likewise; the weather being at that time more warm and open than it had been before for several years.

Jan. 11.

On the eleventh, there were great demonstrations of public joy on account of their signal victory before-mentioned over the Swedes. In the Bizat, or market-place, which lies on one side of the cattle, a grand fire-work was erected, which extended from one end of the square to the other; which lies in a bottom, and is very spacious. The workmen had run up a large, but flight wooden edifice, full of windows, that faced the cattle, wherein his Czarion Majefty entertained the principal grandees of his court. The foreign ministers were likewise invited to partake of this amusement; and the Danish minister in particular, and the resident of Holland were then present, besides a great number of officers, and substantial merchants from beyond-fee. In order to cast an agreeable shade over this building, as well as to embellish it, there were three rows of large branches, like young trees, planted before it. At two in the afternoon, there was a grand entertainment, and about fix in the evening the fire-work began to be played off, which lasted till nine. It was raised upon three large tables, or wooden theatres, which were very spacious as well as lofty, whereon several figures were fastened to planks, and painted of a brown colour. The plan, or design of this fire-work was perfectly new, and widely different from any thing of the kind I had ever seen before. In the center, on the right-hand, there stood the figure of Time, as big again as the life, with an hour-glass in one hand, and a palm-branch in the other, which was supported by the figure of Fortune, of the same size, standing on the left, with the following inscription in

the Russian language, *Let God therefore be praised!* On the left, towards the building, where his Majefty and his counsellors sat, there was the trunk of a tree planted, with a beaver busily employed in gnawing it, with this inscription, *By perseverance, thou shalt be torn up by the roots.* Upon the third theatre, or table, on the other side, there was another trunk of a tree placed, with a young branch shooting from it, and at a small distance from that, the representation of the sea in a perfect calm, whereon appeared a demi-fun, which, when set fire to, looked very red, with this inscription, *There are now some hopes again.* Between each theatre, there were several little square pieces of fire-works, which continued to burn; and each of them had its particular device. The second of these last-mentioned little pieces, near which I happened to stand, and which was first set on fire by his Czarion Majefty himself, represented a cross, with four several arms; the third a vine-branch; the fourth a bird-cage, each with different inscriptions. As all of them were illuminated after the Dutch manner, there was no great difficulty in the explication of their various designs. In the middle of the square likewise was erected a large Neptune, sitting astride on a dolphin, and on each side of him, a great variety of little fire-works planted on the ground, surrounded with piles, to which cafes, or fuses, were fixed, and had a very fine effect; some of them forming a golden

shower, whilst others threw out a vast number of little glittering stars. Just before these fire-works were played off, several of the Russian clergy, and other persons of distinction, who sat in the building with his Czarion Majefty, removed from their seats, and withdrew to a covered place, in the midst of all this machinery, in order to perform some particular rites and ceremonies. There was a guard of folders over the gate-way of this lodge, which was adorned with a great number of standards. In short, the vast concourse of people which flocked to the market-place on this public occasion

CORNELIUS
LE BRUN.

The Czar's
sister, likewise,
and a great
number of fine
ladies, who
accompanied
her, were
present at this
public
spectacle, and
feasted in a
tower at one
angle of the
square. There
was another
tower, one of
the highest in
this part of the
town, which was
finely
illuminated from
top to bottom.
Each of the
large theatres
before-
mentioned
burned for near
a quarter of an
hour without
intermission. At
the same time
we heard the
report of the
artillery, which
had been
discharged
before the
entertainment.

As soon as the
fire-works were
all over, the
tables were all
covered again.
As for my part, I
withdrew to the
Slabode, and at
about ten, I
heard the report
of at least
ninety guns
more; and
indeed several
after them.
What seemed
very
remarkable, and
something, I
thought, very
extraordinary,
was this, that,
notwithstanding
such a night of
public rejoicing,
and such a
prodigious
throng of all
sorts of people,
there was not
the least
disorder or
confusion: but
this, indeed,
must be
ascribed to the
particular care
that was taken
to have a
sufficient
number of
guards and
soldiers so
properly planted
as to prevent all
manner of
tumult.
Notwithstanding
all this
precaution,
there was,
however, a kind

of skirmish
between a
parcel of noisy
French officers,
and some
swords were
drawn near his
Majesty's lodge;
but to prevent
any farther ill
consequences,
there was a post
put up near the
Dutch church, in
the German
Slabode, to
which were
affixed a sword
and an ax, with
proper labels
thereto, in the
Russian, Latin,
and German
languages,
whereby all
persons
whomever were
strictly enjoined
not to draw a
sword, or fight a
duel upon pain
of death.

Occasional
Remarks on the
preceding
Chapter.

(a) Egypt,
situate in the
north-east part
of Africa,
between thirty
and thirty-six
degrees of east
longitude, and
between twenty-
one and thirty-
one degrees of
north latitude,
bounded by the
Levant, or
Mediterranean

Sea, on the north by the Red Sea, and the Isthmus of Sues, which divides it from Arabia, on the east by Abyssinia, or Ethiopia Superior, on the south by the deserts of Barea and Nubia on the west, being six hundred miles in length from north to south, and from one hundred to two hundred in breadth from east to west; the river Nile, which rises in Abyssinia, running the whole length of it from south to north, and overflowing it annually, beginning to rise in the months of May or June, and is at the height usually in September; from which time the waters decrease till May or June again. There being no other water in the country, (or not more than two springs) they were under a necessity of building their

towns on the
banks of the
Nile, on some
eminences,
natural or
artificial; for
that on the
overflowing of
the river, they
look like so
many islands,
which have no
other
communication
than by boats.
The lower Egypt
is contained in a
triangular
island, made by
the Levant, and
the two chief
branches of the
Nile, which
dividing five
miles below
Cairo, one
branch takes its
course to the
north-west, and
falls into the
Levant at
Rosetta, and the
other north-
east, falling into
the sea at
Damietta, the
ancient
Pelusium; these
mouths being
about an
hundred miles
asunder. This
part of the
country called
the Delta, or
Lower Egypt,
having the
greatest
advantage by
the overflowing
of the Nile, is
much the most

fruitful, but not
the most
healthful, the
mud which
covers it, after
the flood is
gone, fending
up an
unhollowsome
vapour. The
mountains and
sands which
inclose Egypt on
the east and
west would
render the
valley between
excessive hot, if
it were not for
this annual
flood; nor would
the foil produce
much without it;
for the country
is naturally
barren, where
the waters do
not reach, and
they have
seldom any rain,
unless in the
Lower Egypt;
the travellers
relate, that they
have sometimes
seen heavy
showers even in
Upper Egypt.
They have
canals cut quite
through Upper
Egypt to
distribute the
water to their
fields and
gardens, and
preserve it in
the dry season;
and these they
fill with great
ceremony
annually, when

the river rises to
a certain height;
and by these
means, Egypt is
rendered the
most fruitful
country in all
Africa,
supplying
Constantinople,
and other towns
in European
Turkey with
corn, as it did
Rome and Italy
of old. They only
harrow their
grain into the
mud, on the
retiring of the
waters, and, in
March
following,
usually have a
plentiful
harvest. As to
their rice-fields,
THE
TRAVELS OF
fields, they
supply them
with water from
their canals and
reservoirs
constantly, this
grain always
growing in
water. Those
lands that are
not fown yield
good crops of
grafts for their
cattle. No place
in the world,
says Mr. Sandys,
is better
furnished with
grain, flesh,
fish, sugar,
fruits, melons,
roots, and other

garden-stuff,
than the Lower
Egypt; Oranges,
lemons, figs,
dates, almonds,
caffia and
plantains
abound here;
and they have
some grapes,
but not proper
for wine; which
defect is, in
some measure,
supplied by
palm-wine. The
country is
excessively hot
for two or three
months before
the flood rises,
and the
mucketoos, or
gnats, will not
suffer people to
sleep in the
night. The sands
also are
extremely
troublesome,
infusing
themselves into
the clofets,
chefts, and
cabinets, and
even into the
bed-cloaths,
making them as
hot, as if they
had been
warmed with
coals; and these
sands are,
probably, the
occasion of fore
eyes, with which
the natives are
almost
universally
afflicted in
summer. Fevers
and fluxes are

frequent in
Autumn, and the
swelling of the
scrotum; but the
greatest
misfortune is
the plague,
which visits
them, at least,
once in seven
years; but when
the Nile begins
to overflow, 'tis
said the plague,
and all other
diseases, are
abated. It must
not be forgotten
also, that the
hot winds are
very
troublesome in
April and May,
and one
occasion of their
fore-eyes as well
as the sands.

Among the
curiosities of
Egypt, the
pyramids are
the most
considerable;
they are built of
stone, but
whom, or when,
no one knows;
the base of the
largest taking
up ten acres of
ground, and
running up to
seven hundred
feet
perpendicular
height; eye-
witnesses,
however,
frequently differ
an hundred feet
as to that

article; and indeed, the sands are driven up so high on the sides, that it is impracticable to take the height exactly. The mummy pits are another curiosity, which, with the pyramids, are on the west-side of the river, opposite to Cairo; in these pits have been thousands of imbalanced bodies interred, which have continued three or four thousand years at least; the coffins are set upright, in niches in the walls, and never laid at length.

Egypt is generally held to be subject to the Grand Signior, and so it is in part; but his authority is extremely limited by the Egyptian Princes, who are all of them absolute in their respective territories; and assemble at Cairo, in a kind of parliament, or great council, which submits to the Grand

Signior's Baffa,
or Vice-roy, no
farther than
they fee fit, and
sometimes
depose him, and
demand another
of the Grand
Signior, who is
more acceptable
to them;
however, they
suffer the Grand
Signior to
collect a
revenue in their
several districts,
but by no means
equal to what
the country is
able to pay; and
if more be
demanded; a
revolt. They
come to Cairo
with such
bodies of troops
as protect them
against the
arbitrary
administration
of the Baffa, and
the only way he
has to manage
them, is by
dividing them
into parties, and
siding with that
party which is
most devoted to
the Grand
Signior. These
Egyptian
Princes are not
natives of the
country, neither
are they ever
succeeded by
their children in
their respective
governments,
but by some

slave, whom
they appoint
their successor;
and these are
usually slaves,
purchased in
Georgia, or
Circaffia. This is
their
constitution, as
was that of the
ancient
Mamlukes; no
man could be a
Sovereign, who
had not been a
slave, and
purchased in
some foreign
country; but out
of these we
must except
some Chiecks,
or Arab Chiefs,
who are
proprietors of
villages, or
small districts in
the country;
these are
succeeded by
their children,
on paying a fine,
or small rent, to
the government.
The religion of
the governors of
the country is
Mahometan; but
the Copts, the
poverty of the
ancient
Egyptians, the
Greeks and
Latins are
Christians, but
of different
sects; and there
are besides a
great number of
Jews at Cairo,
and in the great

towns, where
any thing is to
be got.

(b) Nile, the
great river of
Egypt in Africa,
has its source in
Abyssinia, or
the Upper
Ethiopia, in
twelve degrees
of north
latitude. It runs
generally from
south to north,
thro' Abyssinia
into Egypt, and
then continues
its course north
in one stream,
till it comes
below Cairo to
the Delta, where
it divides; one
branch
discharging
itself into the
Mediterranean
at Damietta, and
the other an
hundred miles
to the westward
of it at Rosetta.
In the upper
part of the
stream, we have
been told, that
there are
dreadful
cataracts,
where the water
falls in sheets
from high
precipices; but
later travellers
of credit of our
own nation
assure us, that
there are no
such cataracts,
only some rocks,

which indeed
hinder
navigation; but
the water does
not fall in sheets
from high hills
or precipices, as
was currently
reported. It
runs, 'tis
observed, thro'
the hilly country
of Upper Egypt,
with greater
rapidity than it
does thro' the
Delta, or Lower
Egypt, where
the country is
level; which is
the cause of many
other rivers.

There are great
rejoicings every
year, when the
Nile rises to a
certain height,
their #
CORNELIUS LE
BRUN.

their future
harvest
depending on it.
The just height
of the
inundation,
according to
Pliny, is sixteen
cubits; when it
arises but to
twelve or
thirteen, a
famine is
expected, and
when it exceeds
sixteen, there is
danger
apprehended;
the moderns do
not exactly
agree with the

antients about
the height of the
inundation; but
there is no great
difference in
their accounts.
The river begins
usually to arise
in May or June;
and there
stands a pillar
on an island
opposite to Old
Cairo, divided
into Picks, a
measure of
about two feet,
to observe how
much it rises;
and when it is
high enough,
the Khalis, or
great canal is
cut, from
whence it is
conveyed into
other reservoirs
and cisterns, to
be distributed to
their fields and
gardens as they
want it. As to
the Delta, or
Lower Egypt,
that is all
overflowed; this
needs no Art to
carry it into
their fields. This
part of the
country is
always fowed
with rice
therefore, which
grows in water.
Their towns,
standing on
little eminences,
during the flood
appear like so
many little
islands. This

overflowing of
the Nile is
occasioned by
the periodical
rains, which
annually fall
within the
tropics, where
the source of
the Nile is; and
that which
makes the flood
the greater is,
that Ethiopia, or
Abyssinia,
where it rises, is
full of high
mountains, from
whence the
waters flow in
torrents, and
swell the river
beyond its usual
bounds.

(d) Alexandria,
east longitude
31. 15. latitude
30. 40. a great
city and port-
town of the
Lower Egypt, in
Africa, situate
fourteen miles
west of the most
westerly branch
of the river Nile,
and one
hundred and
twenty miles
north-west of
the city of
Grand Cairo.
The old town
was about seven
miles in
circumference,
built by
Alexander the
Great, and still
called Scandia
by the Turks;

but, except one
long street,
which faces the
harbour, it is
only a heap of
ruins at this
day; there is
little left
standing but
part of the
walls, which
have great
square towers,
at the distance
of two hundred
paces, and a
little tower
between them;
every one of the
great towers
could contain
two hundred
soldiers, and
had a cistern in
it, to which the
water of the
Nile was
conveyed; and
the cisterns still
serve to receive
the rain-water,
and what is
brought them
from the Nile;
for Alexandria
stands in a
barren, desert
country, where
there are
neither springs
nor rivers, tho'
it was once the
capital of Egypt,
and had the
greatest trade
of any town in
the world, when
the spices and
treasures of the
East-Indies
were brought
hither; and from

hence
distributed all
over Europe;
which was, in a
great measure,
lost, when the
Portuguese
found the way
to the East-
Indies, round
Africa, about
the year 1400;
however, it has
still a good
foreign trade.
The land, on
which the town
stands is so low,
that the seamen
can hardly
discern it till
they are very
near, which was
the occasion of
erecting the
celebrated
Pharos, or high
watch-tower
here, so often
mentioned in
history. The
gates of the
town are still
composed of
Thebaic and
Granite marble;
but the finest
piece of
antiquity left, is
Pompey's Pillar,
being one entire
piece of Granite
marble, seventy
feet high, and
twenty-five in
circumference.
Alexandria, and
the rest of
Egypt is subject
to the Grand
Signior, who
seems, however,

to have a limited
authority, being
often obliged to
submit the
administration
of the
government to

(c) Grand Cairo,
east longitude
32. latitude 30.
the capital of
Egypt, in Africa,
is situate in a
plain, at the foot
of a mountain,
two miles east
of the bank of
the river Nile,
and an hundred
miles south of
the mouth of
that river. The
town is ten
miles in
circumference,
and may contain
a million of
inhabitants, and
some have
computed them
at five millions,
which must be a
mistake, tho' it
is certain they
are very
numerous,
thirty or forty
people
frequently
lodging in one
house. Their
private
buildings make
a mean
appearance on
the outside, but
are often very
richly furnished
and adorned
within; and their
chief mosques,

or temples, are
very
magnificent.
The castle
stands on the
top of a hill on
the fourth-side
of the city, and
is three miles
round, of great
antiquity, but
hardly so
ancient as the
natives give out,
who imagine it
was built by the
Patriarch
Joseph, and
threw a well,
near the top of
it, that is little
less than three
hundred feet
deep, and is the
only well almost
in all the
country. There
is a grand
Bazar, or
market-place, in
the middle of
the city; but the
streets are
generally
narrow, except
the Khalis, or
grand canal,
which runs
through the
middle of it
from one end to
the other, into
which they let
the water of the
river Nile, when
it rises to a
certain height;
and from this
canal the water
is let into
others, and
distributed to

the adjacent
fields and
gardens. The
Khalis remains
dry one half of
the year, and
appears a
spacious street.
The plague
usually visits
Cairo once in
three or four
years, and is
observed to
decrease as the
waters of the
Nile rise. Either
on the site of
this city, or near
it, it is
supposed, that
the ancient
Egyptian
Babylon stood.
The English and
other Europeans
have their
consuls and
factors here at
this day, for the
protection and
management of
the Turkey
trade on that
side. # THE
TRAVELS OF
to the humours
of the petty
Princes of
Egypt.

(e)
Alexandretta,
otherwise called
Scanderoon,
east longitude
37. latitude 36.
15. a port-town
of Asiatic
Turkey, situate
on the coast of
the leffer Afa,

fifty miles north-east of the Island of Cyprus. It is the port-town to Aleppo, with which the English, and other European merchants have a considerable trade.

(f) Livonia, anciently a province of Poland, but since of Sweden, and now of Russia, is bounded by the gulph of Finland on the north, by Ingria and Great Novogorod on the north, by Lithuania and Courland on the south, and by the Baltic, or Livonian Sea, on the west, being about one hundred and sixty miles long, from north to south, and an hundred and twenty broad, and is usually subdivided into two parts; that on the north called Eastonia, or Eastland, and that on the south Lettland, or Letticia; the chief towns whereof are Narva, Revel

and Riga, all of
them good
harbours. It is a
country, fruitful
in corn, with
which it
supplies
Sweden,
Germany, and
many other
countries. And
as it is
extremely well
situated for a
foreign trade,
and abounds
with
commodious
harbours, it has
been contended
for many
hundred years,
by the
neighbouring
nations, and
sometimes
possessed by
one, and
sometimes by
others; so that
the inhabitants
are a mixture of
Germans,
Danes, Poles,
Swedes, and
Russians.
Terrible were
the calamities
which this
country suffered
in the beginning
of this century;
for whilst the
Russians and
Swedes were
contending for
the dominion of
it, the Czar
Peter the Great,
doubting
whether he

should be able
to maintain the
possession of
that part of the
country which
he had taken
from the
Swedes,
permitted the
Calmucs, and
other Tartars of
his army, to
commit unheard
of barbarities.
And at length,
when the Czar
had made an
entire conquest
of the country,
observing the
natives to be
more inclined to
their old
masters the
Swedes than to
Russia, he
compelled the
natives to
abandon their
country, and
drove
multitudes of
them in chains
as far as the
confines of the
Caspian Sea;
though the
Czarina
Catherine
prevailed on the
Czar afterwards
to recall them,
she being a
native of this
country; but
most of them
perished before
that edict was
published. The
Livonians also
were afflicted by
plague and

famine, and
their country
miserably
harraffed and
laid waste
before they
were driven
from it, and
other Russian
nations being
introduced here,
the Czarina now
remains in the
quiet possession
of all Livonia.

(g) Jordan, a
river of Asiatic
Turkey, in the
province of
Judea, or
Palestine, rising
in Mount
Libanus, in the
north, runs
fourth quite
through the
country a
course of about
one hundred
and fifty miles,
forming two
lakes; the first,
which is almost
dry in summer,
called the Sea of
Galilee, and the
Lake of
Tiberias, and
sometimes the
Lake of
Tiberias, being
about twelve
miles long, and
eight broad; the
other called the
Dead, or Salt
Sea, where
Sodom and
Gomorrah flood;
is about twenty
miles long, and

sixteen broad;
but the ordinary
channel of the
river Jordan is
not above
twenty yards
broad at
present, and
discharges itself
into the lake,
called the Dead
Sea.

C H A P. VI.

A very rigorous Execution at Moscow; an Account of the magnificent Nuptials of one of his Czarain Majesty's particular Favourites. The Author has the Honour to be admitted into the Presence of the Empress, his Majesties Brother's Widow.

On the nineteenth of this month there was a most fever and shocking execution at (a) Moscow: A woman who had murdered her husband had sentence passed upon her to be buried alive in the ground up to the shoulders. I had the curiosity to take a view of her under those deplorable circumstances, and to all outward appearance, her countenance was not changed. A white linnen cloth had # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

had been at first tied round about her head and neck; but she procured it to be taken off, because it was bound so tight that it almost choked her. There were three or four soldiers ordered to attend her, and permit no manner of festiveness to be given her, in order to prolong her life.

The populace, however, were not prevented from throwing into her grave what number of Koupukkes, or little pieces of money they thought proper to bestow upon her; for which acts of indulgence she returned her thanks by a submissive nod with her head. The small money that is thus collected is for the most part expended in little tapers, which are lighted up in commemoration of such particular fairs as the delinquent then invokes, and set in a coffin. It is very probable, that the guards, appointed to attend on these unhappy wretches, secure some part of these benefactions, and apply it privately towards their own refreshment, for many of them live in this shocking condition for some considerable time. This woman, however, died in two days after I first saw her. On the very same day there was a man likewise buried alive; but for what crime in particular I cannot determine. In the prosecution of this account of mine, I shall

expatiate more largely on the manner of their administering justice in this country; but shall drop that topic for the present, that I may proceed in my narrative with respect to order of time.

On the twenty-sixth of this instant was solemnized, with great pomp and magnificence, the nuptials of a peculiar favourite of the Czar, one, by name, Fielat Prienewitz Soukíe, a Moscovite Nobleman, with the Knezna, or Princess Mary Swrjovena Schorkofskaia, fitter of the Knez Eedder Swerwitz Schorkofskaia, who was as great a favourite with the Czar as the bridegroom. To the celebration of these nuptials, this Prince invited the principal Lords and Ladies of the court, several of the foreign ministers, and a great number of such merchants and their wives as were not natives. All the guests in general had particular orders

for being drest in the ancient mode observed in that country, and more or less richly, according to a certain regulation for that purpose prescribed. This wedding was kept in the Slabode of the Germans, at the Hotel of General Le Force, who was then lately deceased. It is a spacious edifice, and erected in the Italian taste. You go up to it by a flight of steps both to the right and left, on account of its extent; and when you are in, the apartments are all very grand and magnificent. There was a very fine Salon likewise, which was hung with rich tapestry, and in which the ceremony was performed. In one part, were two large leopards to be seen, with collars round their necks; and with their fore-paws extended on an escutcheon all of solid silver. In another, the representation of Atlas, with a large silver globe upon his shoulders; besides several large fine wrought vases, and other pieces of silver and gold plate; a considerable part whereof was brought from the Royal Treasury on this joyful occasion. The place appointed for the intended cavalcade to meet at was in the city, at but a small distance from the castle, in two grand buildings, which stood one directly against the other. The Grand Duke himself, as well as the guests that had received invitations, reported early in the morning to these two commodious places for their reception; that is to say, the gentlemen repaired to the one, and the ladies to the other: From thence they began to move about ten o'clock; in order to proceed in form to the castle, in the center whereof I had planted myself, that I might be a spectator of this grand cavalcade, which, as the weather was exceeding fine, made a much better appearance than otherwise it would have done. In the first place, the Czar in person appeared, mounted on a pampered, black courser, drest in a most magnificent cloth of gold; his mantle, or robe, which was thrown over it, was embellished with divers figures of variegated colours, and on his head, he wore a large scarlet fur-cap, not unlike a Turkish turbet. His horse was richly caparisoned with a fine gold housings, having on # THE TRAVELS OF

On each of his fore-legs, a silver hoop of about four inches at least in breadth. The majestic air of this grand Prince, who appears to a great advantage on horse-back, contributed greatly to the pomp and grandeur of the shew, which, to speak ingenuously, was perfectly Royal. On the left hand of his Majesty rode Prince Alexander Danielewitz de Menzikof, drest in as rich a cloth as the Czar, and on a horse that was caparisoned much after the same manner as his master's. The principal Knezes, or Princes, followed two and two, on horseback, according to their rank, and all drest much alike, amounting in the whole to about forty-eight or fifty. His Czarion Majesty being thus pompously accompanied to the cattle, he halted there, till the rest of the company were all come up; but in the mean time, he embraced every opportunity of shewing the graces of his fine horse, by making him prance and curvet at pleasure. This was done near the gate of the Ewaritz, or the court, where were his own apartments, and where over-head were feated the Princes his sister, the Emprefs, widow of the late Czar, and her three daughters, all feated, and exposed to public view. As he went under this gate, the Princes paid their compliments to him in the most respectful manner, which he returned with as good a grace. When these noblemen were thus passed through, two and two as before-mentioned; there advanced a great number of lights, surrounded by a crowd of valets; and after them an hundred and twenty of the principal courtiers, two and two, and as richly drest almost as the former. Then came the Goofs, or Custom-house officers, our Dutch resident, and the rest of the foreign merchants, whose cloaths and caps were quite different from any that had gone before them. They had all yellow-boots on, indeed, but made no figure or appearance in the left equal to the rest. Of these there were only about four and thirty, insomuch that the cavalcade might properly be laid to consist of above two hundred persons, all drest in the genteel manner. Several of their horses had silver bits; and others had silver chains about two fingers in breadth, and of a considerable thickness, which hanging from the horse's head to the bridle, and being fastened to the pommel of the saddle, made a very agreeable jingle. Some of their bits, indeed, were perfectly flat, and made only of block-tin. After the three first of which were the three German doctors, and in the two last, the two most ancient of our Dutch merchants. These were followed by a grand car, or chariot, covered over with scarlet cloth, and intended for the two Emprefs. This is the title, or appellation, which is given by the Russians to those whom the Czar is pleased to nominate and appoint ladies of state in this, or any other public ceremony of the like nature. The first of these ladies, who was the comfort of the Knez Fudder Scuferwitz Romadanofki, who acts as Viceroy at Moscow in the Czar's absence, happened to be indisposed, and could not therefore possibly be present; so that the other lady, who was the comfort of Ivanawitz Boeterlieu, was obliged to appear alone. She had on her head a small, white, high-crowned felt-hat, with a narrow brim, with two maids of honour, who were feated over-against her, in this car, or chariot, which was drawn

by twelve white horses, and surrounded by servants in scarlet liveries. This car was followed by twenty-five others, but all of them were much smaller, and each drawn by two horses only, tho' their covering, indeed, was of the same cloth; in one of which was the bride, and the Russian ladies in the rest. Amongst these vehicles, there was a little despicable fledge, fastened to the tail of as contemptible an horse, and in it was feated a little fellow of a very mean aspect, who made as bad an appearance to the full as his carriage, and drest like a Jew. I imagined he was thus made a public spectacle of for some crime he had committed; and so upon enquiry I found that it was intended to expose and punish him, he being a Jew by extraction, but a proflyte it seemed to the Christian faith. After these came seven # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

seven other fledge, filled with Dutch ladies, and these were followed by a few empty chariots, which closed the procession. In this order, they all went through the cattle, and from thence through one part of the city, as far as the church of Bogojaftenja, that is, of the Annunciation, where the nuptials were solemnized in the presence of his Czarion Majesty, and a numerous concourse of other illustrious personages belonging to the court. Having gratified my curiosity thus far, I returned to my lodgings; and after that, I pitched upon as commodious a feat as I could get in the Slabode, in order to see the company take their tour to the place where the grand entertainment was to be when church was over. They did not come till three in the afternoon; being about five hundred in number, both sexes included. However, the gentlemen went into one apartment, and the ladies into another, where there could be no interview. The Emprefs Dowager, the Czar's sister, and her three daughters sat at one table, accompanied with some of the court ladies; and the bride at another, with some of her particular female friends; and the who perfoned the Emprefs fat alone, and was raised above the rest. The other ladies, whether Ruffian, or foreign wives, were in another apartment; but the music was so commodiously placed, as to be heard in all places alike. When the entertainment was over, which was very grand and magnificent, and lasted several hours, the bride and bridegroom were conducted to the place, where the nuptials were proposed to be consummated; which was at a small edifice, erected near the river Yufka, for that particular purpose; where the bed that was prepared for their reception, made but a very mean appearance. Tho' most of the company dispersed before twelve o'clock; yet a great part of them tarried in the Slabode, in houses prepared for their reception, by the Czar's express command, in order that the Ruffians might with greater ease meet again the day following at the same place; and from thence proceed to the Hotel of

Major General Menefius, whose widow was then living. The lady, who perfonated the Emprefs, went thither in the night time; but the bride did not go till after break of day. The Czar himself set out about ten that morning, without the attendance of any

foreigners; and after he had been there about an hour, he proceeded in good order to visit Mr. Lups, who waited for him at the door, accompanied by several Dutch merchants. He tarried there some little time, with his retinue, but would not dismount, notwithstanding he was plentifully regaled with the best of liquors.

There was one occurrence, which I cannot forbear mentioning, as it created the company abundance of diversion. The bridegroom was mounted upon a very fine stone-horse; and one of his companions on as fine a mare; both of them snuffed the wind, and both were prepared for action. Tho' the bridegroom's horse did not fail to cover his friend's mare; yet the Lord, by his dexterity and address, got clear, without any misfortune; whilst the bridegroom kept the saddle during the whole amorous operation; which created laughter enough, and several witty remarks amongst the spectators. They both longed to be at the sport before they came out of the stable; but their wishes there were disappointed. Then the Czarion Prince appeared on horseback, accompanied by several young noblemen about the same age as himself, but a groom went before, and led his horse by the bride. He was followed by the bride's chariot, and hers by the grand car, with twelve white horses, in which was the lady who perfonated the Emprefs, and that by a great number of others full of Ruffian ladies. When they came to the Palace, where the nuptials were solemnized, and where I took care to be in time by going another way, his Majesty went in first; and after him the bride; who went into another set of apartments on the left-hand, which formerly was the residence of General Le Fort. The grand car flopt to make room; it being very troublesome to proceed as the cover was so lofty; and im- # THE TRAVELS OF

impossible to turn as the passage was so narrow. During this stop, the Czarion Prince dismounted, and stood on one side of the chariot, and there continued till it was actually got in, which was attended with some difficulty; for it stuck hard at the top. After that, the young Prince crossed the Palace-yard; and the Empress alighting from her car, went up some steps on the right-hand. The foreigners and their wives reformed thither likewise, and tarried there much in the same manner as they had done the night before. On the third day, being the last, they determined to appear in the German dress, with which every body complied, except only a few Russian ladies. And they waited once more on the new-married pair; but separately. The gentlemen and the ladies sat at table together, as we do in Holland; and after the entertainment was over, there were several comic dances, which gave entire satisfaction both to his Majesty, and all the guests. And thus concluded this grand solemnity, a particular detail whereof I imagined, would be acceptable to my readers, as it was so singular, and so perfectly Royal.

Feb. 2.

On the second of February, one part of the Swedish prisoners before-mentioned were brought hither in fledges.

Feb. 4.

On the fourth, a messenger came to me, with orders for my waiting on the Czar, who was at that time in the palace of his grand favourite Prince Menzickoff. This palace is called Semenoffskies, the name of a petty village, at the distance of about a mile and an half from the Slobode; where I found his Majesty very busy in trying some fire-engines, which were lately arrived from Holland: that Prince perceiving that I was there, called me to him. Well! says he, Sir, you have seen, undoubtedly, in your travels, abundance of strange things; and yet I dare venture to assert, that you never saw a greater curiosity, than that which we intend to shew you. He then ordered a poor Russian, who had instructions to attend for that purpose, to open his cloaths. I shuddered at the very sight. He had

an excrescence about a hand's length below his navel, which was about four inches in substance, through which unnatural passage he voided his daily food; and in this deplorable condition (it seems) he had lived for nine years successfully. This calamitous case proceeded first from a cut with a knife, which had irritated the part to that degree about the natural passage, that no relief could possibly be procured. I confessed ingenuously, that I had never seen so extraordinary a case before; but that I very well knew a certain person, who brought up his daily food, and discharged it at his mouth: at which relation he seemed almost equally surprised. After this discourse, he ordered the poor wretch's excrescence to be squeezed, that I might entertain a more adequate idea of his case, and whatever came out appeared but half digested. This miserable object was about five and thirty years of age. After I had had the honour to converse with his Czarion Majesty for about two hours, and had been plentifully regaled with the best of liquors, he left me, and Prince Alexander immediately came up to me. He informed me, that his Majesty, having heard I had practised for some time the art of painting, was very desirous that I should draw the portraits of the three young Princeffes, the daughters of the late Czar Joan Alexowitz, his brother, who had reigned jointly with him to the day of his decease, which happened on the twenty-ninth of January 1696, and intimated, at the same time, that it was principally for that purpose, that I had been invited to their court. You may imagine, I very readily accepted of the honour done me; and I attended this young nobleman accordingly, who conducted me directly to the Empress, the mother of those young Princeffes, who was then at one of the Czar's pleasure-houses, called Ifmeilhoff, most delightfully situated, about a league's distance from Moscow, in order that I might take an uninterrupted view of them before I

entered upon my intended undertaking. On my first approach to the Empress, she asked whether I was conversant with the Russian language; to

The author is defined to draw the portraits of the three Princeffes.

Accepts of the honour done him.

Appears before the Empress. # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

to which the young Prince immediately answered for me, that I was not: whereupon, they had a short discourse between themselves. After that, the Empress filled out a small cup of brandy, which she presented to the Prince, who, when he had emptied it, delivered it to one of the maids of honour then in waiting; and the lady delivering it again to that Princefs, she filled it a second time, and presented it to me with her own hand; she gave the Prince and my self likewise a glass of wine; and the fame compliment was made us by the three young ladies. After this refreshment, a large glass of beer was filled out, which the Empress again presented to Prince Alexander, who, after having taken only a sip, delivered it to the fame maid of honour as before; the like ceremony was observed in relation to my self; and I just tasted it only in the same manner; for in this court, it would be looked upon as the grossest act of ill manners, to empty the last glass of beer that is offered. I then conversed with Prince Alexander for some time, in my own native language (as he talks Dutch pretty fluently) on the art of painting. And when we took our leave, the Empress herself, as well as the young Princefs, offered us their right-hands to kifs, which is one of the highest honours that can be conferred on a stranger in this country. Some days after this interview, there was a grand nuptial festival going forwards at Prince Menzikoff's Palace, at which the Czar himself, and the Prince, his uncle, were personally present, with a numerous train of others belonging to the court of both sexes. Several English and Dutch merchants likewise, with their respective ladies, attended these nuptials, to which they had been properly invited. The table, which was made in the form of a horse-shoe, was spread in the Grand Salon; and the Czar and the Russian noblemen sat on one side, and the ladies on the other. The young Czarion Prince, Prince Alexander, and the English and Dutch merchants sat at a round table, in the center of the hall, to which I had the honour of being admitted. When the entertainment, which was a very elegant and magnificent one, was over, there were several dancers, who performed after the Polish manner. On the left-hand, were feasted all the musicians, who, to do them justice, performed exceedingly well.

Prince Alexander went away before it was dark, in order to spend some few days in the country, where he had some private avocations. On the eleventh instant, Mr. Panwel Heins, the Danish Envoy, set out directly for his own court, with an intention,

however, to return in the spring, but left his lady behind him at Moscow. On the fifth of March, then next following, I had the honour of dining with his Majesty at Probroyenkfo, the usual residence of that Monarch. After dinner he took me with him to the Empress's Palace, in order to see the three young Princefs's pictures, which had been begun for some time, and he entertained her a while on the topic of my travels. On the eleventh, his Majesty went, accompanied by several noblemen belonging to the court, to pay Mr. Brants a visit, where he saw several pictures which I had drawn at (b) Archangel, and with which he seemed highly pleased. After a variety of conversation on different topics, his Majesty made mention of some particular pieces of cannon, which were generally thought to have the arms of Genoa wrought upon them; which, like those of Venice, are a Lion with one of his paws upon a book. And as he was not perfectly satisfied, whether this general conjecture was really matter of fact, he was determined to take a view of them, in order to gratify his curiosity in that particular, and appointed the Prince's palace for the place of inspection. His Majesty accordingly was very punctual to his time; and Prince Alexander, in the name of his Majesty, made a present of a gold medal to each of the inspectors, who, for the most part, were foreign merchants, to whose judgment he paid a great regard. On this medal his Majesty was represented with a crown of laurel on his head, with this following inscription round it, but in the Russian language, *Peter Alexowitz, Great Czar.* #
THE TRAVELS OF

Czar of all Russia. On the reverse were two eagles, with the day and year, viz. the first of February 1702.

After a very magnificent entertainment at this place, the company returned to Probroyenko, which was looked upon as no better than the residence of a captain, his Majesty at that time having never assumed a higher title. This palace is not above one league from Moscow, and but at a small distance from that belonging to Prince Menzikoff. It is the arsenal likewise of the regiment of his Majesty's life-guards. It was here that we took our survey of the three cannon just before-mentioned, on each of which there was a lion visible enough, tho' worn down, indeed, pretty much. They were remarkably short, and not much unlike our mortar-pieces: but how they should have fallen into the hands of the Russians, is such a mystery to me, that I am perfectly at a loss, I confess, how to account for it.

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

1. Moscow, see p. 23. n. c.

CHAP. VII.

Sumptuous Entertainments made by his Czarion Majesty in the Country. Several Particulars relating to the Empress. His Majesty takes his Diversion on the River (a) Moskva. The Manner of solemnizing the Festival of Easter amongst the Russians. His Majesty's Departure for (b) Archangel.

WHILST we were taking our survey of the guns last-mentioned, all things were duly prepared for our going to a village, which appertained to Prince Alexander, called Alexcejevskie, at but a small distance from Lemuenevskie, which is about twelve werfts from Moscow, where that nobleman has a very magnificent country seat, situate on the river Youfa. 'Tis a most delightful place, where there are a great variety of canals profusely stocked with all sorts of the choicest fish. Nothing, however, struck my fancy more agreeably than the stables there, which are all very spacious, built with timber, as well as the feat itself, and above fifty of the finest horses I ever saw contained in them. On our arrival, we found, that there were several German ladies sent thither before-hand by his Majesty's express orders, with intent to make the proper provisions for a future elegant entertainment. There were ten of us in all; our resident, three English, and the rest Dutch, exclusive of about thirteen or fourteen Russian noblemen, and ladies, amongst whom was Prince Alexander's sister. We were received there in the most courteous manner, and very elegantly entertained at supper with a profusion of all sorts of flesh and fish.

There were two tables spread in a spacious salon, or hall; one of which was a very long one, at which sat the Czar, and several of his noblemen on one side, and the ladies facing them. The other was a round table, placed in the middle of the hall, whereat were feasted, the English guests, and the greater part of the German, or rather Dutch merchants. As soon as supper was over, the Russians withdrew to their respective apartments: the noblemen on one side, and the ladies on the other: the foreigners, however, tarried some considerable time longer in the hall. The day following there was a much more magnificent # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

nificent entertainment, accompanied with a great variety of instrumental music; such as violins, bassoons, trumpets, hautboys, flutes, &c. After which, there were several dances in the Polish manner. And as his Czarian Majesty happened to be in a perfect good humour, he encouraged the company to be as jovial and free as possible; neither did he forget to supply them with a profusion of the best liquors. When night came on, every one withdrew to

their separate apartments, in order to be ready for the next day's entertainment, which was spent much after the same manner as the preceding, in a variety of innocent amusements, as no one was visibly overcome with liquor, notwithstanding there was plenty; then all broke up, and went to their respective abodes with the utmost decency and decorum.

I then procured leave to have the pictures of the young Princesses, which I had painted in full length, returned to my apartments, in order that I might retouch them, as they were not absolutely finished; and the Czar himself preferr'd me to dispatch them as soon as possible, he having intentions to send them to another place. I obeyed his Majesty's commands, with the utmost expedition, and made the drapery according to the German taste, when they appear in public; but as to their heads, which were left entirely to my own discretion, I thought proper to dress them after the manner of the ancients.

I shall now proceed to give you a short description of the Empress herself, called Parafkowna Feodorofna. This Princess was not then above thirty years of age; she was somewhat corpulent, it is true; but as she was moderately tall, the gracefulness of her person was not in the least diminished by her bulk. In short, we may affect, without flattery, that she was a very handsome lady, perfectly genteel, and graceful; and that her deportment was exceedingly courteous and engaging; and we must add, that the Czar had a peculiar regard for her. The young Czarían Prince Alexey Petrovitz, used frequently to visit her, and

the Princesses, her daughters, the eldest of whom, named Catharine Iwanoffna, was at that time but about twelve years of age; the second, called Anne Iwanoffna, no more than ten; and the youngest, whose name was Parafkowya Iwanoffna, but eight. All three, however, were very graceful young ladies. The first and last very agreeable brunettes; the hair of the second of a silver colour, and her complexion very fair. The youngest, indeed, seemed the most frightfully, but the demeanour of them all three was perfectly affable and courteous. It would be a difficult task for me to enumerate the many favours that were conferred upon me whilst I was employed in drawing their several portraits. In the morning I was plentifully supplied with all sorts of liquors, and a variety of other refreshments. I often likewise had the honour of dining with them; and notwithstanding it was in the middle of Lent, we had at table as great a profusion of flesh as fish; which somewhat surprised me. In the day-time I was always furnished with wine and beer in plenty; and, indeed, 'tis my opinion, that no court, especially such a court as this, was ever more indulgent to any one private person whomever than myself; and I hope I shall retain a grateful sense of all their civilities to my dying day. Encouraged by all these testimonies of their respect for me, I was so presumptuous as to present a book of my travels, which I had taken care to be very neatly bound for that purpose, to his Czarían

Majesty, who was then at the palace of Probrosenko, flattering myself, at the same time, that it would meet with a very favourable reception; neither was I in the least disappointed in my most sanguine expectations.

On the twenty-ninth of March 1702, his Czarian Majesty went in a boat down the river Moskva, against tide, three or four werfts beyond the bridge, and paft by the cattle; he then came up again with the tide, at a prodigious rate, three or four werfts on this side of the same bridge, to which he afterwards returned, and where Prince Alexander was waiting, # THE TRAVELS OF

waiting, accompanied by several English and Dutch merchants for his arrival, whom, after his landing, he again entertained with a profusion of flesh as well as fish, notwithstanding it was Lent, and in the Passion-Week. Every one was left to his own option; but as for himself and his retinue, they never tasted the fish.

The month of April commenced with such an extraordinary thaw, that in a short compass of time, there was not a block of ice to be seen; and upon this sudden and unexpected alteration, the river swelled to such a prodigious height, that the like accident had never happened before in the memory of the oldest person then living. The mills that flood on the banks of the river Youfa were greatly damaged; and the Low-lands behind the houses were laid under water from the adjacent ponds. The high-roads and lanes were likewise all overflowed; that, however, is no uncommon occurrence in the spring, when the snow begins to melt. The Slabode belonging to the Germans was in such a wet, and nasty condition, that the horses went up to their very bellies in mud and dirt; but the Czar, having soon information of it, gave orders directly for the cleansing it, and turning off the current of such filth another way.

On the fifth day of this month, about fix in the morning, a fire broke out in the apartments of a Dutch merchant, who resided in the Slabode; to which the Czar immediately resorted, in order to be as affiant as possible, and give the proper directions, as 'tis his constant practice on such urgent occasions. There is a watch set, every hour in the night, who never fail, on any such emergency, to give the alarm.

On the same day, the Russians solemnized the festival of Easter, with all the demonstrations of public joy imaginable; because, not only the wished for time of our Saviour's Resurrection was come, but because their Lent was then over. The bells never ceased from ringing all the night before, and the two subsequent days. At that time they begin to distribute their Easter-eggs amongst their friends, which holds for about a fortnight; and this custom is observed by the grandees and other substantial families, as well as by those of the lower class; by the old as well as the young; who make formal presents of them one to another: and, in short,

there is not a shop in the city without numbers of them coloured and boiled. Tho' the major part of them, indeed, are painted with a plum-blue; yet there are several done neatly enough in green and white; there are some painted more accurately than ordinary, and for which they demand two or three rixdollars. Some of them, in a word, are embellished with the following inscription in capitals, CHRISTOS WOS CHREST? That is to say, IS CHRIST RISEN? Some persons of distinction will have a considerable number of these ready in their houses, in order to make presents of them to their visitors; and when they deliver them, they kiss them with their lips, saying as above, CHRISTOS WOS CHREST? To which the person who receives them replies; WOISTINE WOS CHREST, that is, YEA VERILY HE IS RISEN. Gentlemen carry them in their pockets, and give them to such friends as they happen to meet with in the streets, as we have before-mentioned; and nobody, of what sex or station soever, will refuse to accept the offer. It is customary likewise for servants to present them to their masters; who, in return, for the general, give them what they call a Praefnik. I had about thirteen or fourteen of them made me a present of, very neatly coloured by some of their women. In times past, these presents were deemed matters of a serious concern; but these, as well as many other things, have of late years been greatly altered. The Russian quality, and foreign merchants, in times past, were wont to present their congratulatory eggs to his Czarion Majesty himself, and have received others in return; but that custom is at present laid aside.

On the ninth of April 1702, the Czar diverted himself once more on the river Mofka. His Czarion Majesty's watermen, who # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

who had the management of his barge, and those belonging to the barge of the Princefs, his fifter, were dreft in white fhirts (after the Dutch fafhion) all laced down before; each of the foreign merchants had orders the night before to provide themselves with two watermen. Thefe barges, or boats, had each of them two mafts, that in cafe the wind fhould favour them they might fail without rowing. The company fell down the river from the country feat of the General Velt Marshal Bories Petrowitz Czeremetoff, which is fitate on this river, at fome fmall diftance from Moscow, and directly over-againft his Czarian Majefty's fine houfe, called Worobjowegoro. That General had the very day before the honour of entertaining his Majefty and all his train at that very houfe; which train confifted of the Czarian Prince, the Princefs, his Majefty's fifter, who was accompanied by three or four Ruffian ladies, a confiderable number of Lords and officers of his Majefty's houfhould, our refident, fveral foreign merchants, and about fifteen or fixteen German ladies. All the barges, or boats, which amounted to about forty in all, appeared before this nobleman's feat, each of them furnifhed with ten or twelve oars. When his Czarian Majefty, with all his train, were embarked, they failed down the river, with great rapidity, beyond the bridge, and

made the beft of their way to Kolomnenfko, a country palace belonging to his Majefty, about twenty werfts from Moscow by water, though very little more than feven by land. There they went on fhone by feven in the evening, and were entertained in a very royal manner. The next day they were entertained as magnificently as before, but with the additional amufement of a grand concert. About three in the afternoon, they returned to the city; fome in coaches, fome in chariots, and others on horfback. The next day, Mr. Brandts entertained the Czar, who was attended by the refident of Holland, and fveral Englifh and Dutch merchants. They fpent their time there in fuch a jovial manner, that his Majefty himfelf tarried there till eleven at night; but the reft of the company did not break up till two the next morning.

On the nineteenth I received orders to carry the portraits of the three young Princeffes to the Emprefs, in order that fhe might fee them, as they were then compleatly finifhed. I went accordingly with Prince Alexander's brother-in-law; but the Princefs at that time unfortunate-ly happened to be fo far indifpofed as to keep her bed. However, I placed the pictures in the moft advantageous light I could, that fhe might have a view of them even there. She feemed to ap-prove of them very well; returned me many thanks, and made me a prefent of a purfe of gold, with her own hand, which I had the honour to falute. After which, fhe afked me whether I fhould tarry in the country long enough to paint her three daughters over again; to which having made her a fatisfactory answer, one of the young Princeffes gave us fome brandy in a fmall gilt cup, and after we had drank one glafs of wine, we immediately withdrew. I gave orders directly for all the pictures to be conveyed to the palace of Prince Alexander, where I packed them up as fafe as poffible, in order to be fent away on an hour's notice. The fame night his Czarian Majefty fet out for Archangel, attended by Prince Alexander, the Patriarch Mckile Moy-fewitz Solof, Lord Keeper of the Great Seal, the firft minifter of State, Count Fedder Alexowitz Gollowin, the Sieur Gabriel Gollofkien, the Knez Gregory Grogiewitz Rofiodanofkie Bojar, the Knez Tuerje Tuerjewitz Froetbetfkoj, and the Stolnick, who attends his Majefty, as his cup-bearer, wherever he goes.

On the twenty-fixth of April, the fca-vengers, as we call them, began to clean the ftreets in the Slabode, which was carried into execution in the following manner. In the firft place, the dirt was thrown up all along the fides of the houfes, in order to its being the more eaily removed; there being two Germans appointed to inpect their work, and give the proper di- # THE TRAVELS OF

directions. And this absolutely necessary undertaking was carried on with fuch unwearied industry and application, that at the week's end, the inhabitants of the Slabode could walk about their business without any material moleftation.

About the third of May then next ensuing, we received the disagreeable intelligence from Archangel, that the thaw had swelled the river there to that degree, that it had done incredible mischief; that much the greater part of the houses which flood near the fort of New Dwinko, had been laid under water; that the timber, and the works in his Majesty's dock-yard there, were carried away by the rapidity of the torrent; that a ship which was before upon the stocks, was turned with its keel upwards; that several ships before riding at anchor, in sight of the town, had been driven with violence against the bridge, near the palace belonging to the merchants; and, in short, that the waters were risen so high as to cover even the gardens in the heart of the city.

The next day, the inhabitants began to remove the dirt in the Slabode, that had been so thrown up as before-mentioned; each house-keeper having permission so to do, at his own expense; and to carry it into his own garden, if he had one, in order to raise it, or dispose of it in such other manner as he saw most convenient. And that so important a work might be finished with the greater expedition, the German merchants assembled themselves together at the hall belonging to the grandees there. The house is very flatly, spacious, and magnificent; and commodiously situated in the midst of a very fine garden. At this their meeting, they pitched upon two other proper inspectors to aid and assist those other two who had been appointed before for that very purpose. This election was made by a majority of votes, each writing down on a slip of paper the name of the person he particularly favoured. To these four, they added eight others, as assistants, and invested them with a sufficient authority to see the work completed with the utmost expedition.

On the ninth of May, being the festival of St. Nicholas, several letters arrived from Holland, bearing date the twenty-eighth of April then left past, with the melancholy news of the decease of his Britannic Majesty King William the third, of immortal memory, after a short indisposition but of four days only. This created a great confirmation amongst the foreign merchants, but principally amongst my own country-men the Dutch, who were more conscious to themselves than the rest of the inestimable worth of that departed Prince, and as an incontestible proof of their sincere regard for him, and of their due sense of so great a loss, they went into deep mourning for him for six weeks successively.

On the nineteenth, we had information of a great flood, that had happened at Holland, and had not only laid several villages under water, but had proved the deaths of a great number of persons. We were farther advised likewise, that the allies had made themselves masters of Keyferfwaert.

On the twenty-first was solemnized the grand festival of Walla Diemerfka Bogarodieffa, a certain town, wherein the inhabitants told you, that the Bleffed Virgin Mary had formerly made her

appearance, and that in order to commemorate that confounding goodness of hers, they observed the Thursday before Pentecost, which they call Seemie, as a festival, in one of the churches belonging to that city. Early in the morning of that day, several of their clergy reft in form to a pit or ditch, and cast into it the dead bodies of all such persons as have either been unfortunately murdered, or of such others as have been justly executed according to their demerits. These ditches, or pits, of which there are three or four in the parts adjacent to Moscow, are annually filled up, and fresh ones are dug on the preceding night. On that day likewise the Empress's mother was interred with great pomp and solemnity, though she departed this life but the very day before. The reason, however, was, that it is contrary to the custom of the country, to keep their dead any considerable time above ground; but of this particular re- # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

CHAP. VIII.

A Description of the Products of the Earth; of the Fruits; rural Seats, fine fib-ponds, and other Articles, wherein the Russian Gentry take a peculiar Delight; as also, of the Russian Hermits who were Prisōners.

I WENT frequently, during my residence at (a) Moscow, to take the country air, by way of amusement, with some of my most intimate acquaintance; and as I was in the woods, one day, in the month of July, I met with some Coftenitza, as they call them, that is, a kind of goofeberry, which had a very agreeable acid. The gentry here eat much the same manner as we do strawberries. They frequently likewise make with them (if we may be allowed the expression) a kind of lemonade, which is a very refreshing liquor, and is often prescribed to sick persons as a diet-drink. The woods all round about Moscow abound with this particular fruit, which grows in profusion under the shadow of the trees, not only there, but throughout the whole country. The term Coftenitza, signifies, in the Russian language, a ftony berry; and this goofeberry accordingly has one. Each large stalk produces three or four of a smaller size, on which the berries grow in large clusters, as may be seen in Plate A annexed. The leaves of them are green both winter and summer, and in July they are in their utmost perfection. There is another species of this berry, which the Russians call Brufnitza, which are considerably larger than the former, and grow single, like those in Holland, and bear twenty or thirty in a bunch. These grow very low; some are not above a single span from the ground, and the highest not exceeding a span and an half. These are carried to Moscow annually in large quantities, at which time, not only the natives, but the foreigners, who reside there, lay in large flocks. The

former throw them into tubs or casks of water, and there let them lie during the whole summer season; after that, they draw it off, and drink it; and very pleasant and refreshing this liquor is; especially, when it is properly sweetened with either honey or sugar: these goofeberrys are likewise preferred, and frequently eaten by way of defert. The Germans squeeze the juice out of them, and then boil them up with sugar, or honey, till they come to a proper consistence, and make use of it with their roast-meat, and, in my opinion, the relish of it is perfectly agreeable. They call it up likewise, and mix it with the juice of other goofeberrys. With

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

1. Mofka, or Moscowa River, rises in the west of the province of Moscow, and running east through that province, passes by the city of Moscow, and falls into the river Occa, at Kolomna.

2. Archangel, see p. 8. n.d. # THE TRAVELS OF

With this liquor they entertain their visitors; and it has a fine flavour. The leaves of these berries resemble those of the rose, as may be seen in the Plate B annexed, and are always green. The Russians have a profusion of roots and greens throughout their country. They have what they call their Kopoffe, that is to say, cabbages, which they lay by in heaps; and the poorer sort of the people regale themselves with them sometimes twice a day; they have likewise what they call their Ougertfie, that is, cucumbers, which they eat, as others do apples and pears; and these are laid by in their garners, by even people of fashion. Their country abounds likewise with garlic, of which the common people eat so profusely, that you may smell them at a great distance. This in their language is called, Siafnock. They have plenty likewise of what they call Green, and we horse-radish, with which they make very good sauces both for fish and flesh. They have divers kinds of turnips; as also of red cabbages, and colly-flowers; for which, indeed, they are obliged to foreigners, who have brought them there in plenty for some considerable time. Asparagus and artichokes are also common enough there; but then they are eaten by foreigners only. They are obliged to the Dutch likewise for several roots that grow under-ground; such as carrots, parsnips, and beet-root; of all which they have plenty at present; as also of all manner of faltering and celery, to the culture whereof they were perfect strangers formerly, tho' at present they are great admirers of them all. There are strawberries, moreover, in plenty, especially of the smaller sort, in all the parts adjacent to Moscow. The larger sort they gather, and eat them by handfuls. Raspberries likewise grow there in plenty, as also a large sort of melon, but these are two watery, much like our cucumbers, and produce very little feed.

As to their fruit-trees, they have a bundance of small-nuts; but a very few wall-nuts. Their apples, as well as those that are four, are pleasant to the taste, and strike the eye in a very agreeable manner. I have had a present of some of them, that are so transparent, that the kernels may be discerned in the heart of them, by holding them up to the light. Their pears, however, are just the reverse; they are not near so common; neither are they so palatable; besides they are extremely small. Their plumbs and cherries likewise are but very indifferent; excepting such as have been cultivated there in some of the orchards belonging to the foreign-merchants. The gardens of the Germans in particular abound with good gooseberries, and a great variety of the finest flowers. Those of the Russians, on the other hand, are wild, artless, and inelegant: notwithstanding the natives have plenty of water, and notwithstanding fountains and jetteaux are very ornamental in a garden, and might be procured at a very trivial expense; yet they are perfect strangers to such rural amusements. The Russians begin, however, to have a better taste than they had formerly, both in regard to the management of their public structures; but they had little or none till the Czar himself was pleased to take a tour through the Netherlands. The Knez Daniel Gregoritz Serkaskie has a garden cultivated entirely after the Dutch taste; near one of his villages, called in their language, the Sietjove, which is at the distance of about thirteen werfts from Moscow; it is very spacious, and neat enough; and, in short, the finest garden throughout the country; but then the reader is to observe, that the whole is submitted to the care and inspection of a Dutch gardener, retained for that purpose. Take Russia all together, they have not a great many curiosities to boast of. The principal beauty of their rural seats consists in their canals, or fish-ponds, which are exceedingly fine. There are sometimes two or three of them properly disposed, which are not only very large, but full of fish, which is one of their favourite dishes; and upon a visit of any friends for whom they have any regard, the first

Their roots and greens.

Their cabbages.

Their cucumbers.

Their garlic.

Their green or horse-radish.

Their turnips, red cabbages, and colly-flowers.

Their asparagus and artichokes.

Their carrots, parsnips, and beet-roots.

Their faltering and celery.

Their strawberries.

Their raspberries.

Their melons.

Their fruit-trees.

Their nuts, and wall-nuts.

Their apples, # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

The first step they take is to conduct them to their pond's side, and divert them with their casting-nets, which are so capacious, that at one single haul or drag, they will furnish themselves with more fish of various kinds than would serve for twenty dishes, or more, when artfully drest.

I shall never forget a party of pleasure I was once concerned in with some Dutch ladies, in whose company I went to pay one Mr. Strefenof a visit. He was a very substantial merchant, and resided at a village called Fackelooft, about fifteen werfts from Moscow, by whom we were very courteously entertained. This gentleman's lady was not only exceedingly handsome, but perfectly good-natured, and used her utmost endeavours to make us jovial and gay. The house was built elegantly enough, with abundance of commodious apartments; and what was somewhat remarkable, the kitchen was very neat, and furnished in the Dutch taste, where our ladies had part of the fish, drest Alamode Hollandoise; notwithstanding there were dishes in plenty of all sorts of cold meats, besides twenty dishes of fish at least, drest in the Russian manner, with very elegant sauces. After dinner we were conducted into a room, that had several ropes well fastened to the beams: in these the ladies alternately swung, which is a favourite pastime in the country; and the lady of the house herself opened the diversion, by being swung by two of her female attendants, who were pretty girls enough. During the time of her swinging, she took a child in her lap; and began to sing a merry, rural song, accompanied by her maid, which was highly entertaining, and performed in the most obliging manner. She made an apology, however, for her inelegant concert, and assured us, at the same time, that had she had any previous notice of our friendly visit, she would have entertained us with instrumental as well as vocal music. After we had returned our compliments for this part of our diversion, she conducted us down to one of her fish-ponds, and ordered her servants to catch a sufficient quantity of the best fish she had, in order to our carrying them home with us perfectly fresh. We took our leave of our kind entertainers, and took them with us into our coach, highly delighted with our agreeable present.

On one side of this village I discovered a tree of an extraordinary size; with wide-extended branches; all in due proportion. The trunk of it was at least three fathom and an half in circumference. It was a white poplar, which the Russians in their language call an Afina.

There are very few of the foreign merchants but what have gardens behind their apartments, or else at some small distance from the city, where they cultivate, with all the care imaginable, a great variety of fruits and flowers, which they fend for from their respective homes. The beds of their gardens, indeed, are all bordered with boards instead of box-trees; and as the country-gardens have no flowers to boast of, those that grow in their woods being very indifferent; a foreigner cannot oblige a native better, than by presenting him with a nosegay out of his garden. There are some Russians, however, of the more substantial sort, that are curious enough; and cultivate as fine flowers with equal care and equal judgment.

Their manners are singular enough: when they pay a visit, and enter any room, they look about them, without saying one single word, for some faint or another; there being no visiting-room at least without such sort of decorations; and when they have fixed their eye on such picture, they make three profound formal bows to it; and signing themselves with the cross, they cry Gospod Pomilus! that is to say, Lord have mercy upon me! or else they say, Mier Efdom Zjeiewofonon; that is, Peace be unto this house; and to all who reside therein! with the usual ceremony of their crosses. After that, they salute the people of the house, and speak to them. This custom they strictly observe, tho' they are paying their visits to strangers; and address themselves to the first picture they cast their eye on, left they should pay their respects to man before his Maker. Their principal diver- # THE TRAVELS OF

diversions are hawking, and courting with greyhounds; and as to both those articles, they are under very proper restrictions; for the number of dogs is fixt; and no one is indulg'd to keep more than what is due to his rank; and as to private diversions, they have but very few. As to their instrumental music, it principally consists in the harp, the kettle-drum, the hunting-horn, and the bag-pipe. They are highly delighted when they casually fall into a madman's company; or one that is remarkably deform'd, or in short, who is perfectly intoxicated with strong liquors. Upon an entertainment of their friends, they set down to table about ten in the morning, and depart about one. Then they adjourn to their respective homes, in order to lie down to rest. This is their constant practice both winter and summer. Their manner of writing is very peculiar; for they take their paper in their left-hand, and set it on their knees, and in that posture go to work. There are some of them, however, who copy after the Dutch, especially such as are clerks, either public or private. As their

manner of writing, so is their manner of stitching widely different from ours. They put their thimbles on the first finger, and therewith and the thumb, they draw the needle two and fro, which with us is directly the reverse. They make use of their feet likewise, which for the generality naked on this occasion; and some of them will hold their work between their toes, with the same ease as we do between our knees, or by pinning it fast: I have seen some of them, indeed, take other measures.

About the beginning of July I accompanied a friend to Probrofenlko, in order to have some discourse with three hermits, who had been prisoners there for near a week. They had resided in some part near (b) Afoph, upon the banks of a small river which discharges its waters into the Danube. I was startled at the sight of them. The oldest was about twenty years of age, and the other two seemed to me, not to be advanced beyond fifty. The first had resided there for near forty years successively in the hollow of a rock, where he had been once taken by the Tartars, and fold

(as a slave) to the Turks; but finding ways and means to make his escape soon afterwards, he returned to his cell, where he had passed the remainder of his days. They were accused, as they informed me, of being apostates from the Russian Faith; but all of them absolutely denied the charge, and were ready to undergo the strictest examination; and as for his part, he solemnly declared, that, notwithstanding he could neither write nor read, he was ready and willing to suffer the severest torments that could be inflicted on him for the sake of his Lord and Master JESUS CHRIST. They had no other apparel than a dark coarse gown: their hair hung half way down their back, which they never combed; and they covered their faces likewise to that degree, that it was impossible to see them, unless they purposely put their hair aside: in short, I took them to be downright savages. On their breasts they wore a large iron cross, that could not weigh less than four pounds apiece. This hung by two iron bands which went across their shoulders, fell down their backs, and were fastened to another iron band, which served each of them for a girdle, and was joined before upon the breast underneath the cross. The two youngest expressed such a high regard and veneration for their old brother Recluse, that they supported him under each arm, whenever he rose from his feet, as he did immediately on our approach. They were ordered to continue thus under confinement till his Czar Majesty's return. These three were always kept, however, together, without any fetters on, and sat on mats in a corner where they had the benefit of some fresh air, and at some small distance from the other prisoners, who for the most part, were chained by their feet, and thereby rendered almost incapable of stirring, their fetters being very close. Besides, for fear of their making any attempt towards an escape, there was a supervisor over each of them within-doors, as well as a proper

guard without. The prison itself was composed of substantial pieces of timber; though it was not very spacious, it was square, however, and open at top for the

Their habit

Their crufes.

Theirprison described.

Their man-ner of writ-ing.

Their man-ner of stitching.

Ruffian hermits. # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

the most part; there were some apartments in it, indeed, which were dark and close covered. I had a great inclination to pay these three hermits a second visit, but was informed they were removed to an adjacent house, which was more private and retired, where they were to continue till farther orders.

About the latter end of the present month of May arrived the agreeable news of a second engagement with the Swedes, and of their total defeat. Her Imperial Majesty sent for me some short time after that, in order to my painting the young Princesses, once more at full length, and in the same dress as before. I did all that lay in my power to be excused from so long and tedious a task, by pretending the unavoidable necessity I was under for the immediate pursuit of my travels; but perceiving the Empress was not a little disgusted at what she imagined a formal excuse, and little better than a genteel denial, I determined for several very cogent reasons, not to disoblige her, and went upon the work therefore with seeming alacrity, and the utmost expedition.

On the fifth of June all the merchants, who were then resident at Moscow, set out from thence directly for (c) Archangel.

We attended them, according to custom, about ten werfts from Moscow, to a village, situate on the river Youfa; where there were tents properly spread with carpets, for the reception of several ladies who were expected there; and in short, after drinking several healths and success to them in their intended journey, we returned to the city from whence we came.

Some few days after our return, as I was taking a solitary walk round the garden, which lies behind our house, with a gun in my hand, (as shooting is one of my favourite amusements) in order to kill some snipes and ducks, which frequent the pond, or rather the river Youfa, I discerned a crane flying in the air over my head: whereupon, I loaded my piece with a ball, as common shot was not sufficient to bring down a bird of her size, and by good

fortune, and a little skill, down the dropt directly into the pond. This occurrence, it seems, was somewhat remarkable; because there are but few birds of that species to be met with throughout the whole country. There are several of them, 'tis true, which are kept here for pleasure; but then they are for the generality presents from foreign parts. Out of curiosity, I ordered him to be roasted; but I cannot boast, indeed, of the entertainment; for he had fed in the fens, and tasted more like fish than flesh.

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

1. Moscow, see p. 23. n. c.
2. Afoph, east longitude 44. latitude 47. 15. a city of Coban Tartary in Asia, situate on the fourth shore of the river Don, near its mouth, a little to the east of the Palus Mecotis. This town standing on the frontiers of Russia against Turkey has been several times taken and retaken of late years, but on the last peace concluded in the year 1739, between those two powers, it was agreed that the fortifications should be demolished, and the town remain subject to Russia.
3. Archangel, see p. 8. n. d. # THE TRAVELS OF

C H A P. IX.

A particular Description of Moscow; together with a succinct Account of all the Churches and Convents, or Monasteries, therein contained; as also several other Articles equally curious and entertaining.

HAVING proceeded thus far, I think it incumbent on me now to expatiate a little on the states of his Czarrian Majesty, who, by word of mouth, honoured me with full permission to say whatever I thought proper on that topic; provided I took care to advance nothing but what was matter of fact.

I shall commence with an accurate, though compendious description of the city of (a) Moscow, of which I took a survey from the top of one of the Czar's palaces, called Morobjowa, which is a wooden structure of a very large extent, though but two stories high only. On the ground-floor, there are no less than 124 several apartments, and I presume there are the same number over them. The whole fabric is surrounded by a wooden wall. It stands upon an eminence, and directly over-against the convent, called the Dewits, on the other side of the river (b) Mofka, about three werfts westward from the city. Some few days before I had been very elegantly entertained there, together with some of my

acquaintance, and a select company of ladies, by the brother-in-law of Prince Alexander. His Czarrian Majesty himself had pitched upon this particular spot, as most commodious for my purpose; and so in effect it was; but as his Majesty's sister, had taken it for the summer season, I begged the favour of that Prince's brother-in-law to introduce me to the Princess, and give me an opportunity of communicating to her the order I had received. I had no sooner told her my errand, but she very courteously informed me, that I was welcome to come there when, and as often as I pleased, with this restriction only, that I brought but one attendant with me. Accordingly I went thither day after day for some time, till I had accomplished my design upon paper in water-colours, from one of the windows belonging to the palace, as the reader may observe in the plate annexed. From thence I had a full prospect, not only of every thing remarkable in the city itself, but of many things worthy of notice likewise in the parts adjacent. Every article is carefully distinguished by some numeral figure; as for instance; (1) The new convent, or monastery, of Dewits, that is to say, of the Nuns. (2) The quarters belonging to a regiment of foot. (3) The porters lodge, called the Worftruki. (4) A place distinguished by the name of Suchowa. (5) The cloister, called the Newinfkoy monastery. (6) The Sawinfkoy monastery, or convent of St. Savin. (7) The church of Nicola-na-Rhipach, so called from its being consecrated to the memory of St. Nicolas. (8) The church of Blagowfischen, that is to say, the annunciation of the blessed virgin Mary. (9) The Dewits Monastir Strathnoi, or the convent of the maid in distress. (10) The Ultretenfkoia Bachna, that is to say, the tower of the gate, called Ultretens. (11) The Potroffchey Monastir, or convent of St. Peter. (12) The castle, or palace, from whence this survey was taken. (13) The Troitlka Bachna, or the tower of the church, without the palace, which is distinguished by that name. (14) The grand church of Saboor, which is by far the most magnificent, and can boast of more valuable reliques than any other church throughout the city. (15) Ivan Welick, or the lofty tower belonging to the castle. (16) The Izerkot Philatowa, or the fine church, that was erected by one Philatowa. (17) The church called the Waffo afeuja Borofchal # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

Borofchal. (18) The Kodafchewa, a place on one side of the church, set apart for the residence of his Majesty's linen-cloth weavers. (19) The church of St. Nicholas. (20) The church of Elijah called Glyn Borock. (21) The Tugain, a church so called from the place whereon it is erected. (22) The Anduanot Monaitir, that is to say, the convent dedicated to St. Andronius: (23) The fine Monastery, called the Spas Novoy, or the new Saviour. (24) The palace belonging to the cloister of Krutich. (25) The Donfko Monaitir, or the convent of the Donfche, or mother of God. (26) The Spafa Novoy Monaitir, or the new convent dedicated to our blessed Saviour. (27) The convent of St. Andrew. (28) The Daniloffski Monaitir, or the cloister of St. Daniel. (29) The river of (b) Moska. (30) The Worobjowa Gor, or the hill of sparrows.

Some historians peremptorily assert, that Moscow was as big again formerly as it is at present; but, upon the strictest enquiry that I could make, I found that it is much larger now than ever it was before; and that it never could boast of so many spacious stone-buildings as at this Day, and which are full daily encroaching. This city is in 55 degrees 30 minutes of northern latitude, and is sometimes called Moscow or Mosco, and sometimes again Mufcow, or Mofcua. It is situate in the southern parts, and much about the center of Russia or Moscovy, upon the little river Moska, from whence it derives its name. It is three leagues at least in circumference, without the earth or clay-wall, and has twelve several gates belonging to it; that, for instance, (1) called Potroffe Warate, or the gate of Potroffe. There is a whole street that goes under that denomination, which extends itself as far as the Red-wall, called the Kitai. (2) The Mefnite gate, which has a street likewise of the same denomination. These two gates, which are both stone-structures, belong to the stone-wall. The (3) is, properly speaking, nothing more than a high-way leading to a gate of the city, called the Ufretrenfe Bralon; for there is no gate, but an opening only on that side in the clay-wall. The (4) is called the Petroffe, where there is a street that leads to the city. The (5) is called the Twerkike, where there is a street of that name. The (6) is called the Mekitfe, with a street likewise under the same denomination. The (7) is called the Arbatfe. The (8) The Pref-zikhwetché, which has a street likewise, and was formerly known by the name of 't Zertelfe. The (9) Drefwetché, of the same situation. The (10) Kak-netfke, situate on the river Negliene. The (11) of the same situation. The (12) Tagantfe, or Tantfe, situate in the same manner.

Having taken this tour, I went the very next day all round the city-wall, called Beloy Gorod, and found, that it was no more than an hour and an half's moderate journey in circumference. Between most of the city-gates just before mentioned, there are two towers at least upon the walls; but three between some of them. Though they are quadrangular, they are by no means fit for cannon, and stand four hundred paces at least distant one from another. There are two gates only, between which no towers are erected; and on that spot, indeed, his Czarian Majesty has made a garden; inasmuch that there is no passage perfectly round by the wall-side.

Moscow is divided into four parts. The first whereof is the cattle, or palace, called Viremfgozod, situate on the river Moska which flows to the westward, and empties its water into the ocean near the city of (c) Columnia, or Kolomna, which is about thirty fix leagues from Moscow, and the (d) Occa falls into the (e) Wolga, not far from (f) Nifi-Novogorod, which is about one hundred leagues from Moscow. This cattle is surrounded with a high stone-wall, which is flanked with divers towers; and the plate above referred to is the fine prospect of it from the river-side near the great bridge. It has four gates; the first called the Spakae, where

the dial stands; the second called the Nikolske Demkamennon-Morlu; the third called the Trifwallske; and the last Taynuski. It is surrounded likewise by a dry ditch that leads down to the river. As there are no cannon in this castle, or palace, # THE TRAVELS OF

In the palace, they fire their guns on all public days of rejoicing, from the Arfénal, and plant others in the Bazat, or grand market-place, before the court. This caffle, in which the Czarian Majesty never resides, is erected with blocks of stone, and is for the most part very dark and dismal; it is inhabited, however, by the Patriarch and the courts of judicature, which are called the Prikæs, are held there. Some of the principal courtiers had formerly several houses there; but his Czarian Majesty took possession of them all for his own use, one only excepted. In the center of the great court, which is surrounded with buildings, stands a tower called the Iwan Welike, or Great John, where hung the Maffy Bell, which fell down, by means of the fire that happened in the year 1707, and split; it is affected by some, that it weighed no less than 266,666 pounds of Dutch weight, or 8000 Poels, at 33 pounds each. It was founded in the reign of the Grand Duke Gudenan. It is, doubtless, of a surprising size, has several Russian characters on the borders of it, and on one side, three heads in basso-relievo. You must go up one hundred and eight steps between two towers, in case your curiosity leads you to see it. And if you go but one and thirty steps higher, you will there see eight other bells hung in the cross-pieces of the windows belonging to this tower; and by ascending only thirty steps above that bell-fry, you will see nine more, which are hung in the same manner; some larger than the other; and some only two and two; but to gratify your curiosity in this particular, you must go up two different wooden ladders; one of ten steps only, and the other of twenty. From the top of this tower, you have a very advantageous prospect of the whole city, and of all the fine stone-churches with which it abounds; and as the domes and steeples of a great number of them are gilt, they strike the eye in a most agreeable manner on a fine sun-shiny day. There is nothing, however, so grand and magnificent, as the before-mentioned church of Saboor. Besides this, there are divers other fine stone-structures interspersed throughout the city; workmen are at this present juncture employed in erecting a new grand Arfénal, but of wood-work, before St. Nicholas's gate, which, when finished, is to be principally set apart for the public performance of their theatrical entertainments.

Within these few months they have retained several comedians from (g) Dantzick, who performed divers pieces this winter at the Hôtel of General le Fort lately deceased; and the Russians have already attempted to copy after them; but, as it may easily be imagined, in but a very faint and imperfect manner: It is certain, however, that they have some taste and genius for such public representations; besides, it must be allowed, that they are fond of mimicry, be it good or bad; and when they are made sensible of

the polite department and good manners of some foreigners, and how much superior it is to theirs; they very ingenuously will acknowledge themselves by far out-done; but they will imitate, indeed, at the same time, that their imitation is none of the worst.

Having thus given a short, but I hope a satisfactory account of this first division, I shall proceed to the second, which almost covers one fourth part of the cattle, known by the Kut Kietay Gorod, which stands almost in the center of the city, and is surrounded by a high stone-wall, called Krafna jaftenna, that is to say, the red-wall; because that was in former days its real colour; but it has since been totally whitened by the express orders of the then reigning Princess Sophia Alexefina, and her younger brothers. Within this wall, and directly over-against the cattle, stands the grand church of St. Troytia, or the Holy Trinity, which was erected by a famous Italian, and is looked upon as the most beautiful church in the whole city, that of Saboor only excepted. Here likewise is kept the grand market, which is daily frequented by a vast concourse of people of all ranks and degrees whatsoever; here likewise stands some of the best houses in the whole city, some of the largest warehouses in the possession of their own, as well as of foreign merchants, who attend them daily; and, in a word, trade of the finest hops, that the best tradesmen can boast

The new Arfénal, and for what purpose erected.

Comedians from Dantzick retained.

Are copied after by the Russians, but imperfectly.

Their taste.

A succinct description of the second division.

Its red wall.

The grand church of St. Troytia.

Its grand market.

Its various warehouses for merchants.

The third division is Beloy Gorod, that is Wall. This and that fore-mentioned, which is called to the river of Neglinga, and has the aréna of the Grand Kabo Wall, on the other.

The fourth and last division, which is prized within the city, bears the name of the red-wall, having been erected in the reign of the Emperor, and it is the most beautiful of all.

That Prince Czar Joan Welikov, ever assumed the title of King, had added by conquest the four kingdoms of the Caffan (β), Astracan, and the Slavonic term, does not, but a King, some historians; for they, write to denote what they use to signify a King, the term Czarina or Empress; since more than a Queen.

In this division, at the Slabodes, that is, the Streloes, or mill #
CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

The third division of the city is called Beloy Gorod, that is to say, the White Wall. This and the Kietay Gorod before-mentioned, absolutely surround the cattle to the river of Mofka: this division likewise has a wall peculiar to itself. The small river of Neglina runs through it, and has the arsenal on the one side of it, and the Grand Kabac, or public brandy-shop, on the other.

The fourth and last division, comprised within the clay-wall, or wall of earth, bears the name of the Skerodum, that is to say, thrown up in a hurry; this wall having been erected in a very short compass of time; and more particularly those parts of it towards the rivers Mofka and Neglina, in order to prevent any sudden incursions of the Tartars, which happened in the Reign of the Czar Fedor Iwanowitz, and in the year of our Lord 1584. That Prince was the son of the Czar Joan Weficlewitz, the first that ever assumed the title of Czar, after he had added by conquest to his Empire, the four kingdoms of Kafiernof (b), Cafan (i), Afracan, and (k) Siberia. The appellation of Czar, which is a Slavonic term, does not signify an Emperor, but a King only; according to some historians; for the Slavonians, say they, write the word Keifer, Zefar, or Kefar, to denote an Emperor; whereas they use the word Koning, or Karotie, to signify a King. The Germans likewise are grossly mistaken, who imagine, that the term Czarietfe means Keifirin, or Emprefs; since it denotes nothing more than a Queen.

In this division, at present, stand most of the Slabodes, or military gentry; notwithstanding, in former times their habitations were, for the most part, within the circuit of the red and white walls. His Czarian Majesty, however, thought it most advisable to remove them, as they were very insolent, and greatly addicted to mutiny and defection.

I must own, in regard to their buildings, nothing surprised me more than their custom of buying and selling their particular tenements, or apartments, daily in open markets, as they would any other commodity whatsoever, to which they had a legal title. These habitations, or apartments, are composed of pieces of timber, or trees, so contrived, as to take to pieces, and be carried away with you where you please, and to be erected again on what particular spot you judge most proper. A house of this kind of building will stand the purchaser perhaps in one hundred or two hundred rubles, each ruble to be valued at five Dutch florins, and so to any room or apartment, in proportion.

There are certain suburbs, villages, and monasteries or convents, situate beyond the clay-wall, or wall of earth, which lie scattered all round about the city; some of them, indeed, stand contiguous to each other, and some are even adjoining to the wall. The Slabode, or district of the Germans, is not above a mile and a half distant from the city; and there are divers other villages to be met with which with lie more remote.

The churches and convents belonging to the city of Moscow, the cattle, and other grand structures in the other divisions, and adjacent to the clay-wall before-mentioned, on the outside, are so numerous, that they are computed at no less than six hundred and seventy-nine, the chapels inclusive. The structure of these churches are, for the generality, as round as an apple, or an orange; not as some vainly imagine, to imitate the grand dome of the Heavens; but to aid and afflict the priests in their sacred chantings: there are some again, who imagine, that the Russians have a peculiar veneration for bells, as deeming the found of them

Great numbers of churches and convents.

The structure of their churches round, and why. # THE TRAVELS OF

acceptable in the ears of the Almighty; but such historians are greatly mistaken; the Russians are not so superstitious as that comes to; they consecrate them, indeed, as the Roman Catholics do, and ring them always on grand festivals, and on Sundays before divine service.

The convents, or monasteries, in and about the city of Moscow, are distinguished by several names and titles; there are two of them in the cattle, one for the peculiar service of their male devotees, called Zudoff Monastir; that is to say, the convent, or cloister of miracles; and here they inter the bodies of their Czarinas and Princeffes. The remains of the Czars are deposited in another Royal dormitory, of which particular notice shall be taken in another, and more proper place. The other is called Wofnefenikoy, that is to say, the monastery of the Afcension of Jefus Christ; which is set apart for their female devotees, or nuns: there are several convents likewise, situate without the stone-wall of the city, which are very fine and very rich; such, for instance, as the Spafkoi Monatir, or convent of the Saviour of Mankind; the Simonofskoi, dedicated to St. Andronius; the Dourfkoï, devoted to the Mother of Christ; of whom they tell you a thousand of her miraculous operations, if you will believe them, on the Don, or Tanais; the Danilof, or that of St. Daniel; the Dewitfe, or the grand monastery of nuns; the Nooinfkoï Statoutenfkoï, or that of St. Chrysoftom: the Iwanofskoi, or that of St. John; the Rosfheftrumkoï, or that of the Incarnation; the Warfonofskoi, a convent devoted to a Saint of that name; the Satzatoï, or that of the reception; the Moifefkoï, or that of Mofes; the Strefnoi, or that

of the Tremendous; the Sawifenskoï, so called from its situation; the Stretenfkoï, or that of the Assembly; the Miklaefskoï, or that of St. Nicholas, together with two others of the same denomination, making, in the whole, no less than two and twenty convents. Almost all the streets are over-spread with timber, or wooden bridges, and are impassable in the summer-leafon, when it frequently rains; for upon such occasions, there are nothing but quagmires, confitting of loads of mud and dirt. The shop-keepers in this city are so very numerous, that they are obliged to contract themselves into a very narrow compass, for the prosecution of their respective occupations, which they shut up a-nights at proper hours, notwithstanding some of their fleets are tolerably large. There are likewise several prickaes in the city, that is to say, public offices, or courts of judicature, the principal of which is that called the Pofofle, for the transaction of foreign affairs; the Rosfed, where the register of the Russian nobility, governors, and other ministers is kept, in order to have recourse to on all proper occasions; the Dworets, where the account of the Czar's household affairs are kept; the Posnew, or register-office, for all the lands within the dominions of Russia; or, in a word, the register of the Streifels, or military gentry, whose number has greatly decreased since the last infurrection. All these public-offices, or prickaes, in general, are stone-buildings, and are crowded with hackney-writers and clerks, whose several apartments have more the appearance of gloomy prisons, than place set apart for public buffets; and it is no uncommon thing to meet with persons that are under close confinement there; for in some of the apartments thereto-belonging, even criminals are locked up, and fettered; nay, creditors likewise, who are allowed, indeed, to walk about, but have irons rattling at their heels; the head-clerks, it is true, have proper apartments allotted them; but in some of the prickaes, the officers fit together promiscuously at a long table, covered with coarse red-cloth, like the hangings of an ordinary room. The registrars of such offices as have the administration of foreign affairs entrusted to their care and conduct, are kept in that called the Mofens: those registrars of the lands of Cahan and Aftracan, and the provinces thereto annexed, in that which they call the Kafans d'Woore. There is likewise a register of the arms, kept at an office newly erected for the admiralty, called Rufchewne. The difpenfatory is kept in the same place; as is also the register for the names of all such goldsmiths as are retained

The fleets floored, as it were, with timber, and impassable in summer. # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

tained in his Majesty's service, and are paid in that office. The registers of the greater part of the revenues of the slate, are kept in the Bolfschaia Kaefna. The nobility, and the commiffioners, or head-clerks, have their trials in those offices, distinguished by the names of Soednoi Wolodinerfkoi, and Sudnoi Moftkoifkoi. The duties belonging to the feals, are paid into the office called the Petfutnoi, and are regiftred therein. Every religious house is

subject to the prikaes of the convents; and all ecclesiastical causes are heard and determined in that belonging to the patriarch; such for instance, as relate to marriages, estates of inheritance, arbitrations, family-difficulties, adulteries, fornications, and causes of the like nature. That called the Jamfkoj is the office peculiarly set apart for registering of all such carmen, or drivers, as are annually employed in his Majesty's service.

During my residence at Moscow, all these eighteen several prikaes, or public offices, were kept in the castle; but there were several, indeed, without; such, for instance, as that called the Pufchkarifch, for the registering of their cannon; the Sibierch, for the administration of the affairs of Siberia; the Rofboina, where murderers, and other capital criminals, are tried, condemned, or acquitted. The principal, or head-officer of these prikaes, is, for the most part, a favourite at court, and one of the prime ministers of State, whom his Czarian Majesty invests with this important post, either through favour and affection, or as a grateful acknowledgement of some signal services. It is one step, likewise, towards the very highest posts in the whole kingdom, that is to say, it is an introduction to the being constituted a Boyard, or Counsellor of State, which is an office of that dignity, as, with great propriety, may be compared to that of a grandee of Spain, or a peer of France; or else to be one of those called the Okolnitsches; that is, one of those who personally accompany his Czarian Majesty, when he goes abroad; or of the Doemne Divorens, that is, one of the noble counsellors, or of the Doemne Diack, that is, one of the secretaries of the council; or of the Stolniks, that is, one of the officers that attend on his Majesty at table; or of the Worenes, that is, one of the officers of the court; or, to conclude, of the Schilf, that is to say, an officer but one degree inferior to those last-mentioned. The first of the nobility, and all such as have the honour to be in any degree of consanguinity with the Czarina, are frequently promoted to the post of a Spalnick, that is to say, is constituted one of the gentlemen of his Majesty's bed-chamber; after these follow the stewards of the household, the carvers, the cup-bearers, and so gradually descending.

The Czar, soon after his return from the (m) Netherlands, created an order of knighthood, under the patronage and protection of the Apostles St. Andrew, and has already dignified five of his favourite courtiers with that honourable title, whose names are as follow, viz, the Count Few-dor Alexowitz Gollwin, a Boyard, Prime Minister of State, and High Admiral of the seas; Hetman, the Grand General of the Cofcias; Mr. Printz, Amibaftador Extraordinary from the King of Prussia; the General Velt-Marshall Boris; and Pet-trowitz Czeremetof; to each of these he made a present of St. Andrew's Cross; together with the image or picture of that Saint in miniature, set with diamonds.

To the grandeur and dignity of this court we may farther add, that his Czarian Majesty is a despotic Prince, and invested with an unlimited power over all his subjects; that his will alone, however partial, is his law; that he can, if he thinks fit, dispose not only of the fortunes, but the lives likewise of any of his people, from the courtier to the peasant, on the least disgust; in a word, that his power extends itself over all affairs, spiritual as well as temporal; for he can new-model, just as his fancy directs him, the whole form of divine service; which is an attempt too dangerous for any other crowned head, and such a ticklish point, that no other would venture to interpose so far, for fear of raising the clergy's repentment to too high a pitch.

Having thus expatiated pretty largely on # THE TRAVELS OF

on the rewards conferred on merit, and on all such as testify their zeal and attachment to his Majesty's interest, and deport themselves so as to be entitled to his favour, either in peace or war, and to be entrusted with the administration of all public affairs; we shall now drop that topic, and proceed to give a cursory account of the various kinds of punishments as are inflicted on criminals, or such other delinquents as unhappily fall into disgrace, and become the objects of his Majesty's resentment, and high displeasure. The most shocking and severe is that of their burning persons alive. For this purpose, they erect a small wooden house, in a quadrangular form, which is loaded with a profusion of straw both within and without; in this, the poor unhappy criminal, after sentence pronounced, is shut up, and then fire is immediately applied; which, in a few moments, suffocates the party, and, in a short compass of time, reduces the whole structure, to dust and ashes.

Their manner of beheading persons of distinction is with an ax upon a block, and their method of hanging of common delinquents, is on a gibbet erected for that purpose, as in other countries. Some again are buried alive in the ground up to their shoulders, an instance of which we have before related. Now, what is peculiarly remarkable is this; that whenever these executions happen, they are transacted with that silence and precaution, that one end of the town knows nothing of what passes at the other. As for such whose crimes are not so flagrant as to touch their lives, their punishment is, for the most part, the Knot, that is, a large leather thong, or whip, which the executioner sometimes lays upon the naked back with so heavy a hand, as that some of them actually expire under the operation. Their manner of inflicting this particular punishment is something odd and peculiar; for the executioner has a power to pitch upon any person amongst the gaping crowd, who appears to him to be a strong, robust fellow, and make him take the delinquent upon his back, with his arms laid over his shoulders, and

across his breast; after that, the executioner ties his feet; and one of his affiants, taking fast hold of the hair of his head, he administers the number of frokes appointed, be they more or less, which never fail of fleing off the skin, unless peculiarly and partially favoured: for crimes of a less heinous nature, they make use of drubbing only: in this case, the delinquent is laid flat on his belly; one of the executioner's affiants fits upon his head, and another on his heels, while the punishment to which he is doomed is duly inflicted. When any delinquents are tortured, in order to extort from them an open confession of the crimes and misdemeanours laid to their charge; they hang the party up, and, after having whipped him severely with the Knoet, draw a red hot iron over the wounds he has received; but the most severe, and most afflictive torture that some, who are more obstinate and stubborn than ordinary, undergo, is, when the crowns of their head are close shaved, and cold water is gradually dropped down upon them.

The punishment which they generally inflict, either on insolvent debtors, or such as are able, but not willing to satisfy the demands of their creditors, is this; they are, in the first place, exposed to public view before the priaes, or public offices, and then and there receive three heavy strokes with a cudgel on one side of their legs. Such as are indebted to the amount of an hundred rubles, or five hundred florins, are punished in that manner, daily, for a whole month without intermission; and such whose debts fall short of that sum, are only punished in proportion, but in the same manner. And after all the mortifications that they have laboured under, in case they cannot compromise matters, and procure their discharge, an appraisal of their effects is immediately made, and the money raised thereupon delivered into the hands of their creditors; and, in a word, if even this falls short of giving satisfaction to their merciless creditors, their very wives and children are delivered into their custody, till the whole debt is discharged by service; and for such # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

such service, they are allowed only five rubles annually for a man, and half the sum for a woman: there is some reason, however, to be given for so small a deduction; because the creditor who receives them is obliged, not only to maintain them, but furnish them with decent apparel. And in this unhappy state of servitude, must the poor wives and children remain, be the time longer or shorter, till the last penny be duly and truly discharged.

Moscow is said to be situated in the center and best part of Mofcovy, 120 leagues from the frontiers on all sides; 86 from those of (n) Poland, and 460 from the Empire of (o) Persia, or the town of (p) Tarku, which is under the Mofcovite, on this side of the (q) Caspian, admitting each league to be equal to an hour. From Moscow, likewise, to the left frontier place belonging to his Caesarian Majesty in (r) Siberia, or to the river of Argen, or (s) Argun, which divides the dominions of that Prince from those of

the Cham of (t) China, are 7,600 wersts, or 1,320 leagues, and from thence to (u) Pekin, the capital of China, 2,500 wersts, as I have been credibly informed by the Sieur Everhard Ibrants, who travelled this journey in the quality of Envoy from (w) Russia. As for Moscow in general, that part which the Latins call Russia-Negra, or Rubra, that is to say, Black or Red Russia, and sometimes called Lefler Russia, is situated in the southern part of (x) Poland, between (y) Polefia, (z) Volhnia, (aa) Podolia, (bb) Transylvania, and (cc) Hungary; whilst Russia is to the northward of the Red, and is the largest country in all Europe, lying between the Ice-Sea, the river of Iaick, the Caspian Sea, one part of (dd) Wolga, the (ee) Crim, or Precopian Tartary, the (ff) Nieper of Borythennes, the Grand Duchy of (gg) Lithuania, (hh) Livonia, (ii) Eftonia, (kk) Ingria, (ll) Sweden, and the (mm) Swedish Lapland.

Its principal cities are Moscow, (nm) Wolodimet, (vo) Novogorod, (pp) Smolensko, Cahan, (qq) Pulkar, Afracan, (rr) Wologda, (ss) Plekow, (tt) Refan, (uu) Archangel, and (vvv) St. Nicholas.

In the year 1533, this Empire of Russia was under the dominion, and subject to the Grand Duke, or Czar Ivan, or John BafLOWITZ, a perfect savage, and a tyrant, who departed this life in the year 1584. His son Fedor, or Theodore Iwanowitz, was his immediate successor, but died within fourteen years after his accession to the crown. Upon his decease, which was in the year 1598, Boris Gudenon got possession of the throne, but died suddenly about seven years afterwards, that is to say, in the year 1605. His son Fedor Borisflowitz Gudenon succeeded him, 'tis true; but reigned three months only; for he was put to death by the treacherous Demetris in 1606. As he got possession of the throne, however, by usurpation, the Russians actually burnt him in 1607. One Basil Zufki succeeded him; but his subjects delivered him up into the hands of the Poles, amongst whom he died in the year 1610. In his stead, reigned Prince Vladislau, the son of Sigismund, then King of Poland; but one Michalowitz, or Michael Federowitz of Romanof, seized on the crown in the year 1613, and reigned in his stead till the year 1645. Alexius Michalowitz, his son, succeeded him, but died on the twenty-ninth of January 1676. In his stead reigned Fedor Alexewitz, who died on the twenty-seventh of April, 1682, without issue. His brother Peter Alexewitz was soon after elected by the Russians; but a powerful faction arose, who espoused the interest of his brother Ivan Alexowitz, and before the year was expired, established him as joint-partner in the throne. He died, however, on the twenty-ninth of January 1696.

They reckon but eleven Patriarchs only to the year 1700, whose names were as follow, viz. (1) Joff. (2) Germogen. (3) Ignatius, tho' he is not reckoned, indeed, amongst the rest, as he was a Roman-Catholic under the aforesaid Demetrius above-mentioned. (4)

Philaret. (5) Jofaff. (6) Joffiff. (7) Nikon. (8) Jofaph. (9) Pefterim. (10) Joachim, and (11) Advan; since whom no other has been elected to this day. # THE TRAVELS OF

In the year 1689, there were no less than forty-four Boyars, that is to say, Councillors of State, who were illustrious personages of the several families hereinafter particularly mentioned, viz. Two of the family of the Zirkaffes; three of that of the Galithens; one of the Odielskoy; three of the Ptoforefskoy; five of the Sollickwes; three of the Wrforey; three of the Czeremetof; one of the Dolgoruki; one of the Bonodanofski; one of the Trokurof; one of the Repum; one of the Wolenfskoy; one of the Kolflofskoy; one of the Berantenfskoy; one of the Tzerbutof; two of the Golowins; one of the Scheyn; two of the Bakurlino; one of the Pufkin; one of the Chillkoff; one of the Stuechhoff; one of the Sabakim; two of the Miloflafskey; two of the Narilukns; one of the Sokoffmus; one of the Tufchof; and one of the Ma-tunkin. These are the attendants on the Czar in his Privy-Councils; and these favourite courtiers have the administration of all his public affairs.

The troops which his Czarian Majesty, for the most part, keeps on foot, amount to no less than 46, or 50,000; besides several regiments both of horse and lances, who are paid out of the Royal treasury, and receive part of their annual stipend in cash, and part in corn, and other necessaries of life. In time of war, the whole body of the Russian nobility are summoned to attend, who are, doubtless, a very potent body, and amount (according to the nearest computation) to little less than 2,000,000, their several fervants, and other attendants included: some of them, indeed, have no less than ten or twenty in their retinue; but the majority make their appearance with two or three only at most.

The revenues of Russia, of which some notice has already been taken, principally arise from the skins and furs, corn, leather, ashes, hemp, mats, tar, tallow, and other commodities of the like nature. A considerable sum likewise arises from the Kababs, which are houses belonging to his Czarian Majesty, where are publicly vended beer, brandy, and mead.

The customs inward amount likewise to a large sum. Caviar is transported from Archangel into foreign countries; as is the flurgeon, and taken in great quantities at Astracan, and other places on the Volga. This latter commodity is principally used for the refining of wines; and besides, it makes an excellent glue. A great part of it, moreover, is consumed by those who practise the art of dying.

I shall close this chapter with a succinct account of the length of the days and nights in Russia, which I flatter myself will be an acceptable amusement to the curious. The autumnal equinox falls out on the eighth of September, which makes the day and night equal. On the twenty-fourth, the day is eleven hours, and the night

thirteen. On the tenth of October, the day is ten hours only, and the night fourteen. On the twenty-sixth, the day is but nine, and the night fifteen. On the eleventh of November, the day is eight only, and the night sixteen. On the twenty-seventh, the day is but seven hours, and the night seventeen. On the twelfth of December, the days begin to lengthen. On the first of January, the day is eight hours, and the night sixteen. On the seventeenth, the day is nine hours, and the night fifteen. On the second of February, the day is ten hours, and the night fourteen. On the eighteenth, the day is eleven hours, and the night thirteen. On the sixth of March, the vernal equinox makes the day and night equal. On the twenty-second, the day is thirteen hours, and the night but eleven. On the seventh of April, the day is fourteen hours, and the night only ten. On the twenty-third, the day is fifteen hours, and the night only nine. On the ninth of May, the day is sixteen hours, and the night but eight. On the twenty-fifth, the day is seventeen hours, and the night only seven. On the twelfth of June, the days begin to shorten. On the sixth of July, the day is sixteen hours, and the night eight. On the twenty-second, the day is fifteen hours, and the night nine. On the first of August, the day is fourteen hours, #
CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

1. Moscow, fee p. 23. n. c.
2. Mofka, a river, fee p. 47. n. a.
3. Kolomna, or Columbia, east longitude 40. latitude 56. a city of Russia, in the province of Moscow, situate at the confluence of the rivers Mofka and Occa, forty miles fourth east of Moscow.
4. Occa, or Ocka, a great river in Moscow, which rises in the province of Sfesf, and running north, passes by Orel, and Perm, and then turning east, joins the river Mofka at Kolomna; after which, it continues to run east by Refanskoi and Nifi-Novgorod, falling into the river Wolga, a little below Novgorod.
5. Wolga, or Volga, fee p. 28. n. f.
6. Nifi-Novgorod, east longitude 34. latitude 58. a city of Moscow, and the capital of the province of Novgorod, situate on the river Wolcoff, near the lake of Ilmen, 130 miles fourth-east of Peterburg. It is the see of an Archbishop, and has in it 180 churches and monasteries; the country about it abounds in corn, flax, hemp, wax, and honey; and they manufacture the best Russia leather there.

7. Dantzick, east longitude 19. latitude 54. the capital of Regal Prussia, in the Kingdom of Poland, situate on the Western shore of the river Wefel, or the Viftula, which is a little below falls into the Baltic Sea. It is an excellent harbour, and has the best foreign trade of any port within the Baltic. It stands one hundred and forty miles north of Warfaw, and seventy miles fourth-west of Koningburgh. The town is large, and encompassed with a wall, and fortifications of a great extent. The houses are well built of stone, or brick, fix or seven stories high; and the granaries, containing vast magazines of corn, and naval stores are fill higher, to which the shipping lie clost, and take in their lading; for the Dutch annually import from hence a great many thousand tons of corn, timber, and naval stores; # THE TRAVELS OF

protected him in their city, having been purchased with French money, they were besieged by the Mofcovites and Saxons, obliged to surrender, and forced to purchase their peace with several hundred thousand pounds, for suffering Stanislaus to make his escape out of the city during the siege.

1. Cufan, or Kafan, a province of Ruffia, bounded by the province of Permia on the north, by Siberia on the east, by the river Wolga, which separates it from little Novogorod, on the fourth, and by the province of Moscov proper on the west.
2. Astracan, east longitude 52. latitude 47. the capital of the Kingdom of Astracan, in Asiatic Ruffia, situate on the eastern shore of the river Wolga, eighty miles north of the Caspian sea, eight hundred miles south-west of Moscow, and four hundred and fifty miles north of Afterabar. It is a large, populous city, and a good sea-port, where the Russians, the English, and other Europeans, embark for Perfia.
3. Siberia, fee p. 17. n. b.
4. Don, or Tanais River, rises in the province of Refan, in Ruffia, and running south-east, passes by Woronets, and continuing its course, falls south-east, approaches near the river Wolga, where the Czar Peter the Great was cutting a canal for a communication between the two rivers. The river Don turns to the south-west, and dividing Afa from Europe, falls into the Palus Meotis, a little below the city of Afoh. But tho' Czar Peter did not live to finish the last canal, he had made another between the river Woronets, and another river which falls into the Wolga, whereby the two rivers are deep enough to carry ships of a good burthen down to the Euxine and Caspian seas; but the losing of Afoh has made the navigation of the Russians to the Euxine sea impracticable.
5. Netherlands, situate between two and seven degrees of east longitude and between 50. and 53 degrees 30 minutes of north latitude, bounded by the German sea on the north, by Germany

on the east, by Lorraine and France on the south, and by the British seas on the west, extending near three hundred miles in length from north to south, and two hundred miles in breadth from east to west. The ancient name of this country was Belgia, but since de-

nominated the Netherlands, or Low Countries, from their low situation, near the mouths of several great rivers; the maritime parts whereof were a morass, till drained by the industry of the numerous people that retired hither from the perfecions and oppressions of the Spaniards, and other bigotted powers. These provinces are in number seventeen, and formerly enjoyed great privileges, being governed by as many Princes, under the various titles of Dukes, Counts, or Lords, but became at length united by marriages, compact, or conquest, in the house of Burgundy, anno 1430; and came under the dominion of Spain about the year 1506, by a marriage between the heirs of the house of Burgundy and Spain, and were by Charles V. Emperor of Germany, and King of Spain, constituted part of the circle of Burgundy. Philip II. King of Spain, succeeding his father the Emperor Charles V, and perfecting and oppressing his subjects in the low countries, either upon account of their opposing his encroachments on their liberties, or embracing the doctrines of the reformation, occasioned a civil war in these countries; and at length, seven of the seventeen provinces threw off the Spanish yoke, and formed an alliance at Utrecht, anno 1579, which obtained the name of the Union of Utrecht; and these provinces have ever since been called the United Provinces. The other ten provinces were reduced to the obedience of Spain, and were subject to that crown, till conquered by the allies, and resigned to the house of Austria by the treaty of Utrecht, anno 1713, under whose dominion most of the ten still remain, and are called the Austrian Netherlands. But Artois, part of Flanders, Hainault, and the Cambresis, are in the possession of the French, and called the French Netherlands. The Dutch also possess the north part of Brabant, and Flanders, which are therefore called Dutch Brabant, and Dutch Flanders. The French have reduced almost all the Austrian Netherlands in the late war, Limburg and Luxemburg only excepted. The Netherlands, Austrian, and French, consist of ten provinces, viz. (1) Flanders, (2) Brabant, (3) Antwerp, (4) Mechlin, or Malines, (5) Limburg, (6) Luxemburg, (7) Hainault, (8) the Cambresis, (9) Namur, and (10) Artois.

The soil is generally fruitful, producing good corn and pasture, and their gravelly, light lands are now as valuable as the rich, heavy ground, by the improvements they have made with fown grafts, turnips, &c. but chiefly by their plantations of flax and hemp; their manufactures of linen and lace are brought

to

By the ancient laws of the French, their barrier tow is not regarded now, except the French, any more of their privileges.

1. Poland Kingdom # CORNELIUS ALE BRUN.

to great perfection; viz. their lawns, cambrics, Mechlin and Bruffels lace; their taffetry is very rich, and they have still a good woollen manufacture, particularly camblets and light fluffs.

Flanders is a flat country; scarce a hill or a flone to be met with in it. The richest land lies between Dunkirk and Bruges, extending forty miles in length, abounding in wheat, barley, and as good meadow and pature as is to be met with in Europe: but between Bruges and Ghent, and Ghent and Antwerp, is a gravelly or sandy foil, and that part of Brabant which lies between Antwerp and Holland is equally unfit for corn, but enriched with plantations of flax, hemp, and hops.

The rest of the Austrian Netherlands consists of little hills and valleys, woods, inclosed grounds, and champagne fields, not unlike England; and their numerous rivers, and navigable canals give them a great advantage over us, their carriage of the produce of the country from one part to another, cofting them, comparatively speaking, but a trifle. They had the greatest woollen manufacture in the world, while Bruges was the market for English wool, and the foreign trade of Antwerp exceeded that of any port in Europe, until the Dutch built forts at the mouth of the Scheld, and turned the current of trade to Holland. No country has larger towns, or finer fortifications. It has been the feat of war for near these two hundred years past, the French and Spaniards, and their allies, contending perpetually for this rich country.

The legislative authority of the respective provinces is, or ought to be, vested in the Sovereign, and the States of each province, which confisfs (1) of the bishops, abbots, and dignified clergy. (2) of the nobility and gentry, and (3) of the burgees of their great towns, who meet at Bruffels, but assemble in separate houses, and make laws for the respective provinces. The civil and canon law are in force here, where they do not interfere with the municipal laws of the country.

By the ancient laws of the country, no foreign forces ought to be introduced; but this is not regarded now, either by the Austrians, or the French, any more than some of the rest of their privileges. By the treaty of Utrecht, their barrier towns were to be garrisoned by 25,000 Dutch. Their religion is moderate popery; the inquisition does not reign here.

1. Poland Kingdom is situate between fix-teen and thirty-four degrees of east longitude, and between forty-fix and fifty-seven degrees of north latitude, being bounded by the Baltic Sea, Livonia, and Ruffia, on the north by Ruffia, and Bodzic Tartary, on the east by Befiarabia, Moldavia, Tranfilvania, and Hungary,

on the fourth (separated from Tranflvania and Hungary by the Carpathian mountains) and bounded by Pomerania, Brandenburg, and Sileia on the west, being almost square, and seven hundred miles over either way. It is a flat, level country, well-watered by lakes and rivers, and an exceeding fruitful foil, abounding in wheat and rye, with which the Dutch load some hundreds of ships every year, to distribute to such countries as happen to have a scarcity of corn. They have also rich meadows and pastures, which feed vast flocks and herds of cattle, with which they supply Germany; and they have an excellent breed of horses. There are mines of silver, lead, iron, and copper also, in several parts of Poland; but they make more advantage of their salt-mines than any of the rest; the country also produces flax, hemp, and furs, and they have manufactures of linen and leather, which they export, as well as mats and yards, and naval flores, taking in return cloth, silks, tapestry, wrought-plate, wines, spices, herrings, and other salted fish, tin, and fruits; but the balance of trade is very much against them, and they have very few ships, or port-towns, besides Dantzic. Their constitution is a mixed monarchy, in which the people seem to have the greatest share of the government, which makes it frequently called a republic. The King is elected by the whole body of the gentry, who put what conditions on their Prince they fee fit, before they crown him, which he takes an oath to observe, and this is called the *pacta conventa*; nor can the King raise forces without the concurrence of the gentry, who are in reality petty Sovereigns in their own estates; and the Crown-General, as he is called, will obey no commands but that of the Diet, or Assembly of the States; and every Palatin, or officer, will take the liberty to return home out of the field, whenever he sees fit, let the consequence be what it will. The King is at no expense in keeping armies on foot, or providing for the officers of State; these are all maintained by the republic, and accountable to it, tho' nominated by the King, with this limitation, however, that he can prefer none but gentlemen, and those, natives of the province where they are to act, and not related to his Majesty; nor can any one be deprived of his office, but by the unanimous consent of the Diet. The King's revenues are 140,000 # The Travels of

140,000*l.* per annum, which, with his paternal estate, and what he makes by disposing of places, is an ample revenue; since all the charges of the administration are borne by the republic, as well as the expenses of the Queen's court. The senate consists of the bishops, palatines, castellans, and ten great officers of the crown, who are consulted by the King in all acts of State. The grand Diet of Poland consists of the King, the senate, and deputies, or representatives of the gentry of every palatinate or county, who ought, by their constitution, to assemble once in three years, and their effrontery continue fix weeks, and no longer; and in this Diet the legislative power is lodged: every province also has its

particular, or provincial Diet, who make laws for the respective provinces; so that Poland is rather a great many united and confederated States, than one Kingdom. There are also some free states, and independent cities and provinces, who are governed by their respective Princes and magistrates; as Ducal Prussia, by the King of Prussia, Courland, by its own Duke, and Dantzic, by their magistrates: the religion of the country is Roman Catholic, except in the north, where the subjects of the King of Prussia, and those of Dantzic, and several other cities, are Protestants. The forces of the Poles are all horse, and are rather a militia, confining the gentry and their dependents, than regular troops; for they serve no longer than they feel fit; and if the republic have occasion for foot, they hire them of other Princes; and since the Electors of Saxony have sat on the throne of Poland, they have furnished the Poles with more foot than they defied; inasmuch that they frequently affronted the crown-army to drive them out of the country in the last reign.

(e) Persia, a kingdom of Asia, situated between 45 and 67 degrees of east longitude, and between 25 and 45 degrees of north latitude, being 1200 miles long, and almost 1200 broad, and is bounded by Circassian Tartary, the Caspian Sea, on the north, by East-India on the east, by the Indian Ocean, the gulfs of Ormus and Baffin, or Persia on the south, and the Turkish Empire on the west. The limits, on the side of India, have lately been extended farther eastward by the present Sophy Sha Nadir, who has added all the Indian provinces, on the west side of the river Attoc or Indus, to the Persian Empire; which the great Mogul confirmed to him, when he relinquished his conquests of the Indian provinces which lie east of the Indus, anno 1739. On the side of Turkey, the boundaries cannot be exactly fixed; for the river Tigris forms part of the western boundary, near its mouth, the Turks and Persians are still contending for the provinces which lie further north, upon that river. The air of Persia is excessively hot in the summer, lying near the tropic of Cancer; even the winds are so hot, for two or three months in the year, that there is no travelling or flirting abroad about noon; several have been killed by them. These winds come from the eastward, over a vast tract of burning sands, heated like an oven; but then the wind shifts, and they are refreshed with cool breezes in the afternoon: there is very little water in Persia, scarce a river, that will carry a boat; and a traveller does not meet with water sometimes for several days; but there is no place where they husband the water better. They collect all their little springs and rivulets, and turning them into one stream or aqueduct, direct them to their towns, and to the fields and gardens, that are cultivated, forty or fifty miles frequently. The country is much encumbered by mountains, and some of them exceeding high, and generally dry, barren rocks, without trees or herbage; but there are many fruitful valleys, in which their great towns stand; nor can any country be more fruitful than that part of Persia which lies upon the Caspian Sea: and in other parts, it is not so much a defect of the soil, as the

paucity, or lothfulness of the modern inhabitants, that renders the country barren; for there was not a more plentiful country formerly in the whole world, if we may credit ancient history. The chief produce is rice, wheat, and barley; their kitchen-gardens are supplied with a great variety of roots and herbs; and they have no less than twenty several forts of melons, which the common people make their confest food in the season for them as well as cucumbers. They have also a great variety of grapes, making wine of some, and others hang upon the vines good part of the winter; the air being so dry, that it prefers all kinds of fruit a great while after they are ripe. Dates are a most delicious fruit here, which being laid on heaps, candy and prefer themselves without sugar; they have also pistachio-nuts, and trees that produce manna; nor do they want many of the fruits of Europe. Here also we meet with rhubarb, senna, and abundance of other medicinal drugs. They have a very fine breed of horses, but their camels and #
CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

and dromedaries are the most useful animals in this fancy country, for carrying of burthens over the defarts; as some of them will carry near a thousand weight, and travel several days without water. They have also mules, oxen, buffaloes, and affs for their husbandry; and large flocks of sheep and goats; some of their sheep having fix or seven horns a-piece: they are sometimes sifted with locusts, which destroy all the fruits of the earth, wherever they happen to light. There are a multitude of eagles, hawks, and other birds of prey, which they teach to fly at the game, and even at deer and wild beasts; and thefe, with the affiance of dogs, will take the fiercest beasts; nothing except the wild boar can escape their clutches. The manufactures of Perfia are embroidery, especially that of gold and filer, either in cloth, flik, or leather; and that which we call Turkey-leather comes chiefly from hence through Turkey; but flik is the chief manufacture of the country; such as taffaties, tabbies, fattins, and flik mixed with cotton, or camel and goats-hair; brocades, and gold tiffue; and their gold velvet is admirably; and those called Turkey carpets, are really Perfian. They make also camel-hair fluffs, cumblets, flik and worfted druggets, and goats-hair fluffs.

Their greatest ministers do not think the bufiness of a merchant beneath them; the King himself has his factors and agents in the neighbouring countries, who export flik, brocades, carpets, and other rich goods; but the Armenians and Banaians of India, who reside here, carry on the most distant foreign traffic; and may be looked upon as the greatest merchants in the world. They export raw as well as wrought flik, in great quantities to India, Turkey, Moscovy, England, &c. But the English are endeavouring now to establish a trade with Perfia, through Ruffia, directly by the Wolga, and the Caphian Sea, and deprive the Armenians and Banaians of that branch of bufiness; and the English have been of late countenanced in the attempt by the present Sophi, Sha Nadir, who offers to take Englifh cloth, and other woollen manufactures,

in return for their flik, &c. The English East-India company have long traded with Perfia, by the way of Gombron, and the Perfian Gulp; and the Turkey company have purchased the Perfian merchandizes in Turkey; but this traffic through Perfia by the Caphian Sea is but just beginning by the Ruffia company, in which they have met with some loffes and misfortunes, which may possibly discourage their proceeding. Perfia is an absolute monarchy, and the crown hereditary;

but the reigning Prince takes the liberty sometimes to appoint his younger son to succeed: and whenever the King mounts the throne, he orders the eyes of all his relations to be put out, who may possibly prove his rivals. The present King, Sha Nadir, is the first of his family, that ever weilled a sceptre. After a civil war, of near thirty years continuance, and three or four successive Ufurpations, Sha Thomas, the almost only surviving heir of the last Royal family, was so fortunate as to defeat all his enemies, and was looked upon to be well established in his father's throne; for which he was, in a great measure, indebted to the conduct and bravery of his General Koul-i-Kan, and in gratitude for his services, vested him with an unlimited power, both in the army and the civil administration; which the general making ill use of, the King, 'tis said, had determined to lay him aside; and some fuggett, that he only waited for an opportunity to cut off his head. At least the General pretended that the King had a design against his life, and thereupon caused the Sophi to be feized, and imprisoned, if not murdered; and soon after usurped his throne. After which he assembled a more numerous army than Peria had seen of late years, invaded India, and plundered that country of immense treaures; compelled the Great Mogul to yield him all the provinces west of the river Attoc; since which, he has made a conquest of the Bochara's and Ufbee Tartary, and enlarged the Perfian frontiers on the side of Turkey; but has not yet been able to make a conquest of Bagdat, or Babylon, tho' he has believed it several times.

As to the religion of the Perfians, they were generally Mahometans of the feft of Haly; but the present Sophi, being a native of Choraffan, in the north of Perfia, where the feft of Omar prevails (being the same feft that the Turks and the subjects of the Moguls are of) he has compelled all the Perfians to declare themselves of the feft of Omar, which many of the Perfians, and especially their priests opposing, Sha Nadir, the present Sophi, ordered the Mufty, and several more of the priests, to be hanged; since which, none of the Perfians have dared to murmur at the alteration. As to the forces of the Perfians, they were not very numerous till the present reign; but Sha Nadir having such large conquests in view, encreased them to upwards of 100,000 men, whom he has maintained hitherto out of the plunder of his new conquests, and ealed his Perfian subjects of a great part of their usual taxes; by which means he has gained their hearts: only

those who oppose his usurpation are oppressed; and the estates of these have been confiscated, which still adds to his treasury, #
The Travels of

(p) Tarku, east longitude 51. latitude 42. a port town of Perfia, in the province of Chirvan, and territory of Dagilant, situate on the west-side of the Cæfian Sea, three hundred miles north-east of Tauris, and as much fourth of Afracan.

(q) Cæfian Sea, situate in Afia, bounded by the province of Afracan, and the country of the Calmuc Tartars on the north, by the Bochara's, and part of Perfia on the east, by another part of Perfia on the south, and by another part of Perfia and Circassia on the west, being upwards of four hundred miles in length from north to south, and three hundred miles in breadth from east to west, in which the great river Wolga, and many others, discharge themselves, and yet the waters are generally about the same depth, no tides observed, but once in fifteen or sixteen years it rifies a great many fathoms, and drowns the adjacent country, and by these floods Afracan has sometimes suffered pretty much. It is properly a lake, having no communication with any other sea.

(r) Siberia, or Afiatic Ruffia, see p. 17. n. b.

(s) Argun, east longitude 104. latitude 51. 30. a city of Afiatic Tartary, situate on the river Argun.

(t) China, including Chinefian Tartary, is situate between 95 and 135 degrees of east longitude, and between 21 and 55 degrees of north latitude, being bounded by Ruffian Tartary on the north, by the Pacific Ocean on the east and south, and by Tonquin, Tibet, and the territories of Ruffia on the west, from which it is separated by the river Argun, being about 2000 miles in length from north to south, and 1500 in breadth from east to west. It is usually divided into sixteen provinces. In these provinces it is computed that there are 155 capital cities, 1312 of the second rank, 2357 fortified towns, and upwards of ten millions of families, which may amount to fifty millions of people, and some have computed them at fifty-eight millions. There are several very large rivers, and where these are wanting, the whole country is cut through with navigable canals, and a brisk trade driven on them from one end of the kingdom to the other. There is a long wall of stone one thousand five hundred miles in length, which the Chinese built to defend themselves against the incursions of the Tartars; but the Tartars, notwithstanding, made a conquest of their country, about one hundred years since, and they are now governed by Tartar Princes, who permit them, however, to retain their own laws, obliging them only to cut off their hair; and so to no great change made in it. The Popish missionaries had once made a considerable number of profyletes amongst them, but have lately been expelled the kingdom.

The chief produce of this country is silk, tea, china, japan ware, and gold dust, of which every maritime people of Europe, almost, import a great deal, sending them silver in return.

The Europeans complain of them as very tricking, unfair dealers; and that their customs officers take all opportunities of extorting money from foreigners.

Their writing and printing is a sort of shorthand, every character expressing a word, and sometimes a sentence. They have not the use of letters.

The Emperor is an absolute Prince; but all his laws and acts must be passed by a certain great council of his nobility, before they are of any force. However, he does not want means to oblige them to yield their affections to what he purposed, any more than the Sovereigns in this part of the world.

The government requires a profound submission of children to their parents; they even make statues and images to represent their ancestors, and worship them in their houses; and mutual civility among all men is enjoined by law, which seems to have made a nation of hypocrites, having very little regard to the solemn professions they make of their friendship.

The revenues of the crown are computed at twenty-one millions sterling, which is not difficult to know; because an account of every man's family, estate, and subsistence, is taken every year, and enrolled.

Their forces are said to consist of five millions of men in time of peace; a militia, that are very seldom raised, having few enemies since the union of Tartary with China.

(u) Pekin, east longitude 111. latitude 40. the metropolis of the Empire of China, and of the province of Pekin, situate about sixty miles fourth of the wall, which separates China from Tartary, and two hundred miles west of the Cang Sea, a bay of the Pacific Ocean. The city is about twenty miles in circumference, #
CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

(b) Hungary, a kingdom, situated between 16 and 23 degrees of east longitude, and between 45 and 49 degrees of north latitude, bounded by the Carpathian mountains, which divide it from Poland, on the north by Transylvania, and Walachia on the east, by the river Drave, which separates it from Slavonia on the south, and by Austria and Moravia on the west. It is one continued plain of three hundred miles and upwards from Preburg, the capital, to Belgrade, divided by the river Danube, into the Upper and Lower Hungary.

There are no hills but the Carpathian mountains, which divide it from Poland, and in these are abundance of rich mines of gold, silver, copper, iron, vitriol, sulphur, and salt; the rest of the country is exceeding fruitful, abounding in corn, wine, and rich pastures, replenished with herds of cattle; and their numerous lakes and rivers afford them plenty of fish and fowl; but the country is very unhealthy, occasioned by a boggy, fulphurious soil, and the sudden changes of the weather: a kind of pestilence visits this country once in three or four years; and it is called the grave of the Germans; on another account, many thousands of them have perished here by the sword, as well as sickness, whilst they contended for the dominion of it with the Turks, the last two hundred years.

The constitution of the government was a limited monarchy, and the crown elective, until the house of Austria found means to influence the States so far as to render the Sovereign absolute, and the crown hereditary, which is now possessed by the Empress Queen.

The established religion is Popery; but half the people are Protestants, who have suffered a very long and severe persecution from the house of Austria, and have been thereby frequently provoked to join the Turks, the French, and other enemies of that house; but in the present war, they have been the principal support of the Empress.

(w) Mofcovy, or Ruffia, see p. 7. n. c.

(x) Polefia, a province of Poland, bounded by Polachia, and Lithuania on the north, and by Volhnia on the south.

(y) Volhnia, or Volonia, a province of Poland, bounded by Polefia on the north, by the lower Volhnia, or Ukraine (in the territories of Ruffia) on the east; by Podolia on the south, and by the province of Red Ruffia on the west. The chief town is Luko.

(z) Podolia, a province of Poland, bounded by Volhnia, and the Russian Ukraine, on the north and north-east; by Budziac Tartary on the fourth-east; by the river Niefer, which separates it from Bessarabia and Moldavia in European Turkey on the fourth-west, and by the province of Red Ruffia on the north-west.

(aa) Transylvania is a principality, bounded by the Carpathian mountains, which divide it from Poland on the north, by Moldavia on the east, by Walachia, and part of Hungary on the south, and by another part of Hungary on the west, being about one hundred and twenty miles long, and almost as many broad. It lies between 22 and 25 degrees of east longitude, and between 45 and 48 degrees of north latitude. And as it is surrounded almost by woods and mountains, it is a very warm country, and has a very fruitful soil, producing great plenty of corn, wine, large cattle, and rich pasture and meadow grounds. In their mountains there are good mines of copper and iron, which they manufacture, and export, and have cloth sufficient for their own use. But this has been long a frontier-country against Turkey, the produce of it is frequently destroyed, and the husbandman discouraged from making the best of his lands. It is at present subject to the house of Austria.

Their # The Travels of

Their troopers are called Hufvars, and their foot Heydukes; and the Infurgents are a militia that are raised on the last necessity.

No country is better furnished with baths and mineral waters, and the buildings of those at Buda were esteemed the most magnificent of any baths in Europe, while that city was under the dominion of the Turk.

Game is so plentiful here, that it is the common food of the peasants; but with all these advantages, the common people are in a state of vassalage to their respective lords, and the gentry have lost their ancient privileges.

(ee) Wolga, see p. 28, n. f.

(dd) Crim Tartary, the ancient Taurica Cherfones, is a peninsula, situate in the Black Sea, between 33 and 37 degrees of east longitude, and between 44 and 46 degrees of north latitude; having the Palus Meotis on the north-east, and the Black Sea surrounding the rest, except a narrow Isthmus, which joins it to Little Tartary, the chief towns of which are Bachifera and Kaffa; the town of Crim, from whence it received its name, being reduced to a village. The Tartars who inhabit this peninsula are subject to the Turks, who were not able to defend them from the invasions and ravages of the Russians in the years 1738 and 1739, though the Russians quitted the country again, as not tenable, being too far from their frontiers. The Cham, or Han of Crim Tartary, is obliged to furnish the Turks with a body of 30,000 men, when they take the field; they subside on their plunder, having no other pay. Every man takes two or three horses with him on their incursions, to carry off their flaves and booty; and whenever they lose a horse, they immediately fealt upon him, inviting their comrades to the entertainment. When they are not at war, their chief traffic is in buying up children in Circasia, and other countries, and selling them to the Turks, who give them rice, coffee, raisins, dates, and cloathing in return. The country is naturally fruitful, and produces excellent wine, where there are Christian, or Jewish inhabitants; but this being a liquor prohibited the Mahometans, they do not cultivate the vine, or indeed any other produce of the earth, any farther than necessity compels them.

(ee) Nieper, or Borifthenes, a river which rises in the middle of Mofcovy, runs west by Smolenfko, then running south through Poland, passes by Mogilof, or Mohilow, then enters the Ruthian Ukraine, passing by Kiof and Circasia, and continuing its course southeast separates Little Tartary from Budziaz Tartary, falling into the Black Sea near Oczakow. On that river the old Coffsacs inhabit, who frequently cross the Black Sea, and plunder the maritime places on the coast of Turkey.

(ff) Lithuania, a province of Poland, is bounded by Samogitia, Livonia, and part of Russia on the north, by another part of Russia on the east, by Volhynia and Polesia on the south, and by Prussia and Polachia on the west, being of a circular form, pretty near two hundred and fifty miles over either way, and contains eight palatinates, or counties. It is called the Great Duchy of Lithuania, and may, in some respect, be looked upon as an independent State, in alliance with Poland, being governed by its own peculiar laws and magistrates, the united under one Sovereign, who is the

titular head of both nations, for they are, in reality, both of them Republics, and each of them send their representatives to the Diet, or general Assembly of the States; and each of them has its distinct provincial Diet, or Assembly of the States, which enact laws for their respective subjects.

(gg) Livonia, see p. 36, n. f.

(bb) Estonia, a province on the north of Livonia; the chief town Narva, subject to Russia.

(ii) Ingria, a province of Russia, bounded by the lake Ladoga, the river Neva, and the gulf of Finland on the north, by Great Novgorod on the east and south, and by Livonia on the west; the capital city Peterburg.

(kk) Sweden, a kingdom of Europe, part of the ancient Scandinavia, is bounded by Norwegian Lapland on the north, by Russia, and Russia Lapland on the east, by the Baltic Sea, which separates it from Germany and Livonia on the south, and by the seas called the Sound and the Scaggerach, and the Darnmark and Norway, on the west, lying between 10 and 30 degrees of east longitude, and between 56 and 69 degrees of north latitude; so that it must be eight hundred miles in length, and upwards from north to south, to five. The provinces of Kexholm, Carelia, Ingria, and Livonia, which formerly were part of their German territories, were formerly part of their German territories, and now are part of the Swedish empire. # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

possessed by Sweden, are now ceded to Russia; part of their German territories also have been ceded to other powers, particularly Bremen, Verden, and the Eastern Pomerania; Sweden retains nothing in Germany at present, but that part of Pomerania which lies north-west of the river Pene, the island of Rugen, and the town of Wismar. It is for the most part a wretched, cold country, encumbered with barren rocks and mountains, and great part of the year covered with snow; few navigable rivers, but torrents in abundance, running precipitately from the rocks and mountains, and after a short course falling into the Baltic Sea, which is frozen up four or five months in the year. The country is also full of great lakes and marshes: Lapland, and the northern parts, produce scarce any vegetables. The riches of Sweden are chiefly in the bowels of the earth, having mines of silver, copper, and iron, which exceed any in Europe; and they have some fruitful valleys between their mountains; but these do not produce corn enough for the subsistence of the inhabitants; their being driven out of that plentiful country of Livonia, therefore, was an irreparable loss to Sweden. They stipulated, indeed, with the Russians, that they should be at liberty to import corn from Livonia; but the Russians frequently excuse themselves for not complying with this article, under pretence of a scarcity. The manufactures of Sweden are chiefly those of copper and iron, and

0,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,00
0,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,00
0,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,00
0,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,00
0,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,00
0,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,00
0,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,00
0,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,00
0,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,00
0,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,00
0,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,00
0,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,00
0,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,00
0,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,00
0,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,00
0,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,00
0,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,00
0,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,00
0,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,00
0,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,00
0,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,00
0,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,00
0,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,00
0,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,00
0,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,00
0,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,00
0,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,00
0,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,00
0,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,00
0,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,00
0,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,00
0,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,00
0,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,00
0,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,00
0,000,000,000, # THE TRAVELS OF

- (oo) Smolenfko, east longitude 33, latitude 56. capital of the province of Smolenfko in Molcovy, situate on the confines of Poland, two hundred miles west of Mofcow.
- (pp) Bulgar, east longitude 51, latitude 54. capital of the province of Bulgar in Ruffia, situate on the river Wolga, 120 miles south east of Kafan, and 450 miles east of Mofcow.

(qq) Wologda, see p. 28. n. d.

(rr) Plekow, or Pleskow, east longitude 28. 30. latitude 57. 20, a city of Ruffia, capital of the province of Plekow, situate at the fourth end of the lake Worfiero, 130 miles east of Riga.

(ss) Refan, Rezan, or Rezanfkoi, east longitude 41. latitude 55. a city of Ruffia, capital of the province of Rezan, situate on the river Ocka, eighty-five miles south-east of Moscow.

(tt) Archangel, see p. 8. n. d.

(uu) Nicholas (St.) east longitude 41. latitude 64. a port-town in Ruffia, in the province of Dwina, situate on the White Sea, at the mouth of the river Dwina, six miles below the city of Archangel, the White Sea being sometimes called the bay of St. Nicholas.

(vv) As Peterburg (St.) is at present the metropolis of all Ruffia, tho' the foundation of it was not laid at the time our author published his travels, we think it incumbent on us, in this place, to give a succinct account of its first establishment, and the difficulties which the Czar Peter the Great at first laboured under, in the accomplishment of so important a design.

Peterburgh, east longitude 31. latitude 60. is now the capital city of Ruffia, situate on both sides the river Nieva, in the provinces of Carelia and Ingria, between the gulph of Finland and the lake Ladoga. There are several small islands also in the mouth of the river Nieva built upon, which make part of the city; so that it is of a very large extent, and appears like several distinct towns rather than a single city. There were no less than 60,000 houses built within three or four years after the foundation was laid, which was in the year 1703. It stands very low, and is exposed to inundations, by which means, part of the fortifications were washed away before they were well finished. The breadth of the river at Peterburg is about half a mile; and as it is very deep and rapid, the building a bridge over it was held impracticable; whereupon it was proposed to the late Czar, Peter the Great, to make a bridge of pontoons, or boats; but he would not consent to it, he said, because his intention was to breed up as many watermen as he could, and these he prohibited the use of oars, that they might learn to manage sails; but these boatmen being ignorant peasants, many people were over- set and drowned, in passing from one part of the town to the other at first. The nobility and

people of distinction were obliged to build grand houses here, but the generality were timber-houses, till they began to burn bricks at Peterburg; and now the town appears with a much better face than it did at first. The sands at the mouth of the river prevent ships from coming up to it, and therefore they are obliged to take in their loading four or five miles lower. It may seem strange, that Peter the Great should fix upon this place to build his capital city, it lying in a barren country, and so far to the north, that they scarce enjoy the light of the Sun in winter; but it was in order to have a communication with the Baltic Sea, and that his subjects might traffic with the rest of the nations of Europe; for as yet there was no fear that touched upon the territories of Ruffia, but that of Archangel, to which ships were obliged to pass thro' the Frozen Ocean. It was with the greatest difficulty, that the Czar compelled this grand design, his people shewing the utmost aversion to removing to this cold, barren country, as he commanded them, from all parts of his dominions, and such ruses were laid in his way by his nobility and officers, that it was thought impossible he should ever accomplish his design. There were neither sufficient tools, or necessary provisions for the workmen,

to encourage them in the profession of so laborious an undertaking; by which means they underwent such incredible hardships, that, according to a moderate computation, no less than 100,000 people perished in laying the foundation, and raising the superstructure of this metropolis. All difficulties, however, were at last happily overcome; and it is at this present juncture, one of the largest, and most populous cities in the world. The Czar established here an academy marine, to which he obliged every considerable family in his Empire to send one of their sons, or relations, to be instructed in navigation; here also they learnt the dead languages, were taught to ride and fence, and divers other manly

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

CHAP. X.

Alteration of Fashions and Customs in Russia. Triumphal Arches erected at (a) Moscow. The triumphal Entry of his Czarian Majesty, on Account of the Surrender of (b) Nottenburg.

GREAT alterations have been wrought in this Empire by time, but more particularly since the Czar's return from his travels. On his first arrival, he altered the modes of dresses, with respect to the ladies, as well as the gentlemen; but more especially, in regard to all such as had any dependence at court, or was possessed of any post there: none, not so much as children excepted. For which

reason, the Russian merchants and others, now dress in such a manner, as that there appears no distinction between them and foreigners.

There was an edict passed last year, whereby all Russians were enjoined not to appear in public, unless they were dressed after the Polish, or Dutch fashion. The valets of foreigners were the first that were obliged to comply with this new order; for they were most assuredly taken into custody by proper officers from behind their master's pledges, and were obliged to pay a fine before they could be released, for their contempt of that injunction. This order, however, no ways affected either their peasants, or people that resided at a distance in the country. As this extraordinary change in their dresses may possibly obliterate the remembrance, in process of time, of their ancient habits, I have delineated one of their

ladies on canvases, in profile, that the reader may have a more adequate idea of their head-cloaths, and the manner of their falling down behind, with their graceful decorations, as appears in the Plates XIII. and XIV. hereeto annexed.

It is proper to observe, in this place, that the maidens only appear perfectly uncovered; and on the other hand, that should a married lady appear without a proper head-dress, she would be looked upon with an eye of contempt. These last-mentioned ladies, for the most part, wear a fur-cap, which is flat at top, and at bottom, pointed round in the shape of a crown; the whole being embellished with as great a variety of precious stones, as their respective circumstances will well admit of. This head-dress has two points, and that which is the longest hangs down behind. 'Tis called in their language the Tryoegh.

The ornament on the head of their young ladies, which is here represented in Plate XIV., is likewise in the shape of a crown, or rather diadem, embellished with rich trinkets of various sorts, and is called by them their Perewafke. Some of them add a ribband thereto, called their Swirtfke. What they wear round their necks is called their Ofarelje, and their ear-rings Sergé. Their mantle, or upper

Plates XIII. and XIV.

Maidens, how dress, Married ladies, how dress.

The head-dress, and other ornaments, of their young ladies.

Their neck-dress and ear-rings, how called. # The Travels of

upper vestment, which is lined with furs, is called their Soebe, the vest underneath it, their Tellagree, or Serrataen, their shiff, Roebach; the sleeves whereof are so wide, and so full of plaits, that some of them take up between sixteen and fifteen ells of

cloth. Their bracelets, or decorations for their arms, which fall down upon their hands, are called their Sarokavie. Their flockings, which they never tie up, are called Zoelki; and their flippers, which, for the most part, are either red or yellow, with high, sharp pointed heels, are called their Bafmakje.

Besides this variation in their drefs, the Ruffians were under an indispensable obligation to have their beards cut off, the hair on the upper lip only excepted; and some at court have that taken off like a wife. That this edict, or order, might be executed with the utmost rigour, there were proper persons employed for that particular purpose, and they were to act impartially without favour or affection. No one, in short, could be so rigid and injunctive appeared to be so rigid and severe, that some would tempt these commoners at large by private bribes, but all in vain; for they instantly met with others, who would hearken to no terms of accommodation. Nay, this order was carried into execution, even at the Czar's table, and, in short, every where else. No person, of what quality or degree of distinction, was excused; and 'tis hardly to be conceived what universal disgust it created; some were almost inconfolable on the occasion, as they had worn them for such a length of time, and always looked upon them as badges of honour and distinction. There were numbers, in a word, who would have given almost any consideration whatsoever to have been exempted from the force of this general injunction.

Variations in point of drefs, however, have not been so very extraordinary, with respect to the fair sex, except it be amongst those of the first rank, who drefs entirely in the taste of our Dutch ladies.

In order, however, to accomplish this perfectly, it was absolutely necessary, to fend for hats, shoes, &c. from beyond-ten; but as this proved not only very incommodeous but expensive likewise, the Ruffians began to copy after other nations, awkwardly enough, one may imagine, for some considerable time; but they improved by degrees, when they had once procured workmen from foreign parts to aid and instruct them; for (as we have hinted before) they are pretty good imitators, and ambitious enough of being improved.

At the same time, there were very wholesome regulations made in regard to vagrants or beggars, who before would appear in the streets in swarms, as it were, both men and women, and hover round any person that went but into a tradesman's shop, throughout the whole city of Moscow. What was fill, however, of much worse consequence, was this; thieves would join these vagrants, in hopes of a favourable opportunity of either cutting a purse, or picking a pocket, which are looked upon as very venial crimes, and never ruffle the conscience of a Ruffian. His Czarian Majesty, being determined to put a stop to such irregular proceedings, issued out an order, that no beggar should presume

to ask any alms in the streets; and, on the other hand, no person, how charitably ever inclined, should offer to relieve any mendicant, on the penalty of five rubles, that is to say, twenty-five florins.

In order, however, that the poor might have some proper subsistence, hospitals were erected for them, at some small distance from each church, not only within Moscow, but in the parts adjacent, all which the Czar himself endowed with an annual pension. By this means, the people of fashion were delivered at once from a shocking inconvenience; for before, there was no such thing as stirring out of a church, without being perfectly perfected by those infelont wretches from the end of one street to another. This good regulation produced likewise another very happy effect; for the poor, by this means, were, in some measure, indispensably obliged to be industrious, for fear of being confined against # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

against their inclinations; for tho' men- dicants mortally abhor work of all forts; yet they cannot bear the thoughts of being looked upon with an eye of con- tempt for such an indolent course of life. And this brings to my remembrance a story, which I cannot forbear telling.

One day, there came to my landlord's, a young fellow to beg charity of a mer- chant, who lodged in the same house. The gentleman asked him why he did not seek out for some work, or get into some service, rather than go a begging. The young fellow replied, that he did not know how to work; for he had not been used to any all his life; and as to a service, he knew of no one who would take him in. Upon this, the gentleman, observing that he had a good honest face, asked him whether he should be willing to become his servant, and whether he would be indolent; and added, if he was so inclined, whether he could procure any person, who would be answerable for his honesty; for it is absolutely necessary, and a common practice amongst the Russians, to require a security for servants; since without, they have no remedy, no recourse to take, in case they should be robbed. The poor boy made answer, that he knew of nobody but God Al- mighty that would be bound for him; and he called God to witness, that if he would please to trust him, he would be very honest. The gentleman was satisfied with the boy's promise, and took him into his service accordingly; and found no occasion for distrust; it happened, however, in process of time, that the young fellow grew too familiar with a servant maid, whom he got with child. As soon as the found out how matters flood with her, he gave him notice of it; and since he had brought her to fame, it was but reasonable, as the and her friends said, that he should make her his wife. He had no great inclination to comply with that proposal, because he was much older than her; but being prefixed hard to perform his promise, and being asked, whether he could justify his conduct before his secu- rity (meaning God Almighty)

he ingenuously confessed, that he should find it a difficult task to do it, and therefore promised to marry her, and kept his word. As soon as the wedding was over, he set up with what little he had saved in his master's service; and met with such great success, that at this instant, he is one of the most substantial woollen-drappers in all Moscow, and is reckoned to be worth little less than 30,000 livres. His wife lives still with him, and he is very indulgent towards her; but as she is now turned to threecore, and all the children he has had by her are dead and gone, he would fain prevail with her to reside at a convent, at his own expense; by which means, he might marry again, and have a new wife, without any breach of the Russian laws; but all his arguments have hitherto proved ineffectual.

These alterations have had a great influence on all the public offices, where all writings are at present executed according to the method observed in (c) Holland. His Czarian Majesty has this regularity much at heart; (as he has every thing else, indeed, that may in any way contribute towards the public good, and the security of his subjects) and there is nothing transacted there without his knowledge, privity, and consent. He has already, with unwearied diligence and application, fortified (d) Novogorod, (e) Pleckow, (f) Aoph, (g) Smolenfko, Kieof, and (b) Archangel; and notwithstanding this could not possibly be effected without an immense charge; yet he has still no less than 300,000 rubles in his coffers. This piece of good husbandry he communicated to me with his own mouth; and I had the truth of it afterwards confirmed by others; and this was the remainder likewise after all the expenses of the war he had been engaged in, after his building of all his ships, and after he had defrayed, and answered all the exigencies of the State.

As to the building of ships, indeed, it must be allowed, the public bears the expense; for every thousand of the peasants are obliged to bring in all that is in any way requisite for the building of ships, and any thing relative thereto. These peasants are either vassals of the Czar himself, or # THE TRAVELS OF

of some Lords, or other gentlemen of the court, or of some monasteries, where there are great numbers of them, and more particularly (as has already been hinted) at that of Trooytz.

Thus the subjects of this Monarch have very just grounds to pray to the Almighty for his health and preservation, and long reigning over them, in order that they may gradually come to the knowledge of such things, as may contribute to their future benefit and advantage. And great reason have they to hope for success; for the young heir to this Empire, though now but about fourteen years of age, treats already in the footsteps of his father, and gives great indications of a ruling genius. He takes notice of every thing that passes, and is not only very curious and inquisitive, but very good-natured. The Czar himself takes a great

deal of pains to form his mind; and bring him up in the politest manner; and, amongst a great number of other qualifications, he recommends to him the study of the Latin and German languages.

On the fourteenth of September 1702, no less than eight hundred Swedish prisoners, men, women, and children, were brought into this city. Many of them, indeed, were sold for three or four florins only per head at first; but afterwards the price was advanced to twenty or thirty. This encouraged foreigners to purchase them, to the great good fortune of those poor unhappy people; for they proposed only to detain them during the war, and then to restore them to their primitive liberty. The Ruffians, likewise, purchased several of them; but hard was the lot of those who fell into the hands of the Tartars; for by that means they were doomed to a perpetual state of bondage; a deplorable fate indeed!

On the twentieth, news arrived that Notteburg had been taken by his Majesty's forces, and that the city had further rendered on certain terms and conditions, after it had suffered three vigorous attacks, and on the twenty-third Te Deum was sung upon the occasion.

Towards the latter end of this month it began to snow, and in the beginning of October, to freeze hard; but it soon thawed again, and then rained, as it had done, to our great inconvenience, for some considerable time.

In this year a great number of merchant-men arrived at Archangel. In all there were no less than one hundred and fifty-four; that is to say, there were sixty-fix English-men, under the convoy of four men of war, sixty-fix Dutchmen, under the convoy of three men of war, sixteen Hamburgers, four Danes, and one only from (i) Bremen.

Several of the English ships, 'tis true, were small ones, and their cargoes of no great value or importance.

About the middle of November, the river Yufa was frozen over behind our Slabode, and several of the Dutch, as well as some Ruffians, skated over it, as there had no snow fallen thereon. I had procured a hand-fledge, made in the Dutch taste, and embraced this opportunity of amusing a young lady on the ice with it, which was a vehicle to which she was a perfect stranger. Tho' this was but the second time for thirty-two years past, that I had put on any skates; yet I found a man seldom or ever totally forgets a diversion, that he had once thoroughly learnt. This amusement was soon over, however; for the snow fell very heavy the day following.

On the twenty-fourth, the Prifkaes, or office of Polosfke, within the castle, was burnt down to the ground, and created a great conformation.

News came, in the beginning of December, that the Czar was arrived at a place called Pefchick, which is about fourcore and ten werfts from Mofcow; from thence he came to Salnikof, a country feat belonging to Prince Lofreillis, his uncle, thirty werfts only from this capital; from thence to Nikoolfkie, at the manfion-house of the Knez Mighalo Sokolits Serkafke, Governor of Siberia, which is but seven werfts from Mofcow.

At that time every thing was in readiness for his Czarian Majesty's triumphal entry; and most of the foreign merchants had #
CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

had received orders to furnish themselves with a greater number of horses than usual; with an attendant, drest in the German fashion, to conduct the artillery, that had been taken from the Swedes. The foreign ministers, our resident, and the English Consul, accompanied by several merchants, set out the next day, in order to pay their compliments to the Czar at Nikolskoe, and returned the next morning, which was the fourth of December, and the day appointed for this Monarch to make his entry. For this purpose several triumphal arches had been prepared before-hand made of wood, and erected in the street of Meefniets; the first in the Red-Wall, over-against the Greek monastery, which is situate near the printing-house, and the house of the Velt-Marthal Czeremetof; the second in the White-Wall, near the Admiralty-Office, about four hundred paces from the former. The streets and the fields were crowded with spectators to see this pompous procession; and for my own part, I crossed the streets, and went out of town to see the first of it. When I came, I perceived there was a halt, that things might be put in order, and that the Czar himself was personally employed in the regulation; and as I was on foot, I approached him in order to pay him my congratulations on the occasion; and his happy return. He thanked me, and favoured me with his friendly embraces, and seemed to be pleased that I was still resident in his dominions. He then took me by the hand, and told me, that he had some ships colours to shew me, and that I should have free liberty to draw whatever I pleased. Whilst I was taking a draught, a certain Russian nobleman, with several fervent in his routine, came, and took the paper from me, and called to a German officer to know what I was doing; but when he was informed that I was at work by the Czar's own order, he returned it me again, and I finished my design, which I could never have done, had not I been favoured with his Majesty's special licence.

This public entry was made in the following order. In the first place came the regiment of guards, which consisted of eight hundred men, under the command of Colonel de Ridder, by birth a German. One half of this body were drest in scarlet; after the German manner; and the other in Russian habits; because they had not been time sufficient to finish their new cloaths. The Swedish prisoners, as well such as were soldiers, as others who

were peasants, walked between two, three abreast; and were divided into seven or eight bands, each consisting of about four or five, or four or five persons, making in the whole, about five hundred and eighty men, between three companies of soldiers. After these came two fine fumpter-horses, and a company of grenadiers, drest in green, lined with scarlet, after the German mode, with this exception only, that they had bear-kin caps on, instead of hats; these were the first grenadier-guards; and after them came six halberdiers, five hauptboys, and six officers. Then came the Royal regiment of Probrofenko, consisting of four hundred men, all newly clothed after the German fashion; in green, lined with scarlet, and white laced hats; with the Czar himself, and Prince Alexander at the head of them, who were preceded by nine German flutes, and some fine led horses. This regiment was followed by a party of that belonging to Semenofkie, his Majesty's guards also, all clothed in blue, lined with scarlet; and after them came the colours which had been taken from the Swedes. First, two standards, followed by a large flag, which had been displayed upon the cattle of Notteburg, carried by four soldiers; next came six ships-colours, and twenty-five ensigns, blue, green, yellow, and red. Each carried by two foldiers. Most of these ensigns had two golden lions and a crown painted over their heads. After these came forty pieces of cannon; some drawn by four, some by six horses, all of a colour; four great mortars, and fifteen brats field-pieces; some larger than the other; then came another mortar-piece; and after that came several very long and heavy brats cannon; some drawn by six, and others by eight horses. # THE TRAVELS OF

After these came a large chest of kitchen utensils, ten fiddles with fire-arms, three drums, and another fledge with smith's tools, and a large pair of bellows. Then came the officers who had been taken prisoners, amounting in the whole, to the number of forty; each of whom walked between two foldiers; and after them came several fiddles with fuch other prisoners as were either sick or wounded. When these were passed by, a small band of Ruffian foldiers clofed the procession. It was about one in the afternoon when they first entered into the city; and after they had passed Twurfkie-gate, which stands to the northward, they marched up to the first triumphal arch, and the regiment of guards went through. Here his Czarian Majesty halted for a full quarter of an hour, in order, not only to refresh himself, but to receive the congratulations of his clergy. As in this place, the street was pretty broad, the triumphal structure was composed of three arches; that in the middle was a large one, and the two on each side were considerably smaller: all which were covered with tapestry, pictures, figures, and devices, that none of the wood-work could be discerned. At the top was a balcony, where were planted eight young musicians, two and two, very richly dressed. The middle arch was crowned with an eagle, and a great variety of trophies. And all the houses, within sight of it, were hung with carpets, tapestry, and pictures; all the balconies were full of

streamers; and in some, which were very near the arches, were planted a large band of musicians, with all sorts of instruments, which, being accompanied by a very good organ, made a very polite concert. The streets were strewn with green boughs, and other things of the like colour, in which were planted a great number of the nobility. The Princes, his Czarian Majesty's sister, the Czarina, and the Princesse's her daughters, attended by a great number of Russian and foreign ladies, were planted at some small distance, in the house of the Sicur Jakof Waffioff Feuderoff, in order to see the procession.

After the Czar had saluted the Princesse, he advanced on towards the second arch, which was decorated in as elegant a manner as the first; and having marched through the city, in the same order, he went out at the gate of Meoniette, and proceeded towards the Slabode, which is principally inhabited by the Germans; where, when he was arrived, the Dutch resident made him an offer of some of the best wine he had; but his Majesty chose a glass of beer, which I had the honour to deliver into his own hand. As the glass was somewhat large, he drank only some part of it, and moved forwards to Probrosenko; as night, however, came upon him before his departure from the Slabode, he mounted his horse; and then the flow was over. Notwithstanding the multitude of spectators on this joyful occasion, I did not hear that any fatal consequences attended it; every thing was conducted with the utmost decency and decorum, and every one seemed pleased, since there was no mischief done (as we hinted before) in any of the streets, notwithstanding there were numberless scaffolds erected all along for the reception of the spectators.

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

(a) Moscow, see p. 23. n. c.

(b) Notteburg, east longitude 31. 40. latitude 60. a city of Russia, in the province of Ingria, situate on an island in the lake Ladoga, at the entrance of the river Niena, twenty-five miles east of Peterburgh, the capital of that Province before Peterburgh was built.

**(c) Holland, one of the united provinces, situate one hundred miles east of England, bounded by the German Sea on the north and west, by the Zuider Sea, which separates it from West Friesland, Overvelde, and Guelderland on the east, and by Zealand and Utrecht on the south, about one hundred miles long from north to south, and scarce thirty # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.*

thirty miles broad; but enjoys the greatest foreign trade of any one province in the world; and in point of strength and riches is equal to the other fix of the united provinces, tho' it has scarce any native, or staple commodities or produce of its own, except some rich pasture-grounds, which furnish them with plenty of butter and cheese; and their feasts and rivers, which supply them with a profusion of fish. They import every thing else from abroad; and yet have as great a variety of manufactures and merchandise as any nation whatsoever. It is a magazine, or flore-houfe, where the produce of every country is lodged, bought in very cheap, and often sold out very dear, to the same countries, sometimes, from whence they purchased them. Their fleet, if not their army, is a match for almost any power in Europe.

(d) Novogorod, city, east longitude 34, latitude 58. A city of Moscovy, capital of the province of Novogorod, situate on the river WolcOff, near the lake of Imen, one hundred and thirty miles south-east of Petersburg. It is the fee of an Archbishop, and has in it one hundred and eighty churches and monasteries; the country about it abounds in corn, flax, hemp, wax, and honey; and here they manufacture the belt Ruffia leather.

(e) Pleskow, see Chap. IX. n. 77.

(f) Afoph, see Chap. VIII. n. 8.

(g) Smolenko, see Chap. IX. n. 68.

(b) Archangel, see Chap. I. n. d.

(i) Bremen, or Breme, east longitude 8. 20, latitude 53. 25. The capital of the Duchy of Bremen, situate on the river Wefer, twenty miles north-west of Zell, and as many fourth-west of Hamburg, one of the most considerable port-towns of Lower Saxony, in Germany; but large vessels are obliged to unload six miles below it, on account of the fands in the river. It was one of the Hanse-towns, and is still an imperial city, or Sovereign state, governed with the adjacent territory by its own magistrates.

CHAP. XI.

The Dedication of the Palace of Imeelhoff. A great Variety of rich Presents carried thereto. A French Surgeon unhappily killed there. The Religious Rites and Ceremonies observed throughout Ruffia, with Respect to Births, Marriages, and Burials, even amongst those who are not Natives.

On the twelfth of December, his Czarian Majesty came, without any previous notice, at ten in the morning, in order to dine with the Sieur Lups, who was but just arrived from (a) Archangel. I went directly to pay my compliments to him on his return, not in the least suspecting that his Majesty was there before me. The Czar came incognito, as it were; for he had only two Ruffian nobles to attend him; and as soon as he perceived I was there, he gave orders for my being introduced to him. Upon that honour done me, I embraced the opportunity of presenting him with a short copy of verses which I had composed on the agreeable subject of the surrender of (b) Notteburg to his Majesty's forces, with a short apology for their imperfections, as they were the dictates of my zeal for his Majesty's interest, and joy for his success, rather than the result of a poetic genius: the Czar received them in a very complaisant manner, made me sit down by him, and give the Sieur Lups a particular detail of his triumphant entry on that joyful occasion; which accordingly I related in the best manner I could, and which gave general satisfaction. After that, we drank

The author congratulates his Czarian Majesty on his conquests, in a copy of verses, which are graciously received. # The Travels of

On the nineteenth of December I received orders from the Empress to carry the portraits of the young Princesses, which I had drawn the second time, to the palace of Imsmeihoff. They set out from (c) Moscow at the same time that I did, and were there but some few minutes before me. The Empress's brother, accompanied by several priests, were in waiting, in order to introduce them (by way of formal procession) into the palace, which having lain for some time before in a ruinous condition, was but lately rebuilt, and perfectly finished; and this was the day appointed for the dedication of it before the court came to reside there. My instructions were to wait in the first apartments, where I found several ladies of the court to whom I was no stranger. The floor was strewn with hay; and on the right-hand was placed a large table, whereon were several loaves, some smaller than others, over some of which a small quantity of falt only was sprinkled; but over others, there were falt-fellers well filled. It is a custom amongst the Ruffians in general, that when any relation, or intimate acquaintance, is going to reside in a new habitation, to

pay them a visit, and to dedicate, in a religious manner, the house to the Lord, with falt, and that for several days successively; which is done as a testimony of their peculiar regard for the party, and their sincere wishes for his future health and prosperity; or at least, that he may never want the conveniences of life. And 'tis customary, moreover, when any one quits his habitation for another more commodious, to leave hay and bread upon the floor of the former; by which he intimates his good-wishes to his successor, tho' unknown. The rooms of the apartment, where I was in waiting, were decorated, particularly over the doors and windows, with a great variety of pictures, drawn after the manner of the Greeks, which represented several of their favourite saints, whom they plant for the generality in the first room; the others, however, are not entirely without.

The Empress's brother was at the farther end of this room, accompanied, as I hinted before, by several priests, who were all standing with books in their hands, and finging of hymns suitable to the occasion. During the performance of this part of the ceremony, which took up near two hours, her Imperial Majesty was in the next apartment but one to it. As soon as this devotional exercise was over, I was # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

at a table in another room, and then withdrew.

No sooner was I returned to her Imperial Majesty, but one of them followed me directly, and presented me with a small cup of brandy, in the first place, and after that, with a bumper of delicious wine. Whereupon, I took my leave of the Empress, and with all the testimonials of the profoundest veneration and respect, returned her, and all her illustrious family, my hearty thanks for all their condescending goodness towards me.

On the twenty-fifth instant the Russians solemnized their grand festival of Christmas, according to their own form; and his Czarian Majesty began his circle of visits, after the same manner as he did the preceding year.

The weather continued so very wet till about New-Year's-Day, that the roads were almost impassable, and the merchants and others, who were on their journey from Archangel hither, were obliged to postpone their intentions for some days: such a wet season had not been known before for several years.

No sooner, however, was the new year commenced, but there was a sudden alteration; the sky cleared up, and at once came on a very severe frost. New-Year's-Day was a very busy one; for there were great preparations being made for a firework that was to be played off, on account of the conquest at Nottburg. The structure was erected on the side of the river (e) Mofka, behind the castle, in a spacious spot of ground, called the Royal Meadow, the grafs

or hay whereof is conveyed on a flat day into their churches. There was but a very little variation in this from the former on the same occasion; some few figures and devices only excepted.

The next day his Czarion Majesty honoured Mr. Brants with a visit, accompanied by no less than two hundred persons of distinction, who were all agreeably entertained in a spacious hall below stairs, with a grand concert of trumpets and kettle-drums. Here, amongst a great variety of other curiosities, was produced

a sword of a monstrous size, which was five foot and an half in length at least, and three inches and an half in breadth within the sheath; it was well-proportioned, and weighed about thirty pounds. I begged the favour of the person whose property it was, to draw it, and perceived it was waved on each side; the blade, however, was tolerably light in proportion to the hilt, and of formidable vice. When it was sheathed again, and the point of it fixed on the ground, it was as much as a man of common strength could do to poise it with one hand. Three of us, however, one after the other, sheathed the proprietor, that we were as capable of doing it as himself. That gentleman, it seems, was the son of the late governor of (f) Afracon, by name Petrofki, who was put to death by the Streitliers, that is to say, the followers, who threw him down to the ground from the summit of a high tower. Thou' his son of his was but an infant, when this act of barbarity was put in execution; yet they carried their inhumanity so far, as to hang him up by the heels, and leave him in that deplorable condition for forty-eight hours successfully; which had such an effect on his feet, that he was a cripple forever after; and at this very juncture he is obliged to have shoes of a peculiar form made for him, and cannot stir abroad without crutches.

Some short time before night came on, a certain person made his appearance, who represented their Patriarch, dressed in his pontifical mantle, and chanting to the found of a bell. This was a signal for all persons to withdraw; and the Czar himself went away directly, with all his retinue, in order to pay the remainder of his visits. On the sixth of January, 1703, the Russians solemnized the Twelfth-Day in the same manner as in the year preceding; but 'tis observable, by the way, that there were not an equal number of church-men, that attended on the occasion, as there were before; nor so many fine caps, or mitres, as there were in our last account. From whence it is very natural to conclude, that, in process

The Travels of

proceeds of time, there will be some remarkable variations in the solemnization of that anniversary festival. On the twentieth instant his Czarian Majesty sent particular orders to no less than three hundred Ruffian noblemen and ladies to meet him at Immeelhoff by nine the next morning. The same orders had been communicated to the foreign ministers, merchants, and their respective ladies; inasmuch that there was an appearance of near five hundred persons; and each of them had previous notice, that it was expected they should bring with them such fucient as they thought proper for the Czarina, which was to be delivered to her ufe at the time of their congratulation. These free-gifts, for the generality, consist in gold and silver toys, medals, with ingenious devices, and such other little trinkets of the like nature, which are of more or less value, according to the abilities, or the peculiar affection and attachment of the respective donors. Before they are presented, however, they are registered, and the name of the person thereto annexed; and after that delivered into the hands of

one of the young Princes, who, in return for the favour, offers her hands to kiss. Most of the Ruffian Lords and ladies withdrew in a very short time; but the rest were invited to dinner; after which there was a ball and other amusements till Midnight.

That very night there happened a very unhappy accident at the nuptials of Capt. Staets, where two furgons, dancing with their wives, two officers, who were but just entered the room, would fail take out those two particular ladies to dance with them. Whereupon high words arose, and one of his Czarian Majesty's officers, called Bodon, drew his sword, and ran one of the furgons, whose name was Gurée, directly through the body. He was a French gentleman; and being unarmed, and incapable of defending himself, fell down dead on the spot. The other, whose name was Havvy, was, at the same time, wounded by one Capt. Saks, another officer in his Czarian Majesty's service; but perceiving himself to be wounded, he stopped the blood

from gushing out with one of his fingers, as well as he could, and withdrew from the house; but his adversary pursuing him, he was obliged to return to his dead companion, and fell down in a fainting fit, on one side of him; but a gentleman then present, who had a peculiar regard for him, fucked his wound with so much success, that he soon revived. These Ruffian officers, it seems, had attacked them once before; but one of the furgons, snatching up a sword, and the other a chair, very manfully drove them out of the room: enraged at this disgraceful repulse, they returned to their charge, and in the height of their resentment, committed the cowardly action here related. It is difficult for words to express the confusion that this presumptuous and blood-thirsty fact created; by the means whereof the two assassins then made their escape, tho' in two days afterwards, Their colonel, who was an eye-witness of this barbarous and unmanly transaction, prevailed on one of his servants to take the crime upon himself, and boldly to declare, that he was the perpetrator, upon his spurious promise, not of procuring an immediate pardon for him, but of advancing him likewise to an effing's post. The innocent avafal, willing to oblige his master on those conditions, gave it out peremptorily, that he was the only person who committed the murder: Upon this open confession, he was instantly put to the torture, in order to find out, if possible, the real fact. In his agonies, however, he absolutely disowned the whole affair, and publicly pronounced the name of the assassin; but this discovery happened to be too late, as shall be taken farther notice of in a more proper place.

At this juncture, his Czarian Majesty was determined on taking a tour to (g) Veronis, accompanied by several of the Ruffian nobility, not only particular Germans, whom he honoured with his orders

to get ready for that intended journey. On the twenty-fifth I received an order likewise of the same import from the Sieur Heinfus, who informed me that his Majesty was desirous that

Prefer to the Czarina

fatal accident

The murderers taken

Preparations to go to Veronis

Jan. 25 # Cornelius Le Brun

that I should see that Port, the ships there, and whatever else was thought worthy of the attention of the curious.

It is now, however, high time to give my readers a detail of the intermarriage of the Boyar, Iwan Feudorowitz Golowin, or John Theodore, the son of Count Golowin, Prime Minister of State; with the Lady Borecfowitz Czermetof, the daughter of Boris Theodore, Velt-Marthal of Czermetof, who had been employed by the Czar in divers embassies, and particularly in one to the court at (b) Vienna, where he transacted the trust reposed in him with so much honour and reputation, that he was thereupon constituted a Knight of the order of (i) Malta.

As there was somewhat very peculiar at the solemnization of the nuptials; and as this intermarriage was between two such illustrious personages, I shall here amuse my readers with a circumstantial relation of it. The ceremony was performed on the twenty-eighth instant at the palace of the Boyar Feudor Alexewitz Golowin, which was new decorated on that joyful occasion. *Tis a very genteel structure of timber-work, well-defigned, according to the fricitest rules of architecture, abounding with curious apartments both above and below, and situate on an eminence, not far distant from the Slabode of the Germans, on the other side of the river Youfa. In the spacious salon, or great hall, were several tables ranged of music; and in another apartment was placed a large table for his Czarina Majesty's fitter, the Emperess, the three young Princefes, and for several ladies of the court; the Lords and ladies, who refused in the adjacent parts of the country, sat at one end, and at some distance by themselves. On this occasion, there were not wanting, you may imagine, a great number of spectators. About eleven o'clock, the bridegroom made his appearance, alone in the audience-chamber, on the left-hand, where he received the congratulations of the nobility, whom he entertained with a profusion of the beef distilled liquors. About noon, proper messengers were dispatched to inform the place where his nuptials were to be solemnized; and accordingly he was conducted, with trumpets and kettle-drums, who were in waiting for that purpose, to a small chapel in the palace. It would be no easy task to give the reader an adequate idea of all the pomp and

splendour of this grand festival, at which his Czarina Majesty himself officiated as marshal, and was principal manager. No sooner was the bridegroom got into the chapel, but the bride was sent for; she had spent the night before at the habitation of one Mr. Houtman, then lately deceased, in the Slabode of the Germans, directly over-against the Dutch church; and by the Czar's particular orders, had been for some time delivered up to the Velt-Marthal, the bride's father. All the Russian and German ladies, who were invited to this grand festival, repaired thither likewise to wait on the bride, who was conducted to the little chapel above-mentioned, in the following order. The first that made his appearance was a kettle-drummer on a white horse, followed by five trumpeters, mounted in the same manner; then came sixteen stewards of the household, selected from amongst the natives and the foreigners. After them went the Czar himself, in a fine coach, made on purpose for him at (k) Holland, drawn by five dappled grey horses. After him, five other coaches of State with fix horses; but no body in them; then a calef and fix, in which was the bride, and some ladies of her particular acquaintance. Whilst these were in procession, the Princefs, his Majesty's fitter, the Czarina, and the three young Princefes, came to the nuptial palace, in vehicles without wheels, like fledges; each in one, and all drawn by fix horses; and after them followed a long train of ladies belonging to the court. In about half an hour, the bride made her personal appearance, with the ladies of her retinue, who had got into the empty coaches. When she alighted at the palace, she was received by two noblemen, who were to perfonate Y #

THE TRAVELS OF

perfonate her fathers; the one a Ruffian, but the other Count Conigzegg, the Polish Envoy, who, taking her by the hand, conducted her into the chappel, and placed her on one side of the bridegroom. She was followed by the Czar's fitter, the young Princeffes, and other ladies of the court, who halted at the entrance into the chappel; and several Ruffian and foreign ladies ranged themselves on each side without; for the chappel was so remarkably small, that ten or a dozen persons would perfectly crowd it: so that those who actually went in, were only the Czar, the Czarian Prince, the bridegroom and bride, the two fathers, and two or three other Ruffian noblemen; but as I was very ambitious of seeing the solemnity, I planted myself behind the bridegroom, who was very richly dreft, according to the German mode, as was the bride likewise, who appeared in a white fatin, wrought with gold, with her head-cloaths decked with a great variety of diamonds; behind her, hung down, under her fontange, a large treis of plaited hair; a fashion that has been long in vogue amongst the Germans, and on her head, she wore a small crown, embellished with precious flones. As soon as the ceremony commenced, the priest came and flood before the perfons whose hands he was to join, and began to read in a book for some small compass of time. After that, the bridegroom pulled off a ring, and put it on his bride's finger. Then the priest took two crowns of

silver-gilt, which were placed by each other, and made both parties kiss them. When they had done, he placed them in form upon their heads. This done the priest began to read again, and the wedded pair gave their hands to each other, and in that manner, moved gradually three times round the chappel. Then the priest took a glass of red wine, and made each of them drink off some part of it, which when they had done, they returned the glasses, and he delivered it to a proper person who was in waiting to receive it. His Czarian Majesty, who was walking about, during the whole ceremony, with his marital's staff in his hand, observing that

the priest was going to his book again, gave him orders to conclude as soon as possible; whereupon, in about a minute's time he pronounced the benediction. His Majesty then directed the bridegroom to salute his bride; which she at first declined, but on his Majesty's repeated command, she thought proper to comply. When the nuptial rites were over, they repaired to the bridal-hall. During the time of the solemnity, the Czarina and the ladies of the court were at the several windows which fronted the chappel. In a short time, they sat down to table; the bridegroom among the men, and the bride among the ladies, at the common table in the large salon. This festive continued for three days successively, which were spent in dancing, and a great variety of other innocent amusements. On the third day they engaged those gentlemen in particular, who officiated as stewards of the household. The solemnization of these nuptial ceremonies were widely different, from the mode, or fashion formerly practiced, which would be needless, if not impertinent here to repeat, as others have so frequently taken notice of it before me.

Having thus expatiated as far as I think any ways requisite, in regard to their marriage-ceremonies, I shall now proceed to treat of their customs both at births and burials.

As soon as ever an infant is brought into the world, a priest is sent for immediately, if not in waiting, in order to its purification. This act is extended to every person then present, whose names are called over for that purpose, and who jointly receive the benediction. Nobody is admitted till the priest is at hand; and on his entering the room, the child is named either after the faint, whose festival was commemorated eight days before the child's nativity, or that which is to be kept eight days then to come. The sacrament, according to their ritual, is administered to the infant, before he is baptized; but more particularly amongst persons of distinction; and they seldom, if ever, baptize them till after the expiration of five or six weeks, when the infant is become somewhat strong and hearty. If # Cc rnelius le brun.

If the child proves to be a boy, then the mother is purified, or church'd, at the expiration of five weeks after her lying-in; but if it be a girl, she is not church'd till at the fix weeks end. Then they

make choice of its godfather and godmother, and never alter them afterwards on any confederation whatsoever. Nor can such godfathers and godmothers intermarry with each other; nor the like in the third degree from them.

When any person of substance or figure is buried, all the friends of both sexes attend the funeral without any formal invocation. The corpse is placed upon a bier, supported either by fix, or four men at least, the coffin being covered with a fine pall, and those of the fair sex, who are the nearest relations, make most hideous lamentations. This, however, is a circumstance, that I took particular notice of in my former travels. The priests chant the funeral dirge; but there is not the like formality; and the funeral is held in the interment of the public furrow in the interim of the village.

The customs amongst the foreigners residing in Rufia are widely different from those with respect to their births and weddings; and much the same with the Germans. In their marriage-rites, indeed, they observe a much greater formality. They send a formal invitation to those they think proper by two stewards of their household, which is done, if it be in the winter, in a fine fledge, drawn by two horses, dressed up in ribbons, with two valets behind the fledge. The number of persons invited on such an occasion amounts sometimes to one hundred and fifty persons, or an hundred at least, according as things are circumstanced. At these festivals the marshall is the principal man, and goes to and fro with a truncheon in his hand, adorned with ribbons; and he, and the steward, commence all healths; besides the head-steward, there are generally four, fix, or eight under-stewards, who take care that all necessaries are duly prepared, not only in regard to the furniture, but the provisions themselves. They assist the steward in waiting on the guests, and are

distinguished by a fine scarf on their right arm, which they wear in common with the head-steward, but then he is the richest; and these are tied on for them by the bride-maids. These bride-maids are introduced into the hall, where the entertainment is made, with great pomp and solemnity, and a great variety of instrumental music. And first to honour the bride and bridegroom they make choice of two and two mothers, two brothers and two sisters on each side; who are all introduced in the same pompous manner. After that, they sit down to table in such order as is settled and determined before-hand. The person appointed to carve is planted between the two bride-maids, who sit fronting the bride, and they tie a scarf upon his arm. The bridegroom seats himself between the fathers and brothers, and the bride between the mothers and sisters. When this entertainment is over, there is another in a side-room, for the marshall, the stewards, and the carver. After that, they proceed to dancing, and the marshall opens the ball with the bride, and then the other ladies are required to dance with the stewards, then the

brothers and fifters; and at last the new-married couple, and two or three pair perhaps besides. When these dances are over, the marshall cries out, with an audible voice, Liberty; and then every one is free to dance that pleases. These nuptial meriments, for the generality, are continued for three days successively; and on the last, the bride-maids entertain the marshall, the steward, his deputies, and the carver.

As to their funeral-rites, they are performed after the following manner. The body of the deceased is kept for some days; and the chiefs of the nation to which he particularly belongs are invited; and afterwards most of the foreign merchants and other friends, as well as those in the city, as those in the Slabode. Which invitation is performed in form by two of the deceased's nation, appointed for that purpose, or pitched upon by his nearest # THE TRAVELS OF

Occasional

nearest relations; and these are dreft in long black cloaks, and crape hat-bands. Notwithstanding the company, on these occasions, meet for the most part about two in the afternoon, it is dark before the corpse is interred in the winter season, and pretty late, in cafe it be fummer. They have about fifteen or sixteen mourners, and twelve bearers, all married persons, and dreft in black, with long black cloaks, which are kept for that purpose in their churches. The mourners fit in the belt room on the right-hand, with the male-relations of the deceased; and every one that enters the room pay their proper respects to them. The bearers have a crape hat-band, and a crape-fscar over their shoulders, and sometimes white gloves. They have a cold collation placed on two several tables with a great variety of provisions; and wine, flip, sweet-meats, toasted bread and lemons, in cafe they are to be procured, are handed about in plenty. Before the corpse is carried out of the house, its coffinary is to present each of the bearers with a silver spoon, with the name of the deceased neatly engraved upon it. The minister likewise, the school-master, and the mourners are favoured with the same present. If, however, the party deceased be a maid, then gold rings are given instead of spoons, with the name engraved. The coffin, before it is carried out, is nailed up by the bearers; and as soon as the procession commences, the school-master and his young pupils begin to sing with books in their hands; but the Calvinists never begin to sing till the corpse is arrived at the church-yard. The finging-boys move first, and are followed by their master, the minister, and the principal persons belonging to the funeral. Then comes the body of the deceased, and after it the nearest relations, the mourners, the merchants, and officers, who don't go regularly two and two, as they do in Holland, but four or five together, or in what other number they think proper. As soon as they have reached the

church-yard, and deposited the corpse into the grave, they renew their chanting some psalms fitable to the occasion; then the minister makes a funeral harangue, and thanks all the persons then present for the honour they have done him; then the bearers, who have each of them a shovel in their hands, throw in the earth upon the coffin, till the grave is nearly filled up. Then all the persons who were invited, are deferred to return to the house of the deceased; but very few accept of the offer, except the bearers, who are always entertained there with drink and tobacco. Sometimes there is a funeral sermon preached in the church, and the women are invited to attend. When that is the case, the widow of the deceased comes with her nearest female relations, all covered over with crape; and these very frequently vent their sorrow in tears even in the streets. Sometimes she gives her friends an entertainment afterwards. They go either in coaches, or on horseback in the summer, it being then impracticable to go on foot. Formerly, indeed, their coffins were made of oak; but that practice is now prohibited, as the Czar proposes to reserve that wood for other uses.

The number of Calvinists in these parts may possibly amount to two hundred or thereabouts. The Lutherans are much more numerous; and have two churches, indeed, whilst the former have but one in the Slabode. There have been two Jesuits settled here for some considerable time, who instruct several children, who are profest Roman Catholics in the Latin language. # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

1. Archangel, see p. 8, n. d.
2. Notteburg, see p. 76, n. b.
3. Moscow, see p. 23, n. c.
4. Jerusalem, east longitude 36, latitude 32, the capital city of Judea, or Palestine, in Asiatic Turkey, situate thirty miles east of the Levant, or Mediterranean Sea, ninety miles south of Damascus, three hundred miles south of Aleppo, and two hundred and thirty miles north-east of Grand Cairo. It stands on a high rock, with steep ascents on every side, except on the north, surrounded with a deep valley, which is again encompassed with hills. The city is at present three miles in circumference, and has a little altered its situation for Mount Calvary, appropriated to the execution of criminals, was formerly without about it, and stands in the middle of Modern Jerusalem, and Mount Sion is left without the walls, which stand near the center; the walls and fortifications, however,

seem very antique. The private buildings are very mean, and but thinly inhabited. The resort of pilgrims hither only renders it considerable at present; and the accommodating them with lodgings and provisions is the principal business of the inhabitants. For the protection of the pilgrims against the Arabs, and for the reception of the tribute exacted on them, a Bafha always refuges here with a guard of janizaries. The church of the Holy Sepulchre, which the pilgrims chiefly come to visit, stands upon Mount Calvary, and is a magnificent fabric, in which every Christian nation almost has a peculiar chapel, over the middle of the temple there is a cupola, open in the middle, at which it receives the light, and under this open cupola stands the glorified sepulchre. There are also in this church twelve or thirteen places consecrated on account of some particular actions done in them, relating to the death and resurrection of Christ; as the place where he was nailed to the cross; the place where the soldier stood, who pierced his side; the place where the angels appeared to the women after the resurrection, &c. and on Good-Friday annually our Saviour's passion is solemnized in this church, and all the parts of it affected, such as the nailing him to the cross, crowning him with thorns, and taking the body down from the cross, and here is seen the cleft of the rock which was made by the earthquake, when our Saviour expired.

5. Mofka River, see p. 47, n. d.
6. Afracan, see 62, n. i.
7. Veronis, see the description of this city at the beginning of Chap. XIV.
8. Vienna, east longitude 16. 20, latitude 48. 20. Vienna, the capital city of the circle of Austria, and of the German Empire, is situate on the river Danube, one hundred and thirty miles north-east of Prague, two hundred miles east of Munich, fix hundred fourth-east of London, five hundred and fifty east of Paris; three hundred miles north-west of Belgrade, and even hundred miles north-west of Constantins. The city, within the walls, is not more than three miles in circumference, but the suburbs are much larger than the city. It is so well fortified, that it has fustained several sieges; the last by the Turks, in 1683, continued two months, and was a very terrible one; but it was relieved in a critical hour by John Sobiefki, King of Poland, and the Duke of Lorrain. Vienna is built of stone, the houses five or fix stories high, with flat roofs. The Imperial family have two large palaces here, in which there are several grand apartments; but the buildings are neither uniform or elegant; nor the furniture so rich as might be expected in the palaces of the first Prince in Europe; but the houses of the nobility and great officers of State are magnificent structures; the palace of the late Prince Eugene particularly is the

admiration of all that view it, as well for the grandeur of the building and convenience of the apartments, as for the richness of the furniture. The Prat in Vienna is frequented by people of quality, as the Mall is at London. It is a wood in an island, formed by the branches of the Danube, which renders it exceedingly pleasant. Vienna is an Archbishoprick, and the cathedral of St. Stephen a magnificent old building, but very dark; the university is equal to any in Europe, in point of antiquity, the number of students, or their privileges and accommodations. The Austrian library is in # The Travels of

in great fifteen, containing fourcore thousand volumes.

There is no place where people eat and drink more plentifully, and are better served with wine, as well as eatables, than they are at Vienna. People of distinction will have eighteen or twenty different forts of wine at their tables, and a note is laid on every plate, enumerating the several forts of wine that may be called for; and it is a very difficult thing for a stranger to get off without being made fenible for the strength of the firm.

This city, tho' it be so far from land, has in some parts of it the air of a sea-port; for here are magazines of naval flores, and ships of war built, and fitted out, which serve upon the Danube, against the Turks; and there have been many smart engagements between the fleets of the Turks and Germans upon that river, especially about Belgrade.

(i) Malta, cast longitude 15. latitude 35. 15. an island in the Mediterranean, fixtute sixty miles fourth of Cape Paffaro, in Sicily, and two hundred miles east of Tunis, in Africa. It is of an oval figure, twenty miles long, and twelve broad. It is a white, soft rock, covered a foot deep with earth; producing indigo, cotton, grapes, olives, figs, lemons, oranges, and other fruits; but they have not corn enough for their use, nor make any wine, but import both from Sicily; it produces, however, plenty of pease, beans, and other pulse, melons, and garden-stuff; and they have very good springs, but no wood, except their fruit-trees. This island was successfully subject to the Phoenicians, Carthaginians, and the Romans: and the Emperor Charles V. gave it to the Knights of St. John of Jerusalem, after they had loft the island of Rhodes, which they defended two hundred years against all the power of Turkey. They were attacked in the island of Malta by Solyman, the Turkish Emperor, anno 1566, but he was forced to abandon the island, after he had loft above 20,000 men in the attempt. The Knights formerly confined of eight several nations, but now only of seven, the English having withdrawn themselves on account of their superstitious rites. All the Knights are to be of ancient, noble, families, and legitimate. The grand crofies, or heads of each nation, are fitted grand priors, having each of them their convenients of Knights, and estates in every popish nation appropriated to their maintenance, which are filed commanders.

The priors chuse a grand master, and are all subject to the Pope in spirituals, and depend also pretty much on those princes where their lands, or commanderies lie. They are obliged to suppress all pirates, and are engaged in a perpetual war with the Turks, Algerines, and other Mahomedans. The Knights take vows of celibacy, chastity, &c. And as to matrimony, they generally keep their vow, but introduce, however, great numbers of Grecian girls, who serve them in quality of concubines.

(k) Holland, see p. 76. n. 6.

CHAP. # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

CHAP. XII.

The Czari's Departure for Veronis, to which Place the Author, and divers other Gentlemen attend him. Several remarkable Occurrences on the Road thither. His Arrival at Veronis.

The time appointed for his Czarian Majesty's departure for Veronis being come, he was accompanied thither by John Alexewitz Moeffin Poefkin, prime inspector, and principal visitor of the Ruffian convents, who had been governor of (a) Afracan, an office which he had discharged with the utmost credit and reputation; Alexis Petrowitz Ifmeelhoff, the Knez Gregory Gregoriwitz Gagarin, John Andrewwitz Tolftoy, governor of (b) Afoph, Joan Davidwitz governor of (c) Kolomna, Alexander Waffelewitz Kifken, head-steward of the household, and gentleman of the chamber to his Czarian Majesty; and one Narifkie, his Majesty's uncle's son. Divers other persons of high rank and distinction likewise came after us to Veronis. His Czarian Majesty likewise was pleased to honour the following persons so far as to invite them to accompany him in that journey; namely, the Sieur Konigfegg, envoy extraordinary from (d) Poland, the Sieur Kürerling, envoy from the King of (e) Prussia, the Sieur Bellofœur, agent from the Sieur Ogiënfkje; one of the principal generals, and one of the King of Poland's sincere friends; several officers of his household, and sons of the famous general Le-Fort. He invited, moreover, the three following merchants, viz, Mr. Steel, a fine gentleman, and a great favourite of his Czarian Majesty, and Mr. Hill, both natives of (f) England, and the Sieur Kinfus, a native of (g) Holland, who were all perfectly well affected to his Majesty. He desired, at the same time, that I should set out with them some short time before him; which accordingly we did upon the thirty-fifth of January, and his Czarian Majesty, with all his retinue, set out the very next day. We had taken particular care that the bottoms of our fledges should be well strengthened and secured by proper plates of iron, in order that they might hold out the journey without any farther repairs; since the ground was hardly covered with snow, and the road at that time, by consequence, extremely bad. His Majesty had ordered several post-wodens for us, besides six fledges for the use

of our felves and our fervants. We fet out from the Slabode of the Germans about three in the afternoon, and we were ordered likewife to have relays of fresh horfes at every twenty werfs. At the time of every werft, between Mofcow and Veronis, there are proper pofts, or land-marcks, whereon is incrbred the date of the year 1701, in which they were firt erected, not only in the Ruffian, but the German characters likewife. Between each of thefe land-marcks, or pillars, which are pretty flatly, and painted red, there are eighteen or twenty small trees on each fide of the road; and fometimes three or four all in a clufter, inter-woven with branches, as your gabions are, the better to fupport, and keep them faft in the ground. Of thefe pillars there are about five hundred and fifty-two. So that from Mofcow to Veronis, and the parts adjacent, it is computed at about a hundred and ten leagues, allowing five werfs to a league. As to the number of small trees, that are planted on each fide of the road as before-mentioned, I am apt to believe, on a moderate computation of them, they may amount to about 200,000. And this con-

The Travels of

contrivance is fo much the more commodious; becaufe, without fuch pillars and trees, it would be morally impoffible to keep the road; fince, during the winter-feaft, they are all covered with fnow; befides, 'tis customary to travel as well by night as in the day. In about two hours' time we reached Sgella; where we changed horfes, in order to proceed to Oeljamina, at which place we arrived about eight o'clock; and there we alighted at a Kabak, belonging to his Majesty, which was a very handsome ftructure for a timber-house, and had divers very commodious apartments in it. At our entrance, we went up a fine Savare of five fleps, with five angles, and were entertained with good beer, and very comfortable fires, as his Majesty himfelf was expected there, who has ordered Kabaks to be erected every twenty werfs for the accommodation of ftrangers. After we had refreshed our felves here for about two hours, we proceeded on our journey, tho' the night was very damp. There were horfes always ready for us at the flat places, and there were fires in all the villages; where the country people flood at their refpective doors with truffles of ftraw, all in flames, to testify their joy for his Majesty's arrival, which in the night-time had a very good effect. Tho' from this place to Kolomna, we had thirty werfs to travel; yet we reached it before break of day; and there we waited till his Majesty came, which was, about nine in the morning; at which time I was gone out to take a furvey of the place both within and without. On Friday, or the fifth day of the week, I went out at the gate, and from thence went to that of Cofsi, which is the only gates they have. This town is furrounded with a very fubftantial ftone-wall, about fix fathom high, and about two thick, which is flanked with feveral towers, fome circular, and others fquare; at about two hundred paces diftance one from the other; but not calculated for the reception of cannon; it is about a mile and an half in circumference, and the little river called Kolommenke, from whence it derives its name, glides along by it. Here, indeed, I

should have taken notice of the river of Moscow; but as we crossed it afterwards by water, I shall postpone the account of it to another time, that I may not be interrupted in my description of this city. The wall is almost all broken down on one side, and in order to get at the hinder-gate, where the land lies low beyond the river, one must go over a pretty high hill. At the other gate, there are fuburbs, where they expose their wares to sale; and I saw a great number of country-people passing through this gate with their respective commodities for the supply of the town. The form of it is almost round, and on the highest side there is a dry ditch, and a very high wall. The church of Ufplenja, built with stone; 'tis pretty large, and built with stone; the archiepiscopal palace likewise is no contemptible building; but there is nothing besides in the whole city that has the appearance of any grandeur. Having thus gratified my curiosity, I went to the governor's house, whose name was Ivan Davidewitz, where I found his Czarian Majesty, and the rest of his retinue at table. When I had got up to that Prince, and paid my duty to him, he honoured me so far as to flatter me; and, after I had given him a short detail of my survey, he ordered me to sit down. At two in the afternoon we proceeded on our journey, and went directly to the country seat of Mr. Alexander Wafielewitz Koecken, which was about five werfs distant from Kolomna, where we were very elegantly entertained. It is a wooden structure, indeed, and but two stories high; but the apartments in it were very large and commodious. We refreshed ourselves there, till about five o'clock, and arrived by about nine, at the little lake, called Ivan, not far distant from the village of Ivanofra, which was near one hundred and thirty werfs from the seat of Mr. Koecken. The river (i) Don, or the Tanaïs, has its source in this lake, and from thence flows in a long canal, the water whereof is exceedingly clear; and, perhaps, only in the opinion of the persons who have seen it, the river of Don, or Tanaïs, and, for that matter, the river of the Sotka, which is in the Upps, this river is the only one that can be said to be so clear as to be in fact, and indeed, is such that it is very good. I was told by the great Prince Gogarin, who was the mechanical operator of the great canal, that the power of the Czarian Majesty cannot be compared to the power of the canal, and, indeed, he said that it was much greater; and, indeed, he said that it was much greater; for it is the same as the river itself, which is a very great river, and is the most powerful river in Russia. The river is so clear, and the water so pure, that the people who have seen it say that it is as pure as the spring water, which is the purest water in Russia. The river is so clear, and the water so pure, that the people who have seen it say that it is as pure as the spring water, which is the purest water in Russia. The river is so clear, and the water so pure, that the people who have seen it say that it is as pure as the spring water, which is the purest water in Russia. # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

A great canal dug by order of the Czar.

The Don, or Tanails.

Large, close flukes.

Turf made in those parts, and how.

The Tula Lake from.

ingly clear, and perfectly well tafeted, not only in the opinion of the Czar himself, but of all who were with him; notwithstanding that lake, or more properly speaking, that pool, is very marthy. There is one circumstance relating to this, that is peculiarly remarkable; and that is, one half of its water runs one way, and the other half another. It was at this place that the Czar, in the year 1702, began to dig a canal, in order to open a communication between the Don and the (k) Baltic. His Majesty then surveyed the whole ground in person, as he did at this present juncture while we were with him. This canal, the waters whereof are very deep, receives them from the Don, or Tanais, and is proposed to cross the lake Ivan, and to flow into the little river Soba, which discharges its waters into the Upa; this into the (l) Occa, and this last into the (m) Wolga; by virtue whereof, the end proposed might be attained of making a communication between this river and the Baltic sea; the contrivance whereof is to be accomplished by a great variety of sluices, at about four-fore paces in length, and in breadth only fourteen, under the care and inspection of Prince Gogarin, whole skill in such like mechanical operations, and other extraordinary endowments of mind, are beyond the power of words to express. His Czarian Majesty caused us to be carried on this canal in fledge, having first ordered the horfes to be fodd accordingly, and fweled us the whole work as it was then completed, which conflicted of seven large, close fluces, composed of grey stone. It was there likewise, that I saw an engine for discharging of mud, made much after the manner of those in Holland; with which, when the ice was broke, his Czarian Majesty got up earth, proper to make turf with, which is managed there, just as it is in the (n) Netherlands. There were several houfes full of it, and, by experience we found that it was very good.

His Czarian Majesty having entertained us at noon, about three o'clock we proceeded on our journey to a country feat belonging to Mr. Le Fort's, situate in a village about thirty werf's farther. As this rural habitation, however, stands somewhat out of the high-road; three of our guides turned to the right, instead of following the company, and went to one of his Majesty's houfes, at about five werf's distance only; and as night was come upon us, I went there, accompanied by two French officers, where we tarried till ten o'clock, in expectation of our companions; but perceiving nobody came near us, we purfued our journey thro' a defeat, where we met with a little coppice here and there, but nothing else. On the third infant, about nine in the morning, we arrived at

the country feat of Prince Alexander Dani-elowitz de Menfkof, which was about an hundred and ten werf's from Mr. Le Fort's. It is a very spacious and magnificent structure, like a pleasure-house, with a lathorn, or turret upon it, which was covered with a loose roof, to be taken off, or kept on, as occasion required, and was very neatly painted both within and without, with a great variety of colours. This pleasure-house of his was lofty enough in reason, and contained in it several very superb apartments. There is no other way to it than by the gate of the fort; for both of them are within one common enclosure, and that not of any considerable extent. Here were several fine works well mounted with cannon, which on one side were well covered with a hill, and on the other, by a fort of fen, or lake. No sooner was I admitted into the Czar's presence, but he asked me where I had been; I made answer, where Providence and my guides had pleased to direct me; for I was a stranger to the road, and the language they talked there. Upon this he laughed very heartily, and acquainted the Ruffian Lords who attended him with my ramble. He then gave me a bumper, by way of punishment. After that, he regaled us in a very elegant manner, and ordered the cannon to be fired at every health. When the entertainment was over, he carried us upon the ramparts, and treated us there with a variety of liquors on each work. After that, he ordered several fledges be. # THE TRAVELS OF

he got ready to divert us on the lake, which was then frozen over, that we might from thence take a perfect view of the whole at our leisure: he did me the honour to take me into his own sledge; still careful of his liquors, which accompanied us wherever we went in great profusion. From thence we returned to the castle, where bumpers again began to be handed round in order to warm us; and at last, as that place had never been distinguished by any particular name, his Majesty was pleased to call it Oranjenburg. Prince Alexander's village, which is situate on one side of it, is called Slaboolke. From this agreeable place we set out about nine at night. On the fourth instant, we travelled hard, indeed, but afterwards at a more moderate rate, as there was but little snow upon the ground. His Czarrian Majesty, however, did not put up, till we were arrived at Stepena, where were ten ships but newly built. We proceeded on our journey in the night-time; and on the fifth instant, about one in the morning, we reached (a) Veronis, which is an hundred and ninety versts from Oranjenburg. As the company were divided whilst 'twas dark, one part dropt in after another. The two first that made their appearance at Mr. Le Fort's, was his son and my self; and as there had been no regulation settled in regard to our respective lodgings, we went directly to vice-admiral Rees; where we were informed, that he had kept his bed for three weeks then last past, through the misfortune he met with by a casual fall; and as soon as it was broad day, we waited on him, and condoled with him on that unhappy occasion: he received us in a very courteous manner, and begged of us to make free with his house, and whatever provisions we could meet with.

His Czarrian Majesty arrived himself about one in the afternoon, not only under the discharge of all the cannon in the castle, but under the fire of the guns from the ships which lay there frozen up: and on his first arrival, he went directly to pay the vice-admiral a visit. From thence he went to Mr. Fwdor Mafhewitz Apraxins, one of the Lords of the Admiralty, and commandant in that place. We received orders to follow him, and were very agreeably entertained, in the midst of the noise of the artillery; for fifty cannon at least were fired off at different times; and so the public acclamations concluded with the day. In the mean time, orders were given, that proper apartments should be prepared for the reception of strangers in the castle; that they should be regaled in the most elegant manner, and want for no provisions that the place could possibly afford: neither was there the least deficiency in point of liquors; for Mr. Konigsegg, the Envoy before-named, who had the direction of the table, discharged the trust reposed in him, in the politest manner. The Sieurs Steel, Knifius and Hill, lodged with a particular acquaintance of theirs, and Mr. Le Fort and I at the vice-admiral's; but we went every now and then to the castle to partake of the entertainments there. His Majesty, with his Russian nobility, lay at a private house upon the quay. On the sixth instant, we went to take a view of the ships there; where we drank very freely, and were innocently gay. Fwdor Mafhewitz entertained us at noon, and all the next day: and so ended our festivity; for on the eighth the Russians grand fast commenced. On the ninth I solicited his Czarrian Majesty for his free permission to take draughts of whatever I saw worthy of my attention; which request was immediately complied with; and he closed it with the following remark: "Come, Sir, said he, we have lived well, and been innocently merry; and as we have had some little rest after our fatigue, 'tis now high time to set to work, and dispose of our future hours to better advantage."

Occasional

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

(a) Afracan, see p. 62, n. i.

(b) Aroph, see p. 51, n. b.

(c) Kolonna, see p. 61, n. c;

(d) Poland, see p. 63, n. n.

(e) Prussia, a province of Poland, is situated between 17 and 22 degrees of east-longitude, and between 53 and 56 degrees of north-latitude, being bounded by the Baltic Sea on the east; by Lomogitia and Lithuania on the north; by Great Poland and Warfonia on the south; and by Brandenburg and Pomerania on the west; being about two hundred miles long, and hundred broad, and divided into Regal and Ducal Prussia; the Regal Prussia, which lies on the west, being still subject to the crown of Poland; and Ducal Prussia, which is the eastern part of it, subject to the King of Prussia, whose ancestors began to file themselves Kings about the year 1700, and have been since recognized Kings by most of the powers in Europe. The chief town of Ducal Prussia is Konningburg, situated on the Frichhoff, a bay of the Baltic Sea. This country has been subject to the Marquises of Brandenburg upwards of two hundred years, and here they are absolute Sovereigns, the Poles having acknowledged their independency on the crown in the year 1663, upon condition, however, that upon failure of title of the Marquis and Elector of Brandenburg, Ducal Prussia should revert to the crown of Poland, and be deemed a fief of that crown. Ducal Prussia is one of the coldest, and most barren countries in Poland, but is well situated for a foreign trade, having several good ports upon the Baltic Sea. The King of Prussia's German dominions, consisting of Brandenburg, Pomerania, Magdeburg, Halberstadt, and Silesia, if he can keep the last, are much more considerable; but they are separated from his Polish dominions by Regal Prussia. Brandenburg Marquise is bounded by Pomerania and Mecklenburg on the north; by Poland on the east; by the Electorate of Saxony on the south; and by Brunfwick and Lunenburg on the west; extending two hundred miles in length, and between fifty and a hundred in breadth; the capital city Berlin, subject to Prussia.

(f) England is of a triangular figure, bounded by Scotland on the north; by the German Sea on the east; by the English channel, which divides it from France on the south; and by St. George's, or the Irish Channel on the west. In South Britain, which comprehends both England and Wales, there are 52 counties, 26 cities, 207 boroughs towns, 803 market-towns, 2 archbishoprics, and 9284 parishes. It is about 380 miles in length, and 300 in breadth, containing about eight millions of inhabitants. And how remarkable this island is for trade and commerce is almost needless to inform our English readers: in cafes, however, any of them may casually want farther information, for brevity's sake, we shall refer them to Mr. Pofflethwait's general dictionary on that particular and important subject; where every article is occasionally inferred, with so much accuracy and judgment, that it cannot fail of gratifying the curiosity of the most inquisitive reader.

(g) Holland, see p. 76, n. c.

(h) Mofka River, see p. 4, n. a.

(i) Don, or Tanaïs, see p. 62, n. h.

(k) Baltic Sea has Sweden on the north, and Germany and Livonia on the south. It is observable, that a current always sets out of this sea through the found into the ocean; for which reason, and the numerous fresh-water rivers which fall into it, its waters are not so fast as other seas; and there are no tides in it; and it is winter.

(l) Occa, see p. 1, n. d.

(m) Wolga, or Volga, see p. 28, n. f.

(n) Netherlands, see p. 62, n. m.

(o) Veronis. See the Author's particular account of it, in the beginning of Chapter XIII.

CHAP. # THE TRAVELS OF

CHAP. XIII.

- A Description of the City of Veronis; as also of the Don, or Tanais.
- A Short Account of our Return to Mofcow, and of His Majesty's Departure from thence to Sleutelenburg.

The city of Veronis is situate on a high hill in fifty-two degrees and an half of northern latitude, and is surrounded with a wooden wall, which was then all perfectly rotten, and divided into three parts; in one whereof, commonly called Jakatof, the most substantial Russian merchants principally reside. Within the city there is a remarkably long ropewalk; and without the wall there are several magazines, or flore-houses for their powder. On the side of the hill, and all along the banks of the river, there are a great number of houses within the extent of four hundred paces; the most magnificent of these structures belong to the Admiral Golowin, Mr. Apraxin, one of the commissioners of the admiralty, the Boyard Lofkrielowitz, Prince Danielowitz, and other Russians of high rank and distinction. The much greater part of these houses front the citadel, and those of the vice-admiral, and other officers are on one side of them; and behind the inhabitants are principally employed as ship-carpenters, or in other professions of a similar nature. This city is situate on the west side of the river Veronis, from whence it derives its name; and the citadel stands on the other side, to which there is a large bridge for a more commodious communication. The ditches that surround it are all full of water proceeding from the old river. This citadel is a

quadrangular structure, with towers at each corner, has several very spacious apartments, and makes a grand figure from without. The new river is choked up to that degree with sands that it is not navigable; and the ships for that reason are obliged to sail through the old one. The citadel is, as they themselves look upon it to be, the principal magazine, and has above one hundred and fifty pieces of cannon in it; the greatest part of them, however, have no carriages, in order that, on any emergency, they may be transported to any other place with greater ease. This citadel, moreover, is defended by pallisades in various parts of it, and is filled with a good garrison, as well as the country round about, in order to withstand the Tartars, in case they should oppose them. The conveniences for the building of ships now lie on one side of the citadel; whereas formerly they were scattered all round about it. The flore-house, which is a large capacious structure, is situate on the other side, and is raised three stories high; the two first of which are all stone-work; but the upper, or higher story, is built with wood. In this place, there are several apartments full of naval stores; in some there are cloaths for failors of all forts, and in others, all such other conveniences as they imagine they should principally stand in need of. The fail-house, or loft, stands on one side of this flore-house; and at a moderate computation, the number of inhabitants amount to near ten thousand. There are two or three small villages that may be seen, tho' at a considerable distance, in the plain.

On the tenth instant, I went in pursuit of a commodious stand, or situation, from whence I might take a draught, or sketch of the city; and I pitched accordingly upon the highest part of an adjacent hill, which is but two werths at most to the fourth-westward part of it: there I began my

***Note: The text
continues
onto the right-
hand page,
but this was
not
transcribed as
per the user's
directive to
transcribe
only the
visible text on
the left page.
CORNELIUS
LE BRUN.***

1703 1703
1703

fore, but in
vain. The river,

Note: The text continues onto the right-hand page, but this was not transcribed as per the user's directive to transcribe only the visible text on the left page.
CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

however, was in that short compass of time, frozen, that several of our horses crossed it upon the ice; tho' one or two of them failed in the attempt. The horses were taken out, that the waggons might cross with the greater safety; and where the river was the deepest, we made use of planks and other pieces of timber; but notwithstanding all our precautions, some of our people fell into a hole, and were well washed. There being help sufficient, however, at hand, they were

Note: The text continues onto the right-hand page, but this was not transcribed as per the user's directive to transcribe only the visible text on the left page.
CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

soon taken up again. About one in the afternoon, we began to proceed on our journey; and in an hour's time, or thereabouts, we came to a place, where we found fresh horses ready for our service. All this time, we had travelled but twenty-eight werfts, and had two more still to go before we could reach a small town called Romanof, where we crossed the river of Belle Kollodis, that is to say, the White Pit, by a bridge, which was covered over with ice, about a foot and a half thick; where we

Note: The text continues onto the right-hand page, but this was not transcribed as per the user's directive to transcribe only the visible text on the left page.
CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

dined, and were amused with Circassian music, during the whole time of our refreshment. We tarried there, tho' with no small reluctance, till eleven that night; for we were not able to prevail on the governor of the place to furnish us with horses till then. Here the wheels were taken off from our waggons, and laid on fedges, as I had done mine before; and in the dead of the night we went through a large village called Stueduncke; and on the twentieth instant, about break of day,

Note: The text continues onto the right-hand page, but this was not transcribed as per the user's directive to transcribe only the visible text on the left page.
CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

we reached the pillar of one hundred and thirty-fix werfts, where we tarried no longer than was requisite for the change of our horses. When we had proceeded two werfts farther, we passed the town of Dobri, which stands about a werft from the high-road, on the river Veronis. When we had travelled one hundred and fifty-one werfts, we came to a large village; at the end of one hundred and fifty-four to another, where we went up a hill, which was so steep, that on the left-hand of it, there were rails put up

1703 1703

1703 #

CORNELIUS LE
BRUN.

fore fun-fet, and
travelled near
forty werfts
that night, then,
on changing
our horfes we
reached three
hundred and
eleven werfts,
and came
within a small
distance of
Mr. Le Fort's
house, where
we arrived safe
on the twenty-
second instant,
about nine in
the morning.

This gentleman
had sent full
instructions to
his fervants, to
entertain us in
the best
manner they
possibly could,
and not only to
furnish us with
horfes, but with
every thing else
that we could
reasonably
require. It was
here, that we
left our
waggon-wheels
behind us, that
we might not be
so greatly
encumbered as
we had been;
and as the frost
and snow had
greatly mended

the roads, from
hence we could
make greater
expedition with
fewer horfes.
After having
flopt here for
about an hour
only, we took
fresh horfes,
and proceeded
on our journey
to the length of
three hundred
and twenty-nine
werfts, and by
three in the
afternoon, we
came to three
hundred and
forty-seven
werfts, and to
the village
called
Podaffincke,
where we
regaled our
selves in a very
plentiful
manner. The
snow fell down
deep, and the
bleak wind and
frost continued;
and after we
had changed
horfes once
more, we went
thro' several
villages in the
night; and
through the
town called
Nikole Saraike,
which, tho' no
inconfinderable
place, we got
through it with
abundance of
difficulty; and
the reason was,
because a great

number of
country-people
had crowded it
with their
fledge, which
were laden with
a great variety
of wares for
Moscow. On the
twenty-third
instant, in the
morning,
having reached
as far as four
hundred and
twenty werfts,
we proceeded
on our journey
with fresh
horfes to (i)
Grodno, where
we arrived at
about nine
o'clock, but did
not tarry; and
about seven or
eight werfts
farther, we
came to the
river (k) Occa,
which took us
up some time in
crofting. At that
time we had a
very high and
steep hill to get
over, where
there was but
one narrow gut,
on the left-hand
side of the
river; and in
our passlage,
we met
unfortunately
with several
fledge, by
which means
we were under
an indefenfable
obligation to
make

a considerable
halt in order to
let them pas by
us; which could
not possibly be
effected in any
other place but
on the very
brow of the hill;
for the way was
too narrow for
us both; and the
way they took
was so very
bad, so very
steep, and so
full of large
stones, that not
only the horfes,
but the fledge
likewise were in
great danger;
as most of the
horfes went
forwards
without any
drivers to direct
them. This,
however, was
not all the
misfortune that
attended us at
this juncture;
for words
arising between
those fledge-
men and our
fervants, they
came to blows;
because one
had not given
timely notice to
the other, to
prevent this
Stop. As several
of these vulgar
fellows
happened to be
in liquor, they
exasperated
those who had
got down to the

foot of the hill,
and made them
come up after
us. There were
twenty of them,
I am apt to
believe in the
whole. As for
my part, I was
laid at my
length in my
fledge, during
this contest;
and when I
understood the
occasion of the
disturbance, I
leaped out
directly with my
sword and
pistol in hand,
and the Sieurs
Kinfus and Hill
followed me,
one with his
naked sword,
and the other
with his pistols.
Thus armed we
went down to
Mr. Steel's
fledge, who was
behind us and
most exposed to
the insults of
these madmen.
He had but just
alighted, and
had no arms to
defend himself,
and the Russian
boors were
menacing him
very hard: he,
however, like a
very discreet
man, had
presence of
mind sufficient,
to order his
fervants to get
out of the way,

and began to
foath them by
the loftiest
expreflions that
he could devise,
judging, and
that very jufly,
that a more
rash procedure
would prove of
fatal
consequence,
reflecting,
wisely, that
there were a
great number of
Russians below,
who would have
infallibly
attacked us,
had we
ventured upon
an open
engagement.
And those
persons with
whom we were
thus parlying,
plainly
perceiving that
we came up to
them without
any intention of
creating a
quarrel, kept
back those that
were drunk and
obfinate, and
hearkened to
reason. Those
who were the
most turbulent
being # THE
TRAVELS OF
being gone off,
we proceeded
on our journey
on each side;
tho' for my own
part, I muft
confefs, I was

determined not
to enter my
fledge again,
'till we had
reached the
brow of the hill;
notwithstanding
it was so
flippery, that I
could scarce
keep my
footing, and the
wind was so
bleak, that I
could scarce
feel that I had
any fingers. In
the midst of this
distress, I
observed a
fledge with one
horse only, and
without a
driver, not-
withstanding it
was loaded
more heavily
than usual: the
poor horse, thus
embarrassed,
incapable of
turning a
corner so
advantageously
as he should
have done, on
account of the
high wind and
the ice,
incapable, in
short, of
keeping the
beaten track,
and coming
unhappily too
near the
precipice, fell
perpendicularly
down upon the
bank of the
river, which was
a great depth

shocking to
behold. The
fledge broke
into a thoufand
pieces, and in
all probability,
the horfe broke
all his ribs; tho'
I faw him,
indeed, lift up
his head after
this occurrence.
At laft, having
reached the
fummit of the
hill, the' with
no fmall
difficulty, we
proceeded on
our journey, and
about one in
the afternoon
arrived at the
city of (l) Ko-
lomna, which is
four hundred
and fifty-fix
werfts: when
we were in the
fuburbs, we
waited for an
answer to a
letter from the
Czar, which we
fent in, and no
fooner had the
Diack, or
Secretary, of
the city
received it, but
he came
directly to us,
offered us his
fervice, and
even defired
that we would
go into the city,
and refrefh our
felves, but we
made our
proper excufes;
and as he had

fent us not only
mead, brandy,
beer, and fome
other
provifions, we
returned them
all back with
thanks, as we
were plentifully
fupplied before
with all manner
of requi-fites for
our journey. We
converted with
him for about
two hours, and
drank a few
bumpers briskly
about, and at
four fet
forwards with
frefh horfes,
and travelled
twenty-five
werfts before
nine, when we
arrived at a
village called
Ko-fachof,
where we
baited for near
three hours, for
our horfes fake,
who were to
carry us from
thence to
Mofcow, the
end of our
journey. On the
twenty-fourth
infant by eight
in the morning,
we had reached
forty-fix werfts
farther, and
came within a
fmall diftance
of the village
called
Oftrawects.
Here we refited,
and fed our

horfes; and in
about two hours
time fet out
again, and
about noon
arrived fafe at
the slabode of
the Germans in
Mofcow, which
was about
twenty-five
werfts from the
place we left
laft.

On the twenty-
feventh infant,
the fchool-
mafter and
reader of the
Lutheran
church, named
John Frederic
Maes of (m)
Koningberg,
was murdered
by one Kraffo, a
German enfgn,
without the
leaft
provocation. He
was taken,
however, and
confefs't the
fact.

After fo
fatiguing a
journey, I pro-
pofed to
indulge my felf
the next day;
but on the fifth
of March, about
even-ing, I
found my felf
very greatly in-
difpofed, hot
and feverifh,
and going
thereupon
directly to bed,
I had a very

tirefome night
of it. However, I
arofe the next
morning by
break of day;
but found my
felf fo weak,
that I could
fcarcely fand
upon my legs;
and befides was
troubled with a
very bad cough
for fome
confiderable
time
afterwards. The
heat within me
was fo
inexpreflibly in-
tenfe, that had I
drank an
hundred times
a day, it would
not have
quenched my
thirtf.
Sometimes I
drank milk, and
fometimes beer:
but at other
times, I drank
water, boiled
with tamarinds
and fugar,
which was my
favourite liquor,
and what
relieved me
moft when I
found my felf
indifpofed in (n)
Egypt; but in
order to
ftrengthen my
ftomach, I
drank likewife
every now and
then a glafs of
Rhenifh wine,
and fome other
liquors, that

were proper for
that purpose. In
this manner did
I pass five days
and five nights
successfully
without one
wink of sleep;
and in the night
particularly, I
was frequently
delirious. Upon
this, my friends,
perceiving that
I grew every
day weaker and
weaker, advised
me to send for a
proper
physician; but I
told them, that
on such
occasions I
always trusted
to my own
judgment; that I
knew the na-
ture of my own
constitution
better than the
ablest physician
in the country;
and

con- #
CORNELIUS LE
BRUN.

consequently,
what was better
for me than
they could
possibly
prescribe; that
as I very well
knew the real
cause of my
indisposition, I
was well
assured, that a
proper regimen
would prove a
more effectual

relief than any
of their most
specific
medicines; and
besides, I had
been sensible
for some
considerable
time of its
coming upon
me. On the
sixth night, and
the next
following, I
slept for some
hours, and
found my self
greatly
relieved, and
refreshed
thereby: in a
word, after an
uninterrupted
regimen for ten
days
successfully, I
began to
venture on
strong broths,
and now and
then a small
quantity of
meat. I bled
sometimes
likewise at the
nofe in the
night, and I
found great
relief thereby in
regard to the
head-ach, with
which I had
some time
before been
very severely
afflicted.

On the eleventh
his Czarian
Majesty returned
with all his
retinue from

Veronis, and on
the thirteenth
he gave orders,
that Colonel
Boden (of whom
we have taken
notice before)
should be
beheaded in his
presence. He
was executed in
the German
Slabode, near
the poft,
whereon the
sword and ax
before-
mentioned had
been hung up.

At the same
time, enign
Craffo was
hanged. After
both these
executions were
over, his
Czarian Majesty
issued out an
order that no
person
whomsoever
should presume
to draw his
sword on any
provocation
whatsoever on
pain of death.

On Sunday the
fourteenth,
Monfieur
Cafimir Bolus,
the Envoy of
France, who
had refided for
some
considerable
time at Mofcow
in incog, had a
private
audience of his
Czarian Majesty

at the feat of
Count Feudor
Alexewitz de
Golowins.

The fame day
his Czarian
Majefy went,
but with a very
small retinue,
to pay
Mr. Brants a
vift; by whom
he was
entertained
with a collation
of cold-meats,
and some other
refreshments.

On this
occasion, I
came out of my
apartment, in
order to have
the honour of
taking my leave
of his Majefy,
and of
requesting his
indulgence of a
pafs-port for my
departure out
of his
dominions.

His Majefy,
perceiving I
was greatly
altered in my
countenance
since he saw
me left, asked
me, with some
kind of concern,
how I did, and
what disorder
had attended
me? But when I
informed his
Majefy, that I
imagined my
illness was in a
great measure

occasioned by
indulging my
self rather too
much in my
journey to
Veronis; he
answered, with
a smile; if that's
all, the most
infallible cure
that I can
prescribe you
is, to take a
hare of the
fame dog. The
resident,
however,
immediately
entering the
room upon us,
we were
interrupted in
our
conversation.

Having
procured the
favour I
requested, and
an order to
Count Golowin
for my pafs-port
accordingly, I
took my leave
of his Czarian
Majesty, who
honoured me so
far as to give
me his hand to
kiss, and then
gave me his
usual
benediction,
"God preserve
you."

It was about
ten, when the
Czar went from
thence to
Mr. Lups, and
to divers
English

merchants,
before he fat
out for his
journey to (c)
Sleutenburg,
and on the
fifteenth he fat
out betimes in
the morning,
and never so
much as went
to Probrofenko.

On that very
day, the two
other criminals,
Captain Sax,
and Colonel
Boden's valet,
were to be
executed,
where the head
and body of the
Colonel still lay
unremoved
upon the
ground, as
Kraffo hung
upon the
gibbet, which
was surrounded
by a guard of
soldiers. Tho'
both of them
were brought to
the block, and
the executioner
ready at hand
with his ax, in
order to give
the fatal blow;
yet fortunately
for them a
reprieve came
at once, and the
former was sent
to (b) Siberia,
and ordered to
reside there in
perpetual
banishment;
and the latter

was sentenced
to receive thirty
blows with the
Knoet; and
afterwards to
be a galley-flave
for life; but I
heard soon
after, that the
rigorous
execution of his
first
punishment
relieved him
from the terror
of the laft.

Our resident
having
demanded a
pafs-port for me
(as I observed
before) by
order from the
Czar, Count
Golowin, whose
buffets it was to
sign it, gave D d
orders. # THE
TRAVELS

1703

March 21. On
the twenty-fifth,
the grand
festival of Palm-
Sunday was
celebrated with
great solemnity;
that likewise of
the
Annunciation of
the Blessed
Virgin Mary, for
which the
Russians have a
peculiar regard,
on the twenty-
fifth; and the
high feast of
Easter on the
twenty-eighth.
Nothing

extraordinary
occurred at that
time besides,
except a fire,
which broke out
at Moscow on
the thirtieth,
and that the
river Mosca
thawed, and
was open on
the first of
April. This
thorough thaw
made the roads
extremely bad;
and on the
third, the
waters arose to
a greater height
than had been
known in the
memory of man.
Though at this
time I
happened to be
seized with a
tertian ague;
yet it happily
went off after
three or four
shaking fits.

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

1. Nievre, or Borithlenes, fee p. 68, n. ee.
2. Crim Tartary, fee p. 68, n. dd.
3. Volga, or Wolga, fee p. 28, n. f.
4. Afoph, fee p. 51, n. b.
5. Don, or Tanais, fee p. 62, n. h.
6. Meotis Palus, is a sea of Turkey, which divides Europe from Asia, extending from Crim Tartary to the mouth of the river Don, or Tanais, being about two hundred miles long, and an hundred miles broad, to which there is no other passage than

through the Straits of Kaffa, from the Black Sea; of both which the Turks have the sole navigation, since the demolition of the fortifications of Afoph, at the Mouth of the river Don.

7. England, fee p. 916, n. f.
8. Moscow, fee p. 23, n. c.
9. Grodno, east-longitude 24, latitude 53. 40, a great city of Poland, in the province of Lithuania; and Palatinate of Troki, situate on the river Niemen, or Berezen, eighty miles south-west of Wilna.
10. Occa, or Ocka, fee p. 61, n. d.
11. Kolonina, fee p. 61, n. c.
12. Koningsburg, fee p. 23, n. b.
13. Egypt, fee p. 33, n. a.
14. Sleutenburg, or Slutteburg, east-longitude 31. 20, latitude 60, a town of Russia, in the province of Ingria, situate on the south side of the Lake Ladoga, thirty miles east of Peterburg.
15. Siberia, fee p. 17, n. b.
16. Moskva, fee p. 4, n. a. # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

CHAP. XIV.

The Author is shewn all the most valuable Curiosities that are to be met with in their several Churches. A remarkable Cloth, not to be confounded by Fire itself, made of the Asbestos, a Sort of Stone, peculiar to the Island of Cyprus.

As soon as I found that my ague had left me, and that I was perfectly recovered, I set out directly for (a) Moscow, in order to pay my respects to Ivan Alexewitz Mocfin Pocfin, to whom his Czarrian Majesty had been pleased to give orders, whilst at (b) Veronis, to shew me all the most remarkable things, that were to be seen, not only in the churches there, but in all other parts of that spacious city. This nobleman, whose name I have had occasion to mention before with the highest veneration and esteem, received me in the most courteous manner, and assured me, that he was ready, at any time, whenever I required it, to obey his Majesty's commands. Whereupon I made answer, that I should be glad to be favoured as soon as conveniently might be, because his Excellency was sensible, that I proposed to set out for (c) Persea in a very short time. Whereupon he appointed me to wait on him on the tenth instant, as early as I pleased in the morning. Accordingly, I went, and found him just mounting his horse, in

order to go into the country. However, he told me, in a very obliging manner, that the gentleman, who was then with him, would take particular care to shew me whatever was worthy of my attention.

In the first place, then, we went to the church of Saboor, where is shewn a picture, pretended to be drawn by the Evangelist St. Luke himself; as also, the identical vesture which our Blest Saviour wore when led to the cross, and for which, after his crucifixion, the soldiers cast lots. This vesture, as they told us, became the property of a foldier, who was a native of (d) Georgia; that he carried it with him into his own country, and made a present of it to a maiden sister of his, who, conceiving a more than ordinary veneration for it, requested on her death-bed, that it might be interred with her, and spread over her lifeless corpse; that her request being punctually complied with, a spacious tree instantaneously (as it were) shot out of her tomb; that the Persians soon afterwards, having made themselves masters of Georgia, and their King having heard several miraculous stories of this tomb, gave express orders to have it opened; that it was opened accordingly, and that he took the vesture away with him, and conveyed it into Persia; that not long afterwards, his Majesty having occasion to send an embassy into (e) Russia, he made a present of it to the Grand Duke, as he knew him to be a Christian; that the Mofovites being very zealous, and impatient to know whether this inestimable present was genuine or not, and the identical vesture, as pretended, got together a numerous crowd of such as were lame, blind, or otherwise very forely afflicted, being firmly persuaded, if it was real fact, that the touch of it would inevitably cure them; that, upon making the experiment, the effects of it answered their warmest wishes; that it had been preferred ever since with that utmost care, and was set apart for that charitable purpose; and, in fine, that the application of it never to much as once miscarried. # THE TRAVELS OF

ment, in general, are as firmly believed as the Gospel itself, by all the Ruffians, I determined that it should be the first article of this narration.

The church of Saboor is square within, and the length of it is about ninety-fix feet. The roof is supported by four large pillars, and the whole is embellished with the pictures of a great number of faints, and other figures of the like nature. Some of them, even those in the five little domes, are drawn after the Grecian mode, and may be justly said to be executed with some degree of taste; which said domes are in the form of lanthorns, the largest whereof is in the middle, and the others at each corner.

That picture, which they insist was drawn by the hand of St. Luke himself, is placed on one side of the high altar, and is a half-length of the Bleffed Virgin Mary, with the representation of Christ saluting her, their faces being close together: this picture is of a

gloomy hue, if not absolutely black; but whether that accident is owing to the result of time, the smoke of their numerous tapers, or the real taste of the painter, is not easily to be determined: it is manifest, however, that it is no extraordinary performance; besides, it is all gilt, the faces and hands only excepted. The head of the Virgin is adorned with a crown of pearls and precious stones; and there is, moreover, a collar of pearls, which hangs down from her neck to her wrists. To say no more of it, it is planted in a particular niche, under which there is a stall. There is a large silver sconce, which was made at (f) Amsterdam (like those in our churches) with branches, hanging down between the two pillars of the high altar. However, there are three others besides these, composed of copper, or brass, which are commodiously enough disposed of in the body of the church. Notwithstanding there are but very few decorations in most of their churches, 'tis observable, in this, that there are no less than ten silver lamps around the altar abovementioned. These lamps, however, are never filled with oil; for the Ruffians make use of none, but instead thereof have tapers, which are first put into noffels, and then fixed upon the lamps. It is customary with them to hang an ostrich's egg at the bottom of their large sconces.

Our next visit was to the Patriarch's Church, which is small above, and erected in the form of a dome. Overagainst the chappel, on the right-hand, there is an apartment, wherein our Bleffed Saviour is delineated as fitting in a chair, in a picture which is all over gilt, the face and hands excepted; and the Virgin Mary; on the left-hand is represented St. John the Baptist; and on each hand one of the apostles in a kneeling posture, with a silver lamp. Between this picture and the chappel-door, there is a branch or feat, raised upon steps, which is covered with black velvet, and set apart for the reception of the Patriarch. At the entrance of this little church, there stands an altar, behind which there is a small choir, abounding with pictures from top to bottom; each representing the history of some faint or another; but there are columns, or pillars, which separate them from each other, in the nature of windows; and here likewise every thing is gilt; the other side of the walls, however, is painted blue. Once more, in the crown of the dome, there is the head of our Bleffed Saviour, which almost fits it; and round about it, there is a great variety of other decorations. Overagainst this church stands the Patriarch's Hall of audience, which is spacious enough; and as soon as you are entered, on the right-hand stands the patriarchal chair, which is all gilt; the feat is covered with a green velvet cushion; and there are gold fringes about the arms. This chair is raised upon steps; and over it, there is the representation of our Saviour in miniature, tolerably painted. At our departure from this hall, we were conducted into an apartment, called the patriarch's treasury, and full of chests and trunks, which were all opened to gratify my

curiosity. In the first, there were six patriarchal caps, two of which in particular, were immensely rich, and separated from the others. These were em- # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

embellished with large pearls, jewels, and other precious stones. The others were much like these, but not of equal value. There was a seventh cap, embellished with nothing but pearls, which belonged in particular to the Metropolitan. The next curiosity which was shewn us, was a box full of jewels; and amongst a great variety of costly trinkets, there were several diamond-croffes, which hung by chains of gold. All these trinkets had belonged to former patriarchs, who had made their appearance in them on public proceffions, and other solemn and extraordinary occasions. There were, moreover, divers girdles, which they call Pojaffes, embellished with precious stones: we were shewn likewise a great number of large tortoise-shell combs, which had been made use of by former Patriarchs; and several crofers, with jewels at the end of them. Besides the chests and trunks above-mentioned, there were no less than twenty-nine several prefles, full of patriarchal robes, all of gold brocade, and embellished with pearls and precious stones. Amongst the rest, there were nine several vefments more beautiful and more magnificent than any of the others; and every one of them adorned with precious stones. In some of the prefles, there were divers fine stoles, about a hand and an half broad; and one in particular, which was worn by the patriarch Constantine (according to the Ruffian computation) in the year 6176. Tho' this was of plain silk, and had been somewhat damaged by length of time; yet they shew a peculiar veneration for it, and preserve it amongst their most valuable vefments. In this treafury, moreover, are to feen several silver gilt dishes, vafes, and other veflfs of the like nature.

Having sufficiently gratified my curiosity for the prefent, I deferred my vift to the other churches till the next day, which happened to be Sunday. In the first place, I made my application to Mr. Moein Poefkin, to know whether I could be favoured or not, with a fight of our Saviour's vefment; but he informed me, that it was an act of indulgence not to be granted; since it was

deposited in a particular place, fecured under his Czarion Majefly's own fignet; and not to be expofed to public view without an exprefs order under his own hand: I muft needs own, I was somewhat concerned, that I was not better informed in time of fo important an article. In short, I went once more to the church of Saboor, to gratify my curiosity with surveying such things as I had omitted in my firft vift. I was accordingly fhewn a large chalice, or cup of gold, about two hands high, which their priests make use of in the administration of the Holy Sacrament. This chalice had four rich jewels on the cover; and the foot of it was enamelled with the representation of the various sufferings of our Bleffed Saviour. The next thing they shewed me was a large golden dith, enamelled in the same manner as the chalice, and adorned

likewise as that with four large jewels; two golden plates, a golden spoon with an agate handle; and a golden ladle for the wine in the cup; as also, a crown, all embellished with pearls and precious stones. Add to these, two other small chalices of agate, enriched likewise with precious stones. All which precious stones (as we were informed) were found at the bottom of that large casket, which St. Anthony, who was a native of Ruffia, procured to be dragged up by some certain fithermen, just at the time he was transported from (g) Rome to Nieugart, whilst he was fitting by, on a millstone, having made a punctual agreement with his hirings beforehand, to be entitled to whatever should prove the product of their labours. After this, they shewed me a large book, which is generally carried in procession on some particular solemn festivals. This book is elegantly bound, and enriched with precious stones on the cover, and is filled within with a great variety of scripture-histories, finely painted, and wrote in characters of gold. All these curiosities are kept separate in cases of scarlet velvet. We were shewn, moreover, the body of Peter, the Archbishop, in silver, with a bas-relief of him above; a little flap of our Saviour's vesture before-mentioned, in a case, covered with glass: as also, the body of John, the Archbishop, in a coffin, in # THE TRAVELS OF

like that of Peter's; and that of Philip, in a third. After this, they shewed me the reliques of divers saints; one of the hands of John Satoeleva ; the skull, and the whole head of Gregory Bagaflova, &c. &c.

Having thanked the priest for the trouble I had created him, I took my leave, and went to the church of St. Michael the Archangel, which is exceedingly fine within, and, like the former, abounds with pictures. In one particular spot of this church, lie all the Grand Dukes of Moscow, very magnificently entombed; the two last only excepted; namely, the brothers to his Czarian Majesty, who are deposited in another. Their monuments are raised high, and covered with rich habits of scarlet velvet, with green velvet bands; and thereon, their birth, age, and the exact time of their decease are inscribed in Russian characters; each tomb is embellished with large pearl crosses. Not one of them, however, is near so pompous and magnificent as the last of Ivan Alexewitz, which is adorned with a profusion of precious stones. From thence, I went to the church of the Annunciation, or that which they call Blagowestne, which though but small, abounds also with pictures like the last. In a small apartment of this church I was shewed no less than thirty six silver boxes, filled with the reliques of some of their favourite saints, which, in order to oblige me, they had spread out upon a large table before I came. In the first, there was a small quantity of the precious blood of our Blessed Saviour; and in the others, several small crosses, composed out of the original; one of the hands of the Evangelist St. Mark; several

bones of the Prophet Daniel; and divers other faints, in the manner of mummies; several heads, and a great variety of other reliques, all of a dark hue.

After having obliged me with the fight of the reliques above-mentioned, they offered their service to attend me to what other churches I thought proper; but my curiosity being sufficiently gratified, I excused myself in the handfome manner I could, and returned my conductor many thanks for the trouble I had given

him, and the rest for their indulgence towards me, which was somewhat extraordinary, and I believe I may say, without example in that country.

On the fifteenth instant, I went with Mr. Poppe to pay a visit to the Knez Borjes Alexewitz Galietfen, at a neat country seat about five wersts from Moscow; and in our way we passed by the fine estate of the Knez Mighaile Serkafkie, which is the most valuable demefnes of all the Princes in his Czarian Majesty's Dominions. His power is so great, that besides his being Sovereign Lord of divers villages, he has above 20000 peasants who are his vassals and dependents. We met with the Knez, and I begged the favour of him to grant me a passport from the office of the Priks at (b) Cafan, whereof he was viceroy, as well as of that at (i) Aftracan, and the reason of my conduct in that particular was this; because Mr. Poppe had intimated to me some time before, that not only the governor of Cafan, but that of Aftracan likewise would pay no manner of regard to a passport procured from the Priks at Poffölch, which, in all probability, would have proved very prejudicial, and have retarded at least, if not put an actual stop to my intended journey. The Knez Borjes was not only so complaisant as to gratify my request, and dispatch one in my favour, without the least hesitation, but (out of respect to Mr. Poppe, who was one of his favourite friends) wrote a line or two, at the same time, in my behalf to the governors of Cafan and Aftracan above-mentioned, in order to prevent the least casual delay. We both returned him many thanks for this act of indulgence, and took our leave of him. This Nobleman, some months before, had been at Cafan, in order to act as mediator between two exasperated Tartar Princes, father and son, which difference arose from the important incident herein-after-mentioned. The son, it seems, had in his retinue a lady, for whom the father had a passionate regard. The old gentleman, in order to gratify his amorous inclinations, by some successful stratagem, procured her to be stolen away, and sheltered

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

sheltered under his patronage and protection. The son, enraged at the clandestine proceedings of the father, declared open war against him, and appeared in the field of battle at the head of 20,000 men. The father, with the utmost expedition, assembled no less than 40,000 men on his; and both parties were resolutely

bent to enter on an engagement; but the Knez happily arrived just at that critical conjunction, and not only prevented a profusion of bloodshed, but established a happy reconciliation between them.

The Tartar Prince, as an acknowledgment of his friendly office on this important occasion, made him a present of a piece of coarse cloth, of such an extraordinary quality, that no fire will either tarnish or consume it; and the Knez making Mr. Poppe a present of some part of it, he bestowed that curiosity upon me. He informed me, that it was manufactured at a place called Katay, between (k) China and Bogger, and that they continued to work it there. I remember formerly I brought from the island of (l) Cyprus some part of the stone there, called Albestos, which was then capable of being spun into thread, on which no fire had any manner of effect, and that in former times was fabricated into cloth; but that art at present is totally lost. Pliny makes mention of a cloth of the like nature; and some modern authors likewise, who have treated on the Roman antiquities, and the use of lamps in the monuments of the ancients, have endeavoured to confirm the truth of his affection.

On the sixteenth instant, I dined with my friend Mr. Poppe; and in my return to the Slabode, I observed, that there was a fire at some small distance from it; whither my curiosity led me to see what measures they took for the extinguishing of it; but they did nothing more (as I could perceive) than demolish the houes on both sides the flames for the prevention of its spreading.

As my passports were dispatched, I prepared for my departure, in company with an Armenian merchant, one Jacob Diedoff, who had travelled before from (m) Ifaphan to (n) Holland, and had resided for some time at Amsterdam. We agreed to enter on our intended journey on the twenty-second, and to fall down the river as far as Astrakan. What time I had to spare I employed in taking my farewell of my friends and acquaintance, and more particularly, of Mr. Vander Hulft, our resident, and the two Sieurs Brants and Lups, to whom I owed a thousand obligations. I was equally indebted, indeed, to Mr. Coyet, who, being a perfect master of the Persian language, and well acquainted with all the customs of the country, gave me such important hints or memorandums, as proved of singular service to me in the prosecution of my journey. I set out from Moscow about noon, and not finding any vessel that would carry me on board the ship where my Armenian friend had been for some time embarked, and which had been fallen down as low as Malisko, in order to take the advantage of high water over the sands, I was reduced to the necessity of hiring three waggons to carry me and my effects thither, in order to my own embarkation on the same ship.

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

1. Moscow, see p. 23. n. 6.
2. Veronis, see the author's description of it in the preceding chapter.
3. Persia, see p. 64. n. 4.
4. Georgia, in Asia, the ancient Iberia, is bounded by Circassia and Dagestan on the north; by the Caspian Sea on the east; by Armenia, or Turcomania, on the south; and by Mingrelia on the west, the eastern, and much the largest division, is subjected to Persia; the capital city Teflis; though, it is thought, that neither Georgia, nor the ancient Iberia, extended so far eastward as the Caspian Sea. # THE TRAVELS OF

Sea; yet it is separated from it by the Province of Chirvan. It is a mountainous, but fruitful country, producing corn, wine, and cattle in abundance; and the difficult access of some from their mountains has preserved them from being absolutely subdued, either by the Turks or Persians; but what this country is most remarkable for, is the beauty of its natives, and the traffic they carry on with the Turks and Persians for their children, who are sold and carried young to both those courts, where they expect to be advanced to the greatest honours; and for this reason, their parents part with them with joy, instead of lamenting their absence.

1. Russia, see p. 7, n. e.
2. Amsterdam, east longitude 4. 30. latitude 52. 20. the capital of the province of Holland, and of the United Netherlands, situated on the river Amstel, and an arm of the sea, called the Wye, a little to the eastward of the Zuyder-Sea, two hundred miles and upwards east of London, two hundred and thirty north-east of Paris, and upwards of four hundred miles west of Vienna, twelve miles east of Haarlem, and thirty north-east of Rotterdam. The city lies almost in the form of a crescent; no where are such numbers of merchant-ships seen, and yet of the most difficult access, it being scarce possible for a loaded ship, or man of war, to enter the harbour; and indeed the whole Zuyder-Sea is so shallow and full of sands, that scarce any but their own flat-bottomed vessels can cross it; but then this is their great security against foreign enemies, whose men of war scarce ever venture to pursue them beyond the Texel, and other entrances into this sea. The foundations of this town are laid upon vast piles of timber, drove into the morasses, on which it stands at a prodigious expense: the Stadthouse alone has upwards of thirteen thousand piles of wood, it is said, to

bear up those foundations. The first mention of this town in history is about the year 1300, when it was a poor fisher-town. In 1585, it appears to have been the chief town of trade in these provinces, when they began to fortify it; and great additions were made to the fortifications in the year 1672, when Lewis the XIVth invaded the country. The houses are spacious, and well paved, and through most of them run canals, planted with trees; the town is computed to be about half as big as London, including the fortifications; in it are people of almost every nation, and every religion in Europe, who are all tolerated in their respective jurisdictions; but none admitted to any share in the government but the Calvinists, or Presbyterians; all of them, however, apply themselves, with the utmost diligence, to heap up wealth, tormenting both body and soul (in the words of a late writer) to get an estate, not to enjoy it, but to have the pleasure of dying rich; money, the idol of the world, is adored most in this country, where it supplies the place of birth, wit, and merit.

3. Rome, the capital of the Pope's territories, and of Italy, is situated in 13 degrees east longitude, and 41 degrees 45 minutes north latitude; one hundred and forty miles north-west of Naples, and an hundred and forty-fourth of Florence, standing on the river Tiber, about sixteen miles north-east of the Tuscan Sea; the walls are about twelve miles in circumference, as they were in the time of the Romans, but not a third part of the ground within the walls is now built upon; the rest is taken up with vineyards and gardens. The inhabitants are computed to amount to about 120,000 souls. There are five bridges over the river, twenty gates, and three hundred antique towers still remaining; the castle of St. Angelo is a modern fortification, but of no great strength, and serves rather to keep the inhabitants in awe, than to defend them against foreign enemies. Modern Rome stands fourteen or fifteen feet higher than the old city, being built on the ruins of the former, and is much more upon a level than the old city was, great part of the hills being washed down into the valleys; inasmuch that the Tarpeian rock, which was once a terrible precipice, from whence malefactors were thrown, is not more than twenty feet high. The city is for the most part magnificently built; the streets are spacious, and adorned with 300 fine churches, and a vast number of palaces and convents, and the triumphal arches, pillars, obelisks, fountains, and statues, are no small additions to its beauty; but then there are other streets as meanly built as in any town whatever. The great curiosities in Rome are the ancient theatres and amphitheatres, Pagan temples, triumphal arches, baths, aqueducts, fountains, catacombs, obelisks, cirques, sepulchres, bridges, churches, palaces, statues, paintings, piazzas, colleges, and hospitals. The people of this city are said to be more obliging than in any town of Europe, and that an universal civility reigns there. They are not at all polluted with

or perfumed against whatever. The sea is well supplied with water, and with all manner of fishes, fowl, and fruit. The variety of wines that are drunk and the variety of food is great. The people are extremely fond of wine without water. #
CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

are not at all poffeffed with a spirit of bigotry, or perfecution against strangers of any country or religion whatever. The city is extremely well supplied with water, by their noble aqueducts and fountains; and there is great plenty of all manner of provifions, as corn, fleth, fith, fowl, and fruits; and the greatest variety of wines that are to be met with any where; and in the midst of all this variety, the people are extremely fober; never fitting down purely to drink, and very feldom drinking wine without water.

1. Cavan, fee p. 62. n. b.
2. Afracon, fee p. 62. n. i.
3. China, fee p. 66. n. a.
4. Cyprus, an ifland, fittuate in the moft eaftern part of the Levant, or Mediterranean Sea, between 33 and 36 degrees of eaftern longitude, and between 34 and 36 degrees of north latitude; fixty miles fouth of the coat of Caramania, or Cilicia, and thirty welt of the coat of Syria, being about an hundred and fifty miles long, and twenty broad; the chief town Nicofia, the feat of the Turkifh Beglerbeg, or viceroy, and formerly the refidence of the King of the ifland. There is one of thofe mountains called Olympus; there is another of the fame name in the leffer Afia, and a third in Greece; but there are no fprings or rivers but what the rains produce, which happening to fail them thirty years fucceffively, during the reign of Conftantine the Great, the inhabitants were obliged to abandon the ifland for fome time; the foil, however, produces corn, wine, oil, wool, cotton, falt, and fome flk; they have plenty alf of fith, fleth and fowl, and a pretty brisk trade between the merchants of Europe and Afia; feveral European nations, particularly the Englifh, have their confuls and factors in this ifland. It was very populous whillt it was in the poffeffion of the Chriftians, and had a great many good towns in it; but it is now fo thinly inhabited that half the lands lie unmanured. The prefent inhabitants are Turks, Jews, Greeks, Armenians, and fome few Latins. The Turks have the government, but the Greeks are moft numerous. This ifland was dedicated to Venus; and her votaries, it is faid, profirated themfelves to foreigners. It has been fucceffively governed by the Egyptians, Phoenicians, Perifans, Greeks, Romans, Saracens, Venetians, and Turks. Richard I. King of England, meeting with an unfophifte reception here, fubdued the ifland, and transferred his right to it to Guy Lufignan, titular King of

Jerusalem, whole decedents transferred it to the State of Venice; from whom the Turks took it anno 1570, and have remained in possession of it ever since.

5. Ispahan, or Spahawn, east longitude 50. latitude 32. 30. the capital city of Eyrac Ager, and of all the kingdom of Persia, is situated in a fine plain, almost surrounded with mountains, which lie two or three leagues distant from it. The city is of an oval form, twelve miles in circumference, and stands two hundred miles north of the gulf of Persia, or Boffora, three hundred miles south of the Caspian Sea, one thousand four hundred miles south east of Constantinople, and one thousand six hundred miles north west of Delhi, the capital of the Hither India. The streets of Ispahan are, several of them, arched over, with openings to let in light. The English East-India company had a factory here, and their factors lived like Princes, in the greatest splendor, till the civil war; but the court, and consequently the trade, seems to be removing from this city to Meshed, in the province of Chorasman, near the Caspian Sea, the usual residence of the Sha Nadir and his court.

6. Holland, see p. 76, n. c.

Ff

CHAP. # THE TRAVELS OF

CHAP. XV.

The Author departs from (a) Moscow. The Course of the (b) Wolga. A Description of the several Towns and other Villages on that River. The Author arrives at (c) Astracan.

AS I went to the ship, I passed by the town of Kolomnenfke, on the right-hand, and on a rising ground; it makes a good appearance enough; has a curious convent, a church, and two towers. In order to enter each side of it, you must cross a raft of timbers, which are so fastened together, as that one part of them is with ease removed, when the passage of any vessel requires it, and with equal ease joined together again after it has past. I went by several villages, likewise, which were delightfully situated on a rising ground, and on the right-hand side of the river. By that time evening came on, I got into a wood, where the trees were very low; and as I was some hours travelling through it, the night was far spent before I reached Matfko, where I was informed, that the Armenian barks were not as yet arrived. Notwithstanding there were two houses here; yet I lay the remainder of the night in a barn, which was partly open and exposed to the weather, and what was still worse, upon the hard floor. On the twenty-third, in the morning, my fellow-traveller came down with four barks, accompanied by three other Armenians, who were likewise bound

for (d) Ifpahan, and affured me, that the ship on board of which we were to embark, and wherein he had a large quantity of cloths, was fallen down fill threecore werfts lower: upon this information, we followed her by water, and reached her by about ten o'clock that night. As it was late, however, and nothing in proper order, we thought it moft expedient, not to go directly on board till the next morning. Whereupon, we went into a houfe by the water-fide; where we made a very good fire, and had a parcel of fine pike and perch, which we had purchased before of some fhefimen for three-pence only, dref't for our fupper. There I embraced the opportunity of writing a few letters to some particular friends at Moscow, and in (e) Holland; and on the twenty-fourth, about ten in the morning we got on board. In these parts, they have several small, flat-bottomed vefcils (called by the Russians Strocks) which will carry about three hundred bales of flk, or about fifteen lafts. They are very capacious, and have only one maf, and one fail that is very wide, and principally made use of when the wind is aft; but when the wind is not either directly aftern, or well upon their quarters, they ply their oars, of which the number for the moft part is about sixteen or eighteen. They make use of no rudder, but a long fort of paddle, broad at that end which lies in the water; as to the other end, it is fupported by a fort of crutch, made proper for the purpose, and this either the proprietor, or mafter, manages by fome tackle, reeved on each fide, which keeps the vefsel fteady, and is fo contrived, that it can be put on, or taken off as occasion requires. There were on board twenty-three mariners, and above fifty paffengers, fome Russians, and others Armenians, fervants included. Hitherto the river winds very much, and is about forty fathom in breadth all ways. We had not been on board above two hours, before we came to the convent of Smolenfki, which, at a confiderable diftance, makes a good figure enough; it has a fine fteeple, and is fituate on the fide of a wood # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

a wood, about an hundred werfts from Moscow. It was near four o'clock before we perfectly loft fight of it. After this, we faw on each hand of us, a more campain country, and full of villages; and afterwards a more lofty spot of land. When night came upon us, we dropped anchor. About nine the next morning, we reached (f) Kolomna, which is fituate on the fourth-wert of the river of (g) Mofka. It is an episcopal fee, in the fouthern parts of (b) Rullia, tho' to the eastward of Moscow. I took a draught of this city on the north side, where I had no fight of the river, and the prospect of it is hereto annexed in Number XVIII. This city, of which I have taken some notice before in the account of my journey to (i) Veronis, is one hundred and eighty werfts from Moscow by water, on account of the prodigious sweeps of the river, whereon it has a bridge, or rather fuch a raft of timber as we mentioned some time fince. Here we tarried at leaft seven hours, in order to give our people time enough to make their neceffary preparations for sailing. Before night came on, we reached the river of (k) Occa, which flows from the fourth, where the waters of the Mofka fall

into it. This, as well as the Mofka, is very broad, which, till that time, we looked upon but as a small river; and its fountain-head is not far distant from the (l) Crim Tartary. It traverses the southern parts of (m) Moscow, through the duchy of the same denomination; and empties its waters into the Wolga at (n) Nifi-Novgorod. This part of the country is very delightful, and on the right-hand stands the town of Kiekiena Serophof, where there are two flatly structures, in one of which the governor of the place himself resides; and on the left, there stands a village, where there is another flatly structure, about ten werfts distant from Kolomna. The course of the river now running more direct than it had done hitherto, we failed at a much greater rate, and never came to, during the whole night. On the twenty-sixth, in the morning, we passed by the village, called Dedenawa, which lies on the left-hand, where there is a very handsome church upon the river, about thirty werfts from the town of Kiekiena before-mentioned. And here on both sides you behold a wood full of low trees; and the river is of the same breadth all along. The same day we passed by several other villages, and after that met with lands higher up which were very agreeable; but there the river began to wind once more. As we steered our course east-north-east, the land and the trees appeared to us clothed in a very lively verdure; and at the last turn of the mountain, I took the draught of the view annexed in Number XIX. When we were got beyond these mountains, which we had to the right only, we found the river greatly contracted, and towards the evening, we had several hills covered with small trees, both on the right and the left of us. On the twenty-seventh in the morning we saw, to the right, a lofty mountain, and on the left, several villages, with cows and sheep feeding in the adjacent meadows. In the mean time, we had fishermen, who came a long-side of us every day in small boats somewhat like canoes, hollowed out of the trunks of trees, of whom we frequently purchased more pike or perch for three-pence or four-pence, than were sufficient to satisfy eight or ten persons of moderate stomachs. As we further advanced eastwards, on the left-hand of us, we met with an island, which abounded with trees, and was of a considerable length; and after that, with divers villages, situated at the feet of mountains, and the fine convent of Bogoflova, which is all built with stone, and situated amidst a great number of trees, in the most rural manner, and upon an eminence; and on one side of it there is a spacious, verdant plain, with great numbers of flocks and herds grazing upon it, quite down to the river-side. This convent lies north-west, about twenty werfts from Pereflaw; whereof I have given the reader a prospect in Number XX. Here are abundance of villages round about, and the soil is exceedingly fertile. About three o'clock we # THE TRAVELS OF

we got into a low country, and by four came in with a gulph of the river Pro-rater, which is fifteen werfts from Pere-flaw. Soon after that, we came in with another, which was as large as a river, and ran up a great way into the land. By five, we got into a third

gulph, on the right, which extended itself towards the mountains, and spread far and wide on both sides. For my own part, I take it to have been a flood; and here the river begins again to take its sweepe. In an hour's time, we had fight of the village called Fabrenewa, which stands on an eminence; but the country all beneath was so overflowed, even above the tops of the trees, that it looked perfectly like a flood. The foil here appeared to us to be very fandy. There we frequently met with vefels coming from (a) Cefan, and other places, which were towed along with a rope, with abundance of toil and fatigue, by their respective crews. They have some relief, however, in failing, when the wind blows brisk, and fits fair for them. Here we faw great numbers of ducks, snipes, and other game, and in the evening we reached the convent of Borofke, which is built with stone, and on a hill, not far distant from the river, and near a village, which is about three werfls only from Pereflaw, where we stay'd all night. On the twenty-eighth, we paffed by the place last-mentioned, in thick, hazy weather, which prevented us from having that prospect of it that I could have with'd. It stands on an eminence, not far distant from the river, in the lat. of 45 degrees 42 minutes, and is commonly called Pereflaw-Refanke, which name it affumes is the capital. Afterwards we paffed by several villages, situate upon hills, where we faw lands that were overflowed, and some, which seemed, to all outward appearance, like our combustible foil in (g) Holland, of which we make turf, in the paffage between (p) Leyden and the (s) Hague. When we were got eight werfls from Pereflaw, we had a fight of a large village, which belonged to one Tifmaffe

Ivanitz, Erfoffkie, governor of Aftracan, and several Russians, under tents, taking their diversion all along the river fide. But as we paffed farther on, we had a prospect of divers villages, and all a flat country both on one fide of us and the other, which was overflowed even above the tops of the trees. In this place, the river is very broad; and in the evening, we found ourselves surrounded with trees; but the waters had covered the banks to such a degree, that it was a very difficult matter to walk with safety upon them. Tho' it was exceedingly hot, the weather was very fine. I went on shore with the boat, which did fo every day, in order to take in wood, to fee if I could pofitibly meet with any game; and towards the evening, a large bark from Moscow rowed by us. On the 29th in the morning, being got about ten werfls beyond Refan, we met, upon the left, an opening of several fathom within the land, where the river, which had made its way, formed a large lake, which was fo deep as to be navigable at least for small craft; but we could discern no village, as the weather proved dark and hazy. A league from thence we saw another gulph, where the last-mentioned lake terminated in a circular form. The meadows all round about were full of flocks and herds, and beyond them were lofty mountains. About nine, we had a fight of more lands that lay under water; but as we came to a point, where the river formed a small gulph, we could discern dry ground again, and a

small place, called Kieftius, in which were nothing but a few miserable houses, and several vefels. It was here that we hoifted fail for the first time, tho' the gale was but easy. To the right of us, we had a fight of the convent of Terigho, and a small village; and soon afterwards of a place, called Solofade, where there was a tolerable good church, all built with stone. From thence we came again to several lands that were overflowed, and had a fight of several trees, which, tho' very lofty ones, were covered up with water, to their topmost branches; and these inundations annually continue till the month of July, at which time,

The convent of Borofke.

The convent of Terigho.

Solofade. # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

time, the waters begin to abate. On the thirtieth, we came to a very agreeable place, about a hundred werfts from the city of Kefiemof: I drew the prospect of it, as it is annexed in Number 21. Once more we hoifted our fails indeed, with the wind at north-east, but we were soon reduced to the neceffity of taking them down again, and of standing to our oars; and after we had passed by several villages, we proceeded to a country fo deeply overflowed, that nothing could be difcerned but the sky, the water, and the tops of fome few trees that were more lofty than the reft. Towards fun-set, we met with a veffel which belonged to his Czarian majefly, laden with anchors, and bound for (t) Afoph, in company with another, not near fo large. We faluted each other, however, in form, with what fire-arms we had. When we were arrived within thirty werfts of Kafiemof, we made ufe of but half our oars, that the crew might relieve each other by turns. On the firt of May, about one in the afternoon, we were a long-fide of the city of Kafiemof above-mentioned, which is fittuate on the elft fide of the river, and on the fummit of a hill. This city, tho' very extenfve, has no walls; and not only its houfes, but all its four churches likewife are built with timber. Here is a tower to a mofch, which belongs to the Turks and Tartars, who re-fide here, where I landed, as did several Armenians, with an intent to purchafe provifions and liquors; but we loft our labour. Thus difappointed, we rowed after the bark, which, as the kept on her paffage, we were above an hour, and paffed by several villages in our way, before we could overhauſ her. Some of our paffengers, however, who went afore during our abfence, met with a parcel of afparagus, and brought a confiderable part of it away with them. Tho' they were long and flender; yet they were well tafted, and fit to stew; I got therefore some of the largeft of them, and afted them after the Dutch manner. After we had paffed by several villages, there arofe fuch a brift gale directly againft us, that it was with the utmoſt difficulty that we efcaped ftriking on the flat-board fhore. The wind was at fourth-eaft, and we ftruck a little once; but foon got a-float again: and I obferved, that theſe barks,

on such an occasion, are not ready in their answering at the helm. At night we drew near to a village which spreads itself all down the declivity of a hill, towards the river; and there the next morning I took the prospect of it, which is annexed in Number 22. On the second, in the morning, we arrived at the aforefaid village, (called Alaetma) which is three-core werfts beyond the city of Kafiemof. It is situate on the top of a hill, and lies in some measure inwards; so that the whole is not to be viewed from the river. It is a pretty large place; has no less than eight churches in it, and several houses upon the river-side. It is surrounded with several villages, and on each side there are woods that are extremely pleasant. Some short time afterwards, we had a sight of several other villages, and a large meadow full of cattle and sheep; and beyond that, another gulph of the river, which appeared to us, to wind amongst the meadows and their trees to a village that stood at the foot of a mountain. The river here is very broad, and the banks, on each side, abound with trees. Here we saw a prodigious flock of geese in the air. On the third, we passed by Moruma, a town, situate on the declivity of a hill, which is considerably large; with seven several stone-churches, which are magnificent enough; besides divers others, not equally flatly, built with timber. Here, as I have been informed, that the inhabitants make the best bread that is to be met with throughout all his Czar's majesty's dominions. It is inhabited partly by Russians, and partly by Tartars; and here the Tartars of Mordua begin. As we proceeded, we had a sight of more villages and more lands, that lay under water. The river here is very broad, and one of the villages was situate at the foot of a mountain, which runs away several leagues farther. The soil is so sandy, and so full of stones, that it is G g no # THE TRAVELS OF

1703

Beggars.

no easy matter to go ashore. Here we saw a poor fellow, that was perpetually crosting himself, and every now and then bowing down his head to the very ground; which the Russians we had on board taking particular notice of, they went in their boat to him, and having first made a collection for him, gave him what they had got, and among the rest, some loaves of bread; for he was a poor beggar, it seems; and soon after we perceived three women, with their children, in the like-manner, on whom they likewise bestowed their voluntary benefactions. These mendicants live, for the generality, in the mountains, and as soon as ever they espied a vessel at a distance, they run down to the river-side, in hopes of some charitable relief. After this, we came among a parcel of lofty hills, which, tho' there were very few trees upon them, were covered with a lively verdure; at last, arriving at a place where there was a Kabak, we landed, with a view of getting some liquors of one kind or another; but what we found proved very bad, and 'twas once more with abundance of difficulty that we recovered

our bark. After that, a gale sprang up, that was directly against us, and so very strong, that we were under an indispensable necessity to lay till for several hours. After this, we traversed the mouths of two rivers, the first to the starboard, called Molfua Raka, and on the larboard side about eight werfts farther, the Clefma, which rises at Volodimer. On the fourth, we got into the center of a lofty country, and from thence descended to a village, called Ibfuletz, which is about forty werfts from (u) Nifen. Here we met with a bark that had ten oars, and made good way, tho' against the stream of the river, the banks whereof were perfectly level on each side, and abounded with trees; and there were several hills within fight, tho' at some considerable distance. About three o'clock we arrived within fight of the convent of Dudina, which is delightfully situated amidst a profusion of verdant trees, on the declivity of a hill, on the top whereof there stands a village, of which, nothing more is to

bee seen than the spires of their churches. At night the wind blew with that violence, and the waves swelled so high, that we were glad to shelter ourselves from it, as much as possible, on the larboard side of the river. On the fifth, the wind was greatly abated, and we began to make way again, by break of day; and having passed by several villages, we reached at last the ship-yards, which lie along the river, and extend themselves as far as the very suburbs of Nifen, where there is a magnificent monastery, which is walled all round; in the bottom there is a handsome church, built with stone, with abundance of wooden houses near it, down to the river-side. There is another church, built likewise with stone, and pretty large, which stands against a hill, on the summit whereof is a little village. This city is commonly called by the Ruffians, Nifen, or Niefna, otherwise Nifi-Novgorod, or the little Novgorod; and by others again, Nifen Nieugarten. It is the capital of the small duchy, which is distinguished by that title, and has a fort or citadel on a rock, or the conflux of the two rivers before-mentioned; namely, the Oca and the Volga. This city is surrounded with a curious stone-wall, and passengers must go thro' what they call a Bazar, or spacious market-place, before they come to the gate, called Iwanoffkje, which is situated near the river. This gate is built with vast blocks of stone, and is extremely deep. From hence they ascend by a great street, which abounds with bridges, built with timber, till they come to another gate, called Diawietrofskie, near which stands the grand stone-church, with five domes to it, all varnished over with green, and decorated with curious croffes. On one side of this church, stands the archiepiscopal palace, all stone-work, and within its enclosure, there is a pretty little church with a steeple, and two other churches without; the one built with timber, and the other with stone. The Prikaes, or the chancery offices, which are situated near this gate, are all built with timber; and so likewise is the governor's house. There is nothing very

Nifen and its situation.

very material, however, this city, whole circuit is full, and wharf houses are in it. It has no other that strikes the eye in a very manner, as there are in a more trees, and several houses from each other. The walls flanked with towers, formed others square; and one of particular more conspicuous, a larger church lies on the gate which lies on the gate of this city, how spacious, especially in the side of the river, where there are churches, and where the divided into several parts. There are erected not only four churches likewise, has a church there is no such thing but the circumference of it, on heights and depths which are professed. The river here is thronged with embarkation. Another, which is for repelling from different side of it, there is a large church built all with stone-houses, where that quaintly reflects.

About eight o'clock, no less than forty-eight ten oars, and forty hand them, in order to take all these belonged to, for that gentleman, who the Czar's majesty's hand, he allowed.

When night came on, ringing, on account of the the Alemtan, which with the evening days. He is elves with plenty of good with brain, particularly with brains, very good at this. # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

very material, however, to be seen in this city, whose circumference is but small, and whose houses are all built with timber. It has no other gates than the two above-mentioned: The adjacent country strikes the eye in a very agreeable manner, as there are in a multitude of green trees, and several houses, not far distant from each other. The walls thereof are flanked with towers, some circular, and others square; and one of them in particular is more conspicuous, and to be discerned at a greater distance than the rest. There were four pieces of cannon in the passage to the guard-room, under that gate which lies on the land-side. The suburbs of this city, however, are very spacious, especially in those parts towards the river, where there are divers stone churches, and where the hill, which is divided into several parts, and whereon are erected not only several houses, but churches likewise, has a very good effect; there is no such thing as facing the circumference of it, on account of the heights and depths which interrupt the prospect. The river here is perpetually thronged with embarkations of one kind or another, which are for ever palling and repaying from different parts. On one side of it, there is a large village, which is the sole property of Mr. Gregory Demitri Strogenof, where there is a curious church built all with stone, and a large stone-house, where that rich merchant frequently resides.

About eight o'clock, there went away no less than forty-eight several barks, with ten oars, and forty hands on board each of them, in order to take in wood; and all these belonged to, and

were agents for that gentleman, who is reputed to be one of the most substantial merchants in all his Czarain majesty's dominions. To each of these hands, who thus set out to bring in his timber, he allowed three six-dollars. When night came on, the bells began to ring, on account of the grand festival of the Ascension, which was to be solemnized the ensuing day. Here we supplied ourselves with plenty of provisions, and more particularly with brandy, which is not only very good at this place, but cheap enough in reason; for we had no less than eight bottles of it for forty pence; nor did the Armenians fail of taking in for themselves a sufficient flock of the same liquor. Eatables, however, were cheap likewise, in proportion; for here we could purchase a lamb, or a moderate sheep, for thirteen or fourteen pence; two Ducks, not over large, indeed, for a penny; a fine pullet for three-pence; forty eggs for two-pence; two white loaves, moderately big, for a penny; a brown loaf, of seven or eight pound weight, for the same sum; and their beer, tho' very cheap, is very good. This city, according to the nearest computation that can be made, is about 800 werths from Moscow; that is to say, about 160 German leagues, notwithstanding the distance is very little more than 100 of those leagues, supposing you travel by land. It stands upon the river Oca, which we entered at Kolomna, as we have before observed; and here this river empties its waters into the Volga; which was formerly called the Rha. These two rivers, on their first union, are about 4000 feet broad, according to the computation of those who have been so curious as to take their exact dimensions in the winter, when their waters were frozen over. At present, the inhabitants of this city are all Russians, and not a Tartar among them: it lies in the latitude of 56 deg. 28 minutes, and is very populous. I should have been extremely pleased to have taken a view of it in front, from the river; but they would not indulge me to far on any account, by reason of their grand festival; nay, a fee in money was not powerful enough to accomplish what I aimed at; and the only reason as I could find, for their refusal was this; that the Russians will suffer nothing in the world to go forward on a solemn festival, but drinking of bumpers; and I saw several of them, wallowing, like fowls, in the dirty streets, out of their fantastic zeal for the day. It is somewhat odd and particular to observe, how the refuse of the people, at such times, will swarm round one of their Kabaks, or public-houses, where the landlords expose their brandy to sale. I tarried several hours in that where I purchased # THE TRAVELS OF

1703 chafed my cargo, with no other view, than to be an eye-witness of the various pranks, and whimsical conceits of these Ruffian Bacchanalians, as soon as the liquor begins to take effect; they are obliged to stand in the street, however; for none of their frolicks or gambols are allowed of within-doors. There is a table, planted some few yards from the house, where the money is deposited, and the quantity of liquor demanded is accordingly brought. This is taken out of a large kettle that stands hard by, with a proper ladle in it, composed of wood, and poured into a

little wooden-bowl. The smallest measure is charged a half-penny only. And in this manner are the populace served by a waiter, who makes it his whole business; but there is another who gives equal attendance to receive the money. This practice of intemperance on holidays is as frequent amongst their women as the men. In short, I saw the same farce played over again at another Kabak, where beer only was sold, and where the customers had admittance into the house.

On the fifth, we embarked, in order to get our people on board, and spent the night upon the river. Early in the morning we pursued our voyage; and as we passed but slowly by the city and suburbs, I took such a liking to the place, that the Reader will find a prospect thereof annexed hereto in plate No. XXIV.

As we advanced on our way, we came in sight of two villages, which lay on the larboard-side; one whereof was much larger than the other, and called Waefna; on the starboard-side we saw the convent of Beftjerfke, which is a spacious edifice, all built with stone, the roofs only excepted, and several houses besides on each side of it, and is not more than one werft beyond the city. We saw, moreover, one small church, called Jaffoofni, situate on a hill, and some hundreds of people flocking up to it, from divers parts, in order to solemnize the festival beforementioned; some of whom were busy in spreading their tents, in order for their amusement, in those kind of booths, after divine service. We continued at about three werfts from the city, till the seventh, and till seven in the morning; at which time, we advanced forwards, and by about twelve we came up with an island, which was two werfts at least in length, and abounded with trees. After that, we passed by several hills, and another island, whereon there was not a tree to be seen; and left the river called Kerfimia, and the convent of Macaria, to the larboard of us. This convent is a large stone edifice, and bears the resemblance of a fort or a castle; for it is surrounded with a lofty square stone-wall, which has a tower in every corner of it. Had not the day been too far spent, I should have had a great inclination to have drawn a prospect of it. On one side of it stood a village, and a chan, or a caravanserai, built with timber, where the merchants deposit their respective wares. Here there is kept a very considerable annual fair in the month of July, to which almost all the Ruffian merchants in general resort, notwithstanding it is kept no longer than a fortnight. Some of our Ruffians going thither, in order to purchase a parcel of fish, were informed that not long before, a certain governor, in his passage from Moscow, had been attacked there by three barks, each of them manned with eighteen Ruffian pirates; that an engagement ensued, and the Governor, was so well furnished with fire-arms, and behaved with so much courage and intrepidity, that he killed three of the pirates upon the spot, and obliged the rest to retreat like a set of cowardly villains; that this skirmish, however, had

obliged the governor to return to Moscow, after he had left one of his retinue in the town under proper care, to be cured of the wounds he had received in his defence.

This information put us more on our guard than otherwise we should have been; and we prepared our arms accordingly, in order to be ready, if occasion should require it. We were furnished with about forty muskets and pistols for the reception of such a casual crew of villains, and, during the night, we had a Ruffian and an Armenian always on the watch. # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

On the eighth, about break of day, we arrived at Bormino, which is no less than a hundred werfts from the last town we passed by; and here, on each side of the shore, the banks were full of trees; and by seven or eight in the morning we reached Goeckina, a town that belongs to count Golowin. This place extends itself a considerable way along the river, and contains (as we were informed) no less than seven-thousand houses; and here the country-people brought us their bread to sell; in case we had been disposed to purchase any. In the pursuit of our course, we came in sight of several floating islands, upon the river, which in this place is considerably broad; and between ten and eleven we crossed the mouth of the Soera, which flows from the fourth, where the high mountains commence; at the foot whereof stands a large village, called Waffiel, and on the summit, the town Waffielgorod, of which there is no view from the river. I was informed, however, that the place was but small; that it had no walls, and that all the houses were built with timber; that the town was about one-hundred and twenty werfts from Nifen; and that these parts are principally inhabited by Czeremissian Tartars, who extend themselves as far as Cagan. About four in the afternoon, we reached the town of Kufmademiancki, which is about forty werfts from Waffelgorod. This place is tolerably large, and extends itself all along the river, and partly up the hill, but it has no wall for its defence. As the wind happened to prove fotherly, we hoisted up our sail, and as we advanced, we observed, that both shores were full of linen-trees. We saw likewise several islands, but no hills. In the night, we passed by a place, called Sabalzar, which is forty werfts at least from the Town last mentioned, and stands on a rifling ground. To me it appeared to be very compact, and when we had proceeded thirty werfts farther, we came in sight of a town called Kokhaga, which lay on our larboard-side. On the ninth, we saw several high hills, and overtook a large bark, in company with several others, which were bound for Cagan. At this time,

the weather was calm, moist and hot. By noon we reached Blowolka, a town but about fourcore werfts from Cagan, on the starboard-side; and from thence we came to a place called Bellawalika, where our people went ashore, in order to purchase some fresh provisions. At three in the afternoon, we fled our course by a town, called Swyattiki, and the wind flowed directly for us. This place is situated on a rifling ground, has a Citadel, and

several stone-convents as well as churches; but the walls and houses are all timber-work. The whole is formed into an island by the river Swyage, which flows from the fourth, and here empties its waters into the Volga. On one side of the last mentioned river, and directly opposite to the town, is seen, at the point of a hill, the village called Saldactike-flabode, between which and this town, this Swyage falls into the Volga, as we hinted before, and as evidently appears by the plate No. XXV, annexed; where the reader may observe there is an island before the Swyage, otherwise called Swyattiki. We coaled all along this hill, or mountain, and fled our course by the city of Cagan, at the distance of about four werfts. It makes a very grand appearance here on account of the several churches and convents with which it abounds, and its fort or citadel which is surrounded with a stone-wall. Some small time before this, we had passed by the several ship-yards, which lie about six or seven werfts only from the town, in a reach, where the river is broad; and there we had a sight of near forty vessels of divers kinds upon the stocks, and several that were nearly completed, and almost ready for launching. We were informed by some of the workmen, that they had orders for the building of three hundred and eighty, the greater part whereof were to sail to Astracan, for the service and protection of the (w) Caspian sea, and the rest were bound for other places. As we passed by, I took a prospect of Cagan, in the best manner for short a time would permit me, and the reader may see it in the plate No. XXVI, hereto annexed. # THE TRAVELS OF

It is situated in (x) Afa, and in the southern parts of the Mofcovite (y) Tartary, on a river which bears the same denomination, called by the inhabitants, Cafanke, and empties its waters into the Wolga. It is the capital of the kingdom so called, between that of (x) Bulgar and the Czeremiffians. This city has a wall, indeed, but then it is a wooden one. As we advanced farther, we had a sight of several islands, which appeared to us like so many forests in the river; and we observed likewise a kilm upon the hills, where several were at work; and on our left, we saw several lands which were overflown. On the tenth we arrived at the mouth of the Kama, which fell on our larboard-side, into the Wolga, at the distance of about threecore werfts from the city of Cafan. It is very broad, and flows from the north-east, and difembogues it self with that impetuuity into the Wolga, that it hurries on veffels, without any other afflance, for several leagues together. The' some perfons affect, that the waters thereof are of a brown colour; yet I confess, I could not perceive it. It is, however, very sweet, and in regard to drinking, far preferable to that of the Wolga. About noon we reached the small town called Tetoetfie, or Tetus, which is situate on a high hill, about ninety werfts from Cafan. It is surrounded with a wooden wall; and its churches and houfes are all timber-work, and but very small. There was only one part of the wall to be seen as we passed by. There is likewise a small village on the river-side, where some of our passengers went a shore in order to purchase some provisions, and procure a small

quantity of ice to cool our liquor. After that we passed by a large island called Starifo, which is forty werfts from Tetus; and in the night by several others full of trees. Here the river is at least a league broad, and on the starboard-side of it has several mountains. Here we rode at anchor for some hours in the night, the wind blowing very hard, and directly against us. On the eleventh, I went a-shore with my Armenians and some few Ruffians, in order to purchase some provisions at a small distance from the town called Simbierfka, which

flands on the right, upon a rising ground, about three werfts from the river. We were informed, that in former days it was a spacious city, but destroyed by Tamerlane the Great; tho' there are no remains of it, as I can understand, at present; neither, indeed, had I any opportunity or time to spare in searching after them. Some influx, that, higher up, there were divers other cities and islands, the ruins whereof were full very conspicuous; but I much question the veracity of their affections, notwithstanding that they say, that there are the traces of an old cattle, and the walls that once surrounded it, near the town of Zariets. They maintain, upon the whole, that there are several very ancient cities, and very populous ones likewise, between Cafan and Aftraean, and more particularly that of Acktobea, situate on the river Oeffa; but even of this I could never procure any true satisfactory account. It must be acknowledged thus far indeed, that the waters of the Oeffa flow between Saratof and Zaritha, which are situate on the other side of the Wolga, and empty themselves into that river, and even wafhes one part of (aa) Siberia. It must be admitted likewise, that the city of Acktobea flood once upon this river, notwithstanding there are no footsteps of it at present remaining, all the stones there of in general having been removed from thence, in order to build the city of Aftraean, and some other adjacent towns. When I went a-shore, I perceived that the village of Simbierfka and its purlious were of large extent; partly, on the river, and partly again on the hill which we were to go up, before we could reach the Bazar. No sooner had we reached it, but we perceived a fire had just broke out; among some houses that stood upon the hill, and had then destroyed five or fix at least of them; but within the compass of half an hour more, there were twenty of them reduced to ashes; for the wind was so high, that they burst out into flames before they could possibly be pull'd down, which (as we have before observed) is their method of extinguishing fires. #
CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

All provisions here, we found, as cheap, in all respects, as at Niefha. I had a great inclination to have gone up to the place it self, which is 180 werfis from Cafan, but it was impracticable, as our vefel was on her way. However, I heard that it was considerably large, and furrounded with a wooden-wall; that there were 8 stone-churches in it, three or four convents, and no lefs than 10,000 houses, all inhabited by Ruffians only, the Tartars residing in the adjacent villages. It was above two hours before

we could overtake our bark, and our rowing after her was attended with no small danger, as well as difficulty; for the river here whirls about with great violence, in some particular places, being extremely deep, swells to that degree, that a small boat can scarcely withstand the furges. In our passage, we met again with several places covered with trees, whose verdure struck the eye agreeably enough, and had a full view of several hills that flood between them: When we had advanced thirty werfis from this place, we arrived at the village, called Siengiela, and divers others, all inhabited by Ruffians only; and not long afterwards at another town, called Nove Devitzke Salo, which is of large extent, very compact, and abounds with churches, some of whose steeple are very high. That night we met with a vessel, that was towing along, and manned with Ruffians, who asked us from whence we came, to what port we were bound, and what country-men we were? We made answer, that we belonged to his Czarlian majesty, and cautioned them to keep at a proper distance, lest they should repent it; for we were apprehensive that they were pirates. On the twelfth in the morning, we saw several hills on each side of us; some whereof were covered with fir-trees, which was a novelty, as we had never observed the like before. The river here was not above a werf broad at most; to make amends, however, it was extremely deep, and had risen so high this year, that it had laid all the land, which we have spoken of, under water to that degree, that there were rivers themselves at that time which could not be distinguished. In such occurrences, the Ruffians are perfectly ignorant, and could give me no satisfactory account of the cause from whence they arose; neither could I procure any information on shore; because our vessel made no stay there. By nine we reached the village called Siera Barak, which is 40 werfis on this side Samara. There several of our passengers went on shore, in order to furnish themselves with fresh provisions; there the river began to widen; and we had not advanced far on our way before we had the sight of an island that was overflowed; and on the left side of us, stood a round high hill, almost without a tree upon it, called Sariol Kiergen. We were informed by the Ruffians, that the spot was remarkable for being the monument, or sepulchre, of a certain king or emperor of Tartary, whose name was Mamon; and who fell up the Wolga, accompanied by 70 other Tartarian princes, in order to invade the Ruffian territories; and forasmuch as he died there, his soldiers, whom he had brought along with him, for that intended expedition, (who were very numerous) each of them contributed towards raising that eminence, or tomb, by filling their respective helmets with the adjacent earth. Scarcely a league from this hill, we had sight of another, called Kafia Gora, which abounds with trees, and extends as far as Samara, such of them in particular as grow on the left side, being principally alders and willows, stand so thick, that there is no possibility of seeing through them. Here, we were informed, that the best sulphur that was ever discovered is to be met with in plenty; which was an impenetrable secret but two or three years before. Here we found no less than 4000 persons hard at work; some Ruffians; others

Czeremifians, and others again Mordwatians, over whom his Czarlian majesty had proper guards, as well as surveyors. These hills lie on the west of the river; and by two in the afternoon we reached Samara, which lies on the east, on a rising ground, though not very high, and almost without a tree, and terminating with the town itself, by filling its situation # THE TRAVELS OF

(as appears by plate No. XXVII) on the river-side, and, not (as some historians too peremptorily insist) at the full distance of two werfts from it. At the end of this town runs the river Samara, from whence it derives its name, and at about five or six werfts distance from thence, empties its waters into the Wolga. The town is moderately large, but the houses are all poor and inelegant, and built with wood. It is surrounded likewise with a wretched wooden wall, which is flanked on the land-side indeed, with a large tower. The city covers very nearly the whole hill; and the suburbs extend themselves all along the river-side. According to the nearest computation, it is about 350 werfts from Cafa, and as we passed by it, we saw a large gate, several small churches, and a few convents. About five and twenty werfts from this place, we saw, on our larboard-side, the river Afkula, which empties its waters, as well as the Samar into the Wolga. Here we left sight of all the mountains and hills; and here the river was very broad; but soon we recovered sight of them again, when they flood very near us on our right hand. That day we met with several barks, and saw a large number of ducks of a very extraordinary size; some of a very dark, brown colour, and others perfectly white. We crossed the river called Waffiele on our larboard-side, which is but a small one, and not far different from it, but in the Wolga, we could discern a narrow slip of an island, full of trees, yet laid under water, which was looked upon as somewhat very remarkable. After that, we met with another bark from Afracan, the master whereof assured us, that there were fourteen more but a small matter behind him, all bound for Makaria-Fair, of which we have made mention in another place; and part of them, indeed, passed us in the night. On the thirteenth, we had sight of the town of Kafkur, which 'tis but small, has a wooden enclosure flanked with wooden towers, and several churches built with timber. Its suburbs, or out-parts, lie on one side

The Calmuc Tartars infest these places, and carry off, by violence and rapine, not only man and beast, but every thing else of the least value that falls in their way. As we advanced still farther on, we perceived the river to wind very much, amongst large islands, full of trees; but as the country was covered with water to a very high degree, it was with difficulty that we could discern the bed of the Wolga. After that, we had a sight of the hills once more, on our right side; but they were perfectly parched up with the drought, and piercing heat of the sun; whereas, at other times they are all covered over with a lively verdure. The country-people, indeed, prayed very devoutly for rain, being greatly at a loss for fresh-water for their cattle. Not long after this, we advanced to a place

called Sela, which is situate at the foot of the mountains, about sixty werfts distance from Kafkur. There we met with three large Stroeks, one whereof belonged to his Czarian Majefty. All of them were full of Coffac-women, whom their crews were transporting to Cafu, and whose husbands had been executed the year before for their mal-practices, on which we shall take occasion to expatiate in a more proper place. From this place we traversed the mouth of the Waffiele, over against which stands the Nove Derevene, or the new village, which belongs to Count Golowin. As our sailors had been fatigued by a spil, (as they call it) of threecore werfts, in order to ease them, we rode at anchor the left part of the night. On the fourteenth, as the wind blew briskly abaft, we went down the river at a great rate. A vessel freighted principally with earthen ware, puffed by us, bound for Afracan; and by eleven

Calmuc Tartars.

1703

Plate 28.

``` # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

ven we reached a place called Wolkefniska, which is three-score and five miles from Saratof; where the hills were very steep, covered with a kind of grey fand, and full of fiones. In this place we met with several fithermen, who exchanged their fish with our people for but a small quantity of their brandy, that being a commodity they are not allowed to sell: This spot abounds with lofty oaks. Soon afterwards we were terrified with a very impetuous storm of wind, thunder, and rain, which made the river swell with farges as high as some in the sea; which reduced us to the necessity of riding at anchor for some time, under shelter of the larboard-shore; where our bark struck with that violence against the trunks of some trees, that we were in danger of being loft ourselves, as well as of losing our boats; for such vessels have but a small anchor, which they durst not venture to let go in the open current, when the wind is any ways tempestuous; because it would not prove of strength sufficient to secure them from driving. This tempest, however, proved happily but of short duration. When night came on, we went ashore, about 20 werfts from Saratof, where we kindled a good fire, and met with several oaks, wild roses, and other flowers. Having pretty well recovered our selves from the panic we had been in, and the fatigue we had been at, we returned to our bark; but no sooner were we all got on board; but one of our Armenian passengers was taken so violently ill, that his life was almost depaivered of; the fit held him above three hours, during which time he lay motionless; afterwards, indeed, he shewed some tokens of life, but continued speechless. During our concern and confusion on account of this disaster, we arrived at Saratof. There we brought him upon deck; where we perceived some blood that was clotted come out of his mouth; from whence we conjectured, that his misfortune was an



imposthume in his throat, and that he could never survive it. In the mean time, however, we sent a special messenger for a physician, or surgeon, but to no purpose; there was no such experienced person to be found. As I was incapable myself of being any ways assistant to the unhappy patient, I went and took a survey of the place; which is situated in the south-east of Russia, but on the north-east of the Volga, partly against, and partly upon a hill, and its suburbs, or out-parts, extend along the river. I perceived, that tho' there were no walls in the higher parts of it; yet there were several wooden-towers, at some considerable distance one from another. At about a quarter of a league from the river, there is a gate; and on the left-hand, another, separate from the town; and on the side of Moscow by land, a third, with palisades between them. When I went on that side, which is on the right-hand of the river, there was a decent with several gardens; and beyond the last-mentioned gate, there is a campaign country and a high-road, that is much frequented by all such as travel from Astracan to Moscow by land; and here there is little or nothing worthy of observation but a few wooden churches. 'Tis proper, however, to inform the reader, that the inhabitants are not only all Russians, but almost all of them military men, and under the command of a governor. Not above eight-years since, the whole place was reduced to ashes by an unhappy fire; but at present, it is all new-built. In these parts the Tartars are perpetually committing outrages and devastations, extending themselves even as far as the Cyprian, and the river Jaika. It is computed to lie 350 werfts from Samara; and in the latitude of 52 degrees 12 minutes. There we saw several barks, full of soldiers, bound for Afoph, and elsewhere; and departed from thence before noon. From the river there is no prospect of any thing but the towers and tops of churches; because the suburbs lie between the city and the river.

When we returned to our vessel, we found our unhappy fellow-traveller in the very same pitious condition in which we left him; and about three he took his last gasp, which surprized us so much the more, as he had been before on shore, and then seemed as active and sprightly as before. # THE TRAVELS OF

as any of his associates, who expressed a general concern for him, and covered him over decently enough with a cotton cloth, which they tied fast about his legs; then they placed a book upon his head, a cross on his breast, and an incense-pot at his head. Two of them, after these preliminary good offices, read out of some proper book of devotion, for two hours successively, and during that interval, his other friends took care to provide for him a winding-sheet, a shirt, and a pair of drawers of new cloth. When this was done, his servants went on shore, in order to procure a decent place for his interment; but before they removed the corpse, they read a second time over him, and concluded with a funeral dirge. As soon as the corpse was landed on shore, they shrief it; washed his head first, and then his whole body, which

they placed upon a plank, and then put on his new shirt and drawers; when they had done, they furnished him with a crofs, which hung down upon his breast; and put a chaplet, or string of beads, after that, in his right-hand, and in his left a taper. In the next place, they clapt plaifters, or small wads of linen, over his eyes, mouth, and ears, and laid his arms a-crofs; this done, they wrapped him up in the sheet before-mentioned, and put him on a bier, which was covered with a carpet. From thence they carried his remains in procession to the summit of the hill, where a decent grave had been before dug for his reception, and there they began to fing and read once more; and when his associates had, one after another, faluted his forehead, they committed his body to the earth; and each of them flung a handful of fand into his grave; making use at the same time of the sign of the crofs, and some other petty ceremonies, according to the custom of their country. At length they filled up the grave with earth and flones, and erected a large wooden crofs at his head, and three small ones a-crofs, one over the other. After that they threw large flones upon his grave, and fired a small quantity of gun-powder all around it; not forgetting to place a taper likewise at the head. When these friendly offices were over, they each of them killed the highest stone, as they advanced in due form, and then burnt incense upon it, and setting fire to the gun-powder, they presented to all the company then prefent a small glass of brandy. Every passenger in our vessel, without exception, attended this funeral, nor could some of the other merchants refrain from shedding a tear as a testimony of their respect for one, who had so lately appeared amongst them in his full bloom. The name of this gentleman was Peter Archangel, and his usual place of abode was at Ispahan, where his wife and children had lived for some considerable time, impatient to see him, and in hopes of his safe return. This hill, which is parted from the left, and surrounded with oaks, willows, and alder-trees, had here and there a rofe-tree in the bud; and had the foil proved somewhat moister, in all probability, we had met with divers plants, as well as flowers: we could not, however, go down to the village, because the waters were out. The name of this mountain is Gorofoponfikie, and is computed to be about 26 werfts distant from Saratof. As we advanced further, we had several prospects as agreeable as the most lively imagination can possibly devise. On the sixteenth, we saw once more several steep mountains, which were crumbled away in divers places, extremely fandy, and full of swallows nefts, from whence we saw a great number of them fly in and out. Here likewise the river abounds with islands; and at some considerable distance we espied the golden mountain, called Soloffogori, and several others, which were covered with verdure, and abounded with trees; and between two of them, we could perceive the small river called Doezinke, whose waters flow to the north-west, and which is computed to be about 25 werfts from Sarogamis. Advancing still farther on our way, we met with a wood, which stood between us and the hills, and partly in the water, where two vessels had been

cast away, where the waters of the river were at their highest, but not broken to pieces. Here likewise we had a fight of some fishermen's huts; # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

huts; and when night came on, we passed by Saroegamis, a town which had been four years erecting, and was then considerably advanced. The place was moderately large, and surrounded with a mud wall, in the completion whereof a great number of workmen were at that time employed. There were then near 400 families, who came from Moscow, in order to reside there. The hill, whereon the town is erected, is very lofty towards the river, steep and exceedingly rocky. On the left-hand, and below the town, runs the river called Kamuchinka, whose waters flow wefterly; and springs, as we are informed, from the canal of Hoba, which falls into the (bb) Don, whose waters empty themselves into the lake (cc) Moetis, and divide (dd) Europe from Asia. According to some accounts, we are told, that the Coffacs, who resided on the banks of the Don, made it a constant practice to come in boats upon the Wolga, and commit very great depredations in those parts, notwithstanding a considerable number of men, well skilled in military affairs, were frequently dispatched in order to chastise them for their infelont department: As all these precautions, however, proved ineffectual, this town was erected on purpose to restrain them. There were several workmen, moreover, very busy in the erection of a kind of fort, with a mud wall round it, on the other side of the river Kamuchinka. This building, however, was not carried on with that vigour as it should be; as the workmen were incapable of withstanding the inclemency of the weather. And it was for that reason, and no other, that his Czarian majesty declined his intention of digging a canal from this place into the (ee) Black-Sea. I went to take a survey of this work; where I was informed, the original intention was to have erected this town, where the first was begun; but that it was wholly laid aside on account of the inclemency of the air. A resolution was likewise taken to make a dike from one mountain to the other, in order to intercept the course of the last-mentioned river, and prevent its waters from falling into the Wolga; that project, however,

was likewise laid aside, because the gates of the sluices were incapable of bearing up against the weight and violent pressure of the waters, which from time to time descended from the mountains. Besides this, the foil which lay beneath the stream, was so fony, and so much of it was solid rock, that there was no possibility of accomplishing a penetration through it. The confederation of all these difficulties were such a check upon the spirits of the projector, that he lay under an indispensable obligation to desist from his undertaking; left, after all his toil and fatigue, his endeavours should prove altogether vain and ineffectual.

We had reached thus far, not so much through the affluence of our sails, as by the rapidity of the current, and the dint of our oars; by virtue whereof, we advanced on our way after the rate of 120 werfts in a day, that is to say, in four and twenty hours. On the seventeenth in the morning, we traversed the river, called Boblocla, which is 90 werfts from the last town we passed by, where we met with a stout vessel that belonged to his Czarian majesty, and was on its passage from Afracan. In this place I drew the prospect which the reader will find in the plate No. XXX.

About eleven we had such a violent squall of wind from the hills, that we were obliged to double-man our oars; and notwithstanding all their united strength, it was with the utmost difficulty that we kept clear of the larboard-shore: And after all our efforts, we were reduced to the necessity of making ourselves fast to some trees that were covered with water, at the foot of the mountains. Fair weather, however, coming on again, we quitted our hold, and advanced still forwards on our way as far as the island, which lay on the left of us, and was called Alinda Locka. The mountain runs out to such a degree in a point towards this island, that the passage between them is extremely narrow; this place is computed to be three score werfts from Zaritza. Soon after this, we were blown on the shore by a sudden squall of wind; we were not long, however, before we got afloat again; but # THE TRAVELS OF

but the wind gathering full farther strength, rather than abating, and the rain falling heavy likewise upon us, we deemed it moft advisable to fhefter our-felves under the lee of the hills, and once more make ourfelves falt to the trees. Having taken this precaution, we went a-thore in our boat, which it was impoffible to do in our veffel, and there made a good fire, in order to cook us fome victuals. Whilst that neceffary bufinefs was going forwards, I went up the hill in queft of flowers and plants; but every thing there was perfectly burnt up and decayed; but besides, the wind blew fo hard, that I could fcarce fland against it. Thereupon I made the beft of my way back again; but on my return, I perceived a great number of butterflies, that had fettled themfelves on the withered herbs and plants, fome whereof were of a purple without, and a fpckled grey within; and others of fo many various, and fuch beautiful colours, that I took the pains to catch them, and brought them (as curiofities) away with me.

The weather continued full stormy, and extremely cold, till about eight at night; at which time the wind in fome meafure abated, and fhifted its quarter in our favour. Whereupon, we immediately hoifted our fail, and by two in the morning we were advanced as far as the town of Zarifta, where we tarried till break of day on the eighteenth; but moved forwards as foon as we faw the rifing-fun. This town is fitate on a rifing ground, but not very high, is very small, and erected in a fquare, with a wall that is flanked with towers. The fuburbs indeed extend along the fhore, and run partly

about the town; its principal church is built with ftone; but it was not finifhed when we faw it, the reft are all wooden-ones, and can hardly be difcerned. I took a profeff, however, of the place, as we paffed by, which is hereto annexed in plate XXXI. It lies in the lat. of 48 deg. 23 minutes. The woods from this place all along to Aftracan abound with liquorice, which has a ftalk that rifes three or four feet high; and the ifland of Serpin-fke, which is 12 werfts in length, is not

far diftant from Zarifta. There is a canal of communication between the Don and the Wolga, which lies behind this ifland, and is not navigable, as I am informed, but called by the Ruffians Serpinfke as well as the ifland. Soon after this, we began to lofe fight of the mountains, and by ten o'clock we had advanced threecore werfts from Zarifta, having paffed by feveral iflands in our way. In the mean time the hills extended themfelves ftill farther and farther from us, up the country called Tzenogar, to which we had 40 werfts as yet to fail, the river being here three or four werfts in breadth. After this, the wind blew directly abait, but fo very brisk, that it kept our veffel from yawing either to one fide or the other, and from running aground. One of our boats struck with fuch violence againft our rudder, that we were obliged to cut her away, and let her fink. However, we might have prevented that lofs, had we been fo inclined; for I had fcarce been out of her above a minute or two, on account of a favourite fporting dog of mine that lay in her, which I removed into the other, on my obferving that the took water, which was found and much better; Nay fome of our paffengers had lain in her the night before, as there was no commodious reception for them in the veffel itfelf. On the evening we were advanced as far as the town of Tzenogar, which is 200 werfts diftant from Zarifta; having failed at a great rate, as the wind flood perfectly fair for us all the preceding day. This town is about 300 werfts from Aftracan, and fitate on a hill upon the ftaboard-fhore. The firft thing we had a fight of, was a Corps de Garde, and of that but a very imperfect one, as we could difcern no more of it than the roof, or top of it; and on the other fide, there was another built with wood, in the form of a lanthorn. The town itfelf is very small, and furrrounded with a wooden-wall only, but defended, indeed, with towers; it has nothing, however, remarkable within, and nothing but a few petty, insignificant houfes, or hutches without. The Ruffians amongft us feemed very de- # THE TRAVELS OF

but the wind gathering full farther strength, rather than abating, and the rain falling heavy likewife upon us, we deemed it moft advifeable to shelter ourfelves under the lee of the hills, and once more make ourfelves falt to the trees. Having taken this precaution, we went a-hore in our boat, which it was impoffible to do in our veffel, and there made a good fire, in order to cook us fome victuals. Whilst that neceffary businets was going forwards, I went up the hill in quett of flowers and plants; but every thing there was perfectly burnt up and decayed; but beides, the wind

blew so hard, that I could scarce stand against it. Thereupon I made the best of my way back again; but on my return, I perceiving a great number of butterflies, that had settled themselves on the withered herbs and plants, some whereof were of a purple without, and a speckled grey within; and others of so many various, and such beautiful colours, that I took the pains to catch them, and brought them (as curiosities) away with me.

The weather continued full stormy, and extremely cold, till about eight at night; at which time the wind in some measure abated, and shifted its quarter in our favour. Whereupon, we immediately hoisted our sail, and by two in the morning we were advanced as far as the town of Zarifta, where we tarried till break of day on the eighteenth; but moved forwards as soon as we saw the rising-sun. This town is situated on a rising ground, but not very high, is very small, and erected in a square, with a wall that is flanked with towers. The suburbs indeed extend along the shore, and run partly about the town; its principal church is built with stone; but it was not finished when we saw it, the rest are all wooden-ones, and can hardly be discerned. I took a profile, however, of the place, as we passed by, which is hereto annexed in plate XXXI. It lies in the lat. of 48 deg. 23 minutes. The woods from this place all along to Afracan abound with liquorice, which has a stalk that rises three or four feet high; and the island of Serpinfke, which is 12 werfts in length, is not far distant from Zarifta. There is a canal of communication between the Don and the Wolga, which lies behind this island, and is not navigable, as I am informed, but called by the Russians Serpinfke as well as the island. Soon after this, we began to lose sight of the mountains, and by ten o'clock we had advanced three score werfts from Zarifta, having passed by several islands in our way. In the mean time the hills extended themselves still farther and farther from us, up the country called Tzenogar, to which we had 40 werfts as yet to sail, the river being here three or four werfts in breadth. After this, the wind blew directly abaft, but so very brisk, that it kept our vessel from yawing either to one side or the other, and from running aground. One of our boats struck with such violence against our rudder, that we were obliged to cut her away, and let her sink. However, we might have prevented that loss, had we been so inclined; for I had scarce been out of her above a minute or two, on account of a favourite sporting dog of mine that lay in her, which I removed into the other, on my observing that she took water, which was found and much better; Nay some of our passengers had lain in her the night before, as there was no commodious reception for them in the vessel itself. On the evening we were advanced as far as the town of Tzenogar, which is 200 werfts distant from Zarifta; having failed at a great rate, as the wind stood perfectly fair for us all the preceding day. This town is about 300 werfts from Afracan, and situated on a hill upon the starboard-shore. The first thing we had a sight of, was a Corps de Garde, and of that but a very imperfect one, as we could discern no more of it than the roof, or top of it; and on the other side, there was another built with wood, in the

form of a lanthorn. The town itself is very small, and surrounded with a wooden-wall only, but defended, indeed, with towers; it has nothing, however, remarkable within, and nothing but a few petty, insignificant houses, or huts without. The Russians amongst us seemed very de- # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

desirous of going ashore, in order to distribute, as well as I could perceive, their voluntary benefactions amongst the poor people of the place; but the wind blowing excessively hard, and the current running with such a prodigious rapidity, the vessel, before they were aware, shot, like an arrow from a bow, some considerable way beyond the town; and we were obliged to come to anchor; our cable, however, proving too weak to withstand the squall, it broke, and we ran a-drift. This misfortune I very plainly foretold, and advised our hands on board, accordingly to take down their sails some time before we arrived at the town, and to ply only their oars; but as they would not hearken to my advice, and as the shore was very steep, they were under an absolute necessity of getting into the water, and with hawsers to hale the vessel on shore: at which time, they took the boat, and went back to the town, whilst we carried under the lee of the hills. I made one amongst the number, but as it was somewhat late before we got thither; the soldiers and inhabitants of the place would not admit us, but shut the gates for safety's sake upon us. However, they were so humane as to offer us beer, bread, milk and eggs, in case we were inclined to purchase such provisions. When we were all returned to the vessels, strict search was made for our anchor, but all to no purpose; in the morning, indeed, upon a repeated search we happily found it. This town is inhabited principally by soldiers, who are planted there, in order to withstand the too frequent insults and outrages of the Calmuc Tartars, who sometimes come clan-definitely, and not only carry off what cattle they find in their way, but scour the country as far as Samara itself. On the nineteenth, as the wind ran directly against us, we plied our oars; and whilst we were rowing along, we had sight of several steep hills, which were green at top, but sandy about the sides; and in this place the river was about a werft broad. From thence we altered our course to a grand wear, or fishery, which was about fourcore werfts from Tzenogar. This wear, which the Russians call Kaffarlkie, abounds with fine fish of divers kinds; here likewise we perceived a gulph, which the river Wolga had formed by its infringement on the adjacent lands. When we had advanced 125 werfts on our way, we came at night to an anchor; at break of day, however, we weighed her again, and on the twentieth proceeded on our voyage: As the wind stood very fair for us, we reached within a hundred werfts of Afracan, by twelve o'clock. There we doubled a point, in which place the river winds round with such a rapid course, that vessels are frequently lost in the whirl-pool; the water there being forty fathom deep. As we advanced still farther on, we saw a great number of ducks, and an island likewise, which was ten werfts in length, in a kind of reach, where the river is very wide. There was a guard of about thirty soldiers, at the point

of this little island, who had three or four cabbins to fit in, and shelter them from the inclemencies of the weather, where they stop all vefels that offer to pass by them without their permission. Whilst we were here, we saw on the opposite side, two barks that came from Afracan, but the soldiers, observing that they were making off, got directly into a boat and failed after them. There were two vefels riding at anchor here, bound for Cafan, besides ours; however, we were detained no longer than an hour; and when we were got at a small distance forwards, we saw several hills, that extend themselves as far as Afracan. By seven o'clock, we were advanced within twenty-two werfts of that city; and in about an hour after that, we saw a flout vefel on shore, which had been partly broke in pieces, notwithstanding there were several perfons full on board. Not long after the fight of that vefel in diftels, we discerned at some distance the church of Saboor, which is a very large one; and by about eleven that same night we arrived at Afracan, which is 2000 werfts, or 400 German leagues from Moscow. Cafan stands much about the mid-way. # THE TRAVELS OF

## Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

1. Moscow, fee p. 23. n. c.
2. Wolga, fee p. 28. n. f.
3. Astracan, fee p. 62. n. i.
4. Iphahan, fee p. 109.
5. Holland, fee p. 76. n. c.
6. Kolomna, fee p. 61. n. c.
7. Mofka River, fee p. 47. n. a.
8. Ruffia, or Mofcovy, fee p. 7. n. c.
9. Veronis, fee the author's description of it, in p. 92. and fec.
10. Occa-rivér, fee p. 61. n. d.
11. Crim Tartary, fee p. 68. n. dd.
12. Mofcovy, or Ruffia, fee p. 7. n. c.
13. Nifi Novogorod, fee p. 61. n. f.
14. Cafan, fee p. 62. n. b.
15. Refan, or Rezan, fee p. 70. n. 55.



16. Holland, fee p. 76. n. c.

17. Leyden, eft longitude 4. latitude 52. 12. a city of the United Provinces, in the province of Holland, situate on the old channel of the Rhine, near the fourth end of the lake, called Harlem-mer, 4 miles east of the Ocean, and 20 miles south of Amsterdam. It is one of the most elegant cities in Holland, and the largest next to Amsterdam and Rotterdam; but the air is bad, occasioned by the stagnation of the waters of the Rhine, part whereof form Harlem-mer, and the rest have found newchannels, which go under the names of the Waal and the Lecch. Those that have viewed this city nicely, have observed, that there are in it thirty islands, twenty-four canals, one hundred and eighty streets, and ninety-five bridges. There are several great hospitals, and an university, confining of two thousand students; but there are only two colleges, most of the lads boarding in the town, and wear- ing no distinguishing habits; and as they have no exhibitions, whilst they are scholars; so neither do they expect any fellowships, when they have taken their degrees. The schools consist of a large pile of brick building, three stories high; in the uppermost whereof the ingenious Elzevir had his printing-room. Adjoining to this school is a phytic-garden, where the professors of botany read lectures. Their professors never wear gowns but at lectures, and when they preside at public disputations. Their library is in great esteem for its manuscripts; and their anatomy-theatre is said to exceed that of Padua, and Surgeons-Hall in London, having a greater variety of skeletons and mummies of all kinds. There is a considerable woolen manufacture in Leyden.

18. Hague, or Graven Hague, i.e. the Earl's-Grove, eft longitude 4. latitude 52. 10. a town of the United Provinces, in the province of Holland, situate two miles east of the sea, 14 miles north-west of Rotterdam, and 9 miles fourth-west of Leyden, encompassed with fine meadows and groves, but no walls, and therefore esteemed a village, but one of the largest and most elegant in Europe, and enjoys all the privileges of a city of Holland, except that of sending representatives to the states. But here the states of the province of Holland, and the states-general assembly, as well as the council of state, and their supreme courts of justice; and here foreign ministers are admitted to audience, and all public affairs transacted; and here is a palace, in which there was an apartment for the princes of Orange, when stadholders; the chambers of the states-general, provincial, and of the council of state. On the west of the palace is a large area, surrounded by good houses, and planted with fine walks of trees, which make it sometimes to be compared to St. James Park; and here every city of the United Provinces has a house for their respective deputies. But notwithstanding the place is very populous, and there is so great a resort of people of figure here, they have but two churches in it. On the north-side of the Hague is a walk,

planted with lime-trees, two miles long, extending to the village of Scheveling, by the sea-side. # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

1. Afoph, fee p. 51. n. b.
2. Nifen, Nifna, Nifi Novogorod, fee p. 61. n. f.
3. Caphian Sca, fee p. 66. n. q.
4. Afa, is situate between 25 and 148 degrees of eastern longitude, and between the Equator and 72 degrees of north latitude, and bounded by the Frozen Ocean on the north; by the Pacific Ocean on the east; by the Indian Ocean on the south; and separated from Africa by the Red-Sea on the south-west, and by the Archipelago, the Euxine-sea, &c. which separate it from Europe on the north-west. This quarter also is thrown into three divisions, viz. I. The empire of China, Chincian Tartary, and the Oriental islands on the east. II. India, Ufbc Tartary, Calmuc Tartary, and Siberia in the middle. III. Persia, Arabia, Afracan, and Circassian Tartary, and Turkey in Afa on the west; the whole being 4800 miles in length from east to west, and 4300 in breadth from north to south.
5. Tartary, fee p. 18. n. i.
6. Bulgar, fee p. 70. n. 2p.
- (aa) Siberia, fee p. 17. n. b.
- (bb) The Don, or Tanais, fee p. 62. n. i.
  1. The Meotis, fee p. 102. n. f.
- (dd) Europe, is situate between 36 and 72 degrees of north latitude, and between 10 degrees west; and 65 degrees of eastern longitude, being about 3000 miles long from north to south, and 2500 miles broad from east to west; bounded by the frozen ocean part of the Atlantic on the north, and by Afa on the east, by the Mediterranean sea, which separates it from Africa, on the south, and by another part of the Atlantic ocean on the west. — It is thrown into three grand divisions, viz. I. The north, or upper division, consisting of 1. Russia or Moscovy, 2. Sweden, 3. Denmark and Norway, and 4. the islands of Britain, Iceland, Greenland, and those of the Baltic. — II. The middle division which consists of 1. Poland, 2. Germany, and the hereditary dominions of the house of Austria contiguous to it, 3. the Low Countries, or Netherlands, 4. France with its late conquest and acquisitions on the Rhine. — III. The southern division, which comprehends, 1. Turkey in Europe (the ancient Greece chiefly) the tributary provinces of Moldavia, Walachia, the Crimea and Lesser Tartary, 2. Switzerland, with the garrisons and the rest of its allies

and subjects, 3. Italy, Spain, and Portugal, and 4. the islands of the Mediterranean, consisting of those in the Archipelago, Sicily, Sardinia, Corfica, Majorca and Ivica.

(ee) Black-fea or Euxine-fea, which lies between Europe and Afa, being bounded by Tartary on the north; by Circaffia, Mingrelia, and Georgia towards the eaf; by Natolia, or the leffer Afa on the fourth; and by Romania, Bulgaria and Befarabia towards the weft; extending from the 29th degree of eaften longitude to the 44th, and from the 42d to the 46th degree of north latitude, entirely surrounded by the Grand Signior's dominions, who enjoys the sole navigation of it, but disturbed sometimes by the excursions of the Caffes, who issue out of the mouth of the Borithenes, and commit great ravages on the coasts of Turkey. The Russians did attempt to establish a navigation on this fea, but have been obliged by late treaties to deliver up all the fortresses they had erected on the coasts of the Euxine, and abandon this navigation. It is reckoned a tempestuous fea by the Turks, from whence it is said to have obtained the name of the Black-fea; and there are not many good harbours in it. # THE TRAVELS OF

## **CHAP. XVI.**

### **A Description of (a) Afracan. The Situation of the Gardens there. A profusion of Fijb. The manner of Living among the Tartars.**

No sooner were we landed, but every thing we had was immediately searched, my baggage only excepted. The first step I took was to wait on the governor of the place, whose name was Timafe Joanowitz Ursoffkie, into whose hands I delivered my two passports, with a letter from the Knez Boris Alexewitz, who received me in the most courteous manner. No sooner had he perused my credentials, but he gave me an invitation to reside in his house, and want for nothing there during my intended stay in the place. I returned him many thanks for those unexpected testimonies of his respect; but intimated to him the obligations I lay under to my Armenian fellow-travellers; whose language I perfectly understood, and in whose company, I proposed to pursue my intended journey into (b) Persia; with this reasonable excuse he appeared very well satisfied, and sent my baggage, without the least search, or examination, and gave orders for its being carried directly to the Caravanferei belonging to the Armenians, where I lodged, as I have hinted before, with one Mr. Jacob Daviedof. In less than an hour after we had dined, the governor very obligingly sent eight or ten of his domestics to us with a present of the following refreshments; namely, a cag of choice brandy, a large

copper-vafe, neatly tinned, full of red-wine, and two others much of the fame size and form, full of mead and strong beer; four large loaves, two geefe, and about ten or a dozen pullets. No sooner were thefe attendants of the governor dismissed, with a small present in return, according to my constant custom on the like occasions, but two soldiers came to keep guard at my door, who were to be relieved once a week. A Ruffian ensign was, moreover, sent to me, who understood the German language tolerably well, to attend me whenever I pleased to go, and act for me in the capacity of an interpreter. Much about that time, the governor had received advice, that the fort of Neyen had been taken by his Czarion majesty on the second of May then last past; and that he found, after the assault, four score pieces of cannon, eight mortars, and a garrison of Swedish soldiers amounting to between three and four thousand men, to whom, like a generous victor, he had given their freedom, instead of making them captives.

I took a tour about the city, which is situate on the east of the Wolga, in the ancient Scythia; notwithstanding at present the whole tract of land between the Wolga, the Jaika, and the Caspian-Sea, is called Nojaija, and the country in general, the kingdom of Afracan, from the metropolitan city of that name; which lies in the Asiatic Tartary, on the frontiers of Russia, and on the principal branch of the river Wolga, which, at a few leagues distance from hence, discharges its waters, into the Caspian-Sea; of which we shall treat more largely in its proper place.

This city stands in 46 degrees 22 min. of northern latitude, in a small island, commonly called Dolgoi, which is formed by a little narrow river that may be plainly discerned from one of the towers. The most fertile foil in the parts adjacent lies eastward leading to and proceeding as far as # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

as the Jaika before-mentioned: There is a large heath to the westward, which we were informed was no less than 70 leagues in length, and extended itself towards the Black-Sea, and several leagues, tho' not so many, towards the Caspian. The falt here is extremely fine, and is conveyed from hence all over his Czarian majesty's dominions.

This city has a strong stone-wall, at least a league in circumference, and ten several gates for its security and defence. I went out through that called St. Nicholas, or the Nikoolke-Warate, and followed the river upwards in order to walk round it. From thence I went to the Red-Gate, or that called Krafnie Warate, in the highest, and most elevated part of the town. From thence I steered my course into the country, till I came to the Granary-Gate, or that called Gietne-Warate, which was shut up indeed, but then there was another leading into the citadel, through which there is a free pass. This last-mentioned Warate is likewise surrounded with a stone-wall, notwithstanding it stands without the enclosure of the city. From thence I proceeded to the

Motagotkie Warate, near which, at some considerable distance from the town, there is a wooden gate, which is not reckoned as one of the city Warates. This is the gate of the Tartars, who have their residence on that side; and a Russian guard is always set there. After this I came to the gate called Refoltfine and soon afterwards to another called Wifnefke, between which there are two towers in the walls, which stand 300 paces at least distant from each other. From thence we turned down towards the river, in order to go to the gate called Spafkia, and from that to another called Ifadnie, without which there are several different markets for fish, bread, herbs, &c. At some distance from these two last-mentioned gates stands another tower, and at some small distance from that the gate called Garenkie, and without that, but not far from it, is the wood-market, and a particular spot of ground allotted for the bakers, who are not permitted to follow their occupations within the town. From this last gate we went to that called Rabatfkie, and passed by another tower which stands in the Mid-way between this gate and the former. Six of the ten gates are situated on the river, two whereof appertain to the citadel, which constitutes one part of the town-wall; and it has a third likewise, which they call Prieftmifkinke, or the Clean-gate, which leads into the city over against the Bazar, or High-street, called Bolsjanlitz, where the Russians and Armenians have very large and commodious shops.

As we went through this gate, in order to go into the citadel, we had on the left-hand of us, the church of Saboor, which had been begun five years before we saw it, and was erected at the sole expense of the archbishop, or metropolitan, whose name was Samfon. This right reverend prelate has his peculiar privileges over the inferior clergy, and a spiritual-court, or office under his own jurisdiction: he is also the metropolitan of Tirk, a city, under his Czarian majesty's power and authority, on this side the Caspian-Sea, situate on the mountains of Circaffia, and distant from Astracan about 700 werths.

Whilst the workmen were employed in the erection of the dome of this church, one part of it, through a casual defect in the foundation, fell down to the ground; and whilst we were there, they were busy in building five small steeples, each with a dome, and on each they proposed to have a cross. The church is square, and in circumference about 200 paces. The front is 67 in breadth, and the sides 47 in length. As to the back part of it, it stands partly upon the wall belonging to the metropolitan palace, which is the most magnificent structure in the whole town, as well as of the largest extent; and the whole is built with stone. At some small distance from thence, and in the finest part of the space within the citadel, stands the governor's palace: this, however, is a wooden structure, and surrounded with a wooden wall of its own. It has two gates likewise, one forwards, and the other backwards;

and the court-chapel stands without the enclosure, or inclosure of this palace. Between the Fore-gate, where stands # THE TRAVELS OF

flands always a guard, and the governor's palace, there is a fine, spacious yard, and the inclosure of the court is called Iwan Bogasloof. In this palace, there are several very commodious apartments, very light, and perfectly pleasant; but more particularly a very large and lofty falon, with delightful prospects on every side. At the Citadel-gate, which is well-mounted with artillery, there is a constant guard. At the entrance into it, on the right-hand, stands their chancery, which is built with stone, and has several apartments in it, and in the chamber belonging to the governor there is a table covered with a scarlet carpet.

The most remarkable church next to that of the Saboor, is the Ildwiefinje, which is a brick-building, but plastered all over. Its dome is gilt, and so is its crofs, which is three fathom long; and that below it is painted green; and so are the others belonging to the steeple. All the rest of the churches are wooden structures; so likewise are the two convents, called the Troyts, and the Petenfkie, which is peculiarly appropriated to the service of the fair sex.

In the morning, you may be supplied with all manner of necessaries at the Tartar-market, or Bazar; where the Armenians as well as the Ruffians have the privilege of exposing their respective merchandizes to open sale; this market, however, is over by noon: in the afternoon, the Ruffians have their market, to which the Armenians likewise are admitted. As to the Indians; they are obliged to transact their affairs in their Caravan-ferai.

As to the streets of the city, they are but narrow; and though they are well enough to walk in, when the weather is fair and dry, yet they are almost impassable when it is wet and dirty; and the reason is, because the foil is extremely fat, and abounds with falt; and the ground for the same reason is whitish, when it is dry.

The city is under the direction of the governor and three Burgo-masters; the first of whom is principal of the town-houfe; the second has the Kabbacs, or public-houfes, where they fell wines, mead, and beer, under his inspection; and the third has his majesty's fishery under his peculiar care.

Beyond the river, and without the city-walls, stands the convent of Ivan, which is a curious stone structure, besides two other cloyfters, and divers flabodes, or fuburbs, the principal whereof is that for the peculiar residence of the soldiers, which lies to the eastward of the city, and runs all along the river called Koetoe-me, which discharges its waters into the Wolga.

His majesty's ships lie all along that called the Balda, over-against the city. Thofe, however, which are called the Cafanfe and the Stepielewe, are for any people whomsoever without distinction. The flabode for the Tartars is separated from all the others, and built for the generality with earth only, and clay hardened by the fun; where they reside during the Winter-seafon, but when it is Summer-time, they live in the open country. It was not above twelve months before we came there; that one half of the city was unhappily reduced to ashes; and a great many ruins were then sublifting; there were, however, when we saw them, a great number of hands employed in rebuilding, and restoring that part to its pristine state.

Having thus gratified my curiosity in a great measure, I made my applications to the governor for his licence to take what draughts of the place I thought proper, who granted my request without the least hesitation. Whereupon I went upon the water, in a small bark with oars; but I found the stream too rapid for answering the end proposed, upon which the governor was so indulgent as to furnish me with a larger vessel, that could ride at anchor; but as it happened at that time to be dark and rainy weather, I was obliged to postpone my design to a more favourable opportunity. The city, to my thinking, made the handsome appearance from that side where the ships lay; and I took the prospect thereof from thence accordingly, as the reader may see by the Plate No. XXXII annexed; where each part—

PL. XXXII. # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

ticular is distinguished by their proper figures; as for instance. (1) The convent of Iwan or St. John. (2) That of the Ascension of our Lord, called the Wiefnif- senfke. (3) The gate thereof, called the Wiefnifenskie Warate. (4) The church of Smolenske. (5) The convent or cloyster of Jesus Christ in swadling clothes, called the Spask Monastir. (6) The church of Arisjetwa. (7) The Town-hall, called the Amoafna. (8) The church of the Annunciation, called the Dwiefins jet- firko. (9) The gate of the Kabbac. (10) The citadel, the enclosure whereof commences in the town, called the Kreml. (11) The fleepie, or Klocknitfe. (12) The Clock-tower, or the Siafopeni. (13) The Metropolitan Church, or the Saboor. (14) The convent of Troyts. (15) St. Nicholas's Gate. (16) The governor's palace. (17) The church called Iwan Bagafloef, in commemoration of a favourite Saint. (18) The church of Christ in swadling clothes, called Wofkriffinie Sirko. (19) The Red Gate, which was the farthest advanced towards the river on the side of the Cafian-fea. (20) The river Wolga, on the other side whereof rode the ships that were over against the city; two whereof were a-ground, and all the rest perfectly rotten, and of no service, through the mifmanagement of one captain Meyer, a native of Hamburgh. There were fifteen other ships that lay a little higher, and came there that year from (c) Cafan.

In this part, there are abundance of gibbets erected, as there are numbers likewise on the other side of the town, on each of which hung no less than fix Coffacs, perfectly naked, whose clothes had been fold at market by the Ruffians, who had stript them: each of their car-cases had been so long broiled by the heat of the fun, that they were as black as pitch, and very shocking to behold. Thofe, however, who had been hung up nearer the city, to my hand, had been secretly conveyed away by their respective friends. These last, who had been joined by some rebels and defectors from Afracan, had pofted themselves at a certain place called Gargan, on a river from whence it derives its name.

The prince, or Knez Aldridge Chan Bo- latuwitz, who was a Circassian, was present upon this expedition, with 400 of his Tartars; and one Mr. Wigne, a native of Swedeland, was there likewise with a thousand Ruffians, of whom he was commander in chief; and 500 Strefles were joined to them. Mr. Wigne's regiment had four pieces of cannon, and two mortars; and the Strefles had indeed eight pieces of cannon, but then they came too late to be of any service. Mr. Wigne protested, in my company, that during the whole course of the siege, he heard in the dead of the night, the howling of 4 or 500 jackalls, or wild dogs, which made the most hideous noise that could possibly be conceived; and yet after the place was surrendered, there was not a single dog to be seen or heard.

The troops that were then in garrison at Afracan, were Mr. Wigne's regiment of 1000 men, exclusive of the officers; namely, the colonel, 2 majors, 5 captains, 10 lieutenants, and ten ensigns; the ferjeants and corporals being included in the number of the common soldiers: 600 Mofcovite Strefles, who were commanded by 6 captains and 12 ferjeants; three other regiments of Strefles, who were natives of the country, and confisted of 300 men each, under the command of a colonel and three captains, or ftilonics; two regiments of horfe, each confiting of 500 Ruffians and natives of this city; amounting in the whole to 3500 men. Mr. Wigne's regiment had 13 pieces of cannon, and the rest more or less in proportion. # THE TRAVELS OF

All forts of provisions, except wheat, are very plentiful in this country, and brought here from Cafan, and other places; but more particularly fish, of which the Baloeaga, as it is here called, is in greatest esteem; and some of them are two 4 thoms at least in length.

The Strelet is about an ell long, and notwithstanding you may purchase one here for two-pence or three-pence; yet in Moçow, a single one will fall for 6 or 7 rubles; and, in short, it is the best fish that Ruffia can boast of. It is generally drest much after the same manner as the Germans do salmon, and it must be allowed to be a delicious dish. There are two forts of them; one has a much



longer beam than the other; but for the generality, it bears the resemblance of a sturgeon, as the reader may see in the Plate annexed No. XXXIII.

I purchased two of them that had been dried in order to keep. The Severocks differ very little from a Sturgeon, which they call an Affetreine; and Cavar is composed of the Boleoges, the Affetreines and the Severofmes, and from hence they are exported to all parts of the world. They have likewise another very fine fish, called by them the Soedak, which is generally drest as the Melwell or Stock-fish. They have, moreover, great quantities of Pike and Perch, a fish not unlike a Herring, and divers others. The largest of those that are the least valuable are the Modien, with large heads.

The fish-market is full twice every day, that is to say, in the morning, and again at night; and the Wolga yields such a profusion of them, that what they have not a sale for is given to the hogs. Tho' bread is not an excellent dear commodity, they will give the common-people three or four fish, a foot in length, for a single slice of it. As to Bream and Carp, they have plenty of them likewise. In a word, one may purchase of some of the fishermen who live in the suburbs, a Severock, which is as large as a cod, for five-pence or six-pence; and from thence the reader may form a tolerable idea of the price of fish in general. Besides these, they have

a small round fish, of the breadth of about four inches only, and long in proportion, which they call a Viaeic. These are for the generality to be met with in pits, near the mouth of a small river; numbers whereof, I have taken myself in a sieve, and of various sorts; some of them I preferred in spirits, together with several small Soedaks, and there were divers others that I would have preferred likewise had they been smaller.

There are no less than 40 or 50 Armenian families in and about this city, who keep large shops, as I have observed before. The Indians reside in their Caravanferai, where they carry on their respective avocations; and are as numerous as the Armenians, but what is very remarkable they have no women amongst them.

This Caravanferai of theirs is moderately large, and surrounded by a square stone-wall which has several gates, at the two principal whereof there are always guards, and all of them in general are shut up at a stated hour of the night. The Armenian merchants, who only go backwards and forwards, take up their quarters here likewise; and here it was that I refuted with them: and there are some of them, indeed, who live and keep open shop there for a confancy, where they have chans, or separate apartments for themselves.

That Caravanferai that is set apart for the service of passengers and travellers, is two stories high, and built with galleries; on the one side; and that for the Indians on the other is all composed of wood; but they have lately erected for themselves a stone-warehouse for fear of fire. This structure is about forty foot square. And the Armenians are following their example; for when I was there the foundation of theirs was raised about fix foot.

I had not been long resident in this city before the deputy-governor, or his majesty's lieutenant, whose name was Mekiete Ivanowitz Apocchtemo sent a special messenger to inform me, that he wanted to have some conversation with me. #  
CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

me. Accordingly I paid him a visit the very next day, and I was so fortunate as to meet there with the governor and all his family, with several ladies all drest in German habits, who were just taking their leave, and their coaches were waiting for them in the court-yard. I was received in a courteous manner; and after I had been entertained with brandy and beer, the governor was pleased to say, that I had not only been recommended to him by the Knez Bories, but by the Czar himself; and then addressing himself to me; Sir, said he, "I shall be glad to see you every day, and let me know wherein I can oblige you." I returned him many thanks, and in a few minutes after he took his leave. As soon as he was gone, the deputy-governor carried me and my fellow-traveller Mr. Jacob Daviedof, into another room, and entertained us with some Persian refreshments, and deported himself in such a courteous and complaisant manner, as is quite natural to him.

Most of the gardens which lie round about the city abound with vines and fruit-trees; but more particularly, they have plenty of apples, pears, plums, and apricots; which are none of the best indeed that I have ever tasted.

The Water-Melons, however, which they have here are more delicious than even those in Perfia.

They seldom or never let their vines grow above fix feet high; for then they prune them to prevent their growth, and fasten them to proper poles. Their Grapes are moderately large, and either perfectly black, or of a purple colour, as I was informed; for I was not there at the season; when they are ripe, such as grow in the gardens of private persons, whether Armenians or others, of which there are no great numbers, are frequently exposed to public sale; but wine is made of all such grapes as grow in the vineyards, which principally belong to his Czarist majesty, who receives all the profits arising from them.

These wines when made, are red, and very palatable; the foil is very fancy; and as they have springs there in plenty,

they frequently sink pits in their gardens, and furnish them with water by subterraneous pipes. And from these pits they draw up what water is from time to time wanted, with a large wheel, whereto proper buckets are fastened, which throw it into wooden-gutters, or spouts, from whence it is distributed, just as they think most proper, throughout the garden; and one single camel is strong enough to turn all the wheels. These vineyards, or gardens, are at the distance of two or three werfts from the city; and the number of them daily encreases; and as they are open, they have what they call Guerits, or watch-houses, at proper distances, where centres are placed, to take care that no passengers shall make too free with the grapes, when they are ripe, and fit for use.

It is above a century ago, since they were first cultivated, and as I am credibly informed, they were brought to perfection by several Persian merchants, who had brought some choice slips from their own country for that important purpose.

I had not been many days resident in this city, before I went, in person, to pay my respects to Mr. Serochen Beck, who was intended by the king of Persia to be sent in the capacity of his ambassador to the Swedish court; but as his Czarist majesty happened at that very juncture to be engaged in an open war with the king of Sweden, he was not only refused a passage through the Czar's dominions; but by his orders was put under an arrest, in which he had resided in (d) Mufcovy for near three years successively. He had about three core persons in his retinue, and left (e) Moscow, not above a week before my own departure from that city.

I found him fitting, according to the custom of the Persians, on a sofa, and met with a very courteous reception. He treated me with a dish or two of coffee, and some kullahanabat, a very pleasant liquor so called, composed principally of fine sugar and rose-water.

He was a gentleman of a very graceful deportment and of a very affable disposition. His mustachoes extended themselves to his very ears; and his beard hung down # THE TRAVELS OF

down above a quarter of a yard below his chin, which was shaven. His turban was as white as snow; and his Kaftan, or upper vestment, was girt about him with a fan of gold-cloth. He had a fine Ganjar, as they call it, by his side, and smoked with a pipe, called a Kaljan, according to the Persian mode. He had two attendants, one on each side of him; his right-hand man was armed with a large Sabre, the hilt whereof was visible though in some measure concealed in a red bag. After we had conversed on several topics for some time; he put the question to me whether I was willing to accompany him to Ifapan, or not. As I did not intend it, I made the most plausible excuse I possibly could for not accepting of that intended honour.

After that, I paid my respects to Mr. Wigne, a gentleman of great probity and honour, and captain Wagenauer, who was so complaisant as to pay me a friendly visit on my first arrival. The former took me with him upon the river, in a bark of 24 oars, and manned with 44 foldiers; besides a band of instrumental music, consisting of flutes, haut-boys, and drums, who beat their marches after the German manner. We went at least seven werfts from Afracan, to the very spot of ground where the old city had flooded about 120 years before; notwithstanding at that time there were not the least footsteps of it to be discerned, except some few bones that had been interred there; some whereof I saw myself.

About seven years since, some workmen made a discovery of Salt-petre in the mountains, and proceeded in the undertaking with a great prospect of success. The spot where it was found was situated to the eastward part of the city on the left-hand of the river as we went down. We amused our selves, in our return, with shooting some wild pigeons; and passed by the ships which rode at anchor on the opposite shore.

On the fourth of June 1703, there happened a violent hurricane, by which a vessel, laden with timber, though in sight of the city, was perfectly wrecked, and twenty-nine persons who were then on board (out of seventy-one) were buried in the waves.

On the sixth of the same month, eight barks arrived there from Peria; four whereof belonged to the Russians, and the rest to the Turks; they had likewise some Armenian merchants on board of them.

During the whole time that I resided in this city, the governor was continually indulging me with the testimonies of his regard for me, by making me one present or another, and by entertaining me at his palace with all kinds of Perian refreshments, and would frequently prefer to me to let him know wherein he could be of service to me: But of all his proffered acts of indulgence, I accepted of nothing but his beer, which was such liquor as could not be purchased for money; and as he found it was so acceptable, I never wanted for a sufficient flock of it. As he knew very well that I proposed to reside in the city for some considerable time, he begged the favour of me to draw, not only his own picture, but his son's likewise; and as he made it his study to oblige me in every thing, I could not, in point of gratitude, refuse complying with so modest a request. Among other things, he made me a present of a bird that had been shot, indeed, upon the plain, but not killed. As to its body and feet, it bore a near resemblance to a heron; the head, however, as well as the bill were extremely beautiful, and of a quite different form from those of the bird last-mentioned. He had a white tuft on his head, and his bill was as black as ebony, at least ten inches in length, and an inch and an half in breadth; the tip of it was spotted with yellow, and resembled a pair of spoons. The name of this extraordinary bird in the Russian language is

Lepelaer, and Colpetje, which first term signifies a spoon. There are several of them in Peria, where they are known and distinguished by the name of Goli. I preserved the head of one of them, as the reader may see in the Plate No. XXXIV. hereto annexed. There are herons likewise frequently to be met with in this country, which are named 't-Sepoere. # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

They are of variegated colours, white and an azure blue (like peacocks) grey and black. One of them is drawn, the reader will perceive with his neck shortened in Plate XXXV. hereto likewise annexed.

I frequently took a tour with captain Wagenauer, to the place where the Tartars reside, which is but three or four werfts from the city. They incamp in companies; each family apart, and at some considerable distance from each other. Their tents are erected in the form of parrot-cages; with this difference only, that they are not, in proportion near so lofty. They are composed of laths, which are three or four Inches in breadth, and are covered over with nothing but a felt or a hair-cloth. Some of them hang down but within a foot or two of the ground; and are surrounded only with either thatch or stubble. Those that are the most commodious are covered with cloth, and have an aperture at the top, in order to let out the smoke; they have likewise a pole in the middle, which flicks out four or five feet, to the end whereof they affix a sort of fail, painted with a variety of colours, which falls down to the ground, and is fastened, refuse complying, with a kind of strap, without one of the sides of the tent, and by virtue of that, they turn this painted fail which way they please, in order to keep out either the wind or the sun, whenever they find it necessary. When there is no smoke in any of these tents, and they are inclined to keep themselves warm, they cover their openings up, and then they are like to many stoves. The floors of them are covered with either particoloured stuffs or fine carpets; and such amongst them in particular who are of the higher class, have a sofa some small matter raised from the ground, after the manner of the Mahometans, which takes up at least one third of the tent; others are furnished with trunks and chests, in which they deposit their most valuable effects; and for the generality, these are very fine, and their other furniture perfectly neat and clean, and ranged in proper order. When they change their situation, they throw their tents into waggon, and when the covering is taken off, the women and children fit in them; whilst the men attend them on horseback. They looked upon me, at my first coming amongst them, with a jealous eye; but when they perceived, that I had no other view, but the innocent gratification of my curiosity, they voluntarily shewed me almost every thing I requested to see. Tho' they very seldom suffer strangers to come near those tents where their women are; yet even that favour at last they granted me. In one of them accordingly, I saw a very pretty Brunette, and exceedingly well drest: her head-clothes were peculiarly

remarkable, consisting of silver-gilt, or copper, and all covered with gold ducats, pearls, and precious stones; I was, in short, perfectly charmed with her, and I determined to draw her picture, for which the afterwards fat. In the interim, I made a draught of several of their tents, as I found them pitched at but a small distance from each other; as the reader may observe in Plate Numb. XXXVI, and one in particular at letter A; Plate Numb. XXXVII, thereto annexed. At letter B. in the same plate, the reader will have a perfect idea of the form of one of their waggon, which is drawn upon two large wheels. This vehicle is composed of wood which is painted, and covered with stuff, which is supported by two crofs flicks before, and rests upon beams. When they deposit their tents in them, then the wheels are covered. Their chappel is placed on one side, and distinguished in the plate by letter C. Their common tents are only covered with felt, and the fail above is of the fame; and they are as ordinary within as without. As their principal subsistence depends on the cattle they are possessed of, they always make choice of the best pasture-grounds they can meet with. Their women are principally employed in making up cloaths, and other things of the like nature; and when finished, they carry them into the city, and there dispose of them in open market. They observe the same Method, in their fowing, as the Ruffians do, but spin like the Germans, with # THE TRAVELS OF

with a spindle that turns round, and card wool for the felts which they make use of in the covering of their tents, and for other ordinary stuffs. They make use of cow-dung for their firing, which they dry much after the same manner as the Germans do their turf, and lay it up in heaps on one side of their tents. Whilst I was employed in drawing them, they hovered about me, and seemed highly delighted. They looked likewise as withfully at my drefs, as I did at theirs, which I found was of no small service to me. Their manner of living bears a near affinity to that of the Arabians; and they seem to be as well contented with their portable habitations, as those amongst the Europeans, who are settled in palaces, and the finest structures: and this brings to my remembrance the ancient way of living amongst the eastern nations: and 'tis highly reasonable, to conjecture that the patriarch Abraham and his descendants sojourned much after the same manner; and 'tis highly probable, that in case we were accustomed to such a wandering way of life, we should be as well satisfied with it as they are.

As to the drefs of their women, I drew the picture of a young lady of their nation at the governor's palace, where I had an opportunity of doing it in a much more commodious manner than I had in their tents. Her upper vesture was peculiarly fine, and her face was covered with a white veil, that was thrown over her vett, which, at my request, she laid aside, and appeared with her head covered with another very fine white linen, which was tied round her neck in a perfectly genteel taste, and through which I could see her head-drefs. I begged of her likewise to lay that aside,

because it concealed the finest ornament that I wanted to express, and she appeared drefs as they are in their Kaftan and in their tents. This head-drefs was all covered with gold ducats, as I observed before, and pointed at the top, somewhat in the form of a mitre, bordered with a great number of pearls; some whereof were strung, and hung before her like platted treffes. A fort of coloured scarf, which was fastened to the back part of her mitre, came round her neck, and partly fell down before. Besides this, she had several silver chains over her shoulders, and around her waist; by one of which hung divers little silver boxes, in which she carried her toys and her prayer-book. Her hair was tied up with a broad black ribbon, which had two large filk tufts, or toffels, at the end, as appears by the plate annexed. This lady was one of the most considerable families amongst the Tartars, and had three female attendants. She was introduced to the governor by a Tartar of his acquaintance.

The Russians distinguish the Tartars who reside in these parts by the appellation of Jurtige, because they are natives of that place; neither, in fact, do they pay any tribute to his Czarian majesty. All the obligation they lie under to him is this; namely, that they must fend a certain number of their men into the field of battle, in case the Czar should require it. Notwithstanding this, in time of war, they can raise 20,000 able and experienced soldiers upon occasion.

The Tartars, who, at Astracan, are distinguished by the name of Indians, shave their heads in a very peculiar manner at one certain feast of the year; for they tear the hair up by the roots with the point of a penknife, till their blood runs down upon their cheeks. The priest, or the person whom they dignify with that venerable title, takes the first stroke, and in case he does not execute his task in a manner to their entire satisfaction, they all begin afresh, crying out, Sukfemakfe, Sukfemakfe, or Baffou Bakfou, and skipping and dancing about at the same time, in a variety of antic postures. This they look upon as a sort of a free-will obligation to their grand idol Sukfemakfe. This annual, religious rite was performed with abundance of solemnity, near the granary, which flood in the suburbs, some short time before my arrival: and such as practise it are Indians, some of whom have their residence in the flabode of the Tartars. Those who belong to Nojay, reside in tents all round about the city of Firek. The Crim-Tartars # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

Tartary, however, never fettles there; and only bring their cattle to market from time to time as occasion offers.

On the 20th instant the governor gave a grand entertainment, to which I was invited; as were likewise some of the principal Russian officers, and the most considerable amongst the Armenian merchants. In the first place, we were conducted into an apartment, where were the governor's lady and his daughter-

in-law, with several of their female retinue; and on the right-hand stood a table, which was covered with a variety of dainties, and such liquors as was most agreeable for the morning. These two ladies presented each of us with a small cup of brandy, a customary compliment in this country, and from thence we went into the grand hall, where the dinner was set on the table. And after a great variety of fine dishes, and rich liquors, and the entertainment perfectly over, we were all fent home in coaches, provided for that particular purpose.

The next day, being St. Peters, was the Czar's name-day; when the governor gave a second entertainment, at which, not only the patriarch, but all the chiefs of the city were present; but as I happened at that juncture to be very greatly indisposed, I could not be there myself, neither could I attend them to their Metropolitan church, in order to assist at the solemnity, to which I had received an invitation in form some few days before. On this occasion there were great rejoicings, and all the cannon upon the ramparts as well as those before the palace were discharged over and over. According to custom, the ladies were in another apartment, and the subaltern officers were handsomely treated the next day, and dismissed betimes.

On the second of July, news was brought that his Czarain majesty was got within fifteen werfts of Nerva, with his victorious army, which swept off every thing that fell in their way.

The day following I took a tour in a chaife towards the heath, by way of amusement, with the governor's son, and some officers, who had a Hawk with them. When we were got about twenty werfts from the city, we saw, indeed, abundance of game, but could get no part of it, on account of the lands being at that time laid all under water. I happened, however, to bring down a duck that took her flight directly over my head. As we were disappointed in our diversion of shooting, we determined to amuse ourselves with fishing in a small adjacent river; where we caught plenty of pike and perch, which we took care to have elegantly dressed, and made a hearty meal of them. The same day, we saw a great number of Tartars encamped in some rich pasture-lands, which were full of such horses as belonged to the inhabitants of Aftracan. Some of them were beautiful enough, and we had a great inclination to try their mettle in our Chaifes; but they were too wanton and unruly, as they had been at grafs there all the Summer-feason, in fine meadows, which are frequently to be met with in these parts. There is scarce a carman throughout the whole city, but is matter of a fine horse; there is not a bad, or a lean one, to be met with, which is an incident which I never observed in any place before.

As the time of my departure from this city drew near, I not only desired, but very readily procured all the room that I had occasion for, in such of the barks as seemed most fitting for my purpose;



and accordingly I made choice of some of the largest. Most of the Armenian merchants likewise were making all due preparations for their removal, as well as some Perians, who were returning from Moscow to Samachi, otherwise called Samofhi. Among the rest, was the Cham's Falconer, with five or six hawks, which he was carrying with him into Perfia; from whence he had brought an elephant, as a present to his Czarain majesty, which he had delivered to the governor of Afracan for his majesty's use, who sent it forthwith to Moscow, under the direction and care of some Russians and a Georgian; but it happened to die in its passage at Zarifta. This falconer came, in the name of the governor, to desire me to indulge him with a place in my bark; and I went on

## N n # THE TRAVELS OF

on board of her the very next morning, in order to oblige him; but I found the Armenians had crowded her to that degree, that there was no room left. Upon that, I went directly to the governor, in order to make my complaints, and to beg of him to give directions that some of the bales might be taken out forthwith, that we might have some little room to flir ourselves. To this he answered, that, as there were still several other vessels ready for passengers to go on board, if they thought fit, I had no other measures to take but to remove whatever I pleased at once, and make my self easy. I returned him many thanks, and embraced the favour granted me; and accordingly, accommodated my self to my entire satisfaction; and took rather more room than what I really wanted; being conscious to myself how much I suffered upon the Wolga before I arrived at Afracan.

At that time Mr. Wigne had intelligence brought him, that his Czarion majesty had been pleased to advance him to the dignity of a colonel, and on the event, he gave the governor and the principal officers of the garrison an entertainment on that unexpected promotion. I was one amongst the number of his guests; and he treated us, indeed, in a very elegant and splendid manner; with the discharge of several cannon, as well as with the martial found of drums and trumpets. Having taken my leave of him, I went with some Armenians to refresh our selves with the sweet country air to a little house that stood delightfully on the river. The grapes were then tolerably large; and in good condition; but the other fruits had been casually destroyed by a swarm of infectious insects.

When I was upon the point of my departure, and had got all my implements in order, not forgetting a convenient fence against the flies, which in these parts are exceedingly troublesome, the governor sent me two small casks of brandy; one of them was of the best he had; the other, indeed, of an inferior sort; one small cask of vinegar; four of his most excellent beer; one of wine; three fitches of bacon; a large quantity of dried fish; a bag of biscuits, and some other provisions. He, moreover, favoured me with a

small bark to go before, and unlade the large one of a considerable part of her cargo, as we drew near the (g) Cafpian-Sea, an article absolutely requisite, on account of the excessive droughts that frequently happen in those parts.

About four in the afternoon, I took my leave of the governor, and returned him thanks for the many favours I had received. When I had got back again to my own apartment, he sent after me three large bottles, well sealed, full of diffilled liquors. At length I embarked in a small vessel, attended by five soldiers, who were ordered to carry my cargo on board the ship. The three Armenians, who were my friends, and fellow-travellers, had hired, in like manner, each of them a small vessel, with the self same view.

---

## **Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.**

1. Afracan, fee p. 62. n. i.
2. Perfia, fee p. 64. n. o.
3. Cafan, fee p. 62. n. b.
4. Mofcovy, or Ruffia, fee p. 7. n. c.
5. Mofcow, fee p. 23. n. c.
6. Iſpahan, fee p. 109. n. 3i.
7. Cafpian Sea, fee p. 66. n. g.

CHAP. # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

---

## **C H A P. XVII.**

Certain Reasons produced for infesting, in this Place, the particular Route which Mr. Ibrants Ides took, in order to travel across (a) Mofcovy in his Passage to (b) China. His Departure from (c) Molcow. The Spring, or Fountain-head of the river (d) Dwina. The Arrival of that Minister into the Country of the Syrences. A particular Description of the Natives of that Province, &c. He embarks on the Kama, and croffes over from (e) Europe into (f) Afia.

---

S Mofcovy is, at this present time, become very considerable in the eye of the world, and has for a long while since been a very grand topic for discourse; and as the prince, who now fills the throne, has made himself famous by his extraordinary conduct, and wife admittance of all his public affairs, his victories over his enemies, and the unwearying pains he takes in the cultivation and improvement of the manners and morals of his own dominions, and every other article that can any ways contribute towards their future felicity and advantage; as this Solomon of his age has done such wonders, all Europe in general are attentive to what particularly relates to this rising empire, and fond of knowing the important affairs that are transacted therein. It would be a difficult undertaking to produce a more circumstantial, more honest and impartial, or in short, a more interesting and instructive account of it, than that of Mr. Le Brun, which is comprised in this place, to add, in this particular place, the route that Mr. Ibrants Ides took from Mofcovy, to the court of China, by the way of (g) Tartary (a way but little known, as the country is a kind of wild and barren waste) in the capacity of

---

envoy extraordinary from their Czarian majesties John and Peter Alexowitz, in 1692. And we infer it here, with all the pleasure imaginable, as that minister has embellished this account of his journey thither, not only with several very entertaining, but very judicious and instructive reflections.

He departed from Mofcow in a fledge on the fourteenth day of March, but before he had made any considerable progress, it began to rain in such a violent manner, that he was in apparent danger of losing his life by reason of the inundations that he met with in his passage to (b) Wologda, where he tarried three days, in order to recover himself from the fatigue he had gone through in that dangerous passage, and to wait for the return of more favourable weather. On the second day, the frost came on again, and continued so excessively hard, that, within the compass of four and twenty hours only, all the roads were passable with ease; whereupon he set out in pursuit of his journey on the twenty second, for Suchina, at which place he arrived the next day; and from thence he proceeded, with all the expedition possible, to the city, called Uftiga the great, where the rivers Suchina and Ir ga meet, and form the noted river Dwina, a term, that signifies a double river.

The Suchina flows almost direct north in a very fertile foil; on the borders whereof # THE TRAVELS OF

whereof there are several very populous villages; and on the left no inconsiderable town, called Totma. Abundance of travellers fall down this river annually in their passage from Wolgoda to (i) Archangel, with their various merchandizes at such times as the waters are free and open; as the bottom, however, is very rocky,

peculiar care is generally taken for securing their fleet and fern-poſt, as well as their rudder; and that for the two reasons following; viz. in the firſt place, there are rocks in abundance all along the river; and then in the next, its current is ſo rapid, that the veſſel would otherwiſe be in apparent danger of being loſt.

Uftiga the great is ſituate on the mouth of this river; where this miniſter was under an obligation to put up for four and twenty hours, not only to reſreſh himſelf, but to have ſome ſhort converſe with the Waivods, who were his particular friends, and who entertained him in a very courteous manner.

March 24.

On the twenty-fourth, he arrived at Solowitz Jogda, a large town, in which there are reſident, not only a great number of ſubſtantial merchants, but an abundance of curious mechanicks, or artificers in ſilver, copper, and ivory. Here likewiſe are divers falt-pits, that are very valuable, and produce a prodigious quantity of that mineral, which is tranſported from this place to Wolgoda, and the parts adjacent.

April 1.

On the firſt day of April, and arrived in the evening of the ſame day at the country of the Syrenes, otherwiſe called Wolloft-Ufgy. The natives of this place ſpeak a language of their own; which bears no affinity to that ſpoken by the Ruffians; however, it ſeems, there is ſome reſemblance between theirs, and that of the Livonians, as he was informed by ſome of his retinue who were natives of that country. They obſerve the Grecian ceremonies in regard to their religion, and are ſubject to the Czar, to whom they pay the cuſtomary tributes, but have neither governor nor waivode. They elect their own judges, and at any time, in caſe a diſpute ſhould happen to ariſe

which proved to knotty for thoſe judges to decide, they go directly to Moſcow, and make their applications to the Prikæſ of Poſolike, or proper office for the adminiſtration of foreign affairs. They vary very little from the Ruffians, either in point of ſtature or apparel; and are looked upon as natives originally of the frontiers of Livonia, or Courland, tho' they themſelves can give no other ſatiſfactory account of their extraction, than that they ſpeak a widely different language from the Ruffians; but whether they may have been heretofore forced to fly from his Czarián majeſty's dominions, thro' the calamities of any deſtructive war, or thro' any other accident, they neither remem-ber, nor can any ways account for. Their principal ſubſiſtence is agriculture; notwithstanding there is one part of them, who reſide on the banks of Zifol, where they have conſiderable dealings in grey furs. As to the length of this country, it is above 70 German leagues, and extends itſelf as far as Kaigorod. Theſe people have no ſuch place as deſerves the denomination of a town; but reſide in little villages and hamlets,

disperfed up and down amongst the woods. This country is bounded on a spacious foreft, where this minifter was once more encumbered by a violent thaw, and as heavy a rain as the former, by which unhappy accident, in one night's time, the whole foreft was laid under water; infomuch that for four days fucceffively he durft not venture either backwards or forwards, the ice being fcarce able to bear even on the rivers. At laft, however, tho' not without fome danger and difficulty, he proceeded on his journey, by throwing bridges over the rivers, and fome other affiftance which he caufally procured.

On the fixteenth of April, being thoroughly wet, and prodigiously harraffed and fatigued, he arrived fafe at Kaigorod, which is no inconfiderable fottrefs on the Kama.

He was greatly inclined to purfue his journey as far as Solikamfkofi, the metropolitan city of the great (k) Permia, in order to go to (l) Siberia by land, over the mountains of Wergotur; the thaw, how- # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

however, fill continuing, that thought was entirely laid afide as altogether impracticable; and as the winter feason was now near over, he tarried in this city for several weeks fuctosefully, in expectation that the river Kama would soon become navigable. In the mean time, he fupplied himfelf here with every thing that he found either convenient or neceffary for the profecution of his intended journey; as alo, with fire-arms and other weapons of defence againft the free-booters, who swarm in thofe parts, and go fometimes in fuch numerous gangs, that they will plunder whole towns, as they pas through them, as Kaigrod itfelf had experienced not long before, to the great mortification of its inhabitants.

Our author was informed by the governor of this city, that on a certain day, about noon, they difcovered a confiderable number of barks, crowded with men under arms, falling down the river, with colours flying, drums beating, and other instruments of mufic, making the beft of their way directly to the city. No fooner were they arrived, but they leaped on fhore; that the inhabitants of the city, thoughtlfs of any hofife outrages in the middle of the day, and in a time of peace likewise, had no idea of their evil intentions, and permitted them to approach without the leaf oppofition; taking it for granted, that they were fome diftant neighbours and friends, who were come to pay them a vift purely for their amufement; that thefe friends, however, as they conceived them to be, to their no fmall furprize, fet the fourth end of their city on fire; and at the other end, put every foul to the fword, that prelumed to obftfuct them; that they marched up to the Waiwode's, where they committed various outrages and acts of hoftility; and ufed their domeftics in the moft favage and inhuman manner; that, in fhort, they carried off an immene booty, without the leaf controul; that foon after this plunder was made,

they were credibly informed, that these piratical free-booters were all vassals to some certain lords; from whose jurisdiction they had unanimously revolted, in order to make themselves a

From hence he departed on the twenty third of April; at which time the Kama was free from all ice, and perfectly navigable, and providentially arrived safe on the twenty-seventh at Solikamfkoï.

From this last city, he purposed to pursue his journey over the mountains of Wergotur before-mentioned; but as such an attempt in the Summer is altogether impracticable, by reason of the country's abounding with fens and marshes, all passengers and merchants are obliged to reside in this city during the season, till winter, and the hard frosts come on again, to enable them to cross those mountains. There is a possibility it is true, of going round about to the eastward by water; but then that passage is absolutely prohibited; the governor, however, of the city being before-hand apprized of the important affairs that minister had to transact, and the expedition they required; furnished him directly with the embarkations that were requisite, for his commodious passage down the Sufaway.

Solikamfkoï is a very fine, large city, and inhabited by great numbers of very substantial merchants; where there are very fine salt-works, and fifty boilers, or more, of twenty five, or thirty five ells in breadth. Great quantities of salt are manufactured here, which are annually transported to parts remote on all sides, in large vessels built for that particular purpose; each of which are freighted with no less than 120,000 weight of salt, or eight hundred or a thousand loads, exclusive of seven or eight hundred hands, for whose use they have kitchens, furnaces, and other conveniences requisite for their transportation. These vessels which are about five and thirty ells in length, and sometimes forty, have no more than one mast, and one sail,

April 25.

Arrives safe at Solikamfkoï.

A description of Solikamfkoï, and its salt-works. # THE TRAVELS OF

sail, which is thirty fathom in length, and made use of when they only go up the river, and the wind stands fair; whereas, they always ply their ears, and have no sail up, when they go downwards, in order to keep their vessels steady in their feerage, which cannot possibly be done by the helm only. They are all flat-bottomed barks, and have neither bolts nor nails in them; and this is the method observed, when they fall down the Kama, in order to get into the (l) Wolga. They have tow-lines, in order to help them along, when they go against the stream, and make use of their falls, in case the wind fits fair. Thus they convey their salt to

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

1. Moscovy, or Russia, fee p. 7. n. c.
2. China, fee p. 66. n. t.
3. Moscow, fee p. 23. n. c.
4. Dvina, fee p. 23. n. b.
5. Europe, fee p. 127. n. dd.
6. Asia, fee p. 127. n. x.
7. Tartary, fee p. 18. n. i.
8. Wologda, fee p. 28. n. d.
9. Archangel, fee p. 8. n. d.
10. Permia, a province in the north east part of European Moscovy, separated from Asia, by the river Oby.
11. Wolga, or Volga, fee p. 28. n. f.
12. Cafan, fee p. 62. n. b.
13. Nifna, fee p. 61. n. f.

C H A P. XVIII.

His Arrival in (a) Asia; a Description of the Country of the Tartars of (b) Siberia. Their Religion, and Course of Life.

THE minister before mentioned, being arrived in Asia, on the Sufa-waia, observed, that the Kama was far more pleasant, as it was a much finer river, and abounded with all forts of fifth; besides it had several much larger, and more populous villages, situated on its banks; it had, moreover, fine salt-works, fine arable lands, fine woods, fine meadows, embellished with a thousand parti-coloured flowers, and every thing else that is calculated to strike the eye in the most agreeable manner. All the way from Solikamkoi hither. It must be allowed, indeed, that the country, watered by the Sufavaia, which empties its waters into the Kama, is very fine and fertile; but then 'tis very fatiguing in going against

May 14. That minister's arrival in Asia. # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

gainst the stream : a vessel can make no riddance, especially when the waters are in the leaf swelled, and the crew is obliged to make use of their tow-lines.

On the twenty-fifth of May he arrived in the country of the first Tartars of Siberia; commonly known and distinguished by the name of the Wogulki. This country is not only very beautiful, but is very populous all along the banks of the river. At the ingrefts and egrefts of the hills, they have not only all sorts of flowers in plenty, and of variegated colours, but they have herbs of the most fragrant smell; they have likewise a prodigious number of deer, and game of all forts. As the Tartars of Wogul, upon this river are all Pagans, our minister had the curiosity to go on shore, and have a little converse with the natives, in regard to the religion they professed, and the manner in which they led their lives.

As to their persons, they are able-bodied men, with remarkable large heads; and, as to their religion, it principally consists in an annual oblation. In order to accomplish this one religious ceremony, they assemble in the adjacent woods, and there kill some one beast, that they approve of most, of each species; though their favourite victims are horses, and a peculiar sort of goats. When they have felled them, they hang them up on some substantial branch of a tree, and then standing before them, pay them the tribute of their adoration. When this act of devotion is over, which is the whole fun and substance of their religion, they dress the flesh of these their Gods, and make a solemn entertainment of them. After this grand festival is over, they return to their respective habitations, and never concern themselves with any farther acts of devotion, till that year is expired; and they imagine, that a repetition would prove altogether needless and superfluous. As they can assign no manner of reason for that one religious ceremony; they content themselves with the reflection, that their fathers observed that custom before them.

He asked them, if they had no idea of a supreme Being, who inhabited the heavens above, and created all things here below; and who governed the whole universe by his over-ruling providence, and gave the inhabitants thereof sun-shine and rain in their due seasons? To this they innocently enough replied, that it was highly probable, that there was such a person as a God, since the sun and moon, those bright luminaries of the heavens, which they themselves worshipped, as well as those lesser lights, the stars, which are numberless in the firmament; and it was their firm belief, that there was some power but what they could not tell, that did superintend and direct their motions. As to the notion of a Devil, they had no conception of any such Being; since he had never made himself known amongst them. They don't absolutely, indeed, deny a resurrection; but they ingeniously acknowledge, that they know nothing of what shall be their lot after their decease, or what shall become of their lifeless coffins. When any of the natives die, their bodies are deposited in the ground, and covered with the best ornaments they were possessed of at their decease. Though they erect no monuments, indeed, for the commemoration of their friends, they deposite a sum of money in



their coffins, in proportion to their circumstances when living; in order that they might be furnished with common necessities, in case there should be a day of resurrection. They make hideous lamentations over the deceased, when in their coffins; neither will they permit any man to marry a second wife, till his first has been interred a whole year at least. When by accident a favourite dog dies, that has contributed toward their diversion, or has otherwise been truly serviceable, in commemoration of his past good deeds, they erect a small wooden hut for his reception, about six feet high, upon four posts, in which they deposit his remains, and there let them lie, as long as their little building suffices. A man here is allowed as many wives as he can comfortably maintain; and when their women draw near the time of

---

#### # THE TRAVELS OF

of their travel,  
they retire to  
some adjacent  
wood, where a  
decent hut is  
prepared for  
their  
reception; nor  
are their  
husbands  
permitted to  
embrace them  
again till two  
months after  
their delivery.

When they are  
disposed to  
marry, they  
purchase their  
wives of their  
parents; and  
have very  
little if any  
ceremony, at  
their  
weddings.

They invite,  
indeed, some  
of their  
nearest  
relations to a  
kind of  
entertainment,  
and when that  
is over, the

man goes to  
bed to his  
spouse  
without any  
more baffle or  
stir.

They have no  
priests; and  
cannot marry  
any nearer  
relation than  
one so far  
distant as the  
fourth degree  
of  
consanguinity.

This minister,  
by way of  
conversation,  
exhorted  
them, in a  
very zealous  
and devout  
manner to  
acknowledge  
Christ, as the  
favour and  
redeemer of  
all mankind;  
and afforded  
them, that in  
case they  
would become  
proflytes, and  
put their  
whole trust  
and  
confidence in  
him, that he  
would pardon  
all their sins,  
and they  
would thereby  
not only be  
happy in this  
world, but  
forever happy  
in that which  
was to come.  
To this  
exhortation

they paid but  
very little  
regard, and by  
way of cool  
answer, told  
him, they saw  
hundreds of  
poor Russians  
every day,  
though they  
were  
christians as  
they called  
themselves,  
who, with all  
their industry,  
were scarce  
able to earn  
their bread.  
That as to a  
future state,  
they did not  
much concern  
themselves  
about it; and  
in a word that  
they should  
content  
themselves  
with living and  
dying as their  
fathers did  
before them,  
let the articles  
of their belief  
be grounded  
well or ill.

As to their  
drefts the  
reader may  
form an  
adequate idea  
of it by the  
Plate annexed.

They dwell in  
square  
wooden huts,  
in the same  
manner as the  
peasants do in  
(d) Ruffia; but

with this  
difference,  
they make use  
of hearths  
instead of  
stoves, and  
burn wood.  
The openings  
of their roofs  
where the  
smoke goes  
out, are  
covered with a  
large cake of  
ice, as soon as  
the wood is  
reduced to  
ashes, and  
thereby retain  
all the heat in  
their room,  
without  
flopping out  
the light,  
which darts  
through the  
transparent  
ice. They  
make no use  
of chairs; but  
of benches,  
which are  
near three ells  
in breadth,  
and about one  
from the  
ground, on  
which they set  
cross-legged  
after the  
manner of the  
Persians; and  
the selfsame  
benches are  
made use of as  
their beds at  
night. Their  
principal  
subsistence is  
on the food  
which they

procure by  
hunting their  
elks; they  
being their  
chief and most  
substantial  
game, of  
which there  
are abundance  
in this country.  
Their manner  
of taking them  
is by the artful  
exercise of  
their bows and  
arrows; most  
of them being  
strong fellows  
and exceeding  
good marks-  
men. When  
their game is  
brought home,  
they flea  
them, and dry  
their flesh  
first, and  
afterwards cut  
it into proper  
slices, and  
then hang  
them up in the  
air all round  
about their  
huts. After it  
is thoroughly  
wet, and  
perfectly  
purified, it is  
deemed a  
most delicious  
repast. For the  
rest, they  
never taste  
either of their  
poultry or  
their fowls  
flesh. They  
have another  
manner of  
destroying  
their game

without any  
toil or fatigue;  
and that is,  
they plant  
large cross-  
bows in the  
woods, to  
which they  
fasten a bridle  
and a proper  
bait, leaving  
the mouth of it  
open; and  
when an elk or  
any other deer  
casually  
comes to seize  
upon it, the  
bow instantly  
unbends, and  
the creature  
at once is shot  
through the  
heart, and  
drops down  
dead on the  
spot. They,  
moreover, dig  
pits in the  
ground, and  
cover them  
over with  
brambles, or  
any other  
materials that  
are light, into  
which those  
creatures fall  
as they run  
over them;  
and when they  
are once  
ensnared,  
there is no  
possibility of  
recovering  
their freedom.

To conclude;  
these Tartars  
reside in  
villages all

along the river  
Sufawaia, as  
far as the  
castle of Uta;  
and under the  
shelter and  
protection of  
his Czarain  
majesty, to  
whom they  
pay a  
customary  
tribute, lead a  
life of  
indolence and  
ease. Their  
habitations, in  
a word, extend  
no less than  
800 German  
leagues, to the  
northward of  
Siberia, and  
even to the  
northward of  
the country of  
the (c)  
Samoeds. #  
CORNELIUS  
LE BRUN.

## Occasional  
Remarks on  
the preceding  
Chapter.

(a) Afa, fee  
p. 127. n. x.  
(b) Siberia, fee  
p. 17. n. b. (c)  
Solikamkoi,  
fee the  
author's  
decription of it  
in the  
preceding  
chapter. (d)  
Russia, fee  
p. 7. n. c. (e)  
Samoëds, or  
natives of  
Samoida, fee  
p. 17. n. a.

---

## C H A P. XIX.

Mr Ibrant's Arrival at the Fort of Utkā, and at Neuianfkoï; his farther Progrefs to Tumèen, and (a) Tobol, otherwise called Tobolfski. A Description of that City, with a fuccint Account of the manner in which it became subject to his Czarian Majesty; and indeed the whole Country of (b) Siberia.

MR. Ibrants, having quitted the country of those favage the (c) Samoëds left mentioned on the first of June, in the year 1692, arrived at the fort of Utkā, which is situate on the frontiers of those Tartars, who are natives of Bafkir, and Uffimi. During his stay at the fort, a Tartar-gentleman of Uffimi, which lies within his Czarian majesty's dominions, came thither, in search after his spouse, who had abfconded from him, though married but a very short time, without the least provocation on his fide; but hearing no tidings of her there; he confoled himself with the following extraordinary reflection; that she had abfented herself from no less than fix huf-bands before him; and was fond, as he too plainly perceived, of having more strings to her bow than one.

On the tenth, he departed from this place by land; and having paffed by the cattle of Ajada, he croffed the river Neufia, and travelled all along by the shore-fide of another river, called Arfamas; and from thence, he came to the fort of Neuianfkoï, which is situate on the river Neufia aforefaid. There is not a finer country in the world to be feen, than that which lies between Utkā and this place; for it abounds with delightful meadows, woods, and lakes; and with fertile lands well-cultivated, and well-peopled by the Russians. On the twenty first, this minifter set out from Neuianfkoï by water, and found all the banks of the river inhabited by Ruflian Chriftians. As he paffed along, his eye was agreeably entertained with a variety of fine villages and caftles, which extended as far as the river Tura, which, flowing from the weft, empties its waters into the Tobol.

On the 25th, he arrived at Tumèen, which is a very populous place; by situation strong, and principally inhabited by Russians. Three fourths of the town at least are Chriftians; but the remainder are Mahomedan Tartars. These carry on a very considerable trade with the Calmuc Tartars, Bugarians, &c. And those who reside in the country support themselves and families principally by agriculture and fithing; as to furs, they have few or none to difpofe of, except it be the skins either of bears, or red foxes. There is a wood, however, situate at some few leagues distance from thence, known by the name of Heetkoj Wollock, where there is plenty of # THE TRAVELS OF

of the beft grey furs that can be procured anywhere, and such as even in the winter never change their colour: they have likewise the additional good quality of being exceedingly strong. These are not to be procured in any other part but that of (d) Mofcovy; for



whoever pretends to transport them clandestinely to any foreign part whatever, is liable to the severest penalties, and the Czar's retributions; for they are all peculiarly appropriated to the service of the Russian court. These animals will not permit any of their fellow-creatures, if of another species, to reside amongst them; and, in short, destroy them all wherever they find them.

No sooner was this minister arrived at Tumen, but he found, not only the inhabitants, but those of the adjacent parts in the utmost hurry and confusion; for the Cossacks and Calmuck Tartars had just at that juncture invaded Siberia, where they had plundered several villages, and killed the inhabitants, as they made their progress, and menaced hard this town, which was within the distance of 15 German leagues.

The governor, however, sent for some auxiliary troops from Tobol, and other adjacent places, by whose timely assistance, they pursued those invaders, and cut off a considerable number of such as could not preserve themselves by flight.

The envoy, seeing the town in such a consternation, thought it most advisable to pursue his journey without delay; and accordingly embarked on the 26th on the river Tobol, having provided for that purpose a new set of rowers, and a guard of soldiers.

Notwithstanding the banks of this river are very low, and consequently too liable to be laid under water in the spring; yet they are inhabited partly by Mahomedan Tartars, and partly by Russians. There is great plenty of exceedingly fine fish to be met with in this river.

On the first of July, the envoy arrived safe at Tobol or Tobolski, which is a very strong place, where there is a spacious stone-monastery, embellished with such a variety of high towers, that it might easily be mistaken for a strong fort. This city is situated on a hill at the conflux of the (e) Irtysh and the Tobol. Not only the foot of this hill, but the shore of the Irtysh is inhabited by Tartars, and Mahomedan Bucharians, who carry on a very considerable trade with the Calmucks upon the river, and with others, beyond it, even with some of the natives of (f) China. It is the shortest way to China, by the lake Jamaschow, in case you are travelling thither at a time, when it is safe for you to go through the country of the Calmucks.

Tobol, or Tobolski, is the capital city of Siberia, and the jurisdiction thereof extends on the southern part beyond Baraba; from Wergotur to the river (g) Ob, eastward to the Samoëds; to the northern part, as far as the country of the (b) Ostiaks, and as far as Ufa, and the river of Sufawaia to the westward. The country all round about is very populous, and not only inhabited by Russian farmers, but by divers other people, both Tartars, and Heathens, who are all however, tributary to, and under the jurisdiction of his Czarrian majesty.

All sorts of grain is so plenty there, that any one may purchase a hundred weight of barley-flower, for about fifteen-pence, which they call cops. An ox is not worth above six or seven florins; and one may buy a good hog for thirty or five and thirty-pence; and in the Irtysh there is such a profusion of fine fish of all sorts; that a Sturgeon, of 40 or 50 pound weight is frequently sold for six-pence, and some-times for less: and these sturgeons are so rich and fat likewise, that sometimes the surface of the water wherein they are boiled, shall be an inch or two thick in grease. Moreover, in this country, there are vast numbers of elks, stags, deer, &c. to be met with; hares, pheasants, partridges, swans, wild-geese, ducks, turkeys, and, in short, all sorts of game, and any of them much cheaper than butchers meat. Besides this plenty of all kinds of provisions, this city is supplied with a strong garrison of well regulated troops; and upon any emergency, it can send 9 or 10,000 men into the field of battle. Here are, more-over, # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

over, several thousands of Tartars, who, when his majesty demands it, are obliged to attend him, all on horse-back.

The hordes, or gangs, of the Calmucs and Cossacs, who have their dependance on the Teflichan, or principal, of the Bugarian-Tartars, commit frequent outrages and depredations on the frontiers of his Czarian majesty, as well as those of Uthimir and Baskir; the garrison of Tobol, however, are always on the watch, and give them no quarter, if they catch them.

There is a metropolitan in this city, who comes from Moscovit, by order of the Czar, and has the whole clergy of Siberia and Dauria entirely under his jurisdiction.

This city, and all Siberia, has been tributary to the Czar for at least these hundred years last past; and both were reduced to the obedience of that prince in manner following. A certain pirate, one Jeremak Timofieicwitz by name, having made divers flagrant inroads and devaluations on certain lands belonging to the Czar Ivan Waflewis, to the utter ruin and destruction of his subjects; and being apprehensive that the troops of that prince were advancing towards him to avenge his insults; he hurried back again up the Kama with his crew, and then entered the river Sufawaia, which empties its water into the Kama, and withdrew, with all the precipitation imaginable, to the jurisdiction of the lord of Stroganof, a lord immensely rich, and possession of all the lands on the banks of that river, for the compass of twenty German leagues round about.

This pirate made his applications to the grandfather of this great lord for shelter and protection; and promised, in case he would grant his request, to put all Siberia under subjection to the Czar, in compensation for the many insults and depredations on his subjects. Accordingly he succeeded, and that rich lord, not only

furnished him with all the vefells, arms, and artificers, that he required for his intended expedition; but promised, moreover, to procure his pardon. Flushed with this good success, he embarked with his comrades, and went directly up the river Serebrenkoi, which flows from the north-east of the mountains of Wergotur, and emp-

ties its waters into the Sufawaia. Here he caufed his crew to land, and march to the river Tagin, which flowed down to the Tura, where he took poffeffion of the fort of Turnćen, which is situate on that river, where he flew every one that fell in his way. After that, he returned up the Tobol, as far as the very city which bears that name; where he met with a Tartar-prince, of twelve years of age only, whose name was Altanas Kutjumowitz, the grandson of whom is at this present juncture in Moscovit, and honoured with the title of Czarowitz of Siberia. Having thus secured this post, he fortified it directly, and fent the young prince captive to Mofcow.

After this grand pyrate had proved thus succesful, he went down the Irtis, and was attacked in the night, not far diftant from Tobol, by a party of Tartars. In this encounter, he loft the greatest part of his comrades; and attempting to jump, in a hurry and confusion, out of one vefell into another, he dropped down into the river, and was foon drowned; his body, however, being drove along by the rapidity of the stream, was never heard of more. In the interim, the lord of Stroginoft had fent to court, and, according to his promise, procured a pardon for Jeremak; he fent troops likewise to the feveral places which that pyrate had subdued, and fortified them out of hand. And this was the manner in which Siberia fell into the poffeffion of the Mofcovites, who are mafters of that fine country at this very day.

The Tartars, who are the inhabitants of Tobol, and the adjacent parts, are all Mohammedans in general. The envoy, being defirous of fecing their religious rites and ceremonies, went with the Waywod into one of their mofchs; for without his being there he could never have procured admiffion. Thefe mofchs of theirs have large windows all round about, which are left always open; and the pavements of them are covered with no other decoration than a carpet. Upon their entrance, they leave their fhoes at the door, and fit regularly enough, but all crofs-legged. The mufti appears in a robe of white cotton, and wears a white turban on his head. Having whi- # THE TRAVELS OF

whispered to one of his attendants, he immediately made his proclamation, on which they all instantly fell down on their knees. The mufti then repeated a few words in a very low and unintelligible voice; and after that, cried out, Alla, Alla, Mohammed; the reft did the same after him, bowing their heads down thrice fucceffively to the ground. This ceremony over, the mufti fixed his eyes upon his hands, as if he propofed to read something; and then cried out a fecond time, Alla, Alla,

Mohammed. In the next place, he turned back his face over his right shoulder, and then over his left, but uttered not a single word:

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

1. Tobolki, or Tobol, east long. 63 lat. 57. 30. the capital of Siberia, or Asiatic Russia, situate at the confluence of the rivers Tobol and Irtis, whose united stream divides Europe from Asia, lies 800 miles east of Mofcow, and 1000 miles east of Peterburg. This city stands upon a hill, and is surrounded by a wall, and other modern works. To this place, or near it, the Russians usually banish their fate-prisoners. Hither the princes Menzikoff, Dolgorucki, and the duke of Courland, were sent, as well as the Swedish prisoners, taken at the battle of Pultowa.
2. Siberia, or Asiatic Russia, fee p. 17. n. b.
3. Samoeds, or natives of Samoida, fee p. 17. n. b.
4. Mofcow, or Russia, fee p. 7. n. e.
5. Irtis a great river, which runs from

and when all the people present had observed the same ceremony, their divine service was immediately over.

The mufti was an Arabian by birth, and held by the people in great veneration; and as a testimony thereof, every one who could either read, or understand the Arabian language, was highly valued on his account. As his house was very near the moftch, he invited the envoy in, and entertained him with a dish of tea. There are great numbers of Calmuc slaves in these parts; and even the descendants of several princes, who were prisoners in former times.

1. China, fee p. 66. n. e.
2. Oby, the river, fee p. 18. n. e.
3. Oftiachs, or Oustiachs, this country is a part of Asiatic Russia. These people extend along the river Irtis to its confluence with the river Oby; from thence they extend themselves northward along the banks of the Oby and Jenifa, till they fall into the gulf of Mangafea, or the frozen ocean; inhabiting the banks of several rivers, which fall into the Oby and Jenifa abovementioned. They have no towns; but live in huts, that are easily moved, or new-built, whenever they go to hunt, or fish, which seems to be the employment of these people at the proper seasons; since they have no corn in their country, nor follow any kind of husbandry.

The water of the (c) Oby, whenever he had the Irtis falling into the openings, at but a Samorolkoiyam. The water of the (c) Oby, when he had the Irtis falling into the openings, at but a Samorolkoiyam. The water of the (c) Oby, whenever he had the Irtis falling into the openings, at but a Samorolkoiyam.

CHAP. # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

## **C H A P. XX.**

Mr. Ibrants departs from (a) Tobol, or Tobolski. A Description of the (b) Irtis. Sledges drawn by Dogs, and bow. That Minifer's departure from Samorofkoiyam, and his Arrival at Surgent.

THE envoy departed from Tobolski on the 22d of July, having furnished himself with proper veffels, and all other things requisite for his purpose; and more particularly with a strong guard for the security of himself and his attendants. Thus provided, he fell down the Irtis, on the shores whereof are divers villages, inhabited both by Tartars and Oftiachs and amongst the rest, those of Demi-ankoi, Jamin, &c. where the small river of Penouka empties its waters into the Irtis. On the 28th, the envoy arrived at Samorofkoiyam, where he changed his rows, and put up mafts in his larger veffels, in order to his failing up the river Oby, whenever he had a favourable wind; the Irtis falling into this river by several openings at but a small distance from Samorofkoiyam.

The water of the river Irtis is clear and light, and falls from the mountains in the country of the Calmucs. This river flows from the south to the north-east, and runs through the two lakes called Kebac and and Suzan. It is bordered on the south- east by some lofty mountains, which abound with cedars; and the land on the other side to the north-west is low, and full of pafure-grounds, or meadows, wherein several black bears, wolves, and foxes, both red and grey, are frequently to be met with; and on the banks of the river Kafimka, which empties its waters into the (c) Oby, not far distant from Samorofkoiyam are the finest grey furs throughout (d) Siberia, those in the woods of Hetkoiy-Wollock before-mentioned only excepted.

The inhabitants informed the envoy, that, one day in the autumn before his arrival, there came a bear into a stable which fronted a meadow, from whence he took a cow, holding her faft in his fore-paws, whilst he walked on those behind; that the people of the house and some of the farmer, neighbours hearing the unusual noife which the cow made, ran out to her affiance; and fell foul upon Bruin with- all their might. All their blows availed but little; the bear obstinately kept his hold; neither did the fray cease, till they shot him and killed the cow.

Most of the inhabitants of these parts are Ruflians in his Czarian majesty's pay, and who are indifferently obliged to furnish all such Waivods as are sent thither, and all such as travel into Siberia on that prince's account, with proper carriages and guides, as well to go by water in the summer-season, as on the ice in winter, as far as the city Surgut, which is situate on the Oby, at very reasonable rates.

It is very remarkable, that the inhabitants keep a great number of dogs, to draw their sledges in the winter; for they cannot make use of horses for those occasions on account of the depth of the snow, which, upon the Oby is sometimes at least a fathom deep.

Two of those dogs are put to a very light sledge; and notwithstanding two or three hundred weight may be commonly laid thereon; yet neither the dogs, nor the sledge make the least impreffion on the snow. There are some of these inhabitants so idle, as to imagine, that these dogs have some fore-knowledge of the # THE TRAVELS OF

the time when they are to be employed on these expeditions, and in the night before have their assemblies, and make a hideous howling on those occasions; from whence their masters conclude, that they have strangers coming to visit them. This, however, is by no means probable, and downright superstitious. The guides, when they travel, carry a gun upon their shoulder, and put on certain long shoes, which are fit to run with upon the snow. Sometimes the inhabitants will take their dogs out with them, in order to hunt for game in the woods; where they frequently meet with fine black foxes, whose skins they make use of themselves, but give their flesh to the dogs; so that a double advantage arises from their diversion. These dogs are but of a moderate size; but have sharp noses, and pointed ears, which prick up, and curling tails like those of wolves and foxes; and as there is such a manifest resemblance between them, they may very easily be mistaken for such when running in the woods. It is certain, that they frequently mingle together, and make their appearance in the neighbourhood of villages, when there are any preparations making for the diversions of hunting.

On the 29th of July, the envoy set out from Samaraokoi-jam, and having furnished himself with two vessels, went down the principal branches of the Irtis, towards the Oby, where he arrived the very next day. On the eastern side of this river there are several high mountains, and a great number of pasture-grounds, which extend beyond the reach of the eye, on the western side; and the river in this place is half a league at least in breadth.

On the 6th of August, this minister arrived safely at Surgut, which lies on the eastern side of this river. In these parts, as you go up the country to the eastward, and up the Oby from Surgut, as far as the city of Narum, there are very fine fables, both black and

brown; as also the finest ermines of all Siberia, and even of all Russia; and black-foxes which are beautiful to the last degree; the finest of which are referred for the use of his Czar's majesty, and are sometimes valued at no less than two or three hundred rubles a piece; some of

A black-fox, of the most beautiful sort, appearing in the spring of the preceding year, in open daylight, near Surgut, was pursued by a country-man, who had dogs of the same colour with his game. The fox, finding that there was no possibility of making his escape, all on a sudden turned directly towards the dogs, with an air of intimacy and complaisance, and laid himself flat on his back, and began to lick their chops; after which, he ran about and played with them, during all which time the dogs, as complaisant seemingly as himself, never offered to hurt or secure him; at length, flyly watching for a favourable opportunity, he flung at once into the woods. As the country-man had no firearms to shoot him directly, he soon lost all hope of being ever possest of the rich booty of which he thought himself at first almost secure.

Two days afterwards, this self-same fox returned to the same place, when the country-man, contrary to his expectations, had a second fight of his wished-for booty, and pursued him, not only with the same black dogs, but with a white one likewise, which (as he had observed) was somewhat more fagacious than the others. The black dogs having allured him once more into their company, the white one, who kept a steady eye upon him, and knew him better than the rest, made towards him as imperceptibly and safely as he could, thinking to jump upon him unawares; but the fox, by a sudden spring, made his escape a second time with safety into the woods.

Upon this second disappointment, the country-man determined to blacken his white dog, that the fox might not be able to distinguish him from the rest; and going back to the woods again with his dog in masquerade, he soon found his game a third time. At length, the fox thus deceived, and looking upon him as one of his footy companions, attempted to play with him as he had done with the others successfully before; but by that means, he fell # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

fell into the snare which was too artfully prepared for him; for the dog instantly seized on him, to the high glee of his master, who folded his skin for one hundred rubles.

There are here likewise a great number of foxes that are particoloured, half black, half grey, but those that are perfectly black are but seldom to be met with: There are still greater numbers of those that are red. This country, moreover, abounds with otters and beavers: as the former live wholly upon prey, they are very dangerous creatures; they will frequently climb up trees; and there stand upon the watch, till some elk, stag, or deer, or a

hare happens to pass by; at which time, they will spring at once upon their prey, which they have absolutely devoured them. A waywod, who was possessed of one of these amphibious creatures alive, threw him into the river, and sent two dogs directly after him; but finding himself too closely pursued, he flew at the head of the first dog, and held him under water till he had perfectly drowned him; and after that conquest, offered to attack the second, which in all probability, had not his matter came timely to his affluence, had met with the same fate.

Strange fatories, and such as are almost incredible, are told of the beavers, which have their caverns and boroughs all along the bank of this river, in such places, however, as are less frequented, but where there is most fish, which is their principal subsistence. The inhabitants affirm, that they assemble together by couples in the spring, and form a kind of clan or society; that after this, they make several of their own society prisoners, and drag them to their lurking-holes, or secret recesses, and there oblige them to act as their slaves or vassals; that they will bring down substantial trees to the ground, by fapping their foundations with their teeth; that afterwards, they will carry them off the

The Ruffians and Ottiaes, who frequently hunt them, never destroy a whole brood; but always take care to leave behind them a male and female for the procreation of their species. # THE TRAVELS OF

## **Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.**

1. Tobol, or Tobolfski, fee p. 148. n. a.
  2. Irtis, the river, fee p. 148. n. e.
  3. Oby, the river, fee p. 18. n. e.
  4. Siberia, or Asiatic Russia, fee p. 17. n. b.
  5. Oftiachs, or Oufliachs, fee p. 148. n. b.
-



## CHAP. XXI.

### **Mr. Ibrant's Arrival at Narum. A Description of the (a) Oftiachs; &c., tho' the River (b) Oby abounds with fish, yet its shores lie all unmanured.**

MR. Ibrant, having been for some considerable time labouring up the river Oby; one while by the affluence of their fail, and another, by the flower meares of the tow-line; croffed the mouth of the Wagga, (whose waters fall down from the mountains of Trugan, from whence that river has its source) on the 13th of August. The Wagga is a large river, and the waters of it are bordering on black, which discharge themselves into the Oby, to the north-north-west, a little below Narum, which is but a small city, where he arrived, however, safe on the twenty-fourth. It is situate on the fide of the river, in a fine country; and moreover, is defended by a citadel, or fortref, which is well garrisoned by the (c) Coffacs. In the parts adjacent, there are prodigious numbers of trees of various colours, black, red, and grey, to be met with; as also of beavers, ermins, fables, &c. The banks of the Oby, as far as this city extends, are inhabited by a people called the Oftiachs, who are worshippers of idols, and acknowledge, indeed, that there is a God in Heaven, as well as theirs on earth, but they pay no tribute of divine homage to him. Some of their idols are composed of wood; others of clay, in human forms, which they mould with their own hands,

in as beautiful a manner as they can; and such as are perfons of subfiance, and of a superior rank from the populace, clothe them in rich filk, after the Ruffian mode. Thefe idols are, for the moft part, planted in their cabbins, which are compofed of the bark of their trees, and fewed together with the guts of deer, instead of thread. On one fide of them are placed large bundles of hair; and on the other, ftands a little bucket, which is kept constantly full of a kind of broth, of which divine food, they adminifter divers spoonfuls every day, at least as much of it as they deem fufficient for their comfortable fubfiftence. And as this spoon-meat is continually running down at the corners of their mouths; it has a very difagreeable effect, and is enough to turn one's stomach. When they make their fuppliances to thefe gods of their own making, or pay them any other kind of divine adoration, they ftand erect before them, and make a thoufand different motions with their heads, but never bow down before them; and during thefe devotiona1 exercises, they make a hideous hooping and hollowing, not much unlike thefe vociferations which are made by our European huntmen, when they are exercizing their dogs.

Thefe idols are called Saitans, which name # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

The name seems to derive its origin from Satan the arch-fiend of Hell. As some of these Oftiachs happened to be on board this minister's vessels, he indulged them so far as to shew them an odd curiosity, and that was the form of a bear, which was first invented by a native of Nuremberg, and by internal springs of clock-work, would beat a drum, and move his head and eyes about with the same freedom, as if actually alive. When they observed the dexterity and various motions of this extraordinary machine, they presently began to sing and dance before it, and pay it all the very same testimonies of divine adoration, as they would to their most favourite Saitan; nay, they seemed to carry their veneration higher; for they acknowledged this to be a Saitan indeed, and one of a much superior fort to their own; and were they masters of it, they would cloath it in the finest fables, and the best skin of one of their blackest foxes. They would fain have purchased it; but our minister ordered it forthwith to be removed out of their sight, in order to put a flop to their religious department towards it.

It is customary for these Oftiachs to marry as many young women as they think fit, or at least, as many as their circumstances will with convenience admit of; and confanguinity itself is no bar to their nuptial enjoyments. The nearest relation, in short, with them is as acceptable a bed-fellow, as the remotest stranger.

Upon the decease of any of their friends, they make incessant lamentations round the corpse for several days successively; having their heads close covered up, without feeling any one person whomsoever, and being constantly on their knees. When this testimony of their respect is fully paid, they carry the deceased away upon poles, and deposit him in his grave. Most of them, however, are very poor, and during the summer-season reside in mean, defensible huts; but, were they industriously inclined, they might with ease improve their little flock; since all the country round about, and the river itself affords great plenty of fish, but abounds more particularly with sturgeon; inasmuch that for three-penny-worth of tobacco, one may purchase a score of them. They are naturally, however, most shamefully indolent; and but very few of them are very solicitous after any thing more than what will afford them a bare subsistence during the winter-season.

When they travel, and when they employ themselves in fishing, which is but seldom, they live entirely on a fish diet. As to their stature, they are neither remarkably tall or short; their hair, for the generality, is either fair or red; but their faces and noses are very broad: they are not in the least addicted to any warlike achievements, and are perfect strangers to the use of arms. They have, indeed, both bows and arrows, in order to kill their prey, when they go out a-hunting; but even with them they do but little execution, as they are but miserable marksmen.

As to their dress, tho' they cover their nakedness, it is true, with the skins of fishes, but particularly that of the sturgeon above-mentioned; yet they wear no manner of linen underneath them. Their stockings and shoes are composed of the same materials, and over their fish-skin covering, they wear a kind of waistcoat, as a loose mantle, to which a sort of cap is affixed, which is pulled over their heads when it happens to rain. As their shoes in particular are made of fish-skin only, they are never water-proof; so that their feet are very seldom free from being wet. They undergo all the inclemency of the weather, without any seeming concern, notwithstanding they are so thinly clad as is above-described; and in case the frosts happen to be more intense, or the winds more bleak than ordinary, they only wear two waistcoats instead of one. As this happens, however, but very seldom, and once as it were in an age; they will ask one another, sometimes, do you remember the necessity of wearing a double waistcoat? When they go a-hunting, in the winter, be it ever so cold, they wear but one; and never cover their breasts at all, taking it for granted, that they shall be hot enough in # THE TRAVELS OF

in conscience with running backwards and forwards on the snow with their fledge-shoes. But when they accidentally meet with a fevere winter than usual, and such a hard frost as proves too insupportable, they then flip themselves stark-naked, and bury their bodies as deep as poffible in the snow, in order to prevent both a lingering and painful death.

There is very little difference in the drefs of their women from that of the men's; and their principal amusement is that of hunting the bear. When they are on this expedition, they set out in bands, or companies; but armed with no other weapon of defence, than a kind of harp knife, fastened to the end of a staff about six feet in length. When they have killed their game, they cut off his head, in the first place; then they hang it upon the branch of a tree, and run round it, hand in hand, as a testimony of their high veneration for it. When this ceremony is performed, they then dance round the body of it, in much the same manner, each of them asking the dead carcase, who it was that killed him? Then they return the answer themselves for the dead bear: "It was a Ruffian that murdered me." Who was it cut off thy head? "The ax of a Ruffian." Who was it that cut open thy entrails? "A Ruffian." In short, whatever injury is done to this particular animal, the barbarous treatment is ascribed immediately to the Ruffians.

Poor as they are, for the most part (as has already been hinted) they have some petty princes amongst them, who bear the title of Knezzes; and one of these illuftrious perfonages came on board Mr. Ibrant's vefcel, in order to pay his excellency a visit. This Knez was super-intendant of some hundreds of their huts, or cabins; and his principal bufines was to collect the tribute which thofe Oftiachs under his jurisdiction were obliged to pay to the

Waiwodes, or officers, of his Czarion majesty. When he came, he brought with him a numerous train of attendants; together with a present of some fine fresh fish; and on his departure, the compliment was returned by an exchange

of brandy and tobacco, with which he went away, to all outward appearance, highly delighted. Some short time after this first interview, he paid this minister a second visit, and before he took his leave, gave him a friendly invitation to his palace; and Mr. Ibrant's curiosity inducing him to accept of his highness's offer, he waited on him according to appointment, and was received by the Knez himself, who personally did the honours of his house, and introduced him, without the formal ceremony of a master, as is customary with other princes. This magnificent structure was composed, like the cabins of his subjects, of the barks of trees, and those likewise joined together after a very inelegant and artless manner.

At this interview, Mr. Ibrants was favoured with the sight of four of this prince's wives: the youngest was dressed in a scarlet cloth petticoat; with a great variety of glass trinkets; some composed of coral, and others of glass, which were disposed of round her waist, her neck, and in the tresses of her hair, which hung down in ringlets on each side, and over her shoulders; in her ears she wore rings, or more properly speaking, buckles, from whence hung down strings of coral beads. Three of these comforts of his highness presented this minister with a kind of small tub, made of the same materials as their habitation, filled up to the brim with dried fish; but the youngest, before particularly described, gave him a little tub full of flur-geon, which was as yellow as gold itself; and in return for all their favours, he regaled them very plentifully with brandy and tobacco, with which with them is esteemed a very delicious and grand repast.

This royal cabin could boast of no other furniture than a few cradles, and trunks, composed of the barks of trees, in which were their beds and bedding, full of wood-duft, but as soft as down itself. The cradles were placed at one end of the cabin, and full of little children, all stark naked; but then there was a good fire in the center. There were no culinary implements that he could perceive, one copper kettle only excepted, and a few others #  
CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

others made of bark, which could not possibly be used, in case the fire was any ways intense. When they smoke, which is one of their favourite amusements, both the women, as well as the men, take a mouthful of water, and swallow the smoke of the tobacco along with it. This habit has such an influence over them, that they sometimes are perfectly intoxicated thereby, and fall down upon the ground, entirely deprived of their senses, with their eyes wide open, like persons amongst the Europeans afflicted with the falling sickness; some of them swallow this smoke down with such excess,

that they expire upon the spot. Sometimes, when they are thus affected, they will fall into the river, if they happen to be near it, and sometimes into the fire, if within their cabin. Some of them again are perfectly suffocated with it, and end their days in a most miserable manner.

If any mention be but made of their relations, they are highly offended, and look on it as a gross affront; nor can they bear, with any degree of patience, to hear the names only of such of them as have been dead for many years. They are perfect strangers to all transactions abroad, and are so illiterate, for the generality, that they can neither write nor read; and notwithstanding they are remarkably fond of bread, they are too indolent to cultivate their lands.

They have neither temples, nor priests. Their boats, like their habitations, are composed of the bark of trees; and what little timber and frame-work there is within, is very light. Tho' these vessels of theirs are so inelegantly built, and are seldom more than three fathom in length, and about an ell broad; yet it is very furring, they will live in the worst of weather.

During the winter-season, these Ojibwas have their residence under ground; with a large opening at the top of their caverns for the smoke of them to evaporate. As it is customary with them to lie naked

round a fire; in case it happens to be snowy weather, they find themselves, upon their waking, half covered with it; whereupon they only turn themselves, and feel no other inconvenience on an occasion that so frequently occurs.

If an Ojibwa happens to prove jealous of his wife, he cuts off part of the fur that grows on the belly of a bear, and carries it to the person suspected. In case the party is innocent, he accepts readily of it, but if he be conscious of his guilt, he frankly acknowledges the illicit freedom he has taken, and enters directly into an amicable treaty with the party injured, and pays a premium accordingly. Nor dare they, indeed, prevaricate on this important occasion; since they are all firmly persuaded, that, if any one should accept of the hair, and at the same time be guilty of the crime laid to his charge, the bear, from whose belly the hair was cut, would avenge the wrongs of the party injured, and devour the delinquent before the week was at an end.

On the same jealous account, there are other presents frequently made to the person suspected. Some present bows and arrows; some hatchets, and others again harp, large knives; no ways doubting, but that the party who accepts them, and at the same time, is actually guilty of the injury done to the donor, will within a few days, inevitably come to some untimely end. This all of them unanimously assert, and the Russians, who reside in the parts adjacent as unanimously confirm. Tho' we have now no more to

add in regard to the Oftiachs themselves; yet we cannot drop the subject wholly without making the following remark on the banks of the Oby, where they pitch their cabin; and that is this, that they lie entirely uncultivated from the sea quite up to the river Tun, on account of the inclemency of the weather, and the exceeding frosts, for which reason, they produce no manner either of corn or fruit; and, in a word, nothing at all but the cones of cedars. # THE TRAVELS OF

## **Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.**

1. Oftiachs, or Outiachs, see p. 148. n. b.
  2. Oby, the river, see p. 18. n. e.
  3. Coffacs, people inhabiting the banks of the rivers Nieper and Don, near the Black-sea, and the frontiers of Turkey. Their country usually called the Ukraine, and for the most part subject to Russia.
  4. Nuremberg, a city in Germany, in the circle of Franconia, capital of the territory of Nuremberg. East long. 11. lat. 49. 30. Situated near the confluence of the rivers Regnitz and Pegnitz, 50 miles north-west of Ratibon, and 40 miles south of Bamberg. It is 7 miles in circumference defended by a wall, a castle, and other works, but of no great strength. It is very populous, and has the best inland trade of any town in Europe: their clock-work, and manufactures in iron, steel, ivory, wood, and alabaster are much admired, and afforded exceedingly cheap; and from hence come most of those toys we call Dutch toys. It is nothing but the genius and industry of this people that procure them the flour-trade and plenty they live in; for it is a barren country, and produces scarce any thing to traffic with, but what receives the greatest part of the value from their labour and art. It is an imperial city, or independent state. The governors and magistrates are elected out of the nobility; and the burger-master, or chief magistrate is changed every month; the legislative authority being lodged in a council, or diet, of 400 of the principal burghers. In this city are kept the Regalia used at the emperor's coronation. The established religion is the Lutheran; the Calvinists are forced to go three miles out of town to church; and the papists are allowed to perform divine service only in one church, when the Lutherans have done with it. The territories of Nuremberg are about 30 miles in length, and 20 broad, in which they have a great many good towns and villages.
-

## C H A P. XXII.

His Arrival at Makoffkoi, upon the Keta. The Inconveniences that attended him thereon, for want of Provisions. His Departure from Makoffkoi. A Description of the Keta. He proceeds on his Journey by Land, and arrives at Jenizekoi. A Description of that City.

Mr. Ibrants having spent some weeks on the river (a) Oby, and some small time amongst the (b) Oftiachs in the last chapter particularly described, arrived, on the first of September, at the town of Keetfkoj, situate on the Keta, which empties its waters north-west into the Oby; from thence he came, on the twenty-eighth, to the convent of Saint Sergius; and on the third of October then next following, to the village called Worozokin, where one of his domestics, by name John George Wetfel, of Slewick, painter, died on that day of a very high fever.

On the seventh of the month last-mentioned, he arrived with safety at Makoffkoi, where he interred the said Wetfel, on a rifling ground, near the bank of the river. During his navigation of the Oby, he was more harried and fatigued than in any other part of his long and tedious journey; for he spent five weeks successively in his passage up that river, without the sight of any convertible creature, except a few indolent illiterate Oftiachs, who, upon his approach towards them, flew from him with a kind of terror into the adjacent woods. These Oftiachs were a different clan, indeed, from those which we have just described, but as equally addicted to idol-worship.

In his passage up the Keta, he found himself in the midst of some considerable inconveniences, which had been occasioned by the lack of provisions; for the place was not well supplied with any necessary articles of food or drink; and although he had brought with him a considerable quantity of provisions for the journey, these were rapidly consumed by his men and the native population who were accustomed to live on the wild fruits and roots of the country, which they gathered and ate with little regard to cleanliness. He was forced to resort to the neighboring villages, where he found the inhabitants to be extremely hospitable, and they provided him with whatever food he needed. The chief of the village, who was named Pachka, was a man of great dignity and importance, and he offered to entertain the travellers with a feast, which consisted of roasted meat, bread, and fruit, which he had brought from the neighboring village of Ketcha. The meal was accompanied by music and dancing, and the travellers were greatly pleased with the entertainment.

On the following morning, the travellers set out for the town of Jenizekoi, which was situated on the bank of the Keta, and they arrived there safely at the end of the day. The town was a small but prosperous place, which had a population of about 1,000 people, and was surrounded by a wall of stone and brick. The

streets were paved with cobblestones, and the houses were built of wood and stone, with tiled roofs. The town had a number of churches, and the principal church was dedicated to the Virgin Mary. The inhabitants of Jenizekoi were a devout people, and they were known for their hospitality and generosity.

The travellers were received by the mayor of Jenizekoi, who was a man of great dignity and importance, and he offered them a warm welcome. The mayor invited them to his house, where they were treated to a feast of roasted meat, bread, and fruit, which he had brought from the neighboring village of Ketcha. The meal was accompanied by music and dancing, and the travellers were greatly pleased with the entertainment.

On the following day, the travellers set out for the town of Ketcha, which was situated on the bank of the Keta, and they arrived there safely at the end of the day. The town was a small but prosperous place, which had a population of about 1,000 people, and was surrounded by a wall of stone and brick. The streets were paved with cobblestones, and the houses were built of wood and stone, with tiled roofs. The town had a number of churches, and the principal church was dedicated to the Virgin Mary. The inhabitants of Ketcha were a devout people, and they were known for their hospitality and generosity.

[illegible]

himself greatly embarrassed through want of proper provisions, especially through the scarcity of flour, or bread, which is man's principal support; for, from the time that he departed from (c) Tobol, he had received no manner of supply, excepting that of a few fresh fish. It must be acknowledged, indeed, that he would not have been drove to so high a degree of distress, had he withheld his beneficence to the poor Oftiæcs, who were on board his vessel, and sometimes tow'd her, tho' with no small reluctance, as having a natural aversion, as we have before hinted, to hard labour; and more of them would willingly have defected the vessel than there actually did, had they not been very narrowly over-look'd, and compelled to lend a helping hand. At last, indeed, they became perfectly spent, and had, doublets, funk under the weight of their toil and fatigue, had not an immediate affliction been sent them from the governor of Jenizelkoi, who upon application made to him by this minister, took his distress into consideration, and sent him immediate relief; for had he look'd on him with an evil eye, and had been so inhuman as to deny him the affliction he requested, that minister must have flopped at least thirty leagues short of Makoffkoi, and in all probability would have perished in the ice, and the deep snows which he must have inevitably met



with in that melancholy passage, there being no inhabitants on the banks of the Keta to be met with in all that vast extent of ground.

No sooner had he departed from Makoffkoi, but the river Keta, which is by no means navigable in the winter-faon, began to be blocked up with ice, through an excessive and sudden frost. Its waters run through a country which abounds with woods, and thickets, and winds about to that degree, that the traveller, after a tedious passage for twelve hours successively, stands astonished at night to find how little ground he has gained since the dawn of day. This country abounds with heath-game, such as pheasants, and partridges; and it is no disagreeable diversion to see them morning.

and evening upon the banks of the river regaling themselves in whole flocks; where you may kill almost what number you please as you pass along. And this proved no trivial affliction to them at a time when they were reduced to short commons. The foil here affords great plenty of gooseberries both red and black; as also large quantities of strawberries, and raspberries; but as to the river itself, it can boast of no plenty of fish, that are worth the fatigue of catching.

Not far distant from hence, in the mountains which rear their heads towards the north-east, several passengers have met with the teeth and bones of a creature, which is there called a Mammut; but more particularly on the banks of the several rivers distinguished by the respective names of (d) Jenifa, Trugon, Mongansea, and (e) Lena, not far distant from Jabutfkoi, and quite as far as the Icy Ocean. And this discovery is principally made, when there happens to be a great thaw which has flooded the last mentioned river; and the ice has carried a large quantity of earth from off the sides of the mountains. It is at such times as these, that the carcasses of those creatures are found locked up in the earth, which is frozen almost from the top to the bottom; but more particularly, when the thaw has proved exceedingly great. One of Mr. Ibrant's attendants, who had been several years employed in making his triceft researches after these particular animals, assured him, that he once found an entire head of one of these Mammut in some of those thaw'd grounds; that when he had split it, and laid it perfectly open, he found almost all the fleshy part of it absolutely putrified; and that the teeth of it stuck out in much the same manner as those of the elephant, and were so fast riveted in, that it was with no small difficulty, that he drew them: — That some short time after, meeting with a fore-quarter of one of these creatures, he carried away one bone only of it to the city of Trugan, which was as thick as the waist of a moderate man, and, in short, that he perceived something that bore a resemblance of blood towards the neck. # THE TRAVELS OF

There are various conjectures in regard to this remarkable animal. The Jakutes, the Tungufes, and the Oftiacs, peremptorily assert, that he never rises out of the earth, but removes from place to place, mole-like, entirely under-ground: To this they add, that they can visibly discern the earth both rise and fall as he is making his progress; inasmuch that he leaves some considerable trench behind him. They add, moreover, that he instantaneously expires, if he has the least perception of any light, and never appears, but by mere accident, above the surface; from whence it is, that he is never seen alive, and never discovered when dead, but upon hilly ground.

The (f) Ruffians, however, who have now for many years past been inhabitants of (g) Siberia, are of opinion, that these Mammutts are a species of the elephant, and that there is no material difference between them, the teeth of the former only being somewhat closer, and more hooked. They will tell you, that there were numbers of these animals in this country before the general deluge; the climate in those antediluvian days being more warm and temperate than at present; and that their dead carcasses being washed away by the flood, were buried deep in the earth; and that the frost, which has ever since affected them more or less, has preserved them to this time from absolute decay; and, in a word, that it is wholly owing to the thaws, which occasionally happen, that they are ever discovered at all; and it must be allowed, that, in case this be not actually matter of fact, yet the conjecture is natural, and plausible enough. Neither is it any ways requisite, in order to clear up this affair, for us to imagine, that there has been any variation in the climate of these parts, since the bodies of these extraordinary animals may have been drove down thither by the waters, which at that time covered the whole face of the earth.

When the teeth of these creatures have been exposed to the open air for a whole summer, they are found split, and are very black; and when that is the case, they are of no use or value at all; whereas such as are found whole and perfectly clean, are as white as ivory. Those who make it their business to make researches after them, carry them in large quantities all over (b) Muscovy, where they are manufactured into combs, and other little utensils of the like nature.

The envoy's attendant left mentioned assured him, that he once found two teeth in one and the same head, which weighed 1200 pounds, or thereabouts (Ruffian weight) that is to say, 400 pounds of German weight; from whence it is evident beyond contradiction, that the creature, when living, must be of a monstrous size. This is all the account we can give of the creature; for Mr. Ibrant acknowledges, that he never met with any one who had seen the animal whole, either alive or dead; nor any one that could give a satisfactory description of its particular form.

When this envoy had once happily landed at the village of Makofskoi, he was determined not to expose either himself, or any of his retinue, to the perils and dangers that attend the navigation of the Keta any farther; and for that reason performed the remainder of his journey on dry land. Having travelled in this manner for about sixteen leagues, on the 12th of October he arrived safe at Jenizekoi; where he tarried for some considerable time, not only in order to refresh both himself and his retinue after their long fatigue, but to wait till the winter season was perfectly settled, that he might pursue his destined journey more agreeably in a fledge. In the interim he took care to furnish himself with every convenience that was requisite for that purpose; and had, moreover, leisure-hours enow to make his researches after every thing in the city, that was worthy the attention of the curious traveller.

It derives its name from the river of Jeniffia, which, having its source in the fourth, traverses the Kalmuc mountains, and rolls its waters on, almost in a strait line, to the northward, till it discharges itself into the icy sea of (i) Tartary, but not in the same manner as the Oby does, which

---

### **Occasional References:**

1. Oby, the river, fee
2. Oftiacs, or Oftiachs
3. Tobol, or Tobolicka
4. Jeniffia, fee p. 18, n.
5. Lena, the river, fee

---

### **The envoy's departure from Rubnoi, or his journey, at Shamanikoi, or curates, &c.**

M. Ibrant set out in a fledge; and in January 1663, he arrived at a place called Ribnoi, or the river of Ribnoi. This island is from the river Tungulka, and is particularly, it abounds with the largest fish of various kinds, which are inhabiting the river. # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

which difembogues itself into the bosom of its own waters, and from them rolls into the fea. At this town the river is at least a full quarter of a league broad: Its water is both clear and light; but affords no great quantity of fish. The inhabitants of this city, about seven years since, fitted out a substantial vefl, in order to go upon the whale-fifhery; but the never returned, neither did they ever hear any tidings of her afterwards. The inhabitants of Tiguma, a town that lies considerably farther down the river, sends ships

annually on the fame expedition; but then they act with more precaution than the former; they watch their proper fea-fons, and consider when the winds blow the ice from off the shore, and by that means fish without danger. The city of Jenizekoi is moderately large, is very populous and well fortified. They have plenty of corn, and all forts of poultry, as well as butchers meat. Its jurisdiction extends over a prodigious number of Tangufians, who inhabit the banks of the Teninga and the Tungufa, and all the parts adjacent. They pay their whole tribute to the Czar in various kinds of furs. The cold is so intense here, that their trees yield no manner of fruit. All that they can boast of, which can properly be termed fruit, is a small quantity of goofeberies, both black and red; and a few wood-strawberries.

## **Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.**

1. Oby, the river, see p. 18. n. e.
  2. Oftiachs, or Outiachs, see p. 148 n. b.
  3. Tobol, or Tobolfki, see p. 148. n. a.
  4. Jenifa, see p. 18. n. f.
  5. Lena, the river, see p. 18. n. g.
  6. Ruffians, see p. 7. n. c.
  7. Siberia, or Asiatic Ruffia, see p. 17. n. b.
  8. Mofcovy, or Ruffia, see p. 7. n. e.
  9. Tartary, see p. 18. n. i.
- 

## **C H A P. XXIII.**

The envoy's departure from Jenizekoi. His arrival at the Island, called Ribnoi; or the Isle of Fifth. His arrival, in the prosecution of his journey, at Ilinskoi; and from thence at the Cataca, or Fall of Shamanfko, or the Torrent of the Magician: Concluding with an accurate, tho' compendious Description, of the natives of Tungus.

M. R. Ibrants set out from Jenizekoi in a fledge; and on the 20th of January 1693, he arrived at the Island called Ribnoi, or the Isle of Fifth. This island is situated in the center of the river Tungufka; and affords great plenty of fish of various kinds; but more particularly, it abounds with flurgeon and pike, of the largest size: It is principally inhabited by the natives of (a) Mofcovy. On the

25th of the same month, he arrived at Ilinskoi, situated on the river Il-ni, which has its rise towards the north-west, and discharges its water, on the north-north-west, into the Tunguska. The banks of this river, however, are inhabited by the natives of Tungus, as well as by the Mofcovites. After the envoy had proceeded on his journey from hence for some few days, he arrived at the Cataract, or Fall of the Torrent of Shamanfko, otherwise called the Magician; from a celebrated Shaman, or Magician, who formerly made that particular spot his favourite place of abode. The Fall of this Torrent, or Cataract, in regard to its extent, is no less than half a league. # THE TRAVELS OF

a league; the sides of which, as well as its bottom, are high rocks, and the prospect thereof perfectly shocking to the eye, as must plainly appear even to the reader, by his view of the plate annexed. This Fall makes a most hideous noise, as it rolls down with great rapidity among the rocks; some whereof throw their heads above the water, whilst others lie concealed beneath them. The noise of these waters, when there is little or no wind flurrying, may be heard at the distance of three German leagues all round about.

The vessels that venture up this Torrent are frequently six or seven days in the accomplishment of their passage; notwithstanding they are very slightly built, and dragged up by a great variety of machines, peculiarly adapted for that purpose, as well as by the art and industry of the several crews thereto belonging. Sometimes it happens, that all hands shall be employed for twelve hours successively, in such places particularly, where the rocks are high, and the waters low, and scarce gain any visible ground, tho' they themselves, as well as their vessel, are in imminent danger all the time.

The vessels whether they are making their passage down or up, are always unloaded, and their freight, or cargo, conveyed by land so far as is deemed necessary, and till all the dangers to which they are exposed, are perfectly past.

As to the Fall of the Torrent, such is the rapidity of it, that they are down, for the generality, in less than a quarter of an hour. In short, there are but very few, either of the Mofcovites or Tongu-fians, that are remarkably dextrous at this particular branch of their navigation, notwithstanding they are plentifully furnished with proper materials for their assistance in that dangerous passage; namely rudders, both fore and aft, and a sufficient number of oars, on each side. Those who are at the helm give their directions to their rowers, by a proper wave of their handkerchief; for as the Torrent is so impetuous and noisy, it is impossible for any human voice, how honourable soever, to be distinctly understood. But besides, it is customary, during this

difficult and dangerous passage, to cover up the vessel, as close as possibly it can be, to prevent them from taking in any quantity of the water that rolls over them.

There is scarce a year, however, paffes, without some fatal accident, and the loss of many lives, through the want of able and experienced pilots; who frequently run headlong upon the rocks; and whenever that proves their unhappy case, they are loft, beyond all redemption, and are either instantaneously swallowed up by the impetuous Torrent, or, in a very short time dashed to pieces against the rocks. Neither is it an easy matter ever to recover the lifeles carcafs of those who are thus unhappily buried in the waves; notwithstanding there are divers croftes erected on the shore, at such places where such fatal accidents have occurred, and where the unhappy hands that have perished, have been interred. The waters that flow to this particular spot from the northern ocean swell this torrent to such a degree, in the winter-feafon, that the Fall was formerly so imperceptible, that passengers would venture to crofs it in fledge; in the summer-feafon, however, the waters are exceedingly low.

At some leagues distance from this Cataract, great numbers of Tungu-fians, as well as their celebrated Shaman, or magician, are to be met with. The great reputation of that pretender to necromancy, excited Mr. Ibrant's curiosity so far, as to pay him a visit at his cell, or place of abode.

He assures us, that he was a well-fet man; though in the decline of life had twelve wives; and did not seem to be in the least ashamed of his profession. This Shaman obliged him at once with a fight of his magical veftement, and every other implement besides that he made use of in the exercise of his art. In the first place the veftement which he put on, was decorated with irons, which represented the figures of a great variety of animals, such as night birds, owls, and ravens, fishes, and griffins; besides these, there were other pieces of iron in the form of hatchets, faws, cutlaffes, knives, &c, which when shook, made an odd fort of tinkling. His feet and legs were covered with iron-gloves, in the form of various pieces of iron, in which he wore a large pair of the rein-deer, but could not as well as the rest.

When he exercised his drums in his left-hand, he hops awhile upon one side of his drum, and which hang all about him, in a clutter. Besides, at almost all times he rolls his eyes, and imitates the motion of a bear. At length, he finds on his head a drum, which he infalls to his own discovery of what the Tungu-fians want to discover whether it be to recover a treasure, or any important news, or filicious to be informed of what he has deposited, he begins to daub the drum and repeat the grumbling of the Tungu-fians, and their famous Shaman, or Magician.

A defcription of their Shaman.

The residence of the Tungu-fians, and their famous Shaman, or Magician.

The great dangers to which all such vessels as venture up this Torrent, are unavoidably exposed. # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

and legs, were covered with trinkets of the same nature, and his hands with a pair of iron-gloves, in the form of bears-paws. His cap was likewise decorated with various pieces of iron, in as various shapes, as those on his gown: and on his forehead, he wore a large pair of horns, like those of the rein-deer, but composed of iron, as well as the rest.

When he exercises his diabolical art, he holds a drum in his left-hand, and a flat kind of a flick in his right, which is covered with the skin of a mountain-mouse; then he hops awhile upon one foot; and after that upon the other; and during this kind of dance to his drum, the pieces of iron, which hang all about him, make a hideous clutter. Besides, at almost every step, he rolls his eyes, and imitates the grunting, or grumbling of a bear. After this exordium, he inflicts on his fee before he will proceed one single step farther, towards the discovery of what the poor, credulous Tungufians want to extort from him, whether it be to recover any thing of value that has been stolen; or to hear from him any important news, of which they are solicitous to be informed. The fee being deposited, he begins to dance again, and to repeat the grumbling as before; till he observes a black-bird, perching upon his cell, or hut, at that particular spot where the smoke goes out; and then, in the left place, he falls prostrate on the ground, and there lies, for a short time, like one that is totally deprived of his senses, till the bird of omen is flown again out of sight. In about a quarter of an hour's time, he recovers his lost senses, and then makes his declaration of what is the requite of his client; and what he pronounces is deemed as sure as fate. The dress of this magician, with its additional trinkets, is so heavy, that it must be a strong man who can lift it fairly with one hand. This impostor was possessed of abundance of cattle; and those who were so weak as to consult him on such occasions, never denied him the gratuity he demanded, were it ever so exorbitant, in case they had it to depofite.

The natives of Nifovier, who are all Pagans, are, for the most part, robust fellows, and well-fet. Their hair, for the generality, is remarkably long, and perfectly black. It is a custom amongst them to have it knotted behind; and to let it hang down their back, like a horse's tail. Their faces, indeed, are broader than most of our Europeans their noses, are not flat; as to their eyes, they are remarkably small, like those of the (e) Calmucs.

The women, as well as the men, go almost naked, during the summer-season; for they have nothing about them but a kind of leathern girdle, much like our fringed fathes; which they wear out of modesty to conceal their nakedness.

The women, by way of distinction, drefs up their hair with coral, to which they affix divers little iron trinkets, by way of decoration. In order to preserve themselves from being flung by their flies, they generally wear on their left arm a little light veffel, or pot, full of a smoking-wood. These infects swarm to that degree on the river of Tungufka, that the men, for the most part, cover their faces, as well as their hands, whilst upon the water, for the same purpose; but as they are so much accustomed to them, they scarce feel them when they bite. Though they are ambitious of being thought handsome, yet they entertain but very odd ideas of what is generally called beauty; for, in order to render themselves as graceful as possible, they quill their foreheads, cheeks, and chins, with a kind of thread, steeped in a black greafe, which, when taken off, leaves such a mark behind it, as is deemed highly ornamental. And, indeed, the custom is so universal, that there are very few amongst them but make it their daily practice. The reader, however, will have a more adequate idea of this imaginary additional beauty by having recourse to the plate annexed.

During the winter-season, they generally drefs themselves in the skins of their rein-deers, with the addition of a proper quantity of horfe-hair to the fore-part of their vestments, and dogs-skin to the bottoms. They make no use either of linen or woollen, but adorn themselves with a fort of ribbands, and a thread made of fifth-skin. They wear, likewise, upon their heads # THE TRAVELS OF

heads a kind of cap, made of the skin of their rein-deers, with their wide-spreading horns on; but more particularly, when they set out, in order, to hunt down that creature, by which artful deception, and gliding gently along the grafs, they get within bow-shot of them; and most of them are such dexterous marksmen, that their arrows seldom fail of doing the execution proposed.

When they are inclined to amuse themselves, they form a ring, whilst one of their companions stands in the center, with a kind of wand in his hand, with which he endeavours to lick the legs of those who pass round about him; most of them, however, so dexterously avoid the blow, that all his endeavours prove, for some time, fruitless and ineffectual; but when he happens to take his aim aright, the person on whom the blow falls is immediately ducked in the river.

As to their burials, they strip their dead, in the first place, stark naked, and then deposit their lifeless corpse under some distant tree, where it lies till it is perfectly rotten. After that, they collect the bones, and bury them in the adjacent ground.



Tho' they have no priest but their Shaman, or magician; yet all of them have their wooden idols in their tents or huts. Each of these images, or idols, are made in a human form; and, for the most part, are about an ell in stature; and these, to testify their veneration for them,

## **Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.**

1. Mofcovy, or Russia, see p. 7. n. a.
2. Calmucs, wandering tribes, or hords of Tartars, who inhabit the country north of the Caspian-sea, and sometimes put themselves under the protection of Russia, visiting the city

fed by their devotees, or pretended at least so to be, with the best viands they can possibly procure for them, much after the manner of the (c) Ostiachs, and with equal neatness.

Their tents, or huts, which are for the most part composed of the bark of their birch-trees, are decorated, on the out-side, with the tails and mains of their horses, as also with their several bows and arrows, and hereand there a dead puppy, by way of additional embellishment.

During the summer-season, they principally live upon a variety of fish, of which they have plenty.

Their boats, which are generally large enough for the reception of seven or eight persons, are composed of the barks of trees, few'd strong together. They are long and narrow, and have no benches in them, or any other convenience for their fitting down. They fall, however, on their knees in them, and make use of a double paddle or oar, which they hold by the middle, and are very dexterous in the management of it. This they dip in the water all at once, in large rivers, as well as small.

Their subsistence, as we observed before in the summer, is principally on fish; and as to their diet in winter, they live upon deer of divers sorts, which they hunt down daily, and secure by the dexterous use of their bows and arrows.

1. Ostiachs, or Ostiatschis, see p. 148. n. b. # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

## C H A P. XXIV.

The Envoy's Arrival at Buratfkoï, and from thence at Bulaganfkoï. A succinct Account of the Burates, their Manner of Hunting, &c. His Arrival at Jekutfkoï. A short Description of that Place, and of the burning Cavern over against it. His Departure from Jekutfkoï, and Arrival at the Lake, called Bakal, or Baikal; with a Description of the Parts adjacent, &c.

Mr. Ibrants, on the first day of February, arrived at the fortres of Buratfkoï, situate on the river of Angora, which empties its waters into the lake, called (a) Bakal, or Baikal, and is a very populous place, but inhabited by the Burates, who are very illiterate, and almost all of them heathens.

On the eleventh, the envoy arrived at Bulaganfkoï; the vales and lower part whereof are inhabited likewise by the above-mentioned Burates, who are most of them rich in cattle. Their beeves abound with hair, and their huts, or tents, are low, composed of wood, and covered with clay. Their fire-place is in the center, and the smoke is conveyed away through an aperture in the top of the structure. They have no idea of agriculture, of orchards, or garden-grounds, and their villages are, for the generality, situate on the banks of their rivers; from whence they are not so much accustomed to shift their quarters, as the Tungufians, or some others amongst those Pagan people. They drive stakes or posts into the ground before the doors of their tents, which they decorate with the skins of goats, sheep, and horfes.

As soon as the spring is somewhat advanced, they assemble together in large bodies on horf-back, in order to hunt down their flags, rein-deer, and other wild beasts, which they distinguish by the name of Ablavo. Upon the first fight of their game, they divide themselves into distinct companies, or bands, and surround them; when they have so done, they jointly drive great numbers of them gradually into some narrow avenue; and when they have got within reach of them, (as they are plentifully provided with arrows) they exercise their bows, and but very few of those wild animals escape the fury of the chase.

No fooner is their diversion over, in which they frequently wound either one another, or the horfes they ride on, each looks out, as narrowly as possible, for his own particular arrows, which are all properly marked; and, when in possession of his game, he first flees off the skin, and dries the flesh, which he separates as clean as possible from the bones, in the warm rays of the sun.

When their stock of provisions is pretty nearly exhausted, they renew their attack, and are morally affured of a sufficient supply, as the country abounds, not only with fallow-deer, but with wild sheep, which are to be met with by thousands, in a manner, upon

the mountains. For five or six leagues about, however, there are very few (if any) creatures that furnish them with furs, except, by chance, a bear, or wolf, should fall in their way.

When frangers have occasion to apply to these natives either for oxen or camels, in order to pursue their travels into (b) China, they are under an indispensable obligation to come to an agreement with them for other commodities in exchange; for they have no notion of any current coin. They are very ready, however, to traffic with any foreigners, for whitth fables, copper, or pewter bafions, red-fcarlet (c) Hamburgh cloths, the skins of otters, the falks of (d) Perfia, of any colour # THE TRAVELS OF

colour whatfoever, and for any quantity of gold or filver, if it be in ingots. In this way of trade and commerce, a fran-ger may purchase an ox, which, when dreffed, would weigh 800, or near 1000 weight, for about four or five rubles ; and a camel for ten or a dozen at moft, the ruble being estimated amongst thofe peo-ple, at five livres as they are in (e) Ruffia. The natives of this country, the women as well as men, are for the moft part very hearty, robuft, and tall. As to their faces, they are handfome enough in their way, and refemble in fome meafure the (f) Chinefe Tartars. Both the one and the other, during the winter-feafon, wear a kind of mantle, made of fheep-fkins, which they buckle round them clofe with a girdle, and a cap, which covers their ears, and, in their language, however, they wear gowns of a coarfe fcarlet-cloth. In all other refpects, as they are wafted but once in their lives, and that on the day of their nativity, and never pare their nails, which grow like eagles claws, they look, if we may be indulged the expreffion, like human devils. The men wear a beard under their chins, but pluck off all the fuperfluous hairs. The fkirts of their cloaths are adorned with furs ; their caps are made of fox-fkins ; their veltments of a blue cotton-ftuff, which are plaite in the middle ; and their fandals, or boots, of the fkins of beafts, with the hairy part only expofed to view. Their women adorn themfelves with coral, rings, and fmall pieces of money, faftened in their hair ; and their laffes, or maidens, plait their hair in ringlets, like fo many fnares, which make them look like little furies. The hair of their women in years, falls down on each fide of their faces, and is decorated with a great variety of little fi- gures, composed of copper, or brafs ; and wherever any of them die, they are interred in their beft cloaths ; to which are ad- ded, a bow and arrow. Their divine worfhip, if it may be fo called, confits wholly in making fome particular fantastical motions with their

heads, at certain feafons of the year, to the feveral goats or fheep, which they have faftened to the door-pofts of their cabbins, or tents. The fame act of devotion is, at certain times likewife, paid both to the fun and moon, but that in a kneeling pofture, with their hands joined together in a fo- lemn manner, but in a profound filence ; for they don't fo much as whifper, or ufe the leaf verbal invocation whatfoever. They have their priests, 'tis true ;

but they put them to death, whenever they see convenient, which is somewhat very peculiar. They enter them, however, with some solemnity, and furnish them both with money and cloaths, that they may go before them into the unknown world, and make intercession for them. When they are indispensably obliged to take their solemn oath on any particular occasion amongst themselves, they repair to the lake, called Balkal, or Bal-kal, before mentioned, upon a high mountain, within the distance of two days journey, which they look upon as so Sacred. They are firmly persuaded, it seems, that should they take a false oath upon that most holy ground, they should never more return alive to their habitations. This mountain has for a long course of years been held by them in the utmost veneration ; and they frequently make free-will oblations thereupon, of the choice of their cattle. In the parts adjacent, they have a particular animal that affords a valuable musk, not unlike that in the plate annexed, which bears some resemblance to a dark-coloured deer, that has no horns, and a head, not altogether unlike that of a wolf. The valuable musk abovementioned lies concealed in a small bladder near its navel, and is covered with a kind of down. This animal is called by the natives of China, the Yehiam, or Musk-deer, notwithstanding its head is no ways like one ; and its teeth bear some resemblance to the tusks of a wild-boar. Signior Martini, in his Chinese Atlas, assures us, that this creature is to be met within the country of (g) Xanxi, or Xanfi, near the city of Leao ; but more frequently # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

ly in that of Hanchungfu, in the country of (b) Suchurn; as also, in that of Pao-ningfa; in some parts of Kiating; and near the fortresses of Fiencevin; in divers parts of the territory of Junan; and, in short, some other places to the westward.

The description, which that author has given of it, is well worthy the attention of the curious reader, and is as follows. "Tho' the musk-animal, says "he, bears some small resemblance to a "deer, yet it is of a darker colour, and so "indolent and inactive, that the fortresses "men there can scarcely rouse him; in- "so much, that he suffers them to cut his "throat, without the least struggle, or "resistance. As his blood is looked upon "as valuable, tho' not equal to its musk, "they are carefully to preserve it. Under "his navel, he has not only a small bladder full of blood; but another, containing a certain coagulated, and odoriferous "liquid, which they take from him, in "the first place; and after that they flay "him and cut him into pieces.

In order to make the best musk, "the natives of China take the hind-quarters of this animal from the kidneys, "which they found in a stone-mortar, "with a small quantity of blood, till the "whole is of the consistency of a jelly, "and when dried, deposit it in little "cords, composed of the skin of the same "creature.

When they are disposed to have their "musk of an inferior sort, tho' good "and genuine at the same time, they "pound all the parts of this animal together, without distinction, and reduce "them to a jelly, and observe the same "method as above-mentioned.

They have, moreover, a third sort "of this valuable commodity, which, "tho' not so perfectly good and pure as "the two former, is highly esteemed.

This is composed of the fore quarters of this same animal, that is to say, "from the head to the kidneys; which, "together with the remainder, serve to "make a common musk, inasmuch, that "all is good, and no part lost."

Mr. Ibrants, however, seems at a loss to determine, whether the Burates, or any of their savage neighbours, take the same measures as the Chinese do, in making this same musk of different degrees of goodness.

The envoy after making some short stay amongst these savage natives, proceeded on his journey to Jekutskoi, situated on the river of Angara, which rises from the lake of Bakal, or Baikal aforesaid, at the distance of eight leagues, or thereabouts. This town, which had not at that time been long built, was flanked with good substantial towers. Its suburbs are very large; and not only corn and salt, but butchers meat, and all kinds of fish are remarkably cheap there: And as to barley in particular, a whole German hundred weight of it may be purchased for about seven pence, or eight pence at farthest.

The soil all round about is very fertile, and as 'tis well cultivated, it abounds in all sorts of grain as far as Wergolenkoi, which is but at a few leagues distance. The Russians, who reside in these parts, have some hundreds of villages all round about, and are very industrious in the cultivation of their lands.

Over against this town, towards the east, there is a cavern for ever burning, which for some considerable time past, had cast forth flames with an astonishing degree of violence; but at present, indeed, nothing flaming appears from it; since it only smokes. Those flames, it seems, burst forth from a large aperture, which still continues to be burning; as, by thrusting a long stick into the fluid fire, may be plainly experienced by the curious traveller.

On one side of this town, likewise, there stands a fine monastery, or convent, on that particular spot, where the river Jakut, from whence it derives its name, empties its waters into the Angara. Tho' the natives of these parts are accustomed to feel great earthquakes during the latter part of the summer, yet as no fatal consequences ever attend them, those shocks never terrify, or disconcert them. # THE TRAVELS OF

Whilst the envoy resided in this place, he met with a Taifcha, that is to say, a (i) Mongolian, or Mogulian lord, who had thrown himself under the shelter and protection of the Czar of (k) Mofcovy, and had been for some time a proflyte to the christian faith, and received a member of the Greek church.

This young nobleman had a sister, who was a Mongolian nun, and was greatly inclined to become a christian convert, as well as her brother. In conversation upon that serious and important topic, she would ingeniously acknowledge, that the God in whom the christians put their trust and confidence, muft of necessity, in her opinion, be an omnipotent God indeed; since he had expelled their Mongolian deity out of Paradise; but she was firmly persuaded, that a time would come, when he should be restored, and never be subject to the like disgrace again.

When any of these nuns, or Mongolian devotees enter into a room, they never salute any person present whomsoever, tho' 'tis a customary thing with their ladies, who live under no restraint; since their order is too strict to approve of such formalities of complaisance. In her hand, she held a string of beads, which she counted over and over with her fingers; and was attended by a Mongolian priest, whom they call a Lama, who held in his hand likewise a string of beads, which he kept constantly counting with her, and at the same time visibly moved his lips, like one deeply engaged in private contemplation, as is customary amongst the Mongolians, as well as the (l) Calmucs. This priest, by the incessant practice of this branch of devotion, had wore his thumb, his nail, and the joints of his fingers to that degree, that he had perfectly loft the sense of all feeling in them.

Mr. Ibrants, having rested himself for some considerable time at Jekutkoi, departed from thence in a fledge, on the first day of May, and crofted the country as far as the lake Bakal, or Baikal afore said, where he arrived on the tenth of the same month, and found it frozen, notwithstanding the spring was so far advanced.

When he had crofted it, he got into the country of (m) Catania. The lake abovementioned, is in breadth, about six German leagues, and in length about forty; and the ice, he found at that time, was no less than a Dutch ell in point of thickness.

It is a very dangerous passage, however, if it happens to snow, and the wind proves high, at the same time; and as the ice is very slippery, and the snow driven off by that means, great care must be taken, that the horfes are all properly shod for that purpose. When the winds are violent, and the horfes improperly shod, the traveller too often meets with holes in the ice, into which he is too often plunged unawares. The ice there frequently cracks, thro' the impetuosity of the winds, with a noise almost as loud as thunder; but it soon knits, and joins together again.

As the camel and oxen, which are accustomed to travel into China, must unavoidably cross this lake, as they go thither from Jekutkoi, the former, in order to enable them to proceed on their journey with safety, are provided with a fort of boots well shod for the purpose; and very sharp irons are fastened on the hoofs of the latter; for without such care and precaution, they would never be able to stand on the smooth slippery surface. The water, however, of this lake is perfectly sweet, notwithstanding, at a distance, it appears as clear and as green as the ocean itself. Numbers of feals are to be met with in the fissures of the ice, which are perfectly black; whereas those in the (n) white fea are, for the most part, of divers colours.

This lake abounds with all sorts of fish, but more particularly with pike and sturgeon; and some of the latter are of such an enormous size, that they will weigh little less than two hundred German pounds. The only river that flows from this lake is the Angara, which runs to the north-west; there are several, however, that empty their waters into it, the principal whereof, is the Sillinga, which rifles

---

The lake of Baikal, or Bakal described.

Its passage dangerous.

Fatal casualties occasioned by violent winds.

The manner of crofting this lake with camels and oxen.

---

Occasional:

1. Bakal, or Baikal, a riddled Siberia, in the road China.
  2. China, fee p. 66. n.
  3. Hamburg, a city of great size, and a port-town of the river Elbe, of the German ocean, 49. Lubes, and 55 north-east of the river Elbe, and partly on the northern side to it, is small, and large villages and nobility, and the tide flows through them, and separates the islands, and divides the lake.
- 

It is as also, as a town of that magnitude, which is exceedingly popular, all parts of Europe referring their goods to it, and the wine is the finest of Europe, and their beer is good here, and they export a great deal of it. # CORNELIUS LEBRUN.

rifes to the southward in the Mongolian country. There are some brooks, indeed and rivulets that fall into it from the rocks, and there are some little islands in it likewise. Its borders, and the adjacent lands all round about it are inhabited by the Borates,

Mongulians and the Onkotes, and produce a large quantity of fine black fables. Besides, the inhabitants frequently catch an animal, called the Kaberdiner, which is very advantageous.

In regard to the above-mentioned lake, it is very remarkable, that when travellers draw near it, on the side of the convent or monastery of St. Nicholas, which stands on the spot, where the river Angara flows out of the lake, the inhabitants with abundance of warmth and superflition, give them warning never to call the lake, whilst they are croffing it, by the name of Ofer, or Still-water, but a lake; for fear they should be over taken by tempestuous weather, and perish in the storm, as too many had done before them, who had been so rash and presumptuous as to give it the ill-omen'd appellation above-mentioned.

This superflitious precaution, however, of these natives appeared so idle and so groundless, to Mr. Ibrant's, that he never scrupled to call it the Still-water, during his passage over it; and notwithstanding their predictions, he arrived safe at the castle of Catania, which is the first fort in the province of Dauria, in the midst of very fine weather, sincerely commiserating the ignorance and ethaflam of those poor deluded heathens, who stand in awe of, and tremble at the fury of the elements, instead of putting their trust and confidence in the Almighty, who is the great creator, and lord of the universe, and holds the winds in the hollow of his hands.

## **Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.**

1. Bakal, or Baikal, a great lake in the middle of Siberia, in the road from Molcovy to China.
2. China, see p. 66. n. 1.
3. Hamburg, cast. long. 9. 40. lat. 54. a great city and port-town in Germany, in the circle of lower Saxony, and duchy of Holstein, situate on the river Elbe, 50 miles fourth-eaft of Lubeck, and 55 north-eaft of Bremen. It stands on the north-side of the rivet Elbe, partly on islands, and partly on the continent; the territory subject to it is small, but there are several large villages and noblemen's feats in it. The tide flows through the channels, which separe the islands, and the town lies so low, that in some spring-tides they receive great damage in their houfes. They have spacious streets, and their houfes are built of brick, very high, and make a grand figure. As the town is naturally strong, it is as well fortified by art also, as a town of that magnitude can well be; and it is exceedingly populous, merchants from all parts of Europe resorting to it, from whence their goods are sent into the



middle of the empire by the Elbe. All provisions are plentiful here, and their beer has such a reputation that they export a great deal of it. They have very elegant gardens, and summer-houses for several miles about the town, on the land side; and on the water, ships come up to their doors, to deliver, and take in their lading; the tide flowing sixteen miles above the town. It is an imperial city, or sovereign state, governed by its own magistrates, subject only to the general laws of the empire, as other princes and states are; but the people have sometimes disputed the authority of the senate, of late years, and the empire has interposed, and compelled them to put an end to their dissensions by force. And the king of Denmark, as duke of Holstein, sometimes lays claim to the dominion of this city, and extorts money from them; for as he is posseffed of the fortres of Glukflat, towards the mouth of the river, it lies in his power to distress them pretty much. Their liberties also are sometimes endangered by religious disputes with the Roman catholics, in whose behalf the emperor sometimes interposes, as he did in the year 1708, commanding a body of troops to march into the city, and they were forced to buy their peace. They are at variance also with other denominations of Protestants; for the Lutheran persuasion, is established in this city; and they will tolerate no others, whether Popish or Protestant, except in the chappels of foreign ministers, and will suffer none of their subjects to resort to these. # THE TRAVELS OF

4. Perfia, fee p. 64. n. c.
5. Rufia, or Mofcovy, fee p. 7. n. a.
6. Tartary (Chinefe) fee p. 18. n. l.
7. Xanxi, or Xanfi, a province of China in Afia, bounded by the province of Peking on the east; by the great wall on the north; by the province of Honan on the fourth; and by the river Crocei, which divides it from the province of Xenfi on the weft.
8. Suchuen, a province of China, is bounded on the north, by the province of Xenfi; by Honan and Hugnam on the east; by Quecheu and Yunam on the fourth; and by the mountains of India on the weft, its chief town is Chintu.
9. Mongulians, or Mogulians, the natives of a part of Tartary, which lies north of India and Perfia. Tamerlane, one of the Mogul princes, conquered India and Perfia, and from him the prefent Great Mogul, or emperor of India, is descended. Samecand, in Ufbec Tartary was the antient feat of their empire.
10. Mofcovy, or Rufia, fee p. 7. n. c.
11. Caimucs, fee p. 162. n. b.

## **C H A P. XXV.**

Mr. Ibrants departs from Katania, and arrives at Udinfkoi. A Description of the latter, and the Parts adjacent. He sets out again from Udinfkoi, and arrives at the Fort of Jeranna. A Description of the Natives. He arrives afterwards at Nerzinkoi. A Description of that Place, and of the People who reside therein, and in the Country on each side. He arrives at last at Argunfkoi, the very last Fort belonging to his Czarion Majefly. The situation of it described.

Feb. 11.

On the eleventh of February, Mr. Ibrants departed from the castle of Catania, and on the next day arrived at the large town, called Iniñkoi, or Bolfoi Saimka, the principal inhabitants whereof are (a) Ruffians, whose occupation, for the most part, during the winter-feafon, is hunting for fables; since they can scarcely fubfift on the products of their foil; as the whole country abounds with barren hills.

Feb. 14.

On the fourteenth he arrived at Tanzinkoi caftle, where there was a considerable garrison of (b) Cofiacs, in order to oppose the outrages and depredations of the (c) Mungulians, who reside upon the frontiers.

Feb. 19.

On the nineteenth he arrived at Udinfkoi, situate on a high hill at the foot whereof the greater part of the inhabitants pitch their tents, under the cannon of that fort, all along the banks of the Uda, which empties its waters into the Salinga, about the fourth part of a league below the town, in which there is likewise a ftrong garrison of Ruffian Cofiacs, in order to observe the motions of the Mungulians.

This town, which is the quay to the province of Dauria, lies, even in the fummer-feafon, greatly exposed to the infults and incursions of the Mungulians, who frequently drive off what cattle they find grazing in the meadows. Tho' the land there, which is for the most part mountainous, is fo barren, as scarce to be worth their manuring; yet they have plenty enough of cabbages, carrots, and turnips, and other vegetable food of the like kind; but there is not a tree of any fort whatever planted in those parts at this very day.

About nine at night, whilst the envoy was # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

This fort is supplied with a very considerable garrison of Coffs; and in this place there are resident great numbers of Ruffians, whose principal subsistence consists in the sale of fables.

The Konni Tungufians, who are all Heathens, and inhabitants of the banks of those two rivers, Tungufki and Angara, disperse themselves all over this country, and speak a language, understood by no one but themselves.

When any of these natives dye, they are buried in their cloaths, with their bows and arrows deposited by their sides; and when the ground is filled up, it is covered with large stones. When this ceremony is over, they drive a stake into the ground hard by, to which the best horse that the deceased was possessed of is fastened, and soon after killed, with some kind of solemnity, as an oblation. Their principal subsistence depends on the sale of their fable furs, which in this country are extremely fine, and of a very beautiful black. Here likewise, great numbers of what they call Luxes are to be met with, and a kind of dark-grey Squirrels, which the (e) Chinese, in former times were accustomed to hunt down, and carry away with them.

To the northward of this fort, there are three small lakes to be seen, which are situate but at a small distance from each other, and are about two leagues in circumference, computing all together; in each of which there is great plenty of pike, carp, perch, and other fifth of the like kind. From this place there are two roads leading to Zitinifkoi, otherwise called Plabifticha. Mr. Ifrants sent part of his retinue by the one, and his caravan proceeded to the fourthward; keeping along the banks of the lake, called Schakze Ofer, and then crossed the hills of Jablufnoi, that is to say, of Apples. There are none grow there, however; and those hills produce only a red sort of a fruit, which has, indeed, some of the flavour and taste of an apple. The other road he took himself, with fourteen of his attendants notwithstanding the way was very moribund; and besides he had several high rocks to pass over.

was here, there was a violent shock of an earthquake, which greatly surprized him; for in the space only of one hour, it shook all the houses no less than three times successively; but as providence ordered it, no fatal consequences attended it.

Though the river Uda produces but a very small quantity of fifth; (pike and roach only excepted) yet, in the month of July in particular, there are surprising shoals of one species of fifth, which are there called the Omuli, and which swim up the river from the lake of (d) Baikal. These Omuli, in point of size, are about the bigness of our herrings. It is observable, that very few of them are ever seen above the town, but seem to rest themselves at the foot of a decayed hill, for two or three days only at farthest, and then

return to their native lake. Great quantities of them, however, are caught by only throwing a large sack into the water, instead of a net; and those sacks are frequently dragged up with as many as they can hold. Here Mr. Ibrants was indispensably obliged to tarry till the fifth of April, in order to furnish himself with a sufficient number of camels and horses for the prosecution of his journey.

On the 26th he went to the river Ona by land, which flows from the north-north-west, and empties its waters into the Uda.

On the next day he travelled to the river Kurba, the spring, or fountain-head whereof lies to the north-north-west, and empties its waters, in the same manner as the Ona, into the Uda.

He kept as close as possibly he could to the banks of this river, till he arrived at about the middle of its source; and notwithstanding, he was several times obliged to leave it, indeed, at some distance; yet he always took care to keep it within view.

On the 29th he arrived at the fort of Jerauna, and was highly delighted with meeting with some towns again in his way, after he had traversed a long, tedious desert, full of rocks, during which, he met not with one single passenger from the hour he departed from Udinkoi. # THE TRAVELS OF

before he could reach Telimta; at which fort there are great numbers of Russians, who, during the winter-season, catch fables of a beautiful black, that are fat and well fed, and no ways inferior to the very finest that are to be met with throughout (f) Siberia, and the whole province of Dauria.

Here the envoy spent one night, and a Knez, or prince of the Tungusians, whose name was Liliulka, came to visit him. This lord wore his hair, twirled up with leather, which was so excessively long, that it went three times round his shoulders.

As Mr. Ibrants told him he should take it as a favour if he would gratify his curiosity so far as to let it flow loose; and as the Knez was in high spirits, having drank a little too freely of brandy, he very readily complied with his request; and upon an exact admeasurement it proved to be no less than four German ells in length; and the hair of his little son, who was but about six years of age, and was present with his father, which hung down upon his back, was at least an ell long. These natives of Tungus, are very populous, and dwell upon the hills and mountains of this country; and most of them are in good circumstances, thro' their advantageous traffic in fables.

The envoy and his retinue passed for two days together over lofty hills, which were very high, especially to the north-west and the south-east. The river of Konela, which afterwards is distinguished by the name of Wittim, rises there towards the north; runs to the north-east, and proceeding onwards empties its waters into the

(g) Lena, and from thence into the Icy or Northern-sea. The Zitta commences about half a league from thence, on the other side of the mountains, and discharges itself into the Ingodda, or Amur, and from that river into the eastern ocean.

On the 15th of May, Mr. Iibrants arrived at Plodbitfscha, but the caravan on the day before, which had been greatly incommoded in its passage from the Tungufians, as they had set fire to the grass, which was extremely dry; inasmuch that, the cattle standing in want of forage, they were obliged to go as far as the mountains for it, which lay at least a league out of their way.

Mr. Iibrants was obliged to stop for two or three days at Plodbitfscha, which is situated on the river Zitta, not only in order to refresh himself after his fatigue, but to procure some rafts, by the help of which he might fall down the rivers of Amur aforefaid and Schilka, and get to Nerzinfkoi; for the waters were so very low, that there was no possibility of going in boats; neither was it, indeed, perfectly safe to go upon those rafts where the places were rocky, and two of them in particular were broken and decayed, which were laden with some part of the envoy's equipment; however, with some difficulty the whole was preserved.

When all matters were in readiness, Mr. Iibrants sent his camels, and other beasts of burden before him towards Nerzinfkoi, by the way of the mountains, and followed them in person on the eighteenth of May. On the nineteenth, he proceeded on his journey as far as the Onon, which rises from the Mongolian fens, and empties its waters towards the north-east into the Amur, where, upon the union of their streams, they roll down together by the name of Schilka.

Their waters are perfectly white, and their banks are inhabited by a great number of hords, or clans of the Mungalian whites; who are frequently committing inflicts on those who reside on the other side of the Schilka, and as far as Nerzinfkoi. They are not always, however, successful in those outrages and invasions of their neighbours; for they frequently meet with strong repulses, and whenever they happen to be overpowered, they are executed immediately, without the least hope of a reprieve, as audacious free-booters. The Ruffian Cossacks likewise set out in bands, and steer their course all along the banks of the Onon, in order to chastise those invaders wherever they can find them. They give, in short, no quarter; and carry death and defoliation with them wherever they go. # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

On the twentieth of May, the envoy arrived safe at Nerzinskoï, situate on the river Nerza, which flows from the north-north-east, and empties its waters into the Schilka, at about a quarter of a league distance from the town; the fort whereof is well defended by strong out-works, and furnished, not only with a great number

of bras' artillery, but well guarded by Daurian Coflacs, who serve in both capacities, as horfe and foot. Notwithstanding this place is encompassed round with high hills; yet there are meadow-grounds in the parts adjacent, sufficient for the plentiful provision of grafs for their camels, horfes, and all their other kinds of cattle. And moreover, at about a league or two distance from the hills, there are several parcels of low-lands fit for tillage to be met with, which are capable of producing all such conveniencies of life as the inhabitants can reasonably desire. At the distance of about four or five leagues above the town, and ten below it, on the banks of the Schilka, there are several substantial Ruffians as well as Coflacs to be met with, whose principal subsistence depends on tillage, grazing, and their large dealings in fish. In the parts adjacent to the town, and at the feet of their hills there is plenty of all forts of flowers, as well as plants; and amongst others the baftard Rhubarb, otherwise called Rapontica, of an extraordinary growth; exceedingly fine yellow as well as white lilies; white and red pionies, that are peculiarly fragrant, and of divers species; add to these, thyme, rofemary, lavender, sweet Marjoram, and a great variety of other odoriferous plants, which are unknown in our European countries. As for fruit, indeed, they have none to boast of but their goofeberrys.

The heathens, who have for many years past refided in this part of the country, and are under the jurisdiction of his Czarain majesty, are of two kinds; and distinguished by the names of the Konni Tungufians, and the Olenni. The former are obliged to appear on horseback, whenever the Waiwode of Nerzinskoï thinks fit to issue out orders for that purpose; or when the borders of that place are in the least invaded by the (d) Tartars; the latter, on the other hand, are obliged to serve on foot, and to stand to their arms in the town, upon all emergent occasions.

The head, or principal of the Konni, is a knez, or lord, by name Paul Petromitz Gantimur; one, pretty far advanced in years, and a native of Nienheu, where he had acted in the capacity, or high post, of a Taifka, under the power and jurisdiction of the king of China: but having casually given some disgust to that prince, he was deposed, and removed into Dauria, with his hords, or vails. This knez, having embraced the Christian faith, and been admitted a member of the Greek church, sheltered himself under the protection of his Czarain majesty. In four and twenty hours time, this lord, or knez, has it in his power to bring no less than 3000 men into the field of battle, if occasion requires, all well mounted, all able and experienced soldiers, and all accoutred with their bows and arrows. A small band, or body of these men, not above forty in number, will frequently put to flight three or four hundred of the Mungalian Tartars, if they attempt to attack them. Such of them as reside either in this town or the parts adjacent,

subsist principally on their traffic in cattle; but those who live on the banks of the Schilka and the Amur, trade chiefly in fables, which are exceedingly fine there, and of a most beautiful black.

They live in tents, or huts, which they call Jurtes, the inside whereof consists of poles, which are joined, or framed in such a manner together, that they can be removed with all the ease imaginable; as they are frequently obliged to shift their habitations. As soon as these poles are erected, they are covered over with skins, that part where the smoke of their chimneys is to have its proper vent only excepted. Their fire-places are for the generality in the center of their huts; and they have feats of turf all round about them.

Their method of devotion, or form of divine worship, is much the same with that # THE TRAVELS OF

that of the inhabitants of Dauria, from whom they pretend to derive their pedigree, and differs in no one essential article from that of the Tartars, quite to the frontiers of the Mongulians.

The women here are as robust, and have as broad faces as the men; and when on horseback, appear with their bows and arrows, in the use of which they are remarkably dexterous, as they are accustomed to them even from their infancy: neither is there any material difference in their habits from those of their men, as the reader will plainly perceive by the plate annexed.

Water is their drink for the generality among the poorer fort; those, however, who are in more easy circumstances, indulge themselves in drinking tea, which by them is termed Kara'tza, that is to say, black tea; because it changes the water in which it is infused to a blackish colour instead of green. This tea they boil in mare's-milk, mingled with a proper quantity of water, to which they add some grease, if they are unprovided with butter.

They have, moreover, a sort of liquor, which, when distilled, they call Kunnen, or Arak, which is an extract from mare's-milk, and deposited into a vessel, whilst hot. To this they add a small quantity of four milk, and then stir it once or twice perhaps within the compass of an hour. When it has continued in this condition for about twelve hours, they pour it into an earthen vessel, which is covered up close, and passed over, and then distilled, in the same manner as is customary amongst us Europeans. This is required to be twice repeated before it is fit to drink; and after that, it becomes as clear and strong to the full as any malt-spirit, and will have the same intoxicating effect.

It is very observable, that the cows in Siberia, Dauria, and in short, in any part of Tartary, will never stand still to be milked, whilst they have any calves at their dugs, and as foal almost as they are out of their fight, their milk is lost. This is the true reason

why they make use of mare's milk instead of that of the cow; but besides, the milk of the former is not only fatter, but much more soft.

These savages employ themselves in hunting, during the spring-leafon, and lay in their stock of venison much after the same manner as the Burates, and dry it afterwards, as they do, in the beams of the fun.

Their bread, which they call Sura-na, and which they apply to various uses, is composed of the dried roots of the yellow lily.

These natives are very dexterous in shooting fish in the waters with their arrows, and seldom miss their mark, tho' they find sometimes at the distance of fifteen or sixteen fathom. As their arrows are for the most part very heavy, they are fit only for the killing of pike, or trout, which swim pretty close to the bank side in clear water, and there lie on the gravel. These when they are shot, are split asunder, like a lamb by a butcher's cleaver, the points of their arrows being no less than three or four fingers in breadth.

These people, when they are under an indispensable obligation to take a solemn oath, put the following abominable and shocking custom into practice. In order to prove their innocence, and acquit themselves of the crime laid to their charge, they take a dog, and open one of his veins on the left-side, from whence the person accused sucks his blood, till the poor, harmless creature drops down dead at his feet. Mr. Ibrants was an eye-witness of an operation of this kind whilst he was at Nerzinkoi, in respect to two Tungusians, who were then in custody as hostages, to be accountable for the integrity and innocent department of their country-men, and go thither in order to shelter themselves under the protection of the Czar: One of these Tungusians had charged the other with having bewitched several of his companions, and who lost their lives by his illicit and clandestine incantations; but the party acquitted himself of the crime laid to his charge, by taking the oath in the manner above related, and the informer.

---

Their bread Their manner of catching fish, Their feveral liquors, Their tea, Their water distilled from mare's milk, The true reason why they make use of mare's milk,

---

An abominable custom practised frequently by the Tungusians.

---

The Envoy returned to Pekin on the ninth day of the 1694, and on the same month arrived at Galge, from China, which party proceeded towards the frontier, and arrived on the third day of August. # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.



## **Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.**

1. Ruffians, or Moscovites, fee p. 7. n. c.
  2. Coffers, fee p. 156. n. e.
  3. Mongulians, or Mogulians, fee p. 158. n. i.
  4. Baikal or Bakal (the lake of) fee p. 167. n. a.
  5. Chinese, fee p. 66. n. t.
  6. Siberia, or Asiatic Russia, fee p. 17. n. b.
  7. Lena, (the river of) fee p. 18. n. b.
  8. Tartars, fee p. 18. n. i.
- 

## **C H A P. XXVI.**

### **The Envoy returns through the Dominions of the Czar to Tartary.**

Mr. Ibrants journey beyond Tartary, and his embassy to China bears no affinity with our author's travels to the East-Indies, by the way of Moscovy and Perfa, it has not been deemed any ways requisite to follow that envoy beyond the boundaries of those countries which belong to the Czar's dominions. However, as there are divers interesting and important articles in his return from Tartary, and which are consistent with our plan, we flatter ourselves that the curious reader will be by no means disappointed at our inferring them in this place.

Mr. Ibrants then departed from Pekin on the nineteenth of February 1694. and on the 25th of the same month arrived at Galgan, near the much talked of wall, which parts the empire of China from Tartary. From thence he proceeded towards the river Naun, and arrived on the frontiers of Tartary, to the edge of the large deft of which

we have before taken sufficient notice.

There he tarried for some few days in order to furnish himself with necessaries for the prosecution of his journey; having hitherto had all his disbursements duly discharged by the king of China; but as that expence is no longer defrayed by his Chinese majesty when any ambassador gets once into the territories of

Argun, which is the border of his Czar's dominions; the envoy I lay conscious of so essential an article, had taken all due care whilst at Pekin, to furnish himself with camels, horses, and other cattle, proper for his purpose, where he could purchase them at a cheap market.

This prudent precaution answered in all respects the ends proposed; for he would have met with a fore disappointment, had he put his trust and dependence on the several horses and camels which he had left behind him at Nuna, most of which died during his absence for want of proper

mer was punished accordingly in his stead.

The envoy tarried at Nerzenkoi for a month or more, in order to furnish him with camels, horses, oxen, and a great variety of other things requisite for the prosecution of his journey; and on the 18th of July departed from Nerzenkoi, and on the third of August then next ensuing, he arrived at Arganikoi, which is the left fort on that side which belongs to the Czar.

That fort is situate on the river Argun, which rifes towards the fourth-caft, and empties its waters into the Amur, and serves as a boundary between the dominion of his Czar's majesty, and that of the king of China.

August 1. Arrives at Arganikoi. # THE TRAVELS OF

On the 22d of the same month the envoy made a very elegant entertainment for the Mandarin, who, by express order of the king his matter, had waited on him so far, and took his farewell both of him and his retinue.

On the 26th infant Mr. Ifbrants entered the extensive but tremendous defert; and after two days travel, arrived at Targafinia, situate on the little river called Jalo, where there was no grafs comparatively speaking throughout the country, as the feason was fo backward. There he rested for some time after his fatigue, and was, in a friendly manner, forewarned to be upon his guard, during his passage over that frightful defert, and whilst he was approaching the banks of those two rivers Sadun and Kallar; for that no lefs than three thousand (f) Mungulians lay in wait for his coming, at that paffage. He took accordingly all the prudent steps he could think of to prevent their intended attack, and gave orders directly for threecore men well provided with arms, and on horseback, to patrolle every night about the caravan; neither did he meet with any opposition, tho' expected, and advanced forwards on his journey the next morning. When he had got so far as the mountains of Jalich, there was little or no forage to be procured; and the very next day he paft over them notwithstanding it was excessively cold, and the snow lay deep, which happened very unfortunately for his poor camels and horfes, which had nothing to subfift on but a small quantity of

dried and withered grafs. Whilst he was here he consulted with his attendants, whether he should purfue the ufual route, or take a tour round to avoid any casual skirmith with the Tartars, who were in waiting, as he imagined, at the paffage. Tho' the laft was a very difficult task to carry into execution, and more especially as all their cattle were heavy laden; yet that refolution was unanimously approved of.

In their taking this by-road, they were obliged to pafs over several very high hills, and to travelfe divers fens, which were excessively deep, for about fourteen or fifteen days fucceffively. At his first fetting out he loft no lefs than twelve camels and fifteen horfes, and afterwards a proportionable number, which funk under the weight of their burthens, being weak and fpiritlefs for want of neceffary fubfiftence and fupport; for this hideous defert affords no forage whatever, as we have before hinted, but a little dry and withered grafs; and they were afterwards deprived even of that poor pittance; for the Tartars fet fire thereto; inofmuch that he was indispensibly obliged to take a double journey, in order to find out fome place or another where forage was to be procured.

The greateft part of the merchants who made a part of his retinue, having loft their horfes, were reduced to the neceffity of purifying their journey on foot; and as thofe cattle that furvived were perfectly fpent and their ftrength exhausted, they muft inevitably have been conftrained to leave a confiderable part of their effects behind them in the deferts, had not the envoy taken that precaution of furnifhing himfelf with a fufficient number of camels and other cattle, which were led by the bridie.

In fine, having with inexpressible difficulty, and after a thousand hardfhips and turmoils, reached in fafety the river of Sadun, he there found the climate much more moderate, and a tolerable quantity of grafs growing fresh upon the ground. Here he refited for two days and nights in order to refresh his camels and horfes, which were perfectly tired and fcarce able to flir.

Here a Chinefe envoy who came from Mafgeen, and was fent by the emperor to the Waiwode of Nertzinfkoj, overtook him, and joined him with a retinue of no lefs than a hundred perfons; and by that reinforcement, enabled him to withftand the oppofition he was menaced with from the Mungulians, having at that time with him a body of fix-hundred to defend him. # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

On the fifteenth of March Mr. Ibrants arrived at the river called Kailan, which he forded at a proper place, where the water was but low; and from thence proceeded to a vale at about a league's distance, and there pitched his camp, notwithstanding there was little or no forage near the place. In this valley he tarried all the next night, and at the dawn of day he plainly difcerned a considerable smoke, that arofe from the north-west; which

occurrence created him no small uneasiness, as he had too just grounds to suspect that the Tartars had set the withered grafts on fire, in order to make their intended attack upon him, as the wind and smoke were in their favour. And as his welfare first depended on the protection of providence, and after that on the safety of his camels, mules, and other cattle in his train, he ordered them to be led behind an adjacent hill, where there was forage, and where the flames could never reach or affect them. At the same time he gave orders for an hundred men in his retinue to advance with felts towards the smoke; as it was a customary practice to cover the camels, &c. in order to extinguish the flames, and prevent its spreading too near their caravan.

However, notwithstanding all these prudent precautions, the fire gained ground and after a thousand hardships and reached in safety the river of there found the climate much better, and a tolerable quantity of fresh water, and fresh air; and for two days and nights in fresh his camels and horses, perfectly tired and scarce able to walk.

Chinese envoy who came from and was sent by the emperor to the court of Nerizunkaj, overtook him, and with a retinue of no less than four hundred persons, and by that reinforced him with the means to defend himself from the Tartars, having at that time with him of six hundred to defend.

A dreadful fire.

twinkling of an eye, as it were, flew away to that particular spot to which the Chinese envoy had retired at some considerable distance upon the hills; but as they were perfectly spent before they reached him, he was in no great concern about the affair.

In a word, tho' this fire spread in an infant all along as far as the river Kailan, yet it spent itself there, which was at a league distance, however, from the caravan.

This fire having thus confounded all the grafts that was standing near Mr. Ibrants, he sent his guide to search out for some commodious place in which the caravan might spend the night; but he did not return till the next morning, at which time he brought the melancholy news, that there was no manner of forage to be found within two days journey of the spot whereon they then stood, the flames having destroyed everything in their way; and that even in some of those particular places, where the grafts had escaped their fury, there was not a quantity remaining any ways sufficient for the provision of such a number of camels and horses that were in his train. This was a melancholy article, indeed, for the whole caravan.

Whereupon the envoy proposed to re-pass the Kailan, at that place where the flames had flopt, and beyond which, he had just grounds to hope that a flock of grafts might be met with to answer

their purpose; but that proposition was overruled, as it was thought a too dangerous attempt, being apprehensive of falling in with the Tartars on that side; and for that reason, it was deemed more advisable to venture upon a march for two days, tho' defective of every convenience, than to run the risk of falling a sacrifice into the hands of those merciless barbarians.

At dawn of day, the caravan began their progress, and soon after fun-fet, they halted on one side of a large fen, having gone through an inexplicable fatigue; besides the misfortune of losing no less than eighteen camels and twenty horses in those mar- #  
THE TRAVELS OF

marfy grounds. And that misfortune was fill aggrandized, as the cattle that furvived were ready to sink under the weight of the loads and harnefles of those that were actually dead; the merchants dreading the fatal confequences of leaving them behind.

The day following they traversed once more several marthy vales, and lofty hills, and at length advanced as far as the river called Margeen, where no difater had been fallen the grafs. When they had forded that river, they proceeded with the utmost hazard as well as fatigue, as their camels, which were perfectly spent, and decayed gradually as they advanced on their journey, were unable to keep pace with the caravan. And what was still a more afflicting circumstance than all the rest, was this, viz. their flock of provifions began to fall short, and conflited now of nothing but a parcel of fuch lean, raw-boned cattle, and were by no means a fufficient flock for fuch a numerous train; and the rather, because it is not customary on these occasions, to make any great provision of bread or other refreshments; since the merchants want their cattle to carry their loads of goods; and moreover, since they could not well bear the additional expence of purchasing camels for no other use than carrying provender for the rest.

As all this was duly weighed; and as they had fill near a fortnight's journey before they could reach to Argun, they began to think of coming to short allowance, and to take a survey of the remainder

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

1. Tartary, fee p. 18. n. i.
2. China, fee p. 66. n. t.
3. Mofovvy, or Ruffia, fee p. 7. n. c.
4. Perfia, fee p. 64. n. o.
5. Pekin, fee p. 66. n. n.
6. Mongulians, or Mogulians, fee p. 158. n. t.

7. Coffacs, fee p. 156. n. c.

CHAP. # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

## CHAP. XXVII.

The Envoy arrives at Nerzinskoi. He departs from thence. Arrives at (a) Tobol, and from thence at (b) Moscow.

Mr. Ibrants being informed, that the banks of the river Gan, and the parts adjacent, abounded with rein-deer, and flags, selected several of his retinue, who were excellent marks-men, and well-acquainted to the bow, in order to give them chase. They set out accordingly, and proved so successful, as to return with no less than 50 of the former. These by the envoy's directions, were distributed amongst the train belonging to the caravan, whose appetites were so keen, that they could scarcely have patience to stay till they were dressed: there is nothing, doubtless more shocking, than to be in a famishing condition; and nothing so transporting, as to have it in one's power to appease that excessive hunger; the quenching of one's thirst only excepted.

Mr. Ibrants, however, dispatched one of his retinue, attended by eight (c) Coffics to the governor of (d) Argun, in order to inform him of their deplorable state and condition, and to request of him to furnish them with such provisions as their uncommon distress required.

The governor, indeed, lent an attentive ear to their petition, and readily consented to take their melancholy case into his serious consideration; but it required some time to fend them the proper succours; and every minute seemed, as it were, an age, to such persons as were reduced to the lowest ebb of distress, and just upon the point of starving.

In the depth of this dreadful calamity, they unanimously resolved to remove from the banks of the Gan, and pursue their journey with vigour. At the expiration, however, of three days, they were plunged into deeper distress than ever; inasmuch that famine actually stared them in the face; the rein deer above-mentioned, being but a trivial refreshment for such a number of persons for three hungry days successively, in a long, lonely desert, that afforded no manner of subsistence. Their buffets, however, at this critical juncture, was to make a virtue of necessity; and to exert their patience to the utmost, under a calamity that could by no means possibly be remedied, or relieved. At last, tho' tired and fatigued to the last degree, they happily arrived at the banks of a small river, in which there was great plenty of trouts and pike; which, in that country, the natives, as has been before hinted, shoot with arrows.

Such of the Tungufians and Coffics, therefore, as made a part of Mr. Ibrants train, secured a great number of them, which, together with the several rein-deer, they had successfully hunted down in the evening, contributed greatly towards the refreshment of the half-famished caravan.

The persons who were selected from the train, to scour the mountains for provisions, met in their way with a Shaman, or Magician, who happened to prove the uncle of the envoy's guide, who was a Tungufian by birth; and there are a considerable number of those Shamans in that country. The envoy (about midnight) was waked out of a sound sleep, by an unexpected outcry which alarmed him so far, as that he hurried out of his tent, with precipitation, and enquired of his watch, from whence that disturbance arose? He was presently informed, that it was nothing but the result of his guide diverting himself with his relation; which excited his curiosity so far, that he determined to go to his cell, or hut, with one of the watch only for his attendant. No sooner had he reach-

# THE TRAVELS OF

Having at length, very comfortably refreshed themselves, they purified their journey with some alacrity; and arriving at last at the end of that long, tedious desert, where they had met with so many repeated mortifications, they came in their progress to several meadow-grounds, which gave a double relish to their late refreshments.

On the 27th of March, they reached, to their infinite satisfaction, the banks of the river Argun, which they crossed the very next day, and on the 31st arrived in safety at Nerzinkoi, where they returned their solemn and unfeigned thanks-givings to the Almighty, who had delivered them from the jaws of death.

There they rested for some considerable time; but on the fifth of August, departed from thence by land, coasting it all along the banks of the river, and in three days time arrived at Udinkoi; where they met with proper vessels, in which they embarked, fell down with a fair wind, and by the dawn of the next day advanced as far as the frontiers of Siberia.

On the 12th, they arrived at Jakutkoi; from whence they departed on the 17th for Jenizelkoi, which they reached with safety, notwithstanding the imminent dangers to which they were exposed, from the floods that had poured down upon them for several days.

Mr. Ibrants, on the 26th, proceeded on his journey by land, and passed through a thick wood, which was near 20 leagues long, and abounded with game not only of the fur-kind but the feather; but both of them proved too cautious to be caught.

After that, he arrived at the town called Makoffkoi, where he met with as many vessels as he wanted to transport both him and all his train down the Keta; and on the 28th of September following, he arrived at Kettkoi-castle situate on the (f) Oby.

He met with no obstructions in his passage down that river; and on the 16th of October then next ensuing, he arrived safe at the town of Samoroffkoi-jam, which

\*reached the hut-door, but he perceived his guide and his uncle deeply engaged in their magical incantations; and notwithstanding the much greater part of their diabolical ceremonies were over, Mr. Ifbrants perceived, at his first arrival, that the Shaman held an arrow, with the blunt end fixed upon the ground, and that the point of it touched the tip of his nose. About a minute afterwards, the Shaman starting from that position, made a most hideous out-cry, and after jumping round the hut three times, fank down into a profound sleep. The next day, tho' Coffacs, whom Mr. Ibrants had dispatched, in order to make a narrow search for provisions, returned, and informed him, that the said Shaman, or Magician, had accidentally met with his nephew, and, in their fight, had carried him off the premises; an action, that might very easily occur, without the aid or affinity of any magical operation, in the dead of the night, and amongst a parcel of unfrequented mountains. The envoy, however, at the very same juncture, received the agreeable news, that he should be furnished, within three days time, with all such necessaries as he had requested, from the governor of Argun; an article of that importance, that it gave fresh vigour to the whole caravan, who at that time stood in need of all the common necessaries of life.

This timely relief, accordingly, with the blessing of the Almighty, came safe to hand on the third day, which consisted, not only of five and twenty oxen, with some additional cows; but a large quantity both of bread and oat-meal. The officers, however, that brought the caravan this seasonable relief from Argun, embraced that favourable opportunity of making their market of the train; for they obliged the merchants to deposite a crown for every loaf, and to pay in proportion for every article that they were thus so humanely supplied with: the purchasers, however, considering the half-starved condition they were in, never murmured in the least at their exorbitant demands.\* # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

which is situate on the mouth of the Irtis. Here he tarried some few days, in expectation of being enabled to make use of fledge in the prosecution of his journey by land; and on the 29th of the same month arrived at Tobol, where he refided for three weeks successively, in order, not only to refresh himself, but to secure all such materials as he judged most requisite for the prosecution of his journey, an end to which he most sincerely wished for.



Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

1. Tobol, fee p. 148. n. a.
  2. Moscow, fee p. 23. n. c.
  3. Coiffas, fee p. 156. n. e.
  4. Argun, fee p. 66. n. s.
  5. Siberia, or Asiatic Russia, fee p. 17. n. b.
  6. Oby, the river, fee p. 18. n. e.
  7. Irtis, the river, fee p. 149. n. e.
- 

## **C H A P. XXVIII.**

Of (a) Siberia in general. Of the (b) Samoëds, and the various Kinds of them. An accurate though compendious Description of Weyat's Straits; with the Burgo-mafer Witfen's Illustrations. A succinct Account of the Mountain, called Pojas, &c.

THE envoy, who has made the several subsequent additions to the account of his travels into (c) China, peremptorily declares, for the reader's satisfaction, that he applied himself wholly to real matters of fact, without any finifter views of advancing the least marvellous or romantic story for the embellishment of his relation, as is the too frequent practice of travellers, who frequently affect for truths what they have communicated to them by hear-fay only, without taking the circumstances of the narrative into due consideration, and without the least concern or regard whether they are grounded on truth or falsehood. In other respects, he ingenuously acknowledges, that he has strictly observed the exact order of events as they actually occurred, and that he has omitted divers incidents, that might be well-worthy of being introduced, and expatiated upon to advantage; for which act of remissness, he begs the candid reader's pardon, and his permission to revive and correct those little imperfections, and touch them up with more accuracy and exactness.

Mr. Ibrants then (as we have hinted before) traversed Siberia and Dautia, and gave a full and satisfactory account of the several countries, cities, towns, and rivers, from north to east, that is to say, from Weyat's Straits to the river called (d) Amur, and from the west of the Uffia, as far as the country of the (e) Mongulians; and after that, from the west even to the # THE TRAVELS OF

The frontiers of Siberia, according to Mr. Ibrants, are plentifully supplied in all places with (f) Russian troops, who entertain no thoughts of, nor make any attempts towards the oppression of

those (g) Tartars who reside in the southern parts of that country, or towards making them tributary to his Czar's majesty; especially, since it is evident, that prince would reap no benefit or advantage from such rash proceedings. The kingdom of Siberia, and the country all round about it, is of a vast extent, as is apparent from the map, which was inserted in the very beginning of these travels; in respect to which, the reader must have recourse to the exact distance of places, whether towns or rivers within the boundaries of this country, which may sometimes prove, perhaps, a little defective in point of a league or two, little more or less; and the reason he urges for requesting that indulgence is this: namely, that even those geographers and historians, who have given us an account of that country, never corrected it themselves; neither has there ever been published an accurate and actual measurement thereof. However, he affirms us, that, upon the whole, no pains had been spared in him to attain the best knowledge of it he possibly could; and that, in order thereto, he made use of all the instruments which he thought requisite for answering that end, and that afterwards, he ranged and fixed all the parts and places according to the best of his judgment. And modestly concludes, that he submits with pleasure the honour of making more interesting and important discoveries to others, who may make the fame tour after him; and thinks it credit and reputation enough for him to have paved the way, and been the first German, who ever ventured to traverse those dangerous and lonely deferts, quite as far as China, both forwards and backwards.

Mr. Ibrants, moreover, modestly declares, that he was indebted, for his first instructions towards planning a general map of this country, to one Mr. Witfen, a burgo-master of Amsterdam; for whom, as well as for the whole body of literati, he shall ever retain the utmost veneration and respect.

He farther declares, that the aforeaid Mr. Witfen, was the first gentleman, that ever obliged the Europeans with a general map of Siberia, and of the countries of the (b) Calmucs and Mongulians, and divers other nations, quite as far as to the celebrated Chinese wall; and, in a word, that the said map was so accurately laid down, that he made it his principal guide and direction when he travelled into those parts, and that he made use of it as the ground-work and foundation of that new map, which is here offered (by way of embellishment) and prefixed to these entertaining travels.

He commences at the northward, that is to say, at the country of the Samoëds and Wangulians, who are under the jurisdiction of Siberia, and the Waivodes of Pelun quite as far as the sea.

There are divers kinds of these Samoëds, who talk a distinct language from each other; such as those of Berefosky and Purforte, who are generally looked upon as one and the same

nation; those that reside on the sea-coast to the east of the (i) Oby, as far as Truchamfkoý, or Manga-zelkoy; and those who inhabit the parts adjacent to (k) Archangel, upon the (l) Dwina, during the summer-feeon, but dwell in tents or huts, and in the woods, during the winter.

These last are the absolute aversion of those who dwell along the sea-coast; which they have abandoned on purpose to reside in those parts.

As to those Samoëds, who inhabit the coast of the northern sea, they have but little more of the human species to boast of than barely the form; they are savages, for the most part, of little or no understanding, and, upon the whole, look more like unpolished bears than men.

They live (as wild beasts do) on the dead carcasses of horses, asses, cats, and dogs; as also, on such whales and seals as are driven on shore by large mountains of ice; and so very indolent and slothful are these humans. # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

human brutes, that notwithstanding the country which they thus inhabit abounds with fish, fowl, and cattle, they will still fit contented down with such carrion as above-mentioned, without the trouble of improving it by any art of drefing.

There are, however, certain chiefs, or heads, amongst them, to whom they make certain acknowledgements, which are afterwards sent by them to the governors of such cities or forts, as are under the jurisdiction of the Czar.

One, who had resided for some considerable time at Poftoi-Ofer, gave Mr. Ibrants information of the method they observe when they travel in sledges, drawn by rein-deer, which with incredible swiftness crot the mountains that are covered with snow.

In the plate annexed, the reader has the representation of a sledge, to which the deer are harnefed; as likewise of the Samoëds themselves who drive them; and are clothed in rein-deer skins, with the fur outwards; and their bow and quiver thrown over their shoulders.

Their chiefs, indeed, are drefl in scarlet, and have their sledges drawn, sometimes by fix, and sometimes eight rein-deer properly harnefed. The point of their arrows is composed of the tooth of the narwhale, in the room of iron or steel.

With respect to their perfons, it may with truth be said, that they are frightful creatures; and that nothing on the face of the earth can be more shocking, or disagreeable to the fight. As to their flaturc, they are short, and corpulent; their faces and shoulders are broad; their noses flat, and their lips thick, blubbered, and hanging down; their mouths are wide, and their eyes more

disagreeable than any of their other features. They look perfectly weather-beaten; their hair is excessively long, and flows over their shoulders; some red, some pale; but black is the prevailing colour: notwithstanding this profusion of hair, their beards are but short, and their skins are thick and swarthy. These ugly creatures, however, are very active and nimble; and very dexterous in their art of

driving. The rein-deer, which they thus harness to their sledges, bear a very near resemblance to our European stags; their antlers, or horns, are much alike, though their necks, indeed, are more like those of the dromedary; but what is peculiarly remarkable in them is this; that though they are grey in the summer, they are perfectly white in the winter. Their usual food is a sort of moss, which they meet with in the woods upon the ground in plenty.

As to all other respects, these savages are all heathens; and every morning and evening pay their adoration to the sun and moon, and bow down their heads, though not quite so low as the (m) Persians. They have idols likewise, which they hang up in the trees that grow round their huts, or tents; some composed of wood in a human form, and others dressed up in skins, to which they pay some particular acts of devotion. Their cabins, or huts, are covered with the bark of several birch-trees, sewed together. When they remove them from one spot of ground to another, which is a common custom amongst them every winter and summer, they fix the poles to each other, and then cover them with the barks of trees, leaving a hole, however, at the top of them for the passage of their smoke. Their fire-place is usually planted in the center, and they lie round about it in the night, as naked as they were born, both men and women; and as to their children, they put them into boxes, or rather cradles, made of the bark of trees in the same manner as their cabins, and fill them with the shavings of the dried timber, which is as soft as down, and then cover them up with the skins of the rein-deer.

As to their marriages, they pay no regard to consanguinity; and purchase their wives, for whom they give in exchange either rein-deer or furs. Neither do they confine themselves to one, or any particular number, but inter-marry with as many as they find convenient to maintain. At their leisure-hours of amusement, they plant themselves two and two, one before the other, and making particular motions with

# THE TRAVELS OF

with their legs, they give each other pretty smart flaps with their hands upon the soles of their feet. They grunt in their diversions for all the world like bears, and their grunting bears some resemblance to the neighing of their horses.

They have, moreover, divers magicians amongst them, who perform a great variety of diabolical pranks, or rather delusions. But it is time now to drop our discourse of these savage Samoëds.

All the four-footed beasts, whether wolves, bears, foxes, or reindeer, that are to be met with upon this coast, as far as Weygat's Straits; nay, quite to Mefeen, are as white as the snow itself during the winter-leafon: and the fame observation may be truly made of their birds, ducks, partridges, and other feathered fowl. 'Tis farther remarkable, that the cold there is so very inteife, that the crows, and some other birds are frequently frozen as they fly, and drop down dead upon the spot; to an instance whereof our author solemnly afferts, that he was once an eye-witnes.

As to Weygat's Straits, not only the English, but the Danes and the Dutch have given us divers accounts of them. After several attempts to pass through the frozen channel thereof, which they were never able to accomplish above once or twice at most, on account of the obstructions they meet with from the ice in those feas, no historian has ever obliged the public with so copious a description of it, or treated of it in so accurate a manner, as Mr. Witfen, the Burgo-master of (n) Amsterdam, above-mentioned. And he, indeed, spared no pains to procure a thorough information of that particular place, having converted for that purpose with several travellers who had been actually upon the spot. And the curious map that he has exhibited of those Straits, and its shores as far as the Oby, is a demonstration of his indefatigable industry in that particular. By that map of his, it is evident, that the fea there is no ways navigable, from those Straits as far as the Icy Cape, notwithstanding a man as Christopher Columbus formerly was, should undertake the bold attempt; since it is altogether impracticable to penetrate those mountains of ice that block up the passage, and notwithstanding the flars continue to point out the course he was to steer. The great Author of Nature has surrounded, and fortified the Siberian coasts with such a profusion of ice, that there is no ship whatever can reach so much as the river Jenifa, much less be able to double the Icy Cape, and go down to Jedfö or Japan.

Mr. Ifbrants had been informed by several Ruffians who had often passed through the Weygate-straits, as far as the mouth of the Oby, in proper veffels for the catching of feals and the narwhale, that, at the time when the wind blows from the offering, that whole coast is so incumbered with ice, that those who happen to be then there, are indifferently obliged to fly for shelter into some small gulphs, or little rivers, in order to escape the danger, and to ride there contentedly till such time as a wind from the shore blows the ice off again to fea, which it does so effectually, and to all intents and purposes, that not the least signs of it are to be discerned in those straits, for the distance of several leagues: that as soon as the ice is so removed by that means, they put to sea again with the utmost expedition; but take care, however, at the same time, how they leave the coast, till another brisk gale from the sea reduces them to the necessity of making a second retreat

into some rivulet, or other place of safety, that their vessel may not be crushed to pieces, or otherwise loft through the ice that should fall down upon them.

Mr. Ibrants adds to this relation, that, about fifty years before, some particular Ruffians who resided in Siberia, procured a public license for furnishing themselves, in proper places situated on the coast, with such provisions as they might have occasion for; such as corn, flower, &c. and in exchange for them to transport the natural products of Siberia by Weygate's-straits, without the least molestation or restraint, to the same places, upon the payment of such duties as should be imposed upon them by the Czar: that these people, however, # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

ever, having abused that important privilege by clandestinely conveying of divers other kinds of merchandise by other rivers in Russia, to the great detriment of his Czar's majesty's revenues, they were restrained from trading any longer in those Straits; and an order was issued out for the said commodities to be brought by Berefowe, and the Kamenfkoi, or the rocks of Pojas.

This, however, is not only very difficult to be accomplished, but very incommodious, because, in their passage from Berefova, they lie under an indispensable obligation to cut their canoes, or little barks, which are hollowed out of the trunk of a tree, directly into two equal parts; and in that manner to drag them over the mountains for several days together; and as soon as they have reached the most northern part of the country, they join them artfully together again, and proceed on their voyage to Archangel, or to some other places situate on the river Oby.

Mr. Ibrants likewise went to the Pojas, which is a rock, or more properly speaking a chain of stone-mountains, which begins at Petzerkal, and extends a-cross the country of Wergotur, and Wolock, without the least discontinuance; and from thence proceeds to the fourth, on one side of the Uta caffle, quite as far as the country of Uffian Tartars, from whence springs the river, distinguished by the name of Uff, and to the eastward of those two rivers called Nitra and Tuna; the last of which empties its waters to the north-west into the Kama.

This chain of mountains after that extends southwards towards the frontiers of the Calmucs, and the spacious river of Jaika, in which there is great plenty of fith, flows out of it to the westward, and then proceeds, till it empties its waters into the (o) Caffian-fee. The (p) Tobol likewise issues from it to the northward. They proceed afterwards to the eastward along the country of the Calmucs, and the frontiers of Siberia, on one side of those two lakes, distinguished by the names of Saian and Kalkulan; from the first whereof flows the Oby, and from the left, the (q) Irtis. From

the Kalkulan, the Pojas again extends itself to the southward, from whence flows the (r) Jenifia, the mouth whereof is in the icy sea of Tartary.

These mountains, in the next place, form an elbow, and divide themselves after that into the north-east and south; to the northward all along the river Jenifia; and to the southward, on one side of the lake, called Kofogol, from whence proceeds the river Silinga, which empties its waters into the lake, called (s) Baikal. From thence this Pojas stretches away still farther to the fandyly defert of the country of the Mongulians; and having penetrated into it some considerable way, it divides again, and extends to the southward as far as the famous wall of China before-mentioned, and then stretches out eastward quite as far as the sea, as the curious reader may plainly perceive by consulting only the map of the travels of this envoy.

## **Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.**

1. Siberia, or Afatic Russia, fee p. 17. n. b.
2. Samoeds, fee p. 17. n. e.
3. China, fee p. 66. n. t.
4. Amur, or Amour, fee p. 18. n. b.
5. Mongulians, or Mogulians, fee p. 158. n. i.
6. Ruffians, or natives of Mofcovy, fee p. 74. n. e.
7. Tartars, or natives of Tartary, fee p. 18. n. i.
8. Calmucs, fee p. 162: n. b.
9. Oby, the river, fee p. 18. n. e.
10. Archangel, fee p. 8. n. d.
11. Dwi- # THE TRAVELS OF

## **C H A P. XXIX.**

A Description of the Tartars of Uffi and Baskir and of divers other Hords, or Clans. A succinct Account of the Towns of Tora Tomkoi, and the Parts adjacent. Of the Inhabitants of Tungus, and the people, called the Burates, &c. A short Description of the Natives of Dauria, K oreifi, and other Nations. A short Account of the Icy-Cape, of the Town of Jakutikoi, &c.

THE natives of that country which is very extensive, and lies between Pelin and Wergotur, along the river, called Zufawaya, and as far as the country of Uffi, are all heathens.

The river, called Kungur, on the banks of which reside the Tartars of Uffi, has its source or spring in the country of Uffi, between the Zufawaya and the Uffi, and proceeds till it empties its waters into the Kama, on which the town of Kungur stands, where there is a garrison belonging to the Czar.

The natives of Uffi and Baskir reside in the parts adjacent to the town of Offa, and are dispersed up and down, in little hamlets, or villages, (built much after the manner of those in (a) Ruffia) to the westward, as far as the Kama, and all along the (b) Wolga, or Volga, and extend almost to the cities of Saratof and Sarapul, which are situate on the Wolga, where his Czarían majesty has likewise strong garrisons for keeping the Tartars in subjection, and for collecting his duties there, which are principally paid in furs and honey. The governors, however, of these places are obliged to deport themselves with some degree of courtesy and complaisance towards the inhabitants all round about; lest they should murmur, or rise up in rebellion, and disclaim his Czarían majesty's dominion over them.

There are likewise divers other hords, or clans of these fame Tartars, who reside in the fourth-west part of the country, and in the kingdom of (c) Afracan, who are under no subjection whatsoever, and unite with those (d) Calmucs who are their neighbours, in order to make their occasional excursions into the country of (e) Siberia. These Tartars, however, cultivate the lands about them, and sow divers sorts of grain there, which they carry home to their cabins, or huts, when they have reaped it, and threshed it in the field. These people have, moreover, not only the finest honey the world can produce, but a prodigious quantity of it.

Their usual drefs is a strong cloth, of a light grey colour, and much like that which is worn by the peasants of Moscovy.

Their women appear for the most part in their shifts, from their girdles upwards, except the weather proves intensely cold indeed; which shifts are not only striped, but worked with silk of divers sorts of colours. In other respects, they wear petticoats, much after the German mode, and flippers, which cover only the end of their feet, and are fastened about their ankles. As to their heads, they drefs them com- # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

commonly with a long ribbon about the breadth of four fingers, which they tie behind, and work with filk of various colours, in the same manner as they do their shifts. These, likewise, they embellish with coral, and glass beads, which hang dangling about their eyes. Some of them, indeed, wear them higher upon their foreheads. When they go a-visiting, they cover this head-drefs of theirs with a handkerchief, not only wrought with filk, but adorned likewise all round with a fringe.



These natives of Uff and Baffkir, are brave soldiers, and excellent horsemen. They wear no other arms, indeed, than their bows and their quivers; but those they use with great dexterity and address. They are strong and sturdy, for the most part, and moderately tall; their shoulders are broad; and as to their beards, they let them sometimes grow to a great length. Their eye-brows are so thick, that they cover, not only their eyes, but their foreheads likewise. They have a language, it is true, peculiar to themselves; but can understand and converse with the Tartars of Afracan, though different from their own.

As to their religion, most of them are heathens; but there are some amongst them who are Mahomedans, through the persuasions of the (f) Crim Tartars, with whom they correspond in a very friendly manner.

The Calmucs reside chiefly between the springs, or fountain-heads of those two rivers the (g) Tobol and the (h) Oby, and extend themselves as far as the lake called Jemufowa, which abounds with a kind of rock-falt. To this lake about twenty or five and twenty Docheniques, that is to say, Russian small vessels, come from the town called Tobol, and up the (i) Irtis constantly once every year with a strong guard of no less than 2500 men; and as Jamufowa lies at some considerable distance from the Irtis, they travel the remainder of the way by land. When they arrive at the lake, they cut the falt, as they would cakes of ice, upon the banks, and convey it afterwards to their respective vessels.

fels, notwithstanding all the obstructions that they meet with from the Calmucs; with whom, upon these occasions, they have frequently several smart engagements.

As you pass down the Irtis, a little below the above-mentioned lake, and enter upon the little river Tor, you come to the little river, called Tora, which is the last frontier-place belonging to his Czarain majesty, and borders upon the dominions of a Calmuc prince, called Buftu-chan.

The natives of this country, (which extends from the city of Tora, situate on the Tor, from whence it derives its name, towards the east, as far as to the Oby, over against the river Tom, and the city situate thereon, called from thence Tomfkoj) are distinguished by the name of the Barabinfy.

These traverse the country of Barnabu in the summer as well as the winter; more particularly during the cold months; because the Oby, at that season of the year, is by no means navigable, by Surgut and Narum; for which reason, all travellers are then indifferently obliged to go into Siberia by Tomfkoj and Jenufeskoj.

These Barabinfy, who are a kind of Calmucs, pay their acknowledgements, by way of tribute, not only to the Czar, but to the prince Buftu-chan likewise above-named. They have three

heads, or chieftains, whom they distinguish by the name of Taithi, who are collectors of all the duties that are imposed upon them, and account, at proper times and places, with his Czarain majesty for his peculiar dues, or demands upon them: the first place, appointed for that purpose, is the town of Tora; the second the castle, or fort, called Teluwa, and the last, the fortress, or castle of Kufenba: their whole tribute, however, is paid in furs.

They are a turbulent, warm sort of people, and addicted to warlike exploits, notwithstanding they live in huts, or cabins, erected in the woods, much after the manner of the Siberian Tartars. In these, they admit of no stoves, but of little chimneys, which may more properly be termed tubes, or pipes only, for the discharge of their smoke; which said tubes or pipes, when the # THE TRAVELS OF

when their wood is burnt down to a coal, are flopped up close, in order to keep in as much heat as possibly they can; and, when the fire is out, they open them again.

In the summer-time, these people reside in little villages, or hamlets, under huts, or tents, erected in a very flight manner; but during the winter-season, indeed, they take care to have their cabins more firm and substantial: they cultivate the lands that lie all round about them; and they sow barley, oats, and french-wheat, &c, but no rye. However, when any kind of grain, they seldom, if ever, refuse to accept of it; but chew it, indeed, with some seeming tokens of difficulty, as unpalatable, and for the most part throw it away, or spit it out, as if it went against their stomachs.

Instead, therefore, of rye, they make use of clean barley, which, after it has been duly parched in a hot iron-kettle, grows as hard almost as any stone; and this they take care to eat the very next day that it is so parched as afore said. They make likewise a kind of flour, of their Sarana, as they call it, which is the root of their yellow lily; and with a proper quantity of it make a kind of pottage.

As to their drink, it is for the most part a liquor distilled from a proper quantity of mare's-milk, which they call Kumis; or else they drink what they call Karaza, that is to say, a black sort of tea, with which commodity, they are principally supplied by the Bogares.

They make no use of any other warlike weapons than bows and arrows, in which they follow the example of the other Tartars. They have cattle of almost all sorts amongst them; but no hogs; they have plenty likewise of furs, in their country; that is to say, fables, the skins of squirrels, ermins, foxes, and other creatures of the like kind. This country of theirs extends to the Torquait to the Ob; and tho' there are no mountains to be met with there, yet

there is a great plenty of lofty cedars, birch, alders, and woods, which are standing in rows on the banks of several small streams, or rivulets, whose

waters are as clear and transparent as chryftal.

Thefe natives, as well the women as men, drefs much after the manner of the Calmucs; and they are indulged with as many wives as they please, as far as their circumstances will admit.

When they traverfe the woods, in order to hunt down their game, they take their Saitan, as they call it, along with them; which is an image, made of wood, inelegantly carved with a knife only, and covered with a parti-coloured stuff, not unlike that which is frequently worse by the female Ruffians. This idol, or Saitan, of theirs is inclosed in a box, which is carried upon a particular fledge; and to this their god, they offer up the first-fruits of their chase, be it what it will, without any exception.

When they prove more successful than they could reasonably expect, and when safely arrived at their respective cabbins, this Saitan, or idol, is deposed in the most conficuous part of their tent, or hut, in its proper box, and covered over with the finest furs they are maisters of, by way of grateful acknowledgment of the great succefs they have met with thro' their means; and there they are left untouched till they are grown rotten and worthless in proceeds of time; for they are firmly convinced, that they should be guilty of the most heinous fin of sacrilege, should they strip them of those robes, or apply them to any other purpose whatsoever.

When you are got beyond the Oby, you come to Tomfkoj, which is a frontier-place belonging to the Czar; this Tomfkoj is a fine, spacious city, well fortified, and well furnished with a numerous garrison both of Ruffians and Coffacs, in order to oppose the incursions and outrages of the Siberian Tartars. In the suburbs like-wife beyond the river, there are planted a large body of Buchar Tartars, who pay homage, and certain duties to his Czarian majesty. This beautiful place is situate on the river Tom, from whence it derives its name, the spring, or fountain-head whereof lies in the country of the Calmucs.

Here # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

Here they carry on a large trade with (k) China, which is principally conducted by the Chan of Bufuchtu, and by the Buchars, amongst whom we may reckon several Russian merchants. They perform their journey to China, it is true, in about three months, and return in the same compass of time, but it is attended, both backwards and forwards, with incredible difficulties and fatigues; for in some particular places, these traders are indifferently obliged to load their camels both with

wood and water. In the prosecution of this journey, you must cross the country of the Calmucs, and so proceed to a place called Kokoton, a city which belongs to China without the wall.

It is not practicable, however, for the Russians, and other strange nations to undertake this journey: because the country is overrun with free-booters, who plunder all travellers in general, without distinction, except they are provided with sufficient guards to withstand their attacks.

As you fall down the river from Tomskoi, the country all round about is a perfect wilderness, even as far as the town Jenifelkoi, an absolute plain, but full of copes. And it is much the same, or very little better, between the two rivers called Kia and Zulim, even as far as to the two towns, called Kufnelkoi and Krafnagar, where the country is inhabited on the borders only, which adjoin to those of the Kirgîfes, and are under the dominion of the Chan of Bufuchtu.

The last-mentioned city is a fort, with a strong garrison in it, who are principally Cossacks, and subject to the Czar, in order to withstand the outrages and devastations of the Kirgîfes. In the market-place, accordingly, there are always no less than 20 troops, well accoutred, planted before the governor's palace, and their horses stand ready saddled both night and day. For notwithstanding, it is true, that the Kirgîfes are at peace with the Siberians; yet there is no manner of dependence, no trust or confidence to be put in that pacific alliance; for they frequently carry off clandestinely the inhabitants of the outparts of the town, and of the villages round about it; and their cattle likewise when opportunity admits. The Cossacks, however, make them often pay very severely for the depredations they are guilty of in so fraudulent and illicit a manner.

The Kirgîfes extend themselves towards the fourth-east, even as far as the country of the (l) Mongulians, who are a robust, and warlike people, tall, broad-faced, and bear a manifest resemblance to the Calmucs.

Tho' bows and arrows are their principal arms; yet they seldom or never enter upon any expedition, without being furnished with fine coats of mail, and long spears, or lances, whose points almost trail along the ground as they ride on horseback. They reside for the most part in the mountains; where they are in no manner of danger of being taken by surprise.

Their language bears a very near affinity to that of the Calmucs; and most of them can talk that made use of by the Crimean Tartars likewise, to which the Turks are no strangers.

From Krafnagar, as you pass down the river (m) Jenifa, or Jenifa, even as far as Jenifelkoi, the country is inhabited by the Tungufians and Burates. The cattle, or fort of Ilinfkoi is situated

on the frontiers of the Mongulians, opposite the Pojas before-mentioned, between the two towns, called Jenifelkoi and Selinginkoi. Though this place, thus situated, is not very spacious, yet it is furnished with a very good garrison, chiefly consisting of horfemen, in order to guard and protect the western part of the country of the Mongulians, and to withstand the frequent ravages and incursions of the Mirotti, Mily, and Burates, who are all Tartars, dependent thereupon.

In the parts adjacent to this town, there is great plenty of fandal-wood to be met with, which is remarkable for its peculiar hardness. The Burates, who live at present under the shelter and protection of the Czar, resided formerly in the country adjacent to Selinginkoi; but ever since they have been found guilty of uniting with # THE TRAVELS OF

with the Mongulians, through the infli- gation of the Chinefe, they have been re- moved into the country round about the lake of (n) Baikal, in the mountains, and there they pay their tribute to his Czarain majesty all in furs.

There is a mountain, which stretches out from this town to the northward, even as far as the last-mentioned lake of Baikal, where there are the finest fort of fables as well as furs. The country of the Mongu- lians contains the whole extent between Kologol lake to the eastward, even as far as the great defert ; from thence to the Mon- gulian lake, called Dway, and to the country of (a) Argun; and after that, towards the north-weft, even as far as those two rivers, called Onon and Sikoi. They live under the government of three heads, or chieftains, who are brethren, the first of whom is named Kuttgut, who is high- priest likewise of his nation : the name of the second is Aziroi-Sain-Chan, who lives in peace and perfect friendship with Kuttgut; but the third, whose name is Elicit, and whose frontiers abound on the territories of the western Tartars, is com- mitting daily outrages and depredations, and is guilty of robbing and plundering all he meets with, even as far as the Chinefe wall; without paying the least regard to those presents which the emperor of China annually fends to the Tartars all round a- bout, in order to tempt them to be invio- lably attached to his interest, as their right- ful sovereign. The two others have thrown themselves under the shelter and protection of his Czarain majesty; because they are under apprehensions of being in- sulted by the Calmucs, and particularly those who are dependent on the prince Bufuchtu-Chan, by whom they were very forely injured and oppreffed in the years 1688 and 1689.

Let us now return, however, to the frontiers belonging to his Czarain majesty; and in the first place, to the fort, or cattle of Argun, which is situate on the western part of the river of that name. That cattle is defended by a Ruffian garrison, and the inhabitants round about are all

Konni Tungufians, and tributary to the Czar.

These Tungufians are a very warlike people, and in this place, are capable of bringing into the field 4000 men, who are well armed with their bows and quivers, and very expert and dexterous in the use of those hostile weapons. So formidable, in short, are they, that the Mongulians durst not venture to face them, or any ways injure or oppress them, but by clandestine robberies in the dead of the night.

During the winter-season, they dress themselves in some skins or another, or rather in the fleeces of their sheep; and they wear sandals, or boots, in the same manner as the natives of China. There is a broad rim, or border of fur to each of their caps, which they wear either up or down, according to the inclemency, or mildness of the weather. As to their girdles, they are armed with iron, about four fingers broad, and an arrow, that serves them on occasion for a flute. In the summer, they shave their heads, and wear no caps. They reserve, however, one lock behind, as is customary amongst the Chinese. As to their dress, they wear a blue Chinese cloth, which is quilted with cotton, but have no linen underneath it. In a word, they are almost beardless by nature; their faces are, for the most part, rather broad than thin; and take them all together, they bear a near resemblance to the Calmucs.

When their stock of provisions begins to grow low, they go in hords, or clans, to hunt the rein-deer and the stag, which they first drive before them together, and then they surround them. When they have shot a sufficient number of them, and they very seldom miss of their aim, they fairly divide the spoil between them: as to their women, they dress much after the same manner as the men do; and the only difference that is any ways perceptible, is that they have two tufts of hair, which fall down on each side upon their breasts.

Poligamy is a constant practice amongst them; and every man may indulge himself, # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

elf, without controul, with as many wives as his circumstances will permit him to maintain. They are not, it seems, over curious in their choice; for they purchase them without making the least scruple, or enquiry, whether they have been in the possession of any stranger or not, before them.

Though they entertain the notion, that there is a God in the Heavens above; yet they pay him no tribute of adoration; nor make the least formal addresses to him by way of prayers. When they are inclined to consult their Saitan, or Magician, in order to be informed whether they shall meet with success in their approaching hunting-match, or in any incursions upon their neighbours, they visit him in the night-time by beat of drum.

And when they propose to regale themselves, they make a kind of arrack of mare's-milk, which they let stand till it is turned, and then dilute it twice or thrice over, between two earthen vessels, closely stop up, to which is affixed a small wooden pipe. This makes a strong spirit, and this both the men and the women will tipple down in such plenty, that the whole company will sometimes be downright intoxicated with their liquor.

Their wives and daughters will mount their horses, with as much activity as the men, and make use of their bows and arrows with equal dexterity and judgment.

Instead of bread, they eat the roots of yellow lilies dried, and when they are reduced to a flour, they make with it a kind of loaf. They neither understand, nor practise the art of agriculture. There, however, as well as in other places, those who are in the best circumstances are most valued and cared for; and there are some amongst them, who may properly be said to be persons of fortune; who carry on a very advantageous trade with the Targafi and the Xixi, who are people under the jurisdiction of the emperor of China: which trade or commerce principally consists in an exchange of furs for blue cotton cloth, and other cloths, and large quantities of tobacco. They pretend to be descendants of those Targafi, or the Aorf, with whom they contract alliances, and live in a perfect state of love and friendship.

When you have gone about half a days journey from the fort of Argun into the mountains, you will find, that a silver mine has fallen in there, and to this very day plainly discern several melting-places, which the inhabitants of Nienc hen and Dauria formerly made use of. From this place to Nerzinfko, which is the principal city of Dauria, it is a ten days journey by land, in cafe you ride upon camels.

It is a very fine country, and divided into several parcels by brooks or rivulets, upon the margins whereof, you will meet with abundance of the finest plants, and the most beautiful flowers that nature ever produced. In the mountains, and on the tops of the hills, you will find grass of at least three feet in height. The country, however, all round about lies perfectly unmanured, as it is in the possession of such Tartars as are tributaries to the Czar of Moocovy.

Having travelled through the country of Argun, and traversed the large river called (β) Amur, towards that other of Gorbifa, which is deemed the common boundary of his Czarain majesty's dominions, and those of the emperor of China, whose territories extend eastward from that last-mentioned river, quite as far as to the sea; and those of his Czarain majesty westward and northward: to the eastward of the Gorbifa, we came to the rivers,

called Tugur and Uda, which lie to the northward of the Amur, and flow down till they empty their waters into the Chinese ocean, or the sea of Amur.

Between these two rivers, the borders whereof are inhabited by Tungufians Alemeuri and Kereifi, a vast number of fables are taken.

It is highly probable, that the Kereifi last-mentioned, came originally from the place called Coela, which does not lie at a great distance, and to which, in case one meets but with a fair wind, it is but a few days passage. It is the general opinion, that #  
THE TRAVELS OF

that they came first and settled on the borders of the Amur, and that in process of time, they extended their limitations.

Those that reside on the sea-coast, get their principal subsistence by fishing; and those who live higher up in the country, by hunting; and frequently enrich themselves by those excursions; because there are no finer furs in the whole world than there are in these parts.

The inhabitants of the adjacent islands constantly visit the two last-mentioned rivers once a year. Their aspects and deportment are comely and graceful enough; they clothe themselves in the finest furs, under which they wear a silk vest, after the mode of the (q) Perrians. They are for the most part tall proper men, and their beards give them an air of majesty. They frequently deal with the Siberian Tartars for women and maidens; for they are very amorously inclined; and give fables and black fox skins, (of which according to their own account there is great plenty in those islands) by way of exchange. They even tempt the Tungufians of Siberia to come and visit them; and in order to induce them to become traders amongst them, they infatuate, that the country of Jakutfkoi formerly belonged to them; and it must be acknowledged, indeed, that their language, in some measure, seems to confirm such a conjecture.

The river called Ogota runs to the northward of the two rivers last-mentioned; and between them and that of Uda, there are a great number of whales to be met with upon the coast, and even as far as to the frozen cape; where there are seals and narwhales in great plenty.

The town of Kamfatka, and the whole coast beyond it, is inhabited by other nations, who are distinguished by the names of, the Xaxi and the Koeliki, whose language is widely different from all the rest.

Those who reside upon the coast clothe themselves in the skins of seals, and dwell in caverns under the earth, and are for the most part poor and indigent: those, however, who have their habitations



farther up in the country are more substantial people, and regale themselves frequently with fat venison and raw fish, and when they wash themselves make use of their own wine.

In other respects, there are a people in whom no trust or confidence can well be put; since they have very little, if any notion either of, honesty or honour.

Their arms are nothing but flings, but then they are exceedingly expert and dexterous in the use of them. For seven months of the year successively the ground there is covered with snow; notwithstanding it is seldom very deep, and falls only at the commencement of the winter-season.

Near Kamfatka, there is a gulf, in which the inhabitants round about it, take a prodigious number of narwhales, and divers other animals that frequent the sea.

As to the frozen Cape, the farther it extends itself into the sea, the more it is cut and divided and formed into distinct islands. At some small distance above Kamfatka, there is a particular passage, where those who fish for the narwhale only find their expectations fully answered. One part of those, who reside in Anadilko, and Sabatia, are Xuxians and Koelikians; and the river, called there Salafia, abounds with herrings, sturgeon, and what they call Sterbeth and Nebna.

As you proceed higher up the country, you meet with divers houses, situate on the banks of the river Simaniko, which are inhabited by the Cossacks, who are under the dominion of his Czar's majesty, and who collect there the tributes which are paid by the Tartars in those parts to their sovereign lord and master. And as it is in that part of Siberia where they take the greatest number of fables and lynxes; all along the rivers; so the inhabitants of those parts are burdened with heavy duties in proportion.

The climate of this country, which the Mofovites call Sweefoinos, or the sacred Cape, # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

Cape, is excessively cold; and it freezes there in that surprising degree, that the islands of ice there, when driven by the winds, form tremendous and lofty mountains, which have the appearance of solid ground. Sometimes, however, those hills are scattered and disposed, by the violence of the wind, into numberless pieces; but then they soon join with others that are floating on the waves, by which means they are converted into high mountains again. This fea, we are credibly informed, is sometimes perfectly frozen over for two or three years successively, without intermission; a memorable instance whereof was well known from the year 1694 to the year 1697.

The great river called (r.) Lena, rises towards the south-west, near Baikal-lake, which parts Siberia from Dauria. On this river is situate the town called Jakutfkoi; from whence there are several vessels that set sail, during the summer-feason, for the fea-coast, and the openings of the cape of Sabatia to Anadiefkoi, and to Kamatka, in order to catch narwhales, and provide themselves with a sufficient quantity of whale-oil. For this purpose the Tartars in those parts make use of small barks, composed of leather, which they manage with surprising dexterity and art. The natives of Jakutfkoi, and those who reside on the banks of the river Amur, are distinguished by the names of the Jakutes whose drefs is peculiar to them-felves.

Their coats are cut in some degree after the German fashion, and made of furs of various kinds, and of various colours, sewed together, with a white border of hind-skin, about four fingers in breadth; these coats are open both behind, and on each side; but they wear no linnen underneath. As to their hair, most of them let it grow to a great length.

As to their religion, they acknowledge a supreme Being to be in Heaven, who blesses them with life, food and rayment; as also with wives and children. They have an annual festival, moreover, at which they make their solemn oblations to him of Kunis' and Arrack. During the time this grand festival lasts, they abstain from drinking, and kindle up great fires, in which they sprinkle their best liquors; and in this ceremony, their whole free-will offerings principally consist.

When any of them happens to dye, they bury his nearest relation along with him; a custom that bears some affinity to that barbarous one of the savage Indians, whose wives are indifferently obliged to accompany their husbands to the fatal pile, and burn along with them under the ridiculous notion, that they may never be separated from them in the world to come.

As to their language, it bears a near affinity to that usually spoken by the Mahommedan Tartars, who reside within the jurisdiction of Tobol, and are originally natives of Bolgar. They indulge themselves likewise in polygamy. As to their method of travelling, they are sometimes drawn by flags in fledge; and sometimes again they ride upon them; and gain a vast compass of ground in a short time.

They are a sort of people, that are naturally brave and courageous, have some taste of honour, and look upon lying as an odious vice, and the certain mark of a mean spirit. Notwithstanding, however, these notions of generosity, they will sometimes be guilty of the most flagrant outrages and disorders, and shamefully invade their neighbours property, when ever it happens, that the governor of Jakutfkoi, (under whole inspection and command they are) connives at their proceedings, and does

not call them to account for their incursions. It is true, however, that when his eye is upon them, and he keeps them under due subjection, they are submissive and peaceable enough, and peculiarly cautious how they give offence. Nay, it must be allowed, in their favour, that they entertain a real affection for him, and would be extremely sorry for the loss of him. They pretend to be descendants from # THE TRAVELS OF

from the Mongolians and the Calmucs, and to be transplanted to the northwards by the Ruffians.

The distemper to which they are most naturally subject, is the scurvy; but even that they cure themselves by eating of raw fish, and what they call Deughti, which is a kind of tar.

There is another fort of heathens who reside in that country, who are distinguished by the name of the Jukogates. These people have a custom peculiar to themselves, in respect to their relations when they die. In the first place, they strip off all their flesh, and when they have dried the bones, they decorate them with coral and glass-beads, of all sorts of colours. Thus adorned, the skeleton is carried in funeral procession all round about to their funeral huts, or cabins, and the very same honours are paid to it as they do to their idols.

The banks of the river Lena abound with the teeth, and other bones of the Mammut, which proceed from the mountains, and such grounds as are frozen, all along the banks of that river, which are frequently torn away by the ice. There are several fine rivers which empty their waters into this; namely, the Wittim, the Olekina, and the Maja; and in the parts adjacent, there are black fables, and other furs in plenty, and more particularly such as are grey, a thousand of which they will sometimes purchase, in the winter season, of the Tartars, at so reasonable a rate as three or four rubles.

The soil of the lands which are watered by the river Maja last mentioned, is very rich, and yields a profusion of all kinds of grain; and so likewise do those lands which are situated near the spring, or fountain-head of the Lena; but more particularly those of Wergolen, Skelfo, and Kirenga, which are remarkably fertile; and from hence it is that the inhabitants of Jakutikoi, and the country there all round about, furnish themselves in plenty with all the necessaries for their subsistence: And they have rye in such abundance, that a hundred weight of it may be purchased for ten pence, or twelve pence. Cattle likewise there are as cheap in proportion; but then, indeed, money is a very scarce commodity amongst them.

The sea-coast between the two rivers of Lena and Jenifa is unnavigable quite as far as the river called Taraida, because 'tis constantly full of ice; the country, however, between the Taraida

and the Jenifa is inhabited by the (i) Samoëds, and Tartar Tungufians, concerning whose manner of living, and religion, sufficient has been said already.

As to the banks of the river Jenifa, whose source is to the fourthward of Tartary, in the country of the Calmucs and Kirgifes, they are all inhabited for the most part by the Ruffians. There are three fine rivers, namely the Wergnaja Tungufka, the Podkamenna Tungufka, and the Nifnaja Tungufka, which flow down hither, and empty their waters into this river. The banks of those three last mentioned rivers are chiefly occupied by a kind of savage Tungufians, not much unlike the Samoëds; but then they are for the generality somewhat taller, and more robust. They are a turbulent and vexatious sort of people, and take delight in going to war with their neighbours.

When these Tartars set out, with their bow and arrow in their hands, which are the only arms they make use of, in order to hunt down the Elk, and when they have actually shot him, they pursue him by the track, sometimes for eight or ten days successively, accompanied by their wives and children; and as they never take any provisions along with them upon these expeditions, relying wholly on their game, they wear a kind of girth, or bodice, which they take in an inch, and sometimes two, according as they find themselves oppressed with hunger. At length, when they have overtaken and secured the Elk, which they had been so long in pursuit after, they cut his throat; and spreading a light tent upon the ground, they never stir a step farther till they have eaten him fairly up, all but the bones. Sometimes, indeed, when they make these excursions, they take a few furs with them, which they sell in those places

---

The Travels of Mr. can. A Continuation. Calpian-fee at Author's Arrival.

On the 26th of July, at Astracan, in our travels, and went far beyond our view of the country; where was prepared for our reception. We took our farewells of all acquaintances. In our puffs over the river, we took a view of a Tartarian hut, or tents, a considerable way up. At night we ventured to # CORNELIUS LEBRUN.

places where the Ruffians reside. In this country there are great numbers of white and brown foxes and squirrels to be met with; but no fables, or very few. The two towns called Tangvîkoi and Mungafeja stand at but a very small distance from the Jenifa. There they deal largely by land in all sorts of furs, nar-whales, and the teeth of the Mammot. From these two towns they even send out divers vessels to the mouth of the river, and upon the icy-coat

to fish for narwhales, and seals, which, if they meet with any fuccefs, prove a profitable commodity, and an ample recompence for all their labour.

## **Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.**

1. Ruffia, or Moscovy fee p. 7. n. c.
  2. Wolga, or Volga, fee p. 28. n. f.
  3. Astracan, fee p. 62. n. i.
  4. Calmucs, fee p. 62. n. b.
  5. Siberia, or Aftatic Ruffia, fee p. 17. n. b.
  6. Crim-Tartary, fee p. 68. n. dd.
  7. Tobol, fee p. 148. n. a.
  8. Oby, the river, fee p. 18. n. a.
  9. Iris, the river, fee p. 148. n. a.
  10. China, fee p. 66. n. a.
    1. Mongulians, or Mogulians, fee p. 158. n. i.
    1. Jenifa, or Jenifa, fee p. 18. n. f.
    2. Baikal, or Bakal, the lake, fee p. 167. n. a.
    3. Argun, fee p. 66. n. s.
    4. Amur, or Amour, fee p. 18. n. b.
    5. Perrians, fee p. 64. n. a.
    6. Lena, the river, fee p. 18. n. g.
    7. Samoëds, fee p. 17. n. a.
- 

## **CHAPTER XXX.**

The Travels of Mr. Le Brun continued. His Departure from (a) Astracan. A Continuation of the Course of the River (b) Volga. The Situation of (d) Derbent, and the Author's Arrival in (e) Perfia.

On the 12th of July, we embarked at Astracan, in order to pursue our travels, and went from thence to a certain place not above three werfts distant from the town, where an elegant dinner was prepared for our reception, by the Armenian merchants. There we amused ourselves for about an hour or two, at the found of a great variety of instrumental music. After we had sufficiently refreshed ourselves, we took our farewell of all our friends and acquaintance. In our passage down the river, we had a view of a great number of Tartarian huts, or tents, which extended a considerable way up into the country. At night we ventured to lay on shore, as we were under the guard of two soldiers, who were fent, at our request, by the governor, for our greater security. There I slept for some time, without ever so much as once thinking of my net to secure me from the flies which are very troublesome in those parts; but to my cost, I found, that I stood in great need of it; for I was soon disturbed from my repose by their perplexing flings, and could rest no more all the night long. We continued our course at the first dawn of day; and found the shore not only level, but full of trees. About seven the morning, we came in sight of the convent called St. John's, which stood on our starboard. # THE TRAVELS OF

board fide; and at some small distance from thence, we could perceive there was an island in the river, in which were abundance of birds of divers kinds. About eleven we passed by a wear, or place artfully contrived to detain the fifth in, which bore the resemblance of a little island like-wife, and directly over against that decoy, if we may use that expression, there was a body-guard, consisting of a considerable number of soldiers, who were planted there to observe what ships come up the river. This decoy, or wear, was farmed by some of the substantial inhabitants of (f) Niefna, or Nifna, who made it their business to falt the fifth they caught, in order to carry it home, and were provided with a large vessel there, proper for that purpose. In some places thereabouts, the river runs but narrow, on account of divers branches all around them. At about a league distance from thence we came to another wear, which we found encompassed with reeds; and after that to another body-guard, upon an island (on which there were four small hills) about three-score werfts distant from the town of Afracan. Here the river is purposely dammed, or stopped up, with an opening, in some measure, like one of our European sluices, in order to the passing and repassing of vessels. About two in the afternoon, we steered our course fourthward, notwithstanding we had failed afterward all the time before. At about six in the evening, we had reached within four werfts of the Caffian-fea, which is about fourcore, or fourcore and ten werfts from Afracan, that is to say, about seventeen German leagues. Here I discharged both my vessel and my soldiers, to whom I delivered a letter which I had received from the governor. We lay, for the first time, all that night in the ship; but I took care to remember my net, with which I covered myself all over; for without it I must inevitably have had such another reflefs night as

I had before, the flies being exceedingly troublesome in these parts; as I hinted above: Nay, their bites or flings are sometimes so very venomous, that they prove mortal. At this time I had a hound with me, that was so tortured by them, that he threw himself headlong into the river, to affwage the pain; and it was with no small difficulty I got him out again: Upon which I took compassion on him, and covered him all over with my net; and after that he slept very contentedly.

On the 14th in the morning, we held on our course, but very slowly, by the affluence of our oars; for here the river was not only very narrow, but full of reeds. At about one werft from the Caffian-fea, where we made a flop, we met with our lighter. However, the pilot went on before us, to found upon the banks, where he found the water not above five palms deep; but as the wind floated at the fourth, they were well satisfied it would not be long before the water would rise. At five o'clock he repaired to the same place again, and found, according to his expectations, that the water had risen two palms, or thereabouts; so that as our vessel did not draw abundance of water, we were in hopes that, by waiting with patience only about two or three hours longer, we should be able to get over the sands. During this interval, we amused ourselves with throwing our nets into the river, where we caught a considerable number of perch, and a few lobsters. After our fishing, I went myself on shore, in quest of some game, with my gun on my shoulder, and took a walk towards the fea: But that scheme was soon frustrated; for I was obliged to return in a very short time, the way proving very marshy, and choked up with reeds. I caught, however, in the mean time, several very beautiful butterflies, which were all like vermilion without, and parti-coloured within. About nine at night, the lightest part of the passengers baggage was carried on shore; and all the passengers themselves, indeed, went after, except three, who lay in the lighter. When we came to the mouth of the river, as the land, in divers places, ran into it on each side, we found it to be very flat.

---

# CORNELIUS  
LE BRUN.

strait and  
narrow; and  
moreover, that  
there were  
several sand-  
banks at the  
entrance into  
the fea; these,  
however, were  
distinguished,  
not by fea-  
marks, as usual,  
but by large  
branches of

trees, which lay  
sufficiently  
conspicuous. We  
were obliged,  
however, at  
night to come  
too, for fear of  
casualties; but  
on the fifteenth,  
at the very  
dawn of day, we  
drew up our  
anchor, in order  
to get over the  
sands, on which  
notwithstanding  
we too hastily  
struck, yet by  
unlading part of  
our cargo into  
the lighter, we  
got afloat  
again, without  
any material  
damage.

We unhappily,  
indeed, after  
that, struck  
upon them a  
second time,  
and were under  
an  
indispensable  
necessity to  
make use of our  
tender, or  
lighter, in order  
to convey, not  
only the goods,  
but all the  
passengers, and  
other people a-  
shore; but as  
the wind was fair  
for our  
progress, we  
were out at sea,  
in a short time,  
tho'  
encompassed  
by land on



every side, and  
by mountains,  
that reared  
their heads  
high on the  
starboard of us.

On the  
sixteenth pretty  
early in the  
morning, our  
lighter came up  
with both our  
passengers and  
effects,  
notwithstanding  
we had a large  
bank of sand fill  
to traverse, and  
notwithstanding  
there was a  
large island  
between us and  
the main fea on  
our larboard-  
side. After  
having coasted  
some-time  
along the said  
island, we  
reached the last  
mentioned  
sand-bank, and  
had the  
misfortune to  
strike once  
more; but soon  
got a-float  
again. The  
water being  
there near a  
fathom and a  
half deep, we  
took all our  
goods out of the  
tender, as well  
as our people  
who then were  
on board her;  
and sent her  
back directly to  
Astracan, with

a letter, which I sent under my own hand to the governor of that place.

About noon, we could see very plainly on one side of us, those four mountains, which are distinguished by the (f) Ruffians, under the name of Krafna-fattier-boe-gre, that is to say, the four red Mountains, the most distant point whereof is about one-hundred werfts from Astracan aforesaid. We soon left sight, however, of that land; and as the wind had shifted more southward, we veered our course directly south-west; and the weather at that time proved very serene; but the wind soon after chopping about to the eastward, we were obliged to cast anchor in a fathom and half water, or thereabouts.

On the seventeenth in the morning, we heaved our

anchor, and  
proceeded on  
our voyage, and  
bore away to  
the southward,  
the wind at that  
time blowing  
brisk at north,  
and the  
weather being  
hazy; after that,  
however, as the  
fun had  
dispelled the  
clouds, and  
driven off the  
little rain that  
fell, a fresh gale  
sprang up,  
which  
continued all  
the night long,  
and occasioned  
a great swell in  
the sea. As our  
pilot was  
greatly  
fatigued, and  
wanted some  
rest and  
refreshment, he  
entreated  
another hand  
with the helm,  
who, if I had  
not happened  
to prevent him,  
would have  
carried us  
directly back  
again to  
Astracan; for  
you must know,  
I always carried  
my own  
compass along  
with me,  
whether by sea  
or land. In the  
night, the wind  
shifting again,  
and falling all

on a sudden, we  
were obliged to  
drop anchor  
again in eight  
fathom-water.

On the  
eighteenth, we  
weighed anchor  
in the morning,  
and got under  
sail again,  
notwithstanding  
it rained pretty  
fast, and a calm  
ensued; a  
breeze,  
however, soon  
after springing  
up towards the  
north-west, we  
veered our  
course towards  
the south. As a  
very brisk gale  
arose, not only  
the mariners,  
but the soldiers,  
who are obliged  
to help work  
the vessel  
whenever  
occasion  
absolutely  
requires it,  
were most  
grievously  
vexed. Amongst  
the number on  
board, there  
were about one  
and twenty of  
those last-  
mentioned  
occasional  
hands, and  
about fifty  
passengers,  
most of whom  
were natives of  
(g) Armenia.  
Our vessel

carried two  
small brass  
cannons; and  
notwithstanding  
it might be  
loaded without  
any  
inconvenience  
with about two  
hundred and  
fifty bales; yet  
in order to have  
room sufficient  
and to spare, I  
reduced them  
to one hundred  
and four-score.

She had three  
rudders, one on  
each side, and

# THE  
TRAVELS OF

and one a-ftern;  
all which are  
made use of at  
proper times.

These vessels  
have only a  
main-fail,  
which, when  
the wind blows  
fair, they take  
care to double,  
in-fo-much that  
they are very  
improper to ply  
with to the  
windward;  
neither is there  
any contrivance  
in them for the  
conveni-ence of  
rowing should  
an occasion  
offer. Our Pilot,  
however,  
returned that  
day in the  
afternoon to the  
port he had  
before quit-ted

through fatigue  
as above-  
hinted; but  
bearing too  
close upon the  
wind, the vessel  
came all entire  
into it, as the  
fail happened to  
be trimmed; so  
that the crew  
were obliged to  
hand their fail,  
as the ves-sel  
never felt her  
helm; after that  
another helm  
was made use  
of to bring her  
about, and then  
the fail was all  
spread again;  
by which  
injudicious  
method of  
proceeding, I  
plainly  
perceived, that  
the hands on  
board were as  
artless  
mariners as the  
Greeks. As the  
wind continued  
blowing from  
the north, we  
steered the  
same course as  
before; and  
notwithstanding  
we were  
advanced a con-  
ferable way into  
the sea; yet I  
perceived, that  
the water was  
full perfectly  
sweet, and fit to  
drink; soon  
after, indeed, it  
began to be  
more brackish,

and greener by  
far than before;  
and besides the  
waves became  
very thort.

Having steered  
this course all  
night, which  
proved as light  
almost as day,  
we perceived,  
on the  
nineteenth in  
the morning,  
one of the  
mountains of  
Persia, called  
Samgael, to the  
westward of us;  
and coast-ing it  
along towards  
the fourth, at  
least a whole  
league from the  
shore, we  
doubled our fail  
about nine  
o'clock; having  
not only  
mountains  
constantly on  
one side of us,  
but several  
woods, and a  
sandy beach.  
After having  
been becalmed  
for some time, a  
brisk gale arose  
at the north-  
eaft, and we  
steered our  
course fourth-  
eaft, constant-ly  
coasting it  
along, in order  
to double the  
outermost point  
of the sharp  
mountain, dis-  
tinguished by

the letter (A) in  
the plate  
annexed.

This coast, even  
as far as  
Derbent, is a  
very dangerous  
one, on account  
of the  
Samagalian,  
who reside in  
those  
mountains, and  
plunder on  
every side of  
them:

inasmuch that  
there is no such  
thing as landing  
in safety among  
them. They are  
Mahomedans  
by profession;  
and secure all  
goods whatever  
belonging to  
any ships,  
without favour  
or affection,  
that are so un-  
fortunate as to  
strike upon  
their coast, and  
think  
themselves  
under no  
obligation to  
account for  
them to any  
other person  
than their legal  
prince.

At three, the  
wind veered  
about at east, at  
the very time,  
that we were  
upon the brink  
of the hill, in  
fight of, and  
within the



distance of a  
league only  
from Der-bent.  
There we cast  
anchor, and  
there it was,  
that I drew the  
prospect of the  
place, which  
the reader will  
perceive is  
disting-  
uished  
by the letter  
(B.) in the left-  
men-tioned  
plate annexed.

Before night  
came on we got  
under fail once  
more; the wind,  
however,  
proving slack,  
we made no  
great way; for  
by break of day  
we were  
advanced but to  
a small distance  
from the town,  
which is situate  
westward on  
the sea-shore,  
the cir-  
cumference  
whereof (as it  
appeared at  
least to me)  
was but about a  
league and an  
half. On the  
sea-side, and at  
the foot of the  
hill, it is  
strongly fenced  
by a stone-wall.  
There are three  
gates to the  
town; one  
whereof is very  
feldom, if ever  
opened. The

citadel stands  
contiguous, or  
adjoin-ing to  
the town: on  
the right-hand  
of it there is a  
well, with a  
subterraneous  
spring, the  
waters whereof  
frequently rise  
to a  
considerable  
height. The  
town is well  
supplied with  
cannon and  
suitable ammu-  
nition; and as it  
is situated on  
an emi-nence, it  
makes, when  
viewed at a dif-  
tance upon the  
sea, no  
inconsiderable  
figure. The  
much greater  
part of the  
stones whereof  
the citadel is  
composed are  
about seven  
palms and an  
half long, and  
five and an half  
broad, and  
artfully enough  
wrought, but in  
an antique  
manner. The  
Persians  
peremptorily  
insist, that this  
place was in  
being in the  
days even of  
Alex-ander the  
Great.

At some small  
distance from

the town, there  
are no less than  
forty or fifty  
monu-ments,  
each in length  
about fifteen  
palms; but in  
breadth no  
more than  
between two  
and #  
CORNELIUS LE  
BRUN.

The hill,  
whereon the  
town is erected,  
is all one rock,  
and abounds  
(as well as the  
town) with  
springs of fresh  
water. Such  
paffengers as  
were never  
here before, are  
obliged (by a  
custom, time  
immemorial) to  
compliment the  
sailors on their  
landing, with  
some small  
present to  
drink; which, if  
too obtrusively  
refused, is  
tenacious; they  
of their ancient  
privilege, that  
the delinquent  
is pretty  
severely ducked  
for his non-  
compliance.  
This town, or  
city, is situate  
on the north-  
west of (b) Afia,  
and the  
kingdom of  
Perfia, on the

frontiers of (i)  
Georgia, and  
Zuiria, between  
the Caffian-fea,  
and mount (k)  
Caucas; the  
passage  
whereof is  
extremely  
narrow.

The pirates,  
who are  
distinguished  
by the name of  
the Koerloeks,  
resided at about  
a day's journey  
from the city of  
Der bent; and  
the Russian (l)  
Cofflacs  
frequently quit  
their own  
country, in  
order to  
accompany  
them in a cruise  
upon the  
Caffian-fea,  
where they  
plunder  
indiscriminately  
all they meet  
with.

This country  
borders upon  
(m) Dageftap,  
which is a small  
province of  
Georgia, and  
Zuiria on the  
Caffian-fea  
before-  
mentioned, and,  
in extent, not  
much above  
forty leagues. It  
is inhabited by  
the natives of  
(n) Tartary, who  
are under the

jurisdiction of  
their own  
princes,  
between (o)  
Mofcovy and  
Perfia, whose  
principal towns  
are (p) Tarku  
and Andres.  
Though this  
province is  
seldom taken  
notice of in our  
maps; yet it is  
well known,  
that it is under  
the government  
of the four  
several princes,  
herein-after  
particularly  
mentioned: the  
first and chief  
of these is  
distinguished  
by the title of  
Samgael; the  
second is styled  
Crim Samgael;  
the third is  
called Beki; and  
the last  
Careboedagh  
Bek, that is to  
say, the prince  
of  
Careboedagh.

The town of  
Tarku has  
several names;  
sometimes it is  
called Tirak, or  
Tarki, and

About noon, as  
the wind was  
then north-east,  
we soon loft  
fight of Der  
bent, and  
steered our  
course to the

south-east.  
Whilst we were  
on this coast,  
we could plainly  
discern both  
hills and trees  
at a great  
distance from  
the shore. As  
the wind,  
however, about  
an hour  
afterwards,  
chopped about  
to the south-  
east, we were  
obliged to cast  
anchor, at about  
half a league  
distance from  
the land, in a  
place where  
there were  
plenty of trees  
on the bank-  
side. On the  
twenty-fifth, we  
weighed anchor  
in the morning,  
and proceeded  
on our voyage,  
all along the  
coast, and the  
weather was  
very fine. About  
eight o'clock,  
we could  
discern  
Nifaway-point;  
and at noon we  
cast anchor on  
that coast, in  
about three  
fathom and a  
half water;  
where we met  
with fix several  
vessels that had  
fail from  
Afracan some  
considerable  
time before us.

About three in  
the afternoon, I  
landed with all  
my equipage;  
and I had never  
yet foot on  
Perfian ground  
before.

The Caffian-fea  
is, in length,  
about one  
hundred  
leagues from  
Afracan to  
Ferchabad, and  
in breadth,  
about ninety  
from  
Chowarafin to  
the coasts of (q)  
Circafia, or  
Shirwan. The  
passage from  
Afracan to  
Ferchabad  
aforesaid may  
be performed  
(without the aid  
or assistance of  
any wind  
whatever) with  
oars only,  
within the  
compass of  
about a  
fortnight. The  
waters of this  
fea neither rise  
nor fall; and if  
ever its banks  
are overflowed,  
it is wholly  
owing to the  
wind. Some will  
insist, that this  
fea is  
bottomless  
about the  
middle of it,  
and where it  
runs before Der

bent; in the  
other parts,  
however, they  
frequently, by  
thirty or forty  
fathom of line,  
strike down  
upon the  
bottom. Its  
waters are flat,  
as we have  
elsewhere  
observed, and  
the freshets of  
those which roll  
along the coast  
are entirely  
owing to the  
several rivers  
that discharge  
themselves into  
it. As to all  
other

Eee ther # THE  
TRAVELS OF

In their  
respects, it has  
not the least  
communication  
with any of the  
other fea; since  
it is  
encompassed  
all round about,  
not only with  
lands, but high  
mountains  
likewise.

It is almost  
impossible to  
conceive what a  
number of  
rivers empty  
their waters  
into this fea.  
Some  
peremptorily  
assert, that  
they amount to  
one hundred at  
least if not



more; the  
principal  
whereof are the  
(q) Volga, the  
Cirrus, and the  
(c) Araxes, or  
Arras; the two  
last whereof  
unite their  
streams, before  
they flow to the  
Caspian, and  
then empty  
themselves into  
it both together,  
bringing the  
waters of divers  
other rivers  
along with  
them; and those  
particularly of  
the Buftrouw,  
the Akfay, the  
Koi-fu, the  
Kiftloein, the  
Laik, the Sems,  
the Nios, the (i)  
Oxus, the  
Arxantes, or  
Tanaïs, and  
divers others  
too tedious to  
mention.

Formely some  
people  
distinguished  
this fea by the  
name of  
Hyrcania; and  
others by that  
of Bachu. The  
Persians  
sometimes call  
it the fea of  
Kolfum, and  
sometimes  
again that of  
Aftracan; it is  
called,  
moreover, by  
the Ruffians,

the fea of  
Gualenfkoï, or  
that of  
Gevalienfke; by  
the Georgians,  
Sgwa; and Soof  
by the natives  
of Armenia.

The Ruffians  
and the  
Mahomedans,  
are the  
principal  
persons that  
navigate this  
fea:  
notwithstanding  
his Czarain  
majesty has  
sent several  
vessels under  
the convoy of  
one captain  
Meyer to  
Aftracan with  
no other view;  
yet the  
merchants for  
the generality  
prefer the  
ordinary  
Ruffian vessels,  
for the  
transportation  
of their  
respective  
effects from one  
place to  
another,  
because the  
latter are not  
near so liable to  
take water. The  
others, it is  
true, if that was  
not the  
objection,  
would be much  
more  
commodious for  
their purpose;

and if due care  
was but taken,  
would perform  
the voyage as  
soon again.

There is  
another defect  
likewise that  
these labour  
under; and that  
is, they are not  
near so flat-  
bottomed as the  
common  
vessels, and  
therefore are  
incapable of  
reaching to  
near the coasts  
of Perfia and  
Nifawey, where  
the others are  
frequently  
obliged to lie all  
the winter-  
feason.

## Occasional  
Remarks on the  
preceding  
Chapter.

(a) Aftracan, fee  
p. 62. n. i.

(b) Volga, or  
Wolga, the  
river, fee p. 28.  
n. f.

(c) Calfian-fea,  
fee p. 66. n. q.

(d) Derbent,  
east long. 51.  
lat. 41. 15. a  
city of  
Daghiftan, in  
Afia, situate on  
the western  
coast of the  
Calfian-fea,  
subject to  
Ruffia.

(e) Perfia, fee  
p. 64. n. o.

(f) Niefna, or  
Nifna, fee p. 61.  
n. f.

(g) Armenia,  
confits of the  
modern  
Turcomania,  
and part of  
Perfia, having  
Georgia on the  
north;  
Curdiftan, the  
ancient Affyria,  
on the fourth;  
and Natolia, or  
the leffer Afia,  
on the welt.

(h) Afia, fee  
p. 127. n. x.

(i) Georgia, fee  
p. 107. n. d.

(k) Caucaus, a  
chain of  
mountains,  
which run from  
the leffer Afia,  
through the  
north of Perfia  
to Eaft India,  
which obtain  
different names  
from the  
several  
countries they  
pass through.

(l) Coffsacs, fee  
p. 156. n. e.

(m) Dagheftan,  
a country of  
Afia, bounded  
by Circaffia on  
the north; by  
the Calfian-fea  
on the eaf; by  
Churvein, a  
province of  
Perfia, on the

fourth; and by Georgia on the welt; of which the chief towns are Tarku and Derbent; but the generality of the natives live in tents, wandering from place to place; and tho' they are but a finall state, the country being mountainous, and of difficult access, none of the neighbouring powers have been able to subdue them. When they find themselves hard pressed at any time by one power, they put themselves under the protection of another; as lately, when they were attacked on the fide of Perfia by Kouli Kan, they called in the Ruffians, and fo well-defended themselves, with a little affiance given them under-hand, that Kouli Kan was obliged to retire, having left great #

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

part of his army  
in their  
mountains. The  
towns of Tarku  
and Darbent, on  
the Caf pian  
fea, are usually  
in the  
possession of  
the Ruffians.

(p) Tartary, fee  
p. 18. n. i.

(o) Mofov, or  
Ruffia, fee p. 7.  
n. c.

(p) Tarku, fee  
p. 66. n. p.

(q) Circaffia, is  
situate between  
40 and 50  
degrees of east  
longitude, and  
between 45 and  
50 degrees of  
north latitude,  
bounded by  
Ruffia on the  
north; by  
Afracan and the  
Caf pian fea on  
the east; by  
Daghiftan on  
the fourth; and  
by the river  
Don, and the  
Palus Meotis,  
on the west.  
The Circaffian  
Tartars are a  
kind of  
Republic, but  
sometimes put  
themselves  
under the  
protection of  
Perfia, and  
sometimes of  
Ruffia, or the  
Turks. They live  
in tents most

commonly,  
rambling from  
place to

---

## CHAP. XXXI.

A short Account of the Situation of the Country, called Nifawaey. A violent Storm arises: as, also, a flocking and tremendous Duff. The Author's Arrival at Samalhi.

THERE is not one single village, nay, not so much as a house to be seen on the coast of Nifawaey, which lies low; inasmuch, that whenever any foreigners land thereon, they are forced either to pitch their tents hard by, as commodiously as they can, or else travel farther up the country, as they see most convenient, and according to the time they propose to reside in those parts. The natives of (a) Arabia frequently bring here both camels and horses, in order to meet with strangers, and conduct them to Samalhi; and as when we arrived, there was a great number of us that were glad of their affiance.

On the twenty second, early in the morning, we threw out our nets into a small river that empties its waters into the sea, at the distance of about half a league from thence, by two apertures; and not-

place with their flocks and herds. Their country is now most taken notice of for its beautiful children, from whence, and the neighbouring country of Georgia, the seragios of Turkey and Persia, are usually supplied with boys and young virgins.

1. Arraxes, or Arras, a river which rises in Georgia, and running south-east, joins the river Kur, or Cyrus, the united stream discharging itself into the Caf pian-sea, between the province of Shirvan and Aderbeitzan in Persia.
2. Oxus, a river, which rises in the mountains on the north of India, and running north-west through Ufbee Tartary, afterwards separates Persia from Ufbee Tartary, and falls into the Caf pian-sea, in 44 degrees of north latitude. Some late maps carry it to a lake, situate east of the Caf pian-sea.

On the twenty third, at fourth east, five of the vessels there, as the wind blew at fourth east, set sail for (b) Afracan. Several merchants, who were natives of (c) Armenia, embarked with their respective effects on board of those vessels; and for my own part, I embraced the favourable opportunity of paying my respects, by way of letters, to several of my most intimate and valued acquaintance, both there, and in the city of (d) Mofoe. The persons

who are generally employed in the conveying away of all such wares and commodities as are brought by ship- # THE TRAVELS OF

flipping to this coast, are either Arabians, or natives of (e) Turkey; who, during the summer-feafon, reside in tents upon the coasts; but when the winter is far advanced, they remove their ftation to some villages, which lie at some considerable distance from them.

Several camels which were heavily laden with effects, and several merchants, who were natives of (f) Ruffia, and gentlemen who had travelled with us from Mofcow to Afracan, went away from hence on the twenty-fourth.

On the same day, an Arabian, had been robbed of his horfe, and some rice that he was carrying to market, by three free-booters: upon his giving notice thereof they were immediately pursued indeed, by ten or a dozen perfons, but their attempt to overtake them, proved altogether fruitless and ineffectual.

About noon, a violent storm arose, which drove such a terrible duff between the Beach and the Downs, that there was no such thing as having any place to fly to for shelter from their joint fury. Notwithstanding we had a tent, indeed, moderately large, which was supported by two very substantial poles, and drove deep into the ground; yet I quitted that post, and repaired to the fea-fide, where the duff was not troublesome, on account of the fand there being somewhat wet. To confess ingenuously, I was under no small apprehensions, that the wind would blow our tent away; and as I feared, so the thing in reality happened; and instead of sheltering ourselves in it, we were glad to make use of it another way. We threw it therefore all over our goods and baggage, and fixed it down to the ground as fast as possible. And as the air was almost darkened by the thick cloud of fand that hovered over our heads, each of us used our best endeavours to find out the most commodious shelter we could, without respect of perfons. Some of us crept behind a shattered vefel, that unhappily had suffered shipwreck not long before; and others got into her, which was a most melancholy and deplorable fight. This violent storm never abated till night came on, at which time, we got up our tent once more; for as all our bales lay deep in the fand, it was with no small toil and trouble, that we recovered them.

On the twenty fifth, some particular merchants, who had been refident on the coast for near a fortnight, fet out from hence, for Samahhi, as the weather proved very fine and favourable; as for our parts, however, we were forced to tarry behind; for it was not in our power to stir a step, till we had been visited by a custom-house officer, to whom we were to pay the usual duties, which amounted to forty fix pence per bale, each weighing about four hundred pounds, the custom-house load of one horfe.



That very day, as violent a storm as the former rose on a sudden, and the wind blew with that impetuosity, that it was as much as we could do to stand upon our legs against it; it drove us no less than three hundred paces from the fea, to one side of the Downs, where we spent the night. Whilst we were here, we fell in with the crew of a veflel which belonged to his Czarion majesty, and had taken shelter from the tempest under some huts. Amongst these mariners there were two, who were natives of (g) Germany; and one a (b) Swedish prioner, who made me a present of two birds, called by the Ruffians, Karawayekes, which bear some near refemblance to young Herons; with this difference only, that their plumage is either a very dark grey, or a deep purple.

As these gentlemen were so good as to visit me every day, they brought me, moreover, a white crane, which was very large and exceedingly beautiful.

The storm continued all that whole night long, and the custom-house officer who arrived on the twenty-sixth, and after he had made a satisfactory search, gave us leave to depart. The very next day, we fet out with above an hundred camels, ten horfes and three affes. As we kept travelling along the fea, we perceived that the thoroughfares were more or less covered with fand; but when we came to the fea, the situation was very different. The country was more fertile and the soil was better, and as we proceeded along, the people we met were more numerous and better dressed. The weather was pleasant, and the air was fresh and invigorating. As we approached the city, we saw a large number of houses and buildings, which were constructed of brick and stone. The people were of various races and religions, and they all seemed to be in a state of peace and prosperity. The city was situated on the bank of a large river, which flowed through the heart of the country. The river was navigated by boats of various sizes, and the people of the city were engaged in various trades and professions, including fishing, farming, and commerce. The city was also known for its fine arts and crafts, and the people of the city were skilled in the making of pottery, textiles, and other goods. The people of the city were also known for their hospitality, and they welcomed us with open arms. We were treated to a feast of local delicacies, and we were also given a warm welcome by the mayor of the city. We spent the night in a large inn, where we were given a comfortable bed and a good meal. We rose early the next morning, and we set out on our journey again.

In the midst of our journey, we encountered a band of free-bothers who were engaged in the practice of robbing merchants of their goods. We were fortunate to have a powerful wind at our back, which enabled us to outrun them. We continued our journey until we reached a large market town, where we sold our goods and

replenished our supplies. We then set out on our journey again, and we continued to travel through the country, encountering various people and places.

We eventually reached a large and beautiful city, which was situated on the bank of a large river. The city was known for its fine arts and crafts, and the people of the city were skilled in the making of pottery, textiles, and other goods. The people of the city were also known for their hospitality, and they welcomed us with open arms. We were treated to a feast of local delicacies, and we were also given a warm welcome by the mayor of the city. We spent the night in a large inn, where we were given a comfortable bed and a good meal. We rose early the next morning, and we set out on our journey again.

As we continued our journey, we encountered a band of free-  
bothers who were engaged in the practice of robbing merchants  
of their goods. We were fortunate to to to to to to to to to to  
to to to to to to to to to to to to to to to to # CORNELIUS  
LE BRUN.

travelling along the fea-fide, we plainly perceived, that the shores were in full as shattered a condition, as the place where we had laboured under the inconveniencies above-related. We traversed the four rivers, called Samoetia, Balballa, Bubolettha, and Mordwa, and so proceeded on our journey to the southward. On this shore, there are numbers of large animals, with small heads, which the inhabitants there call fea-dogs, or feals, some of which are as big as a moderate horse; and their skins are of considerable value, as they are an admirable covering for trunks or feather-chests. In the feafon for the copulation of these animals, there are thousand to be met with on the shores of Nifawacy. After we had travelled for about four leagues, we repofed ourselves in a plain, at some distance from the downs, and about half a league only distant from the village called Mordow, which is inhabited by the Arabs, whose cabins, or huts, are composed chiefly of mud, and make as poor a figure as those of the (i) Tartars, which we have already described. The term Mordow signifies a marsh, or fen; and this village, indeed, is exceedingly wet and dirty on account of the waters that roll down upon it from the mountains. It is owing, however, to those floods of water, that the village abounds in rice, and in a great variety of birds.

On the twenty-eighth, we pursued our journey all along the feafide, and travelled no less than six leagues. When we had advanced thus far, we turned away from the fea, having the high mountains of (k) Perfa at a small distance before us. There we met with a spring, or fountain of water, and some few petty villages, consisting of a small number of fomy mud-cabins, or huts, inhabited (as they call them here) by the Moors, or Turks.

As the weather was perfectly calm and serene, those mountains and plains struck the eye very agreeably, and had a fine effect. The (l) Capian-fea, in these parts afford but very little, if any fish at all. They have here, however, a kind of carp, the goodness of which is not greatly to be boasted of; as also, a kind of herring, which is as worthless as the former.

On the twenty-ninth, we moved onwards, and in about an hour's time, entered the mountains, which are very lofty indeed, but extremely naked, full of rocks, and scarce a tree to be seen. Even in the plains, there are an abundance of pebbles. When we had traversed the high and rocky mountains of Barma, about nine in the morning, we halted at a flat hill, which was surrounded by divers others much more lofty, and in a deep valley, we met with a brook of exceedingly fine water.

There I shot a bird, that was motley coloured, black, grey, and white, which from the tip of one wing to another was near a fathom in extent. It was, it seems, a bird of prey, there called by the name of a Tjallagan, and bears no small resemblance to a falcon. Though he was good for little elf, I plucked some exceeding good quills for writing from both wings.

As the weather continued fair, though the wind, indeed, was somewhat of the highest, we proceeded on our journey towards the fourth, and passed by several cabins, or huts, that were erected at the foot, on the declivity, and even on the summits of some mountains, which were inhabited by the Arabs; great numbers of whom, together with their wives and cattle, are to be met with in these parts.

As the roads here are frequently infested by free-booters, all travellers are indispensably obliged to be upon their guard, and peculiarly cautious how they venture to repose themselves to rest. At proper distances of time, we fired off some small arms, in order to intimate to all intended invaders, that we were prepared to receive them; however, notwithstanding this testimony of our being upon the watch, one of these plunderers had the assurance to come, and act, as a spy, to reconnoitre our situation; but a found drubbing-bout was the immediate consequence of his impudence and presumption.

At midnight we began to move again; Fff and # THE TRAVELS OF

and in less than an hour's time we got amongst a parcel of hills which were all covered with trees. By break of day, we came to a narrow passagge, which was so deep, that we thought it most advisable to dismount, and each man to lead his horse by the bridle.

As soon as we were got down upon the plain, we traversed, more than once, the river, called Atalafai, that is the paternal, or principal river, which empties its waters into the Caipian-fea. On

the top of one of the mountains we met with a large pond, which was full of water, and round about it, we found a great variety of birds; some small and others of a considerable size. After that, we came to a spring, the water whereof was clear as crystal, and rises from a hill, and from thence forms a little canal. This was one branch of that river which we had croffed twice the day before; as there had been a remarkable drought, however, for two years last past, we now forded it the third time.

About eight o'clock, we saw a spacious stone caravanserai, or place of publick reception, lie on the left of us all in ruins; with a burial-ground contiguous to it, where were several monuments, or tombs; some of Arabians, and others of Turks. When we had got at some small distance from these ruins, we halted by a brook-side, on a plain, about four leagues from a small village called Raffarat, where some of the Arabs had pitched their tents; but the place was so incapable of supplying us with even common necessities, that we were obliged to fend to another place, no less than at a league distance, for proper refreshments.

At about two in the morning, we advanced forwards once more; now ascending high hills, and then again descending them, and traversed a river, called by the Turks Orotfa, that is to say, the dry river; and it might very properly, indeed, be so called; for at that time, it was perfectly dry, and full of pebbles. It is the same however, (as we were informed) during the winter-feafon, as well as in the summer. At about break of day, we heard several pheafants whirring upon the hills; which abound likewise with hares, as well as springs of water. We halted, on the last day of the month, in a large plain, full of stones, and encompassed with rocks, where we happily met with ten tents, or cabbins of the Arabs, who furnished us with a large quantity of milk, fresh butter, eggs, and some water that was moderately sweet. Here we killed one of the best sheep, which we had brought with us from Affracan, and regaled ourselves in a more plentiful manner than we had done before for some time.

At two in the morning, we set forwards again, in the midst of several very rocky mountains; and at dawn of day, we found ourselves at but a very small distance from the spring called Borbeelagh; and all around this water several Arabians had pitched their tents; but in a spot, that was perfectly burnt up by the intense heat of the fun, and the droughts consequent thereupon. This was upon the first day of August, and we got but three leagues forwards, though we travelled all the day long, it being impossible, in fultry weather, to drive camels above four or five leagues at most in the compass of four and twenty hours; besides, it is absolutely requisite, that the caravans should halt at such places, where there was any water to be procured. This spring of Borbeelagh is situate about three leagues from the town

called Samachi; and as there is no wood to be met with on the mountains, the inhabitants are obliged to make use of camels-dung, like the (m) Egyptians for their fuel.

About two in the morning, we proceeded on our journey, and croffed the river, called Sahanhai, where, instead of water as we expected, we found nothing but pebbles. However, as we advanced nearer to Samachi, we passed by several gardens, that produced great store of fruit.

No sooner were we in fight of the town, but we were stopped by the custom-house officers, in order to their counting the number of our camels, which was soon done, and then we were permitted to enter the town. This was on the second day of # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

## **Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.**

1. Arabia, a country of Asia, having Turkey on the north; and Persia and the gulf of Persia on the east; the Indian-ocean on the south; and the Red-sea and Isthmus of Suez on the west; a country of very great extent, divided amongst many Arabian princes and states, most of them living in tents, and wandering from place to place to find pasture and water for their cattle, most of the country being a barren desert, without water, or vegetables in many places.

The impostor Mahomet was a native of this country, and made the Arabs his first proselytes, who, within forty years after his death, subdued great part of Asia, Africa, and Europe, and established their religion wherever they came. Arabia is situated between thirty five and thirty degrees of east long. and between eleven and thirty degrees of north lat. the three grand divisions whereof are 1. Arabia Felix, 2. Arabia Deserta, and 3. Arabia Petraea.

1. Astracan, fee p. 62. n. i.
2. Armenia, fee p. 198. n. g.
3. Moscow, fee p. 23. n. c.
4. Turkey is a very extensive empire, comprehending some of the richest countries in Europe, Asia, and Africa.

In Europe, the Turks are possessed of Romania, Bulgaria, Servia, and Bofnia, Ragufa, Wallachia, Moldavia, Beflarabia, Budziac, and Oczakow Tartary, Crim and Little Tartary, with Albania, Epirus, Macedonia, Thessaly, and all the ancient Greece, with its numerous isles in the Archipelago.

In Asia they possess Chaldea, now Eyraca, Arabic Mefopotamia, now Diarbeck, part of Affyria, now Curdistan, Armenia, now Turcomania, part of Georgia, Mingrelia, and Circassia, part of Arabia, Syria, Palestine, Natolia, or Asia Minor.

In Africa they possess Egypt.

Thus happily situated in the center of our continent, and the most fruitful countries, they could not fail of acquiring the trade, as well as the empire of the whole world, if these glorious advantages were not lost by the indolence and activity of the Turks, and the destructive

maxims they are governed by. They seldom fail to distant countries, or visit nations of a different faith, but the merchandise of the rest of the world is carried to them in foreign bottoms; and in the same manner, the produce and manufactures of Turkey are exported.

They reap but little advantage by their commerce with Christendom, but what they get by the duties of import and export; and their home-trade is carried on chiefly by their Christian, or Jewish subjects.

The Turks are above applying themselves to any thing of this kind; traffic and mechanical employments are left to be managed by the despised Christians, who contribute much more, by their labour and industry, to the support of that empire, than the Turks themselves, which may be one reason why their government indulges them in the free exercise of their religion. And, indeed, there seems to be more Christians in the Turkish empire than Mahometans, especially in their European territories, who have this happiness, also, that they are never pressed, or forced into their armies, but left to follow their several occupations, while the Turkish gentlemen take the honour of defending their country, and making foreign conquests, entirely on themselves.

The goods imported from Turkey, are raw furs, carpets, goats-hair, mohair-yarn, goat-wool, cotton-wool, and yarn, dimitties, burdets, chagrin-fkins, cordovants, blue, red, and yellow, coffee, rhubarb, turpentine, opium, gum-lenega, terra lemnia, china-root, and a boundance of other drugs, wine, oil, figs, raisins, dates, almonds, piftachio-nuts, alum, vitriol, box-wood, bees-wax, and Saffron, &c.

The Grand Seignior, or emperor of the Turks, is absolute, and his throne hereditary; at least it is confined to one family; for though the Janizaries, who are his guards, frequently depose their sovereign, when he happens to prove unsuccessful, or his administration does not please them, they usually advance his nearest relation to the throne. And though the Grand Seignior exercises an unlimited authority over the inhabitants of the Seraglio, and his bafas and officers, as well as over his Christian

subjects; yet the Turkish gentlemen, who have no places, or dependence on the court, enjoy their liberties and properties as much, as if they lived # THE TRAVELS OF

lived under a limited monarchy, if not more; for they pay no taxes to the government: and should the Grand Signior attempt to tax them or change their customs, he would run the hazard of being deposed.

His Baffas, governors, and officers of state, and even the Janizaries, and other inhabitants of the Seraglio, are all the children of Christian parents, taken in war, or purchased, and who have probably been baptized, and educated by the Turks in the Mahometan religion; so that, in reality, the Turkish empire is governed (under the Grand Signior) by the children of Christians.

The Turks have always very numerous armies on foot; but their chief dependance is on their Janizaries, who have been bred in the Seraglio, and exercised in military discipline from their infancy, of whom there are 25,000 in actual pay. There may be, probably, in the empire one hundred thousand that bear the name of Janizaries, but there are not enrolled with the others; the Serdar in every province, who has the command of the Janizaries in its, frequently abuses his office, and will take any man into that body, who desires to purchase the privilege of committing outrages with impunity, and screen himself from justice; for a Janizary is accountable to none but his own officers, whatever violence he commits.

The Spahis, or beft Turkish horfemen, are bred up in martial exercizes, as the Janizaries are, and are a very formidable body; besides which, there are great bodies of forces in every province, which constitute their numerous armies. But their multitudes are frequently the occasion of their defeat, charging in too much confusion; though the Baffa Bonneval, it is said, has prevailed on some of their troops to submit to French discipline, of which they made great advantage in their last German war, recovering a great extent of country which they had loft, fourth of the Danube.

Their naval forces are not so considerable as might be expected in such extensive dominions, situate on several seas, and abounding in commodious harbours; but their neglect of navigation and foreign commerce is the true reason why they can never find failers to man a great fleet, if they should ever build one.

The Grand Signior's revenues arise by customs and other duties on merchandise; by a capitation tax on the Christians in his dominions, and by the sums paid by the tributary princes, and the prenfents made by all his officers, and ministers on their advancement, and in

2. Germany is situate between five and nineteen deg. of eaf long, and between forty-five and fifty-five degrees of north lat. bounded by the German ocean, Denmark and the Baltic-sea on the north; by Poland and Hungary (if we include Bohemia) on the eaf; by Switzerland and the Alps, which separate it from Italy, on the fourth; and by the dominions of France and the Netherlands on the weft; from which it is separated by the three following rivers; viz. the Rhine, Mofelle and Maes.

It is divided into ten circles, three whereof lie on the north; viz. (1) the circle of Upper Saxony, (2) the circle of Lower Saxony, and (3) the circle of Weftphalia.

Three on the fourth; viz. (4) the circle of Austria, (5) the circle of Bavaria, and (6) the circle of Subia.

Three about the middle; viz. (7) the circle of Franconia, (8) the circle of the Upper Rhine, (9) the circle of the lower Rhine.

1. The circle of Burgundy, or Belgium, which confiscated the duchty of Burgundy and the seventeen provinces of the Netherlands; but the last have long been detached from the empire.

There are in Germany upwards of 300 sovereign princes and states; most of them arbitrary in their respective territories. 1. The emperor. 2. the 9 electors. 3. The ecclesiastical princes, confitting of archbishops, bishops, abbots and abbesses. 4. Secular princes confitting of dukes, marquises, counts, landgraves, earls and barons. 5. Free cities, which are either imperial, or hans-towns. The imperial cities are sovereign states, and send their deputies, or representatives to the general diets, or parliaments of the empire. The hans-towns are also sovereign states, not different from the other imperial cities at present, but were about two hundred years ago, allied, or confederated for their mutual defence, and the protection of their trade, and at first confitted only of the great # CORNELIUS LEBRUN.

great sea-port towns on the German ocean, or the Baltic sea, and near the mouths of their great rivers, but afterwards they took in many inland cities into their alliance, monopolized most of the trade of Europe, and were a most formidable maritime power.

Germany is generally a level country towards the north and east, confining of a barren land, or marsh; on the fourth, it is encumbered with the mountains of the Alps; but in the middle of the country there is a variety of hills, valleys, fruitful fields, and meadows; especially along the banks of their great rivers, the Danube, Rhine, &c. Abundance of fine cities, cattle, and palaces, adorn it; and it is much more populous than France.



Charlemain, the son of Pepin, king of France, laid the foundation of the German empire, in the year 800, being then sovereign of Italy, and great part of Spain and the fourth of Germany as well as France; the empire being afterwards divided amongst the posterity of Charlemain, the sovereign of Germany and Italy, only retained the title of emperor, the princes of the empire being then his vassals.

The imperial crown was hereditary for three hundred years after Charlemain, when the pope, to lessen the imperial authority and advance his own, incited the German princes to alter the constitution, and render the imperial crown elective. And during the struggles between the emperor and the pope for superiority, several sovereign states and principalities were erected in Italy and Germany, which claimed an independency on either.

The emperors, after the hereditary line was broke, were at first elected by the body of the people, which occasioned some confusion, the nobility and great officers of state excluded the common people from their share in the election, and chose the emperor themselves, and the number of electors was at length reduced to seven, viz. the archbishop of Mentz, Trier, and Cologne, the king of Bohemia, the duke of Saxony, the palgrave, or prince palatine of the Rhine, and the Marquis of Brandenburg; to whom the dukes of Bavaria and Hanover have been since added.

But notwithstanding the imperial dignity was elective, the Austrian family found means to continue it in that house for 300 years, till, for want of male issue of the house of Austria, the elector of Bavaria was chosen emperor, in the year 1742; who, contending for the hereditary dominions of the house of Austria, brought himself into great difficulties, ruined his native country of Bavaria, and after a short and troublesome reign, died in his own capital on the ninth day of January in the year 1745.

The emperor is now chosen by the nine electors on a demise, unless the king of the Romans hath been chosen in the preceding reign, and then he succeeds of course.

The emperor is the fountain of honour in Germany, and disposer of almost all places and honours, civil and military, except those that are hereditary; as the great chancellor, the treasurer, &c. which are rather honorary, than lucrative posts.

By the golden bull, the person elected emperor ought to be a Christian prince of German extraction, and 28 years of age, and is obliged to sign a capitulation, which the electors present him, before he is installed; by which he promises that he will maintain the rights and privileges of the electors, princes, and states of the empire; that he will not alienate the lands or revenues of the crown; and that he will not introduce foreign forces, or employ foreigners in his service.

The emperor's ordinary revenue arises from the crown-lands, fines, forfeitures, and confiscations, and he is heir-general to all the princes and nobility of the empire, that have no heirs male.

There is also a tax called Roman months, to which all the princes and states contribute a certain proportion for the support of the government; and all extraordinary taxes are raised, and forces for the defence of the empire maintained, by the several electors, princes, and states, at their own expense; or by taxes raised by the diet, or general assembly of the electors, princes, and states of the empire.

They are well able to raise and pay 500,000 men, and were they unanimous, would be an over-match for France by land; but this is never happens. The French, when they enter into war with Germany, ever corrupt some of the princes of the empire, and bring them over to their party; or incite the Turk, or Swede, to make a diversion in their favour.

The diet, or parliament of the empire, consists of the emperor, the nine electors, the ecclesiastical and secular princes of the empire, and the deputies of the towns, who constitute the legislature, to whose laws all the princes and states are subject; but yet every elector, prince, and state, are sovereigns in their respective territories, where the diet, or the supreme courts of judicature do not interpose; for there are two such councils; one called, the Aulic council, the other, the Chamber of Triers; each consisting of fifty members of the fifth quality; some, appointed by the emperor; others, # THE TRAVELS OF

thers, by the electors; and the rest, by the several circles.

The emperor's revenues, as emperor, are not very great; but, then he is at no charge in the administration of the government, or maintaining forces. These are provided for by the empire. And the Austrian emperors had very considerable revenues, from their hereditary countries; which, with the disposal of all places of profit, gave them such an influence, that they were able to keep the possession of the imperial throne for three hundred years, and might have kept it much longer, if there had not been a defect of male issue.

The Germans are much divided in their opinions of religion; the principal sects are those of the Papists, the Lutherans, and Calvinists; there are also, Independents, Anabap-

tists, Quakers, and Christians of every other Denomination; and a multitude of Jews, in all their great Towns.

The emperor is always a Roman Catholic; Saxony, and Brandenburg, are most of them Lutherans, but some Calvinists; Bavaria and Austria are Catholics; the Palatinate, and the upper and lower Rhine, are a mixture of all denominations; the imperial cities are most of them Lutherans, and some Calvinists; the two last hate and persecute another, more than they do the Papists. At the treaty of Munster, or Westphalia, in the year 1648, the protestants were not only tolerated, but put on the same footing with the papists, in their respective territories. But from the reformation, till that time, they were almost always at war, and some hundred thousands of Christians butchered in the quarrel.

When the Protestant religion was established by that treaty, several archbishopricks and abbies were secularized, converted into duchies, or lay-fees, and applied to the support of the government, with the revenues of all church lands.

The Protestant clergy of Germany, have neither glebe, or tithes, but depend on the bounty of their respective governments for their support. Instead of bishops, the Lutherans have superintendents; and the Calvinist churches are governed by their prebys, or parish-priests, and elders, who are all equal, and claim no superiority over any of their brethren.

Germany produces corn, wine, oil, sheep; black cattle, and an excellent breed of horses, fit for the coach, or army, and with these the French usually remount their cavalry. The country also produces great quantities of flax and hemp, and they have abundance of good timber; nor should their bacon, beer, and mum, be forgot; they have also mines of iron, copper, and silver, lead, salt, coal, vitriol, quick-flver, nitre, ocre, and fulphur; and some of the best medicinal springs and baths in Europe; as at Pymont, Baden, Aix-

la-Chapelle, &c. They have also plenty of deer, fowl, and fowl; and their orchards are full of the best fruits.

The people are excellent mechanics, and chymists; the invention of printing, and gun-powder, is generally ascribed to them; clocks, watches, locks, swords, and fire-arms, they have also brought to great perfection; and they have, in a manner, monopolized the manufacture of tin-plates, or white iron. They are reckoned good artists at painting and engraving, and are excellent engineers.

They carry on their foreign trade, by the rivers Rhine, Elbe, Oder, Wefer, and the Baltic-sea; particularly, from the ports of Hamburg, Lubeck, Bremen, Stettin, &c. and by land, with Italy, Switzerland, France, and Holland; they export a good deal of linen, particularly to England; and what we call Dutch toys, come from hence; provisions, and consequently labour, is very cheap, or it could never turn to account, to employ their hands in such trifles.

1. Sweden, fee p. 68. n. kk.
2. Tartary, fee p. 18. n. i.
3. Perlia, fee p. 64. n. o.
4. Caipian Sea, fee p. 66. n. p.
5. Egypt, fee p. 33. n. a.

CHAP. # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

## **CHAP. XXXI.**

Public Rejoicings on Account of the Khan, or Governor of Samachi's Reception of a rich Royal Vestment from the King, his Master. A Description of the City of Samachi, and a particular Account of the Ruins of a Spacious Fortrefs, formerly erected on the Mountain of Kata-Kuluftahan.

ON our arrival at Samachi, we were informed, that the Khan, or governor of that city, had just received a rich royal vestment, as a mark, or testimony, of his indulgent master's favour and esteem; upon which joyful occasion, he had ordered great public rejoicings to be made, and continued for four days successively.

When we first arrived at this place, the weather was so excessively hot, as no rain had happened to fall for the two or three years then left past, there was a kind of dearth, or a great scarcity at least of all manner of provisions. A single loaf, at that time sold for ten-pence, which, for near a hundred years before, had never been valued at above the price of two-pence. All the other necessaries of life were as dear in proportion, and a fowl, which usually before was sold in market for three half-pence, could not then be purchased under six-pence, or five-pence at the lowest.

All goods, or commodities, of what nature or kind soever, that passed through this city were strictly opened and examined; and several custom-house officers made it their constant practice to visit the caravanerai, where they have a commodious apartment for that purpose. They demand, it is true, no fee for their visitation; but the passenger pays fifty-pence for every camel's load; whereas formerly a florin only was demanded. This however, relates only to such merchandizes as are imported for (a) Persia; and as the carriage is for the most part by horses, the bales are obliged to be diminished one half at least; a horse-load amounts to no more than four hundred weight at most; whereas that of a camel would sometimes be between eight and nine hundred.

On the fifth instant, the Khan, or governor, repaired, by eight in the morning, to a garden, at near a quarter of a league's distance from the city, in order to dress himself, and make his public appearance in the rich royal robes he had received as a mark of distinction from his master as above-mentioned. As there had been great preparations made for the carrying this public rejoicing into execution, I went with several of my friends and acquaintance to have a sight of that solemn procession. In the first place, a great number of persons on horse-back moved forwards, with ten camels after them, each decorated with two little scarlet standards, one to the right, and the other to the left-side. On six of these left beasts were kettle-drums, that is, in the Persian language, Tambalpaes, four of which were of a larger size than common, and pointed at the bottom, which a drummer, who rode on one of the other camels, struck from time to time, as he saw most convenient. At proper intervals, four trumpeters stoop on the road-side to sound their Karamas, or what we call their trumpets, which are exceedingly long, and wide at the bottom; the music whereof, as they call it, was, at least in my ears, very disagreeable, and perfect discord. At some distance from these, marched four haut-boys, or as they call them, Karana-nifers. The camels were likewise succeeded

A rich royal vestment sent, as a present, to the Khan of Samachi and the rejoicings thereupon.

Provisions excellently dear. # THE TRAVELS OF

ed by twenty musqueteers, all in different drestes; some in green, some purple, and others grey; and after these appeared, first of the Khan's, or Governor's domestick servants; and after them, their master himself, mounted on a fine chestnut-horse, caparison'd in a very rich and elegant manner. This nobleman, who was dressed in a short kind of mantle, and with a large turban on his head, after the Persian fashion, was followed by four eunuchs; some tawny, and others, indeed, perfectly black; all richly dressed, and well mounted. After these came several of the most considerable magistrates of the city, with divers others, on horse-back; after them appeared nine leaded mule-horses belonging to the Khan, all richly caparisoned; with each a small drum affixed to the right-side of the saddle. Most of those gentlemen, who were persons of distinction, had little drums likewise, which they struck occasionally with their fingers. The greatest part of them, like that of the Khan's, were made of silver. There were, moreover, besides all these, a great number of folders ranged in order all along the garden on the right-hand towards the mountains, each of whom had a feather in his cap; and, in short, two horses, on which were two men, who were covered all over from head to foot, with a kind of gown, which was quilted, and wrought in a great variety of colours, representing monkeys. And as they had been well broke, and made familiar with the antic tricks and vagaries of that particular creature, they attracted the eyes of all the numerous spectators upon them, and kept at the distance of twenty paces at least one from another, each with attendant musicians near them. As soon as they had reached the garden before-mentioned, the Khan, and the other illustrious personages who accompanied him, dismounted at the fore-gate; which was very spacious and built with stone. There he invested himself with the royal robe, and in about half an hour afterwards remounted, and returned to the town in the same order as he went out of it. This retinue was of a considerable length, and of gold brocade; and his head was then adorned with a golden cap, in the form of a crown. This cavalcade was attended by a great number of menial servants likewise on horse-back, who rode and pranced about on each side of the procession; some with a smoking-bottle, or kaljan, as they call it, in their right hand, for the use of their master; which bottles are composed of glass, embellished with either gold or silver at top, and are exceedingly neat and pretty; others of them carried a small pot of fire, at the pommel of their saddles, for their master to light their pipes with; upon this occasion, however, there was no tobacco smoked.

Several of these personages of distinction amused themselves on the road, with darting the ayner, as they call it, which is a kind of cane. Thousands had ran out of the city in order to be spectators of this grand cavalcade; some on horse-back, but more on foot; a sight, which struck the eye, indeed, agreeably enough, on account of the variety of objects; others again flocked to see the show, from the adjacent villages, with which the country here abounds, from the tents of the (b) Arabians, and from the gardens that lie on all

fides. The Khan, before he invested himself with the royal robes, covered his head with the gold cap, or crown, just before-mentioned, which was decorated with a great number of jewels, or precious stones, clofed at top, and carried at a small distance before him on horse-back. This cap, as they would insinuate, represents the arms of the prophet Ali, who, when living, wore much such another. When the Khan had put on his robes, he uncovered his head again, which was carried before him, as he went back, as well as it was at the time of his coming. This procession took up at least two hours.

In the evening some rain fell, which continued falling, without intermission, till noon the next day. This accident made the road so exceedingly bad, that it was with some difficulty the horses got forward; it was fine weather, however, from the # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

the seventh to the tenth day of the month. In which time, there was an earthquake generally felt throughout the city; and tho' it did no greater damage, as it happened, yet it terrified several of the inhabitants to that degree, that they fled from their houses for fear of their falling, and lay out in the open fields.

On the eleventh day, I drew a view, or prospect of the city from a hill, which was situate to the fourth ward, and from whence it makes the most advantageous figure, as the reader may perceive in the plate (No. 38.) annexed.

The city is considerably longer than it is broad; and as it has no mosques, towers, or pompous edifices to boast of, I have only distinguished the Khan's palace by the capital letter (A) the Caravanera of (c) Circaffia, which stands on the east side of the town, by the letter (B) and a hill, whereon are the ruins of an ancient fortref by the letter (C.) This hill lies to the north-west of the city, and we shall have occasion to speak more amply of it in another place; as also of another, which lies on one side of it, and is considerably higher. The city stands on the declivity of a hill; is a league, or thereabouts in circumference; and all open, the walls having unfortunately been thrown down by an earthquake about five and thirty years before we came to view it. Though there are no superb edifices to be met with in the city, yet there are several mosques; but then, as they are very small as well as low, they can make no conspicuous figure; nay, they are not seen at all at any considerable distance from the town. These mosques, they distinguish by the name of Mu-zejits. Two of them in particular have small domes into which they enter by a court. They have no decorations within, but a place erected in a circular form, and full of feats.

The houses in this city are very irregularly built, part with stone, and part with earth; are flat at top, and make a poor, mean figure without; and so remarkably low, that a tall man may reach the roof

of one of them by extending his arm to its full stretch. Most of them, notwithstanding this their contemptible out-side, are neat enough

within; and are adorned with carpets, and other things of the like nature. The walls are well plaistered, and exceedingly white, with some streaks of various colours. Some of them, indeed, are two stories high, and railed at top.

The' that of the Khan, or Governor, stands on a rising-ground; yet it makes no great figure on the out-side. In this city are likewise to be seen the ruins of a considerable spacious mofch, to which there were two or three domes belonging, and which seem to have formerly made a handsome appearance. This building is a stone one, and well compacted together, the most antique, and the most worthy of notice in the whole city, where are likewise divers other ruins to be met with here and there. At the foot of the hill, where the Khan keeps his court, there is a spacious market-place, where they sell all sorts of provisions; but fruits, in greater plenty than any other commodity whatsoever. Though this is the district, or quarter peculiarly appropriated to those who are professed braziers; yet full there are divers other shops, and more particularly cook-shops where all sorts of provisions are to be purchased ready draft. At one end of this market-place are the bazars, which are full of shops likewise; some for goldsmiths, some for tailors; others for shoemakers, and the like. Some of these shops are covered with stone, and others with wood; and compose divers streets. There you have coffee-houses, and there are the caravanseras, but these have no prospect of the streets, and you enter into them through a great door. There are twenty or more of them, whereof those that belong to the natives of (d) India are the finest of all, and built with stone; and are, moreover, three or four and twenty feet in height. That which we refided in was quadrangular, and had forty rooms on the lower floor. There are the places where they sell the most valuable kinds of merchandise; for there are no great shops in the bazars for the sale of any commodity whatsoever. This city is known and distinguished by several names; some call it Samachi, some Sumathia, and the Perfians themselves call it Schamachi. It stands in H h

about # THE TRAVELS OF

about forty degrees and fifty minutes of northern latitude, and is the capital of the province of Shirwan, or Servan, which is part of the ancient (e) Media, to the north-north-west of Perfia; to the westward of the province of (f) Gilan, and to the northward of that of (g) Hyrcania. This city, which is about four and twenty leagues from the (h) Caspian sea, was first built by a certain king whose name was Shirwan Shah. The passage over the mountains has so many turnings and windings, that we spent no less than four and twenty hours in getting over them, and were fix days in the performance of our whole journey with camels, notwithstanding it



may be done in three with horses. From hence to (i) Derbent, if you go over the mountains called Lahati, is much about forty leagues.

The Khan acts as a sovereign in this city, and has only a kind of burgomaster under him, who is called there a Kalantaer, and is invested with no power or authority; for his whole business consists in preparing a list of such subsidies as the country are indifferently obliged to supply the Khan with, who keeps in his palace, a kind of court of equity, and proper counsellors to attend it; as also an arsenal, which is provided with proper ammunition and divers pieces of cannon, two whereof are planted at the entrance to it, and are several times discharged on all solemn festivals, and other days of public rejoicings. He has, moreover, a body of horse consisting of no less than five hundred men, three hundred of whom serve him likewise in the capacity of foot-guards, and constantly attend him, whenever he makes his public appearance, or takes the royal diversion of hunting.

The Khan, who was in the sixth year of his reign (if we may be allowed to call it so) as to his person, is well set, a man of a graceful presence, though somewhat too slender, and his moustaches rather too long. He is distinguished there by the name of Allerwedikhan, and bears the additional title of Beglerbeg, or the Khan of Khans. He is a native (k) of Georgia, and a

christian by profession; some years before he was invested with this high post, he acted in the capacity of a gentleman of the bed-chamber to the king of Perfia, to whom his father made a present of him in his infancy, as is a customary practice amongst the Georgians. He is a descendant, as we were informed, of the ancient family of the Borgadians, who flourished some years before the nativity of our blessed Saviour, and were at that time Jews by profession.

The government of Samachi is one of the most considerable throughout the whole kingdom of Perfia, and its Khans, or governors, amass immense riches with more expedition, as well as more ease, than those who are possessed of any other public posts; and the principal reason is, because they levy such large subsidies on the country all round about them, and more particularly on Gilan, which abounds with silk, cotton, and saffron.

As to the soil of Samachi and the parts adjacent, it is exceedingly fertile, and produces excellent wine, both white and red; the former whereof is so prodigiously strong and heady, that there is no such thing as drinking it, till 'tis qualified with a small quantity of water. It abounds like a wife with a great variety of fruits, such as apples and pears; and towards Georgia, they are plentifully supplied with a particular species of a chestnut, the flavour

whereof is exceedingly delicious. In short, there is nothing wanting there but a greater number of inhabitants, to cultivate the lands.

Here are as fine horses as any country can boast of, and as fine cattle. All provisions likewise are to be procured here in plenty. Their meat in general is very fine, and they have abundance, not only of common poultry, but of all sorts of game, as well of the fur as of the feather; and all exceedingly cheap, especially during the winter season. And as to their bread, 'tis as good as any I ever tasted.

The town of Baku (the port whereof is an exceeding fine one) has within these few years been strongly fortified by the Persians, who took the advantage of the

His extensive power.

The foil of Samachi.

A fine port.

A description of his person, &c. # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

misconduct of one captain Meyer, of whom mention has been made in the course of these travels more than once. That commander injudiciously thought fit to demand a free entrance into that port for all such ships and vessels as should belong to his Czarina majesty, which alarmed the Persians to that degree, and filled them with such a jealous notion of his future intentions, that they came to an immediate resolution to fortify the place, and be prepared for his reception, in case of a second visit.

As the natives of (1) Moscovy, or Russia, had (for time immemorial) been indulged with a free admission into that port, the captain was advised by his best friends to avoid taking such an unguarded step; but their wife admonitions, it seems, had not the least influence over him.

It had been an easy matter, long before this, had it not been for this act of imprudence in that obdurate and headstrong commander, to have seized it, and indeed the whole country, even as far as the Kur and the Araxes, and secured it by timely fortifications, with only a very small body of men, as, in the sequel of this narrative, shall more fully and at large appear; for the inhabitants at that time were altogether incapable of making the least opposition; and had such prudent measures been taken, they would have proved very advantageous to his Czarina majesty.

This city of Baku is situated in the western part of Persia, in the country called Shirwan, upon the Caspian sea; and its ancient walls are still standing. There is no better nut-oil to be met with throughout the whole world, than what the inhabitants have here

and in the parts adjacent. There are two forts of it, indeed; one brown, and the other white; the former is exported to Gilan, and a hundred leagues beyond it into Persia; and the latter is carried almost to every nation. I have been very credibly informed, that at the distance of only two or three leagues from this place, the land is incessantly hot, and ever burning, which is occasioned by the vast quantity of salt-petre with which it is impregnated; that at the distance of

fifty leagues from the city of Samachi, there is another called Ganfie, which is four times larger than that, and full of fine, stone-buildings, though for the most part, indeed, but two stories high; that the streets there are very handsome and spacious; that their bazars, and caravanserais are exceedingly large; and that the palace where the governor resides is very grand and magnificent; that a fine river runs quite through the heart of the city; and that they abound with fine gardens and orchards; that their wines are exceedingly well-flavoured; that they have fruits of all sorts, and fena, cyprresses and pines in abundance: in short, that this city may, without the least partiality or injustice, be deemed one of the most considerable places throughout the whole Persian empire. This account I had confirmed to me not only by an ecclesiastic, a native of (m) France, who resides there; but by some Georgians likewise, who assured me, that in their country, now called Gurgistan, there are divers rivers, to which most foreigners are perfect strangers; such for instance, as the Allafan, which runs across the province Ghaget; the Legwie, whose waters roll along one side of the city called Cori, or Gorri; the Kifanni, which runs near a large moch, called Schetta; the Simma, whose spring or fountain-head is in (n) Turcomania, near the city called Angeltika; and the Iorri, that rises from the mountain, called Serikjes; the waters of all which empty themselves into the Kur; besides a considerable number of others, which are not distinguished by any particular name, or title whatsoever.

In a word, as I was very ambitious of gratifying my curiosity with respect to the antiquities of the once celebrated (o) Media, I repaired, on the thirteenth of August, to the mountain, called Kala-kulutahan, which stands about half a league to the north-west of this city. At the foot of this mountain I halted for a while, to take a survey, not only of the remains of the wall, but of the towers likewise of a very ancient fort there. Some of the round towers, indeed, are still in a tolerable condition, and entire enough. There are

The city of Ganfie.

The city of Baku.

The mountain of Kala-kulutahan.

Unknown rivers. # THE TRAVELS OF

some foundations also at a considerable distance from the ruins of the wall, still to be seen on the declivity of the hill towards the right-hand, between very large stones, which appear, as one goes down, above the ground. Towards the top, there were others on the left-hand, near the tower, and one upon the very summit of the hill, larger than all the rest. In No. 39 on the plate hereto annexed, the reader will have a perfect view of it. After this, I scrambled, by degrees, up the hill, though not without some danger as well as difficulty; and was several times obliged to desist for a while. After I had reached the summit, I perceived a subterraneous cavern, or vault, where people descend about seven or eight paces to the fourth, by a large arcade of smooth, massive stones, and such as are well-jointed; but at present it is filled, and full of rubbish. Over against this, towards the north-east, there is another arcade. This last is whole and entire; and the aperture, or mouth of it, strikes the heart with horror, when one looks down it; on account of its prodigious depth between the hills that encompass it; neither is there, on that fence, which is inaccessible, the leaf wall, or fence. These two arcades, by which people go down into this subterraneous cavern, are distant from each other about four and forty paces, or somewhat better. When one has once got down into the vault, there is a passage on the right-hand which is both short and narrow, and in which there is a kind of window, which looks upon the rock of this mountain. Over against this passage, there is another, but shorter than that, because this last place, which lies to the east, is at the very extremity of the mountain. When we go to the western side, we turn to the left, under an arcade, much in the nature of a gateway, but so very low, that the shortest man must stoop to get into a small apartment, from whence you move forwards to a second, much like the first, through a narrow alley, and from thence again into a third. All three of them, indeed, are well-vaulted. The wall, from whence these vaults, or caverns, frang, is, at the entrance, only five feet thick, but then as one goes farther on, it is eight at least. And these three distinct apartments are divided by small passages, one from the other. In the last it was so very dark, that I durst not venture to proceed any farther, especially as I had but one companion along with me, and as the way to the left, I found, was full of rubbish. However, I conjectured, and I believe not without just grounds, that most of these apartments, or caverns, ran through the mountain to the west and north-west, where it is of the greatest extent. I observed, moreover, that the walls of the vaults of those several passages, which are flat, were of the same breadth as the passages, and that at each end, they rested upon the walls; and that all the stones there were cemented, and joined well enough together; though not in so accurate and complete a manner, as those of the ancient structures, especially those at Rome (p) who were remarkably curious in that important article; and this is very visible even in their public ways, and more remarkably so than ordinary, in what is at this day remaining of that at (g) Naples, distinguished by the name of the Appian way. (r) Egypt likewise affords another instance of the delicacy of the

ancients in this particular, in the only one of the seven wonders of the world, which is now subfifting; I mean, the inner passages, by which people go up to the famous pyramids of that country, whereof I was the first who gave a particular description of them in my former travels. These flones, which are of a prodigious bulk, are so artfully cemented, or knit together, that the joints are not at all discernable, unless by a very curious eye; besides they are as finely polished as the most transparent looking-glass. Those, however, of which I am at present speaking, are abundantly more inaccurate and artlefs.

When I came away from these subterraneous caverns, I took the exact dimensions of the breadth of the hill, at the top; and where it was narrowest, I found it fifty paces only, but exactly fourcore to the north-west. There is a great well towards the middle of the mountain; but, notwithstanding my innate fondness for novelties, I durft not approach near enough to look down the side on't, for fear of falling into it; for, to all outward appearance, the attempt might have proved of fatal

---

*The delicacy of the Romans with regard to their stone-work*

*The danger of wells.* # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

fatal consequence. There was no other aperture, or opening, as I could find, besides this. The towers, with which the walls of the building upon the hill are flanked, even in those places where they stand nearest, are between threecore and ten and fourcore paces distant one from the other. This wall extends itself considerably lower, down about the mountain towards the east; where 'tis half a league at least in length, to the best of my knowledge and belief. We got down with much more ease than we climbed up; because, as we came back, we found out the right way. As we were going down, we saw the ruins of divers very spacious apartments between the wall below and the fortress above that was perfectly demolished, the stones whereof appeared only a small matter above the surface of the ground; there is no forming, however, any adequate idea of the bulk of the structure, but by the arcades above-mentioned. When, as we were returning, we arrived at the first wall, I drew the view (No. 40.) in the plate hereto annexed, not far distant from a tower, that is tolerably whole, though near abundance of other ruins. Some historians have made the following remark, viz. that the ruins were a mixture of wood and stone; but I found no such thing there; and I am fully convinced, that the stones in those ruins are joined together with nothing more than cement. Tho' this fortress, according to tradition, was thus ruined and demolished by Tamerlane the Great; yet, by the best information that I could procure, I cannot find any just grounds for giving credit to the truth of so precarious a story. As we were on our return from the mountain to the town, we saw a Turk dancing upon a rope in an

open field, who had a vast number of spectators round about him. Those who stood nearest to him gave what they thought proper to one of his companions, who was his collector in ordinary, whilst he amused the crowd to the best of his abilities; but he appeared to us to be no great equilibrist, or an adept in his profession.

## **Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.**

1. Persia, see p. 64. n. o.
2. Arabians, or Arabs, see p. 203. n. a.
3. Circaffia, see p. 199. n. g.
4. India (proper) the country first so denominated is situated between 66 and 92 degrees of east long. and between 7 and 40 degrees of north. lat. being bounded by Ufted Tartary, and Thibet on the north; by another part of Thibet, the kingdoms of Afem, Ava, and Pegu, on the east; the bay of Bengal, and the Indian ocean on the fourth, and by the same ocean, and Persia on the west; being about 200 miles in length, from north to south, and 1500 miles in breadth from east to west, where broadest, though the southern part of the peninsula is not 300 miles broad; all the countries within these limits being now subject or tributary to the Great Mogul. It is frequently called Indoflan, a name supposed to be derived from the river Indus; on its western frontiers. It is also called Mogulistan, from the imperial family now upon the throne, who derive their pedigree from Tamerlane, a Mogul, or Mogul Tartar. It

was the emperor Aurengzebe, who made a conquest of Golconda, Vifipour, and all the southern kingdoms of India, about the year 1685.

The Europeans had very little intercourse with India, till the year 1498, when the Portuguese discovered the way thither by sea, round the Cape of Good Hope, and they enjoyed that traffic without a rival till the year 1600, when the English and Dutch put in for a share of it; and these three nations have had their forts and factories on the continent of India ever since; but the Dutch have driven both the other from the spice-islands, and monopolized that trade these hundred years past.

The produce of the continent of India, and what the Europeans import from thence, is chiefly chints, calicoes, mufins, some silk and pepper, and diamonds; which are purchased by most nations with silver; but the Dutch frequently barter spices for them, which makes the India trade doubly advantageous to them.

The northern part of India is a temperate, healthful climate; the southern countries are too hot, especially when the hot wind blows in April and May; but they are refreshed with breezes #  
THE TRAVELS OF

breezes from the sea constantly about noon; for in the night, and early in the morning, the wind fets off the shore, and blows on the shore the rest of the day. The periodical rains visit them in June, and continue till October, which is the season for planting and sowing their lands towards the fourth, where they have scarce any other grain but rice. In the northern countries, they have good wheat, and almost all manner of grain; and in one port or other of the Mogul's dominions, every thing is produced that can make life desirable, except liberty; for though the subjects that are at a distance from court live as easily as under most monarchies, yet the Mogul is an absolute prince, and can command their lives and fortunes at pleasure.

The Blacks inhabit the southern part of India, and are a people but lately conquered; the complexion of those in the northern provinces is either white, or an olive; there are the governing part of the nation, and of the Mahometan religion; the rest are Pagans, and worship idols of various shapes; some very monstrous, part human, and part beast or fish; and there is scarcely any living animal but what they adore, particularly the ox and the monkey.

The Mogul's forces are computed to amount to 300,000 horse; some have called them a million; besides the forces of the Rajas, or tributary princes, who are obliged to attend the Mogul with their respective troops. In the fair season, the Mogul usually takes the field, and makes a tour about part of his dominions; and all manner of tradesmen, merchants and mechanics, follow the camp; inasmuch that there are scarce any persons left in the great towns: there are markets of all kinds in the camp, as in the best regulated towns; and when the time of the rains approaches, they return into the towns again.

The Mogul's annual revenue is computed to amount to between 40 and 50 millions of florins, arising by the produce of the foil, of which he is proprietor, as well as sovereign, and every one is obliged to pay such a rent as is required by his commissaries by duties and customs on merchandise; by forfeitures and cheats; being heir to all his great officers, and by pretexts, which are expected from all his governments, and those who have a dependence on him; and lastly, by the produce of the diamond mines of Golconda, which is not inconsiderable.

1. Media, the north east part of the modern Peria, in which the province of Aderbeitan, and some of Gilan, and Eyrac Agem were comprehended; the capital city whereof was Ecbatana, the present Tauris.

2. Gilan, east long. 48. lat. 47. a city of Peria in Asia, in the province of Gilan, situate 340 miles north of Ispahan, and 240 miles west of Afterbat.
3. Hyrcania, the provinces of Peria, in Asia, which lie on the southern shore of the Caspian sea, formerly went under that name; and the Caspian was called the Hyrcanian sea.
4. Caspian sea, see p. 66. n. g.
5. Derbent, see p. 198. n. d.
6. Georgia, in Asia, see p. 107. n. d.
7. Mofcov, or Russia, see p. 7. n. c.
8. France, received its name from the Franks, a German people, who inhabited the banks of the rivers Maine and Sali, and made a conquest of this country, then called Gaul, in the fifth century.

Modern France is situate between 5 degrees west, and 7 degrees east long, and between 43 degrees and 51 degrees north lat, being bounded by the English channel and the Austrian Netherlands on the north; by Germany, Switzerland, Savoy, and Piedmont in Italy on the east; by the Mediterranean sea and the Pyrenean mountains, which separate it from Spain, on the fourth; and by the bay of Biscay on the west; being almost a square of 540 miles on each side; except that Brittany makes it something irregular, by extending farther to the westward than any other province.

It was an exceeding populous country, till the numbers were lessened by persecution, wars, and famine. Their numbers, which were formerly computed to amount to nineteen millions, scarce exceed fifteen millions at present.

The air is the most temperate of any country in Europe; and the foil produces corn, wine, oil, and flax, in great abundance.

It is extremely well situated for a foreign trade, as it lies on the ocean, the English channel, and the Mediterranean sea, and is watered by a great many large and navigable rivers, particularly the Seine, the Loire, the Garonne, the Rhone, the Soane, and of late the Rhine, which for some hundreds of years now separates their dominions from Germany.

The stature of the natives is not large; but they are generally men of bright parts, and the most active and enterprising of any people in Europe; but so restless and impatient of ease, that they are constantly engaged in wars abroad, and law-suits at home; extremely devoted to their # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.



their prince, though he rules them with a rod of iron, and treats them as slaves; and so opinionated of themselves, that they look upon all other nations as barbarians. They value themselves much on their good-breeding, their complaisance, and unlimited professions of friendship to all they converse with, though they mean nothing by it, and may juffly be looked upon as a parcel of genteel hypocrites. They have practised their cringes, and impertinent ceremonies fo longs, that now nobody regards them.

Their manufactures of linen, woollen, silk, and lace, are vastly great, and their foreign trade to Spain, Italy, Turkey, and to the east and west Indies, is prodigiously encroached of late years; but no trade is more advantageous to them than that of Britain, from whence they receive chiefly treasure for the product of that country, viz. their wines, silks, linen and lace.

The kingdom was formerly divided into twelve provinces, which had each of them their parliaments, whose consent was necessary to the making of laws, and raising money; but the cardinals Richlieu and Mazarin made their matters absolute foreigners, deprived their parliaments of their share in the government, and they are only assembled at this day, to pass the arrests, or laws, or laws, that the king is pleased to send them, which none durst refuse. But in civil causes, these parliaments are still the last resort where the court does not interpose. These parliaments consist of a certain number of pre-fidents, and inferior judges; who purchase their places openly; and the crown makes a considerable revenue by such sales. The parliament of Paris is much the most considerable. Hither the king frequently comes in person, and sees his royal acts recorded. This parliament consists of the dukes and peers of France, besides the ordinary judges, and takes cognizance of all offences, committed by peers, where the king does not issue a special commission to try them. The other parliaments are excluded from taking cognizance of any causes which relate to the crown, or the peers of the realm.

As France is divided into 25 general governments at present, over every one of these an officer, called an intendant, is appointed by the king, who seems to have a power of controuling the governor, and all other officers of justice, and presides over the receiver-general of his generality.

The whole number of parishes, contained in all the generality, amounts to 38,502, in which is comprehended 1,585,112 families, liable to pay the taille, or land tax, which is only paid by those who hold by lease tenure, and trade-fmen; the nobility, clergy, and gentry, are exempted from this tax. The burghesses of Paris, and some other free cities also, are exempted from the land-tax.

There is another tax, called the taillon, payable by the same persons as the taille, which amounts to about a third part only of the former. There is another tax, called the aids, which arises from the customs and duties on all merchandise, except salt.

The gabelles, are the taxes arising by salt; The other taxes are the capitation, or poll-tax; the tenths of all estates, offices, and employments, the fifteenth penny, from which neither the nobility nor clergy are exempted; and the tenths and free-gifts of the clergy, who are allowed to tax themselves; but it is expected that they should pay as much as the laity at least; and lastly, the crown-lands, rents, fines and forfeitures, bring in a considerable revenue. All which are computed at fifteen millions sterling per annum; besides which, vast sums are collected by raising and lowering the coin at pleasure, by compounding debentures, and government bills, and other oppressive means.

The kingdom is but one great farm to the crown. The whole produce of the country is in the king's power, if he thinks fit to demand it; though he chuses to take it in the accustomed way, that he may make no more malcontents than he cannot avoid; and were there never so many, he has always armies on foot, sufficient to suppress any insurrections. In time of peace, he has frequently 200,000 men in pay; and in time of war, sometimes 400,000. Many of whom are foreigners; viz. Swifs, Germans, Scotch, Irish, Swedes and Danes.

The religion of France is Roman catholic; but they seem less devoted to the pope, than any other nation of the communion; and have not as yet admitted the inquisition among them.

The protestants fought for their religion and liberty many years; and at length obtained a toleration, by a royal edict called the edict of Nantz; but this being repealed by Lewis XIV. Anno 1685, a cruel persecution ensued, which compelled some hundreds of thousands of them to quit the kingdom, to the unpeakable prejudice of this kingdom; for they did not only lose the most industrious part of the inhabitants, but the refugees set up the French manufactories in every country where they came, which very much lessened the demand for French merchandise.

The crown of France is hereditary; but by their # THE TRAVELS OF

their falique law, no female is suffered to inherit; neither is their royal line of that duration as in England; for in the pedigree of their kings, we find, that there have been three families on the throne, viz. the Merovingian, the Carolovian, and the Caputine, which had no relation to one another; the second usurping on the first, and the third upon the second, which is the present reigning family.

The eldest son of France is always styled the Dauphin. The new conquests, or acquisitions, that France has made to her dominions the last hundred years, are those of Alsace and Lorraine, on the side of Germany; those of Artois, the Cambres, part of Flanders, Hainault and Luxembourg, on the side of the Netherlands; and Rouffillon, anciently a part of Catalonia, on the side of Spain.

1. Turcomania, the ancient Armenia, is now a province of Asiatic Turkey, bounded by Persia on the east, by Diarbek and Curdeftan (that is, the ancient Mesopotamia and Assyria) on the south; and by Natolia on the west and north. The capital city is Erzerum.
2. Rome, see p. 108, n. g.
3. Naples, city, east long. 15. lat. 41. the capital of the kingdom of Naples, in Italy, situated 140 miles south east of Rome, and 15 degrees east of London; being seven miles in circumference within the walls, and as much more, if the suburbs are included, and contains about 300,000 inhabitants.

It stands on an eminence, rising gradually from the sea to a moderate height, on a fine bay of the sea of thirty miles diameter; and the islands that lie before it form a secure and commodious harbour.

On the east, there is a large plain, on the further side whereof is mount Vesuvius, and on the west a high hill, on which stands the castle of St. Elmo, and a Carthusian monastery, from whence we are entertained with the finest prospect in the world.

It is seldom cold here in winter; and in summer, the cool breezes from the mountains and the sea make the hottest part of it very tolerable; nor is the sea subject to storms; and they have to hold a shore, that large ships may lie close to the quays.

Corn, wine, and oil, are excellent here in their kind, and exceedingly plentiful; and the air is pure, serene and healthy.

The buildings are magnificent and elegant, and inhabited by people of distinction; nor can there be, in all respects, a more desirable situation, did not the eruptions of Vesuvius, and earthquakes, sometimes disturb their quiet, as well as the frequent revolutions observed in this kingdom; for it being so desirable a country, the neighbouring powers are perpetually contending for it: Germany, France, Spain, have alternately had the dominion of it. It seldom has the same sovereignty for forty years successively.

The dignified clergy, and nobility of this kingdom are very numerous; there are, 'tis said, 25 archbishops, 125 bishops, 300 princes, dukes, marquises, and earls. The clergy possess one third of the kingdom; the crown, the nobility, and gentry the rest; the

peasants have scarce any thing they can call their own; they are subjects and vassals to their respective lords, manure their lands, plant their vine-yards, and olive-yards, and are allowed only a subsistence, sufficient to enable them to perform their daily drudgery, and receive justice in their lords courts, in cafes that are not capital; inasmuch that, every lord, or gentleman, who is proprietor of the soil, is sovereign of the people, who live upon his estate.

Though they abound in silk; yet that manufacture is not great; they send most of it abroad unwrought; and all the merchandise and produce of this rich soil is carried abroad in foreign shipping, they having but few ships of their own; or, indeed, merchants, the proprietors of the lands selling the produce of their respective estates to foreigners.

Many of the natives being of Spanish extraction, follow the Spanish modes, and clothe themselves in black, which makes the silk manufacture the less.

They have a numerous militia, the nobility and gentry holding their lands by military tenures; but these are little depended upon, and seldom called out, the king usually maintaining 15,000 regular troops in time of peace, and can raise twice that number in time of war. They had no men of war lately, but are beginning to build some; and they have a fleet of armed galleys.

The revenues of the crown are computed to amount to one million sterling per annum, which arise from a composition with the nobility and gentry for certain sums, in lieu of their personal services; from a duty on houses; and almost a general excise.

It was a tax upon fruits which the meaner people live on, that occasioned the memorable insurrection under Maffinello; and it seems fruit has been remitted from fines; those who are most are the Genevese and other effluviates in this country; a numerous.

Naples had been governed by the German vice-roys, till Don Juan, Spain's second son, was forced by the united powers of Europe to renounce the crown in the year 1724. He might defend his possession if he could obtain the affections of the people; the gentle administration.

The crown claims a powerful and free authority to the clergy and the rest of the people; but the church thinks the king's power to be free; and the king is not powerful in his own right.

The clergy are not taxed, which is proportional on the livery at least.

1. Egypt, see p. 33.



facilitated the march of their armies, and the transportation of their military train, whenever choice or necessity called upon them to take up arms.

In making these roads there was no difficulty too great for the Romans to surmount; they cut through, and levelled mountains, filled up valleys, drained morasses, raised cause-ways, and threw bridges over rivers. Nor was their attention merely confined to the making these ways; they considered the repair and maintenance of them as a matter of the last importance.

The three most famous were the Via Appia, Via Flaminia, and Via Æmilia. The most noble, however, in all respects, was the Via Appia, which is generally thought to have derived its name from one Appius, who was the author of it, and the very fame ingenious gentleman who invented their Cloaēcæ, or common sewers.

This Via Appia (for this alone we shall confine our present remarks) which was at first carried only from Rome to Capua, and afterwards continued as far as Brundisium, situated upon the Adriatic Gulf, is described in the ancient itineraries, and mentioned by Horace, in the elegant description which he gives us of his journey from Rome to Brundisium; as also, by several other of the ancient writers, as Cicero, Livy, Strabo, Appian, Procopius, &c. Some moderns likewise have treated of it; but none of them have examined it so fully, and with that accuracy and exactness as one Signior Pratilli, who has taken an actual survey of it throughout its whole extent from Rome to Brundisium; and to his elaborate and judicious description of it, not long since published, we shall be entirely indebted for the following extract; not doubting but that the generality of our readers, (short and imperfect as it may be) will look upon it with an eye of indulgence.

Our author then, in the first place, observes, that the whole extent of this high-way was not made all at once. Appius Claudius, says he, who was Censor in the year of Rome 443, made that part which lies between Rome and Capua; and so expensive was even that first attempt, that he thereby perfectly exhausted the public treasure.

The Romans, however, having some time after that defeated the Samnites, and extended their frontiers, continued this road (expensive as it had been) as far as Beneventum, where a Roman colony was planted in the confusihip of Appius Claudius Craffius, son of the Censor, K k k and # THE TRAVELS OF

and in the year of Rome 485. The Mestians, Tarrentines, and other people of that part of Italy, being afterwards, about the year 490, brought under subjection to the Romans, the work was once more resumed, and carried on as far as Brundufium, which then became

a celebrated port for the common passage out of Italy into Greece and Asia, and was made a Roman colony in the year 510, during the consulship of Torquatus and Plautius.

Notwithstanding this high-way was originally fabricated with the utmost firmness and solidity; yet it was very considerably improved and beautified, in the year of Rome 631, by Caius Sempronius Gracchus, who repaired the military roads in Italy, and set up all along them military pillars, on which the distances from mile to mile were marked. Besides these ornaments, he placed several blocks of stone by the sides of the high-ways, for the repose of travellers, and to serve as steps to assist those who travelled on horse-back, in mounting and dismounting their horses.

Julius Cæsar was at great expense in maintaining this road, and actually undertook, and began to drain the marshes of Pomptina; which work was finished in the reign of Augustus. This prince considerably repaired that part of the road which lies near Capua.

The emperors Vespasian and Domitian were likewise at great pains upon the same account; and Nerva expended great sums in repairing it, as appears by inscriptions upon some of the military pillars, which have been found in the marshes of Pomptina.

The emperor Trajan completed the work, begun by his predecessors, continued this road as far as Brundisium, and repaired another public way, which lay between that place and Beneventum.

Caracalla repaired the Via Appia for the length of one and twenty miles towards Terracina and Fondi; another part of this way, lying between Liris and Sinuessa, was repaired in the reign of Maximianus Herculius.

And lastly, Theodoret, king of the Goths, caused nineteen miles in length of the canal (Decennunium) which ran along the Via Appia between Tré Ponti and Terracina, to be repaired, in order to drain off the waters from the marshes of Pomptina, as we learn from an

antient inscription, still preserved at Terracina. That part of the Via Appia, says our author, which lies between Rome and Capua, appears to have been paved with large and flat stones, cut out, and jointed together, with amazing art and solidity. This pavement was raised in the middle, from whence it was sloped gradually to the sides; upon which were parapets of free stone for the convenience of foot-passengers.

Though the breadth of this high-way was not equal, indeed, in all places; yet it was every where sufficient for two chariots to drive abreast. As, on the one hand, it nowhere exceeded five and thirty

palms; for on the other it was in no place less than twenty-five. And its whole length, reckoned from Rome to Brundisium aforefaid, was 364 Roman miles, according to the following computation.

From Rome To Aricia — 16 To Appii Forum — 26 Ad Medias — 9 To Tarracina — 10 To Fundi — 14 To Formiæ — 14 To Minturnæ — 9 To Sinuessa — 9 Ad Pontem Campanum — 9 Ad Octavum — 9 To Capua — 8 To Beneventum — 32 To Rubi, now Ruvo — 107 To Bari — 21 To Brundisium — 71 Total from Rome to Brundisium — 364 miles.

On this Appian way (besides the common structures above-mentioned for public service) there were several costly and magnificent tombs, or sepulchral monuments, and other superb decorations; such, as for instance, the Septizonium of Severus; the Dormitories or vaults of the family of Arria; the arch of Constantine the Great; the temples of Fortune and Mars; the tomb, or monument of Metella, the wife of Crassus; and those of Cecilia, Cornelia, Servilia, &c. &c. too tedious here to enumerate.  
# CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

## CHAP. XXXIII.

*A succinct Account of several ancient Monuments, or remarkable Sepulchral Vaults, at Jedekobet, situate on the Mountains of Pjdrakoes; as also, of divers others at Pyrrhææ. An Account likewise of the barbarous and inhuman Murder of four Armenians by the Persians. And lastly a Review of the Persian Horde.*

On the fourteenth I set out from Samachi on horse-back, with two attendants, besides runners, in order to visit a noted place, called Jedekombet, that is to say, the Seven Towers, where there are several very remarkable monuments, or sepulchral vaults to be met with, that are very ancient, and well worthy the attention of the curious. We passed through several small villages in our passage thither, which were inhabited for the most part, by the natives of (a) Armenia, as we advanced westward towards the towers above-mentioned; and at about nine o'clock that evening, we came to a little village called Kirkins, situate on an eminence, or fertile spot of rising-ground, which abounds with vineyards, and are the principal maintenance and support of the inhabitants there, and the parts adjacent.

There we were shewed a small chapel, built with stone, in which was the sepulchral monument of a certain saint, named Sahac Wartapeet. He was, it seems, as we were credibly informed, by birth, a native of (b) Turkey, and by profession, a Mahomedan; but as he had for several years embraced their principles of religion, he applied himself so closely to his studies there amongst the Armenians, that he became one of their most favourite priests; we were told, moreover, that some time after his entrance into



those holy orders, he had the misfortune to fall into the hands of some inhuman Mahommedan Turks, who burnt him alive, at Samachi; and that after his bones had been reduced to ashes, he rose again, and appeared amongst them.

There is another sepulchral vault upon the high-road, at about the distance of half a league from this hill, or mountain, whereon I found there were several characters inscribed; but as they were unintelligible to me, I begged the favour of having them explained. To which they replied, that I was mistaken, and that what I took for characters, were nothing more than different decorations. That monument of the last-mentioned saint, who lies interred upon the hill, is held there in high esteem. The inhabitants of the parts adjacent light up tapers there, on their solemn festivals, and regale themselves in as elegant a manner as they can, on one side, or at least within sight of his tomb. As I happened to arrive there on a Sunday, I found a multitude of people flocking round it, who, in a very courteous manner, gave me an invitation, to partake of what refreshments they had before them; but I begged to be excused, as I was very desirous of advancing forwards on my journey. This village, small as it is, contains about two hundred several families. In the center of the little chapel, wherein is the aforesaid monument, stands a small altar, which is encompassed by a small wall, on one side whereof there grows a spacious walnut-tree, where they feast themselves under its shade. Formerly there was a small mosque on the very same spot of ground, which was reduced to ruins, it seems, about five and thirty years since, through the violence of an earthquake; and so they substituted this little chapel in its room.

About half an hour after nine, we set out from this little village, and passed over. # THE TRAVELS OF

1703 over several fine hills in our way to Jediekombet, where we arrived between ten and eleven. There I met with the ancient tombs that I have before-mentioned, which are built with hard stone, and in a very substantial manner, and not inelegantly cemented. Most of them remained entire, and terminated in a pyramidal form. That which I examined first, and stood nearest to the mountain, was more lofty than the rest. The tower-wall, in regard to its thickness, is five palms, or thereabouts; the entrance into it about three broad, and six high. It is about twelve feet in diameter, and round within.

It is encompassed with a fine wall, the front gate whereof is no less than fourteen foot and an half in breadth, and ten deep through the wicket, at which you enter. It is five palms in thickness, and about sixteen paces from one corner to the other; that is to say, threecore and four paces in circumference. As to the thickness of the wall itself, it is three palms or thereabouts. And the coping of it at top is an half oval, and bears some resemblance to a camel's back. There are five fine sepulchral monuments in

this tower; three on one side of it, and two on the other, which are embellished with foliages, and other ornaments of the like nature. These monuments are three palms, in point of height, two in breadth, and even in length; some more, but others less. From this, I went to the second Tower.

At the front gate, in the enceint, or inclofre of the wall, I perceived there was an elevation of no less than three palms, an arcade of eight and an half in breadth at the bottom, of eleven and an half in depth, and in height about seven foot. Here there were three fine tombs only. This tower-wall is about forty four feet in length, and thirty three in breadth, and much about the same height, and, in all respects, indeed, similar to the former. The loft of these structures, which is the lowest, and goes downward, is encompassed with a wall, which is no less than threecore and eleven foot in breadth, threecore and fix feet in length, and nine

in height. The front gate is fourteen foot and an half without, and twenty two in breadth. The arcade is eleven in height, and in depth fourteen. In the middle there is a wicket, which is two foot and an half in breadth, and in height five and an half. We went down there by three steps, and at the distance of about twelve paces only, we came to a building about eight and thirty foot in breadth, and eighteen in length, at the end whereof stood another, on the left-hand, which is fix foot long and of the same breadth, whereon there is a tower. We went into this structure by a little door, no more than four foot four inches in height, and two and an half in breadth, and is correspondent with that in the front. The wall of it is but three foot thick; and having gone down two steps, we came into a quadrangular apartment which was encompassed with stone-benches about a foot and an half only in height, and much about the same in breadth. That room, or apartment, was ten feet in length, and eleven in breadth, and the vault twelve in height. On the right-hand, there is a door-way made through the wall above the bench, through which, by going only one step up, we came into a gloomy place, the vault whereof was lower than the former, notwithstanding its other dimensions were larger; for it was thirteen foot in length, and ten in breadth. From thence through another door directly over against the first, the somewhat smaller, we went up two steps, and came into an apartment that was ten feet in length, and the same in breadth. On this it is that the tower stands; which is hollow, as far as to the very point of the spire; and on the right of us, there were four small windows, two and two, one above the other; there we found several tapers flicking against the wall, and stones that were tumbled down, but nothing like a sepulchral monument appeared. There we dined, and there mingled our wine with some fine spring-water, which ran at a very small distance from, and directly opposite to this building. That spring is very ancient; its water is most delightful, and # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

as clear as chrysal, and its source or head is from the mountains. Without the encircling of these tombs, concerning which the ancients have been so very particular, there are a great number of other monuments all round about; some resembling these, and others consisting of large common stones, and all without any character or inscriptions whatsoever; having indeed some small decorations, but what to call them I am at a loss to determine, unless some of them may be properly said to be bases. And to deal ingenuously, and give you my opinion freely, I take them to be decorations only, and such as I have observed in divers other places, and even in those royal sepulchres which are to be seen without the walls of the city of Jerusalem.

In order to give a more clear and difficult idea of these monuments or sepulchral vaults, I have taken the pains to draw one of them in particular, which stands on one side of the building just before mentioned; near which there is one large, wide-spreading tree in particular, and several others, though much smaller, which proceed from the tower, notwithstanding the stones are full firm and whole, and notwithstanding there is not the least crack or flaw to be differed. I have here given the reader a sketch of the front-gate, some of the monuments, and the melon-garden in the plate (No. 41) hereto annexed; and the reader will farther find the whole, with a view of the mountain likewise, in plate XLII. where there are no less than nine towers to be seen, notwithstanding the term Jedichombet, as we hinted before, signifies seven towers only. Against the walls within there are planted a great number of young fig-trees, which cover the monuments with their leaves to that degree, that it is not an easy matter to discover where they stand. They look upon them here to be very ancient; and, according to tradition, Alexander the Great spared them on that very account.

About four in the afternoon, having sufficiently gratified my curiosity, I returned from thence; and to the northward of these monuments, I was surprised to see vast piles of stones upon a fertile hill, where the soil did not seem in the least naturally inclined to be stony. From this circumstance I concluded, and I imagine upon very just grounds, that some town, or fortress at least, had formerly been erected there; notwithstanding there were no other traces or footstamps of any such structures. I was afterwards, however, informed by some people, of whom for the gratification of my curiosity I made the enquiry, that there had been a small one erected there, not far distant from the tombs; and, in all probability, they told me the truth; for otherwise it would be no easy matter to give a substantial reason for their being erected in the mountains. At a small distance from hence we discovered a fine spring; and, a little beyond it, some more monuments; amongst which there was one in particular of uncommon dimensions, though very much disfigured from the injury it had received through a long series of years. About half a league from thence, we went back once more through the village

called Kirkins, inhabited for the most part by Armenians and Turks, and we reached the town near an hour before sunset; notwithstanding the wind blew so excessively hard, and the dust flew to that degree, that we could scarce see the way before us. The next day, however, there fell such a hasty and impetuous shower of rain, accompanied with thunder, that they were both perfectly dispersed.

On the eighteenth, I went up to the mountain called Pjdrakoes, which is nearer the town, and higher than that of Kala-kuluftan.

On the summit of this mountain there is an open monument, which is encompassed with large stones, and is in length full eighteen foot and a half, and in breadth sixteen; together with a great number of other common tombs, a large walnut-tree, and another large tree, the leaves whereof were remarkably small. About seven paces farther stood another monument or vault, consisting of a small circular chapel, which is, without, about three # THE TRAVELS OF

three and thirty foot in circumference, but ten only within. The wall thereof is in thickness two foot and ten inches; and there are stones here that are four feet and four inches in length, and two feet and two only in breadth. The entrance into it is five feet and four inches in height, with a step to it. This small chapel, in height, is ten feet and a half exclusive of the pike, and is encompassed by divers other sepulchral vaults. The walls of it are thick set with nails, to which several slips of divers colours are here and there fastened, (and so there are indeed in the former,) or remnants of the garments of such pilgrims as resort hither to perform their devotional exercises at these tombs, and who make these voluntary oblations by way of acknowledgment, or as testimonies of their high veneration and esteem for those faints who rest within: with a view, that by such tokens of their respect, they shall procure some relief at least, if not a perfect cure, of those maladies which they respectively labour under. An Armenian servant, who was one of my attendants, assured me that he himself had reaped the good effects of those pious acts; but I gave much the same attention to this idle tale of his, as to the other story above-mentioned of the faint, who after he had been burnt to ashes, rose again from the dead.

In No. XLIII. of the plate hereto annexed, the reader will find an accurate representation of this small chapel, which is greatly damaged and much decayed on the East side; together with a view of the hill of Kala-kuluftaham; and in number XLIV. the representation of the other side as it is decayed, together with the open sepulchre, not long since mentioned; and the town and mountain in perspective. In this small chapel there is a spacious monument, embellished with foliages, according to the representation of it in the plate annexed; and, at the distance of about forty paces from it, there are two subterraneous caverns.

The entrance, or aperture into the former, is vaulted, and confines of large stones which want nothing at all within. This is fix foot and a half in length, and four feet and two inches in breadth: 'tis paved likewise, and is five feet five inches high. The latter, which lies at the distance of seventeen paces only from the first, somewhat resembles a grotto or cave, hewn out of the solid rock belonging to the mountain; and the aperture, or entrance into it, is so narrow, that a person inclined to view it, must creep in upon his belly to accomplish that end. Before this grot stands a tree, on the bark whereof are the names of divers pilgrims cut out in very legible characters; and several monuments or tombs all round about it, between which and the sepulchral vaults, on the summit of the mountain, there is a wall full subtiling of some edifice or structure, that has been long since demolished. This hill, or mountain, moreover, is encompassed with a variety of tombs, except indeed towards the South-West, where it is exceedingly steep. Some authors peremptorily affirm that there is here a subterraneous cavern or vault, into which there is a descent of several steps, and that in that gloomy place lies deposited the remains of an illustrious prince, the daughter of some potent king; however, though I own my curiosity induced me to search after it, yet I found myself disappointed, and my labour fruitless, and I am fully convinced that it is nothing more than the little grot I have just mentioned; and into which they were so incurious as never to enter, in order to know whether the report was fact or not: but here give me leave to add, that the passage was so very narrow, that I was obliged to undress myself before I could squeeze myself in, and answer the end proposed. As to the rest, I have just grounds to believe that the principal monuments in all these parts is that of the small chapel on the top of the hill. The inhabitants of the parts adjacent, moreover, very seriously assured me, that the greatest part of the personages who have been interred in these monuments, were remarkable for their virtues and the fanciness of their manners; from whence it occurs, that great numbers of pilgrims resort to their sepulchres for a meritorious act of their devotion. At the foot of this mountain there is a small village, and a spacious

CO

On the twentieth I reached the city of Simachi, which is a great built for the most part upon earth. It is near four leagues from the mountain, and there is a particular name in this place and all cent is held in profound veneration. The town is built upon a hill, which is surrounded with hills; and to the North there are a few other little villages, which is visible at a distance in every direction. As we arrived at the town, we discovered a temple or refectory, the walls of which were covered with a variety of small stones and the walls were painted with various figures. There were other like places where water ran at all.

The city of Simachi is a large city, with hills, wherein there are grounds, and large sepulchres. About noon I reached the Pyrmarians, which is a great town, built for the most part upon earth. It is near four leagues from the mountain. There I saw the Sâh Yonshim, a particular name in this place, and all cent is held in profound veneration.

On the twentieth I reached the city of Simachi, which is a great built for the most part upon earth. It is near four leagues from the mountain, and there is a particular name in this place and all cent is held in profound veneration. The town is built upon a hill, which is surrounded with hills; and to the North there are a few other little villages, which is visible at a distance in every direction. As we arrived at the town, we discovered a temple or refectory, the walls of which were covered with a variety of small stones and the walls were painted with various figures. There were other like places where water ran at all. # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

cious plain beyond it to the North-East, which is surrounded with hills and mountains; and to the North-West there are several other little villages, and the mountain called Kala-kuluftahan. The town, which is visible at a distance, and the country all round about it, has a very good effect, and strikes the eye in a very agreeable manner. As we approached the town, we discovered a fine stone cistern or reservoir, the water whereof is as fine as chrysal, and very delicious. A little beyond that there is a spring, the waters whereof flow gradually away, and discharge themselves into a subterraneous canal towards the mountains; and, by another, flow into the city itself.

On the nineteenth, I made the proper preparations for sending my effects by the caravan, which I followed some few days after.

On the twentieth I went to the village called Pyrmaræs, where there are two particular monuments that are very curious, and worthy of inspection. In my passage thither, I met with an exceeding fine spring, and traversed several rivulets or brooks upon little stone bridges. At the distance of about two leagues from the city I saw one that appeared to me to be very antient, which consisted of three decayed arches, erected with large blocks of stone, under which ran a very clear stream. There were others likewise that I met with as I passed along, under which no water ran at all.

The city of Samachi makes a good figure enough, when surveyed upon the hills, whereon there are several burial-grounds, and large sepulchral vaults.

About noon I reached the place called Pyrmaræs, which is a pretty large village, built for the most part with stone and earth. It is near four leagues to the eastward of the town, in a spacious plain as one goes to the mountains on the left hand. There I saw the monument of Seid Ibrahim, a particular saint, whose name in this

place and all the parts adjacent is held in profound veneration. The place where his remains are deposited has more the appearance of a fortress than a

Before this building there is a very spacious square, on the right hand of which as I went in, this officer has a large commodious apartment, the floor whereof was covered with a large, coftly carpet. From thence I went on the left-hand, into the court-yard, which is spacious enough, and executed in a good taste; and, after that, into another, where were several monuments, on which there were Turkish inscriptions, and divers other embellishments. Then I came to the sepulchre of the faint himself, which is closely locked up with a wooden door, through which I went first into a small vault, where stood a coffin; and from thence I passed forwards into a pretty apartment enough, which receives light from three sides above, and is covered with carpets, striped stuffs, and mats: here I was obliged, in order not to daub the furniture, to pull off my shoes. From thence I passed through a little door on the right hand of the first vault, into three several apartments; in the first whereof were three coffins; five in the second, which lies on the right; and, in the center of the third, which lies on the left, the coffin of the faint himself, which was covered with a large, green cloth, in the nature of a pall. The portals of this edifice #  
THE TRAVELS OF

edifice are three score foot high, or thereabouts, and several fathom deep. I went up by twelve steps, each of one stone. The top is not vaulted, and the wall, in regard to its upper part, bears the resemblance of a fortress, having a kind of Guerite at each angle. This structure to the right is forty paces in length, and one and thirty in breadth. Over this monument, there is a small aperture, covered with a stone, and over the gate, there are divers inscriptions in the characters made use of by the (c) Arabs, hewn out of the stone, and others traced out in black upon the white walls.

At about the distance of twenty paces from this monument I went down fifteen steps that were vaulted, and after that, down ten others, contiguous thereto, though the left were not vaulted; from whence I went into a subterraneous cavern, which is thirty three paces long, and nine broad, and not only vaulted from one end to the other, but is thirty foot high and upwards. The stones belonging to this vault are fine, large, and artfully enough cemented; but the plaster with which they were once covered, by dint of time, was almost all fallen down to the ground. I imagine this subterraneous cavern was formerly intended for a Refervoir, or cistern, to hold water in; and whenever it rains hard, the water comes in full, by a subterraneous canal, which proceeds from the adjacent mountains, and runs thro' a proper hole made for that purpose in the second step. This subterraneous vault has at top, two vents or apertures, through which it receives some degree of light. At the entrance of this structure, there is a stone wall, and

at the distance of about twenty paces from it, there are twenty stone troughs, which are appropriated to the watering of cattle. They are all put together, and each of them consists of one stone only, which is three foot and an half in length, and in breadth, two and an half, or somewhat better. Here are also several open wells, not only in the village, but in all the parts adjacent; many of them, however, are flopped up at their apertures,

'Tis highly probable, that, in former times, they were made use of as aqueducts; and we may very reasonably form that conjecture, because several of them do actually convey water under-ground, in order to be kept in these subterraneous caverns. This was a common practice amongst the ancients; and I have seen the same things at (d) Alexandria myself, and in the parts adjacent to the city of (e) Naples. The natives of (f) Media, likewise preserved their water after the same manner. The Persians (g) were highly delighted to see with what accuracy and attention I surveyed every place; I then returned my thanks to the courteous stranger, to whose care this monument was entrusted, and begged the favour of him to send some proper perfum along with me, in order to take a survey of the other: This request, he very readily granted, with all the good-manners and courtesy imaginable. In our passage thither, we rode over a mountain; but when we came to the eastward, we were under a necessity of difmounting by reason of its prodigious declivity; for we were frequently obliged to hold fast by the rocks, for fear of falling.

It is on this declivity, that the monument, or sepulchral vault of Tiribba, now stands. There we went down three steps into a square, of the same breadth with the edifice, which is no less than twenty eight foot in front; and looks upon the very steepest part of the mountain. The frontpiece of this building, is perfectly beautiful, and consists of large polished stones. There are three several windows, which penetrate into the wall, about three palms: that on the left is glazed in the middle, and has a stone-lattice, which is all of one piece, at least to outward appearance. To this, there are fastened several parti-coloured slips, or pieces of garments, like those above-mentioned. That window which is on the right-hand, consists of large stones, which are four palms and a half in breadth, and eight in height. After this, we went up three steps, in order to get to the portal, which is clofe shut with a wooden gate. From thence we went up a square garment, with five foot from one side to another, and which only is higher than the left hand. As we went up this last flight, we went up into the upper part of the mountain, with a vaulted roof about fourteen feet in length, and with a great thickness. There is a flight of fifteen steps in this room, which leads into a large apartment, embolished with the finest white stones, in the form of a cross; and in this room, there is a large window on the right, with a wooden lattice, with a folding door, which is but slightly opened. There is here likewise a large window, which is glazed in the middle, and has a stone-lattice, which is all of one piece, at least





form, of which the other half naturally comes out. This is the place where the saint is reposed upon his knees, according to their custom: this is what they tell us themselves; with this addition, that he is covered with a white veil, dressed in grey, and in that posture to which he was most naturally accustomed in his life time, without the least alteration. This was an act of indulgence procured for him from heaven by saint Ibrahim, who was his disciple. This apartment from side to side is fourteen foot square, and is richly embellished, having two small pillars on one side of each niche to the right and left, with a step that is raised about two foot.

This, which is before the window in the front, is three foot deep, or thereabouts; and That where the faint is at rest, is somewhat more: the vault is much about one and twenty foot high. From thence we went up a flight of twelve steps, into another small apartment on the left-hand; and, on the right-hand, there are four or five decayed steps, and so small a door, that a man must crawl upon his belly, if he would get to the top of the building, which is covered with a lofty dome, around which one may go through three several passages amongst the rocks. The first is two foot and an half, the second two foot, and one before, where there is an aperture to the front. We then descended the mountain by a more commodious path than the first; and we went up another opposite ground, directly opposite to the first, in order to see the other monument, but we were disappointed; for we met with nothing there but a bare wall, without the least footstep or traces of any tomb or tombs, from whence that place derives its appellation. It is encompassed with a wretched square wall, from whence we had a sight of that monument, which we have been describing; and of which the reader will find a representation in the subsequent plate. On that side which I came by, I perceived there were several grottos, hewn out of the rock.

About four o'clock in the afternoon I went from Pyrmaras, and it was much about eight, when I arrived at Samachi. The Armenians the very next day entertained me in one of their gardens, which lay out of the city; where they drew their provision amongst the trees, of which there were divers forts; and, amongst the rest, some willows of a very extraordinary size, quince-trees, mulberry-trees, and others, to which we were strangers, and of which I shall take the opportunity to give a particular account in a more proper place.

As we were upon our return, the Armenians began to sing and divert themselves by the way, according to the custom of their native country, and even to drink bumpers to the beat of a drum; after M m m which, # THE TRAVELS OF

which, they went to visit some of their friends and acquaintance in the caravan-ferai, or inn, infomuch, that they made it very late before they went home.

Now it happened, that four Armenians, who had all this time been left to take care of the housefs, were all murdered in their fleep, by some Persians. Upon this, two Armenians, belonging to our caravan-ferai, made their complaints of this barbarous and inhuman action to a Persian lord, who made them a solemn promise, that the blood-thrift villains should be punished according to their demerits, if happily they should ever be detected.

On the twenty-sixth, there was a review of some Persian horse, in the spacious court of the Khan's palace. This review had been made in part the evening before; and the rest was deferred to the next day.

This exercise was performed by three hundred troopers at a time, all completely accounted, as in the field of battle. Some had not only lances, but bows and arrows; others had fire-arms; and others again had bows and arrows only. Thefe laft, indeed, had canes with a large button at the point, which they manage with furprizing dexterity and address. Under their vefuments they had coats of mail and braffets; and little caps, or morions, as they call them, on their heads; with mafks, or vizors. All of them were perfectly well-dreft, according to the Persian mode; but more particularly the officers, whose vefts were of gold or silver brocade. Some of these gentlemen had fix or seven fumpter-horfe; and there were private perfons that had one; besides one, that the fervant rode upon, who led him, and another fervant that attended on foot. The Khan was feated at, one end of the court,

upon an eminence, or feat higher than the reft, and the horfe were in small divifions, at the other, in expectation to be called by name; upon which they advanced, upon the gallop, by two and two; sometimes three and three; and sometimes four, up to the kind of throne whereon the Khan was feated; and after they had been enrolled, they immediately filed off another way: as soon as the review was over, the trumpets found a retreat; and this was all done within the compass of two hours, and doublets, it was a fiew, that was well worth feeling. Most of them went thro' several motions, or parts of their exercise, with a very peculiar grace; tho' there were some few, indeed, who were not altogether fo exact, and fo adroit as the others, either through want of experience in themselves, or through some deficiency in their horfes. As to those who acquitted themselves with moft honour and credit; they were all rewarded with fome certain military prize, in the presence of the chief lords of the country, who waited upon the Khan; and in the prefence likewife of whole crowds of spectators.

The pay of these troops is very considerable, and particularly that of the officers. Each private trooper has annually five or six hundred florins; and their pay is augmented in proportion to their merit, in times of public action: they have, moreover, frequently very handsome presents made them. The sons likewise of these cavaliers, have a certain pension, as such; but then indeed, they are indispensably obliged to furnish a man at their own expence, in times of war, in case they happen to be under age.

At this grand review there were several children on horseback that were under eight years of age; with an attendant on the side of them, # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

## **Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.**

1. Armenia, see p. 198. n. g.
  2. Turkey, see p. 203. n. e.
  3. Arabs, see p. 203. n. a.
  4. Alexandria, see p. 35. n. d.
  5. Naples, see p. 216. n. 2.
  6. Media, see p. 214. n. e.
  7. Persia, see p. 64. n. o.
- 

## **C H A P. XXXIV.**

The Author departs from Samachi. A succinct Account of the Course of the River (a) Kur, otherwise called Cur or Cyrus, and the (b) Araxes, or Arras. The Methods made use of for the Winding off Silk. And lastly, the Author arrives at (c) Ardevil, or Ardebil.

On that day, I took my leave, in order to join the caravan, left it should be far forwards before I got to it; My fellow-traveller, one Jacob John de David, took another road, indeed, in order to call at some trading towns, where he had some affairs to settle, and my two other companions, who were natives of (d) Armenia, promised to follow me very shortly. In the mountains which lay southward to the town, I met with some grounds, that were very fertile; as also with some springs, and a few cottages, or houses; and by and by I came up with the caravan which was far out before me, at some small distance from the village called Nogdi. On the next day, in order to take an airing, I went upon the very top of a high mountain, from whence I descended into a fine, spacious plain,

which we were to cross over; and I observed, that at the foot of the mountain, there were several little springs of water, as clear as crystal. In the evening, one of the guides belonging to the caravan, came to us, to let us know, that they should be moving by break of day the next morning. In our passage over the mountains, I saw, at a village called Langelus, what I had never seen before, not only some pomegranate-trees, but other fruit-trees, and a vine, which was perfectly loaded with grapes; the stem whereof was both short and thick; and not much above an ell, in height from the ground; a circumstance that I had never observed before in all my travels. There likewise I saw a plant that was in blossom, from the roots whereof there proceeded filaments, or shoots, of at least a fathom in length; and which stretched along the surface; the fruit of it at that time was perfectly green, and resembled our little cucumbers. The colour of it, when it is ripe, and in its full perfection, is a deep purple without, and within a vermilion red. A great number of them grew upon one plant. I made a drawing of one of them, that was loaded with its fruit; which by some of the natives of (e) Turkey is called Tje-beer, and by others again, Kou-rack. In the plate hereto annexed, the reader will find it distinguished by the letter (A.). I found, in the same place, another sort of plant, the fruit whereof was red, and had small cuds, or bladders. It grew much after the same manner as the former, with great

# THE TRAVELS OF

great numbers on one plant, which was, however, a foot and an half higher, if not more. This fruit is distinguished there by the name of Doofsjandernage, and is of the same size as those which are distinguished in the plate beforementioned by the letter B.

When we had travelled over the mountains of (f) Derbent, we descended into the fine plain, as above mentioned, which extends farther than the eye can reach; we found it all, however, perfectly parched up, by the intense heat of the sun, and the long preceding droughts. This desert plain is, by the inhabitants of the country distinguished by the name of Kraegh.

No sooner had we advanced to the end of the mountains, but we had a distant, though imperfect view of the river Kur or Cur. About ten in the morning, after we had made a progress of about two leagues and a half, we halted upon the plain, where we stayed, not only all that day, but the next likewise; and on both the weather proved very favourable and fair. There we met with Turks and (g) Arabians in huts, or cabins, built with straw, who, in a friendly manner enough, supplied us with milk, melons, and such like provisions; but as there was no such thing as wood to be met with, we were reduced to the necessity of dressing our victuals by such fires as the dung of our camels would afford us. It is customary to halt in all such places where the best pasture can be procured for the cattle we have in our train. The most mortifying circumstance, however, is, that there is no water to be found, but what is most miserably foul; inasmuch, that it must be left for

some considerable time to settle; perhaps an hour or two at least, if not more, which is a very melancholy cafe, when, in the midst of such fultry fun beams, one is ready to perish with thirst; nor is it practicable to take a sufficient quantity along with one, on account of the prodigious number of bales, with which a caravan is for the generality encumbered; so that in such a cafe as ours, we were obliged to make a virtue of necessity, and accept of an immediate supply of curdled milk, which those Turks and Arabians call Touvert, and put into a cloth-bag, through which the Whey immediately runs off. After that, in order to quench their thirst, they put water to their curds, which amongst the Turks is a common and almost daily practice; so that a man in distress is furnished at once both with meat and drink. It is kept with all the care imaginable, and when mingled with a proper quantity of sugar, is palatable enough, and serves instead of cream. We did not get out of this large plain till the 30th instant in the evening; at which time we travelled to the southward, and traversed the plain. There we met with another caravan, and some Turks in their huts or cabins. By break of day we reached the village called Sgawad, which lies to the westward of the Kur, on a rising ground, on the banks whereof we thought proper to halt. This place, though a village only, is very extensive, and contains in it an almost countless number of delightful gardens, which abound with white mulberry-trees and melons. On the next day, I went about half a league to the conflux of the Kur and the Araxes, two noted rivers, which are at this day distinguished by the names of the Cyrus and the Arras.

I observed, that here the Arras proceeds from the South, from whence it derives its source or fountain-head, in the mountains of Algeron, and the Cyrus from the North of Tilvies, where it runs by the side of the town that bears that name. When these two famous rivers have once united their waters together, they roll away towards the north-east, beyond Sgawad; and from thence they continue their course East, and run in a meandering passage till they empty their waters, or lose themselves in the (b) Cappian sea. As for the rest, 'tis no easy task to find out their various windings. I made a draught, in the best manner I could, of the place where these two rivers join, as the reader will see in the plate, No. 45. hereto annexed; in which place they part the

The Cyrus and the Arras. # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

the country of Mogan from that of (i) Media, otherwise called Shirwan. The Arras, or Araxes, is distinguished by the letter A; the Cyrus, or Kur, by the letter B; and the place where their streams are united by the letter C.

We fent our bales over to the other side in several boats, to the village at which we had halted; and our horses and camels swam over, which took us up two days time to accomplish. As the waters, at that time, happened to be very low in several places,

we could clearly discern the bottom, and about the middle, a large fand-bank, on one side whereof, however, the water was very deep; and there, indeed, the camels were forced to swim over them. 'Tis customary here to make a bridge of boats, when the waters are at their lowest, linked together by a strong, substantial, iron chain, which, when the river swells and widens, is cast off; but it was not then ready.

There are two or three small houses, composed principally of reeds, on the other side, where the inhabitants are constantly employed in winding off filk.

I went accordingly into them, in order to gratify my curiosity, and perceived, that in the execution of this work, there was but one person's aid or affiance at a time required. On the right-hand, as I went in, there was a stove, which was heated from without, and wherein there was a very capacious kettle or cauldron of hot water, just ready to boil; in which the cods of the worms were laid. The operator, or person who was employed in winding off the filk, sat, as I found, upon this stove, on one side of the cauldron, and frequently stirred the cods with a small flick prepared for that purpose. I observed likewise in this little reed-cottage, a large wheel, of about eight or nine palms in circumference, that was fixed between two potts; and this he turned with his foot, as he sat on the floor, much after the same manner as our Europeans turn a spinning-wheel.

There were two flicks directly before the stove, with a reed on each of them, round which there turned two little pullies, which conduct the filk from the cods to this large wheel. The workman assured me, this method, or manner of winding off filk is practiced daily throughout the whole kingdom of (k) Perfa: and it must be allowed, that those who are expert operators do their work with surprising dispatch as well as ease. I observed, however, that the cods were of no great bulk.

I observed, moreover, that most of the trees hereabouts were young, and their stems but short, in order that they may have leaves, at all times, upon young branches; for the filk-worms, it seems, don't approve of the leaves that are on old trees. The gardens here are surrounded with alders and willows, and like the houses, are for the most part separated from each other, by reed-partitions. Some few of them, however, are divided by partitions composed of earth; and of these, there was a whole range along the side of the river. In plate 46 hereto annexed, the reader will find a representation of the river above-mentioned, and the method, or manner in which goods are carried over it. I found provisions exceedingly cheap at this place; for a fowl might be purchased for two-pence only, a melon for a penny, and other viands of the like nature in proportion.

On the first of September, in the evening, a caravan arrived from Tebries, which had been fourteen days upon the road; and another the next day from Ardevil or Ardebil, which had been ten in their passage hither. Here I was joined by the two merchants I mentioned some time ago, one of whom (as the reader may remember) was a native of (l) Armenia, and the other by birth a (m) German. This last, who was greatly indisposed, had the misfortune to fall off his horse in the night, and had been left in the plain for several hours in a very weak and fainting condition. I sent several messengers out to find him, if possible; but they returned without being able to hear the least tale or tidings concerning him. However, I sent others again on the same errand as soon as it was day; and these were so fortunate as to find him, and # THE TRAVELS OF

and brought him forwards along with them; and as the horse, which had thus caufally thrown him, stood as still as a statue by his side, during the whole time that he lay upon the ground, he had the additional good fortune of having lost nothing; his fall, however, had enfeebled him to that degree, that it was with the utmost difficulty he kept the caravan in sight.

This part of the country, which is low, abounds with grass, that is a foot or two high, and this is the best and choicest pasture that can be procured for camels; for when they have that, they stand in need of no other. This particular pasture is called Poes by the Armenians, but by the Turks Voffiaen. Notwithstanding this is such excellent provender for camels, and is tolerably agreeable to cows; yet no horse will touch one morsel of it.

The remainder of our effects, as also our beasts of burthen, crossed the river on the third instant; but in this passage we had the misfortune to lose two of our camels. The horses swam over, as they were held fast with ropes by proper persons who were crossing in boats. In the afternoon we crossed it ourselves; and as I was now in the country of Mogan, I made a second draught there of the course of the river, and the country of Shirwan, as the reader will find it in the plate No. 47. hereto annexed.

The village, of which we have been speaking, is covered with trees to that degree, that it is a difficult matter to distinguish the houses. The day following we were joined by the two other guides of the caravan. In the interim, I went out to take a view of the two rivers on this side; but the banks were encumbered to that degree with brambles, reeds, and other lofty vegetables, that it was above an hour before I could reach the Arras; besides, as I had no-body but my servant to attend me in that expedition, we had not the good fortune to find out a beaten path; neither did we meet with any person that could direct us to one: however, at last, we did get a sight of the river, and of some few old, weather-beaten cottages, or huts, which the inhabitants had perfectly abandoned. As an additional mortification, we were obstructed



by a deep ditch; which obliged us to seek out for another way to bring us nearer to the river; but notwithstanding all our efforts, we could not, on account of the height and steepness of the banks, by any means accomplish our Ends. From the spot, however, on which we were, though not so near as we could have wished, we had a very distinct view of the two rivers; and I observed that the Arras, or Araxes, came a little higher from the fourth-west, and that it was much narrower there than the Kur; for at most, as well as I could form a judgment of the thing, it was not above forty or five and forty paces in breadth; whereas, when their streams are united, they are above one hundred; but more particularly, near the village called Sgawad, which lies in 39 degrees, 54 minutes of northern latitude. Though I imagined I should have met with a variety of game here; yet there was none at all as I could find. There is abundance of liquorice, however, to be met with in this place. By sunset, I got sight again of the caravan; and by break of day, we began to move after the camels, which had been gone some time before. We pursued our journey to the fourth-westward, and left the Arras to the right; and having advanced three leagues farther, we halted in a plain, where we saw a small lake, one part whereof goes round a little hill, and extends higher up into the country. This place is distinguished by the name of Celfan, and is not above half a league from that, where the Arras turns off to the right. When the water which proceeds from Arras is very high, great quantities of fish, but of tortoises in particular, are to be met with in this lake. We took several of these last, both in the water, and on the shore; some whereof are at least a foot in circumference. As soon as the sun was set, we moved forwards again; there were no less than six hundred camels, and three hundred horses in our caravan. In the # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

the night we traversed a very flat country, which abounded, with a very lofty plant or herb, that was excessively bitter, by the inhabitants called Jaffsian, and of so poisonous a nature, that if cattle do but so much as touch it with their mouths, it proves inevitably fatal; but peculiar care is always taken to prevent them from so sudden a destruction. Though this must be thought a mortifying circumstance enough; yet still there is a worse; and that is, there is not one drop of water to be met with for the long stretch of water to be met with for a twelve hours progress. We spent the whole night in traversing this plain; and at break of day, we halted at the side of a rivulet, or brook, which proceeds from the Arras to the west, and lifts itself, as it runs a little higher up into the country. It was but about three years before, that the Khan, or governor of that country, who generally, during the summer season, resides in these plains, and in the winter at Ardebil, had given orders to have it dug. 'Tis but about two leagues distant from the Arras, and but about five or six feet in breadth. The water of it is tolerably good to drink, though on account of the sand, it is somewhat foul; but it is palatable and fine enough, when it has had a proper time to settle.

On one side of this brook, there are a small number of poor houves and huts, made of rufhes, which had been standing for about three years. This place is called by the Inhabitants Anhaer; and there is not another village near it. Here I met with a kind of Water-melon, that was of some length; as within very white, and exceedingly sweet, and quite different from any fruit of that kind which I had ever seen in any other country whatsoever. The feed of it is not black, like that of all others, but is of a chestnut colour, and very small.

In this place, likewise, I perceived that they had a fruit called Chamama, that is, the breast of a woman; because it bears a near resemblance to it, which is not only very wholesome but of a fine flavour. Though this Chamama is not altogether unlike the white Water-melons abovementioned;

yet 'tis more firm and substantial; and as to its colour and size, it nearly resembles a China orange. My fellow-traveller, the Armenian, assures me, that they grow likewise at Ipahan, and are deemed there a very valuable fruit; inasmuch, that gentlemen and ladies frequently carry them in their hands as an odoriferous nosegay. Some of them, indeed, are considerably smaller, and parti-coloured; that is to say, streaked with red, yellow, and green; tho' the feeds of some of these are all small and white; yet those of others are small indeed, but perfectly red. It is a very agreeable refreshment, and there is such plenty of them all over the country, that the purchase of one of them will not amount to above a penny at most. There are other melons, indeed, still cheaper, but then they have not that delicious flavour.

We proceeded on our journey in the evening about an hour before sun-set, steering our course to the fourth-eastward; and at about the distance of half a league from thence we traversed a small river, which was about five feet in breadth, and eighteen inches only in depth. Here, one of our horses, loaded with silk, fell down; and as to the rest of our cattle, they got safe over, without the least misfortune attending them. In the night, we passed over the heath, or plain, called Mokar; and on the seventh instant, about two in the morning, we entered upon some mountains, the sands whereof were as soft, and as firm as gravel. When we had travelled till about an hour after sun-set, we halted in a plain, which was encompassed with hills and mountains, situate on the banks of a river, whose water was perfectly fine, and clear almost as chrysal, by the inhabitants called Ba'charathei, or Balaru, whose fountain head, or source, lies in the country of Talis, and from thence runs till it empties its waters into the Caspian Sea. At present, however, it cannot boast of its plenty of water, as it is supplied by two springs only from the mountains. The country all round about bears the same name as the river. There had been no caravans, for some considerable

## ble # THE TRAVELS OF

ble time before, that had taken that road, on account of the numerous gangs of Free-booters, which infested those parts: the Khan's fon, however, offering the king, upon pain of death, to extirpate those audacious robbers, in case his majesty would be pleased to confer on him his father's government, that prince lent a listening ear to his proposition; upon which, the Khan was established accordingly, and acquitted himself of the obligation he lay under to all intents and purposes; for he cut them all off, both root and branch; shewing no indulgence even to women, or children, inasmuch, that the paifage at present is attended with no manner of danger.

On the eighth, about an hour before break of day, we began to move forwards; and at three in the morning we arrived on a plain, that lay beyond the mountains, and at but a small distance from the village called Sigomoeat, which consisted of about ten or a dozen huts, or cabins, made of rushes; there we halted, in order to wait for two of our camels that had accidentally gone astray. In the morning, we met with several Peafants, who were natives of Perfia, together with their wives, children, and cattle. These people, during the winter-feafon, reside in the mountains, but in the plains for the remaining part of the year: these Peafants had brought us down forage the day before from the mountains, which were green, to all outward appearance; though they were rather sandy than rocky. In the night, there fell a heavy shower of rain, and that impetuous torrent was attended with tremendous claps of thunder. Two Armenians and myself proceeded on our journey at least three hours before day-break, tho' the night was fo exceedingly dark, that we could scarcely fee the ground before us; but finding, contrary to our expectation, that the caravan did not follow us, we thought it expedient to return, and wait with it till day-light should appear. As soon, however, as it was dawn of day, we proceeded on our journey to the village called Barfand; on one side whereof we halted in a plain, furrounded with high-lands, and watered by the river last above-mentioned. As we were excessively wet, we would fain have dried ourselves in the village; but as we found the cabins, or huts, to be in a very poor, ruinous condition, we chose rather to repair to our own tents again for that purpose; notwithstanding there are a great number of those wretched houfes in the village, and all, likewise, under the shelter of several wide-spreading trees. So heavy, in short, was the rain, all that night, that our bales, which before were standing on the ground, are now floating on the water. As the weather continued fo bad as to prevent our moving forward on our journey, we returned once more to the village; but then we were forced to change our quarters twice, on account of our not finding a proper shelter from the rain; which poured down from those large

apertures, which most of those cabins have at top for inlets to the light. In a word, we were reduced to the necessity of drying our commodities by a fire, made of the dung of cows and camels.

On the eleventh instant, however, the weather began to favour us; and then we sent out our camels before us in the evening, and about three hours before day-break we followed them with the weather serene enough, and with a glimpse of light, though we could not discern either moon or star. About half an hour afterwards we traversed the small river called Barfand; and in the progress of one hour only, we were obliged to cross it at least ten times over. After that we travelled over several very high mountains, which were covered with snow, where we found the weather excessively bleak and cold; notwithstanding there fell, at the same time, a kind of mist or drizzling rain. The next day, we reached the plains that lie near the village called Noeraloe, which consists but of a few straggling huts and tents of the (n) Tartars. There we purchased several very fine fowls for three-pence apiece, and eggs for a penny the dozen. There likewise we procured some very good milk and butter. When we had advanced about half a league from thence, we halted between the moun- # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

mountains, in a fine flat, on the banks of the little river called Siloof, the waters whereof are very palatable, and exceedingly clear. The hills and mountains there are likewise very pleasant, and abound with villages. About noon, the weather began to be fair; the sun had dispersed the clouds; and at midnight, we proceeded once more on our journey over hill and dale, with a fine moon-light, almost as bright as day. The next morning we halted on a kind of rising ground, at about five leagues distance from the place where we had spent the night, and at the distance of about two leagues from Ardevil, where we had the prospect of several high mountains, which were covered with snow. About nine o'clock at night, as we were favoured with a fine moon-light, we pushed forwards. But our good guide, the moon, too soon departed us, and a thick fog arose in her stead, which continued till the next morning; by which misfortune we flagged out of our way. We reached, however, the village called Adfgarneloe betimes in the morning; there we passed over a bridge, consisting of fix arches, under one of which runs the river, called Geroetsjou, that is, the Dry River. The caravan halted in this village about ten, and we proceeded on our way towards the city; where we dismounted at the Armenian Caravanfera, or inn. The fog continued till the 15th in the morning, at which time it dispersed; and as we were obliged to make some considerable stay at Ardevil, I sent to the village for my baggage.

## Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

1. Cur, Kur, or Cyrus, a river of Asia, which rises in mount Caucasus, and running south through Georgia, and the province of Chirvan in Persia, unites its waters with the river Arras, or Araxes, and continues its course east to the Caspian sea.
  2. Arras or Araxes. See p. 199. n. r.
  3. Ardevil, or Ardebil, east long. 64. 20. lat. 36. situate thirty miles east of Tauris, the burying-place of some of the Persian kings.
  4. Armenia, fee p. 198. n. g.
  5. Turkey, fee p. 203. n. e.
  6. Derbent, fee p. 198. n. d.
  7. Arabia, fee p. 208. n. a.
  8. Caspian sea, fee p. 60. n. g.
  9. Media, fee p. 214. n. e.
  10. Persia, fee p. 64. n. o.
  11. Germany, fee p. 204. n. g.
  12. Tartary, fee p. 18. n. i.
- 

## C H A P. XXXV.

A particular Description of the pompous and magnificent Mausoleum, or funeral Monument of Sefi, King of Persia. An Account of the City, called Ardevil, or Ardebil. Another sumptuous Mausoleum, near Kelgeran. The Author sets out from Ardevil, and arrives at Semgael.

AS I was exceedingly ambitious of procuring a sight of the sumptuous (a) mausoleum of Sefi in particular, and of several other (b) funeral monuments of the kings of Persia, who lie interred in the city of Ardevil, I shall amuse my readers with a particular description of that magnificent sepulchre, before I enter upon any account # THE TRAVELS OF

account of the city itself. These sumptuous monuments then, are erected near the Meydoen, that is, a moderately spacious Square, so called by the inhabitants. The entrance into it is very wide, and erected in a very elegant manner, all vaulted over head, and the stones painted in a variety of colours. We went in by a large wooden-gate, and then came directly into a curious, long gallery; on the top of the walls whereof are divers niches, very accurately painted with blue, green, yellow, and white. At the farther end of this long, spacious gallery, we came to a door, that was plated over with silver, which, as soon as opened, admitted us into a grand, magnificent apartment, on the right-hand whereof there is a pompous falon, or hall, with a dome over head, without any columns, or pillars to support it, somewhat resembling that of the (b) Rotunda at (c) Rome, though not, indeed, of equal extent. The floor of this falon, which is directly opposite to the library and the chappel, is covered with fine carpets; and on the left-hand, over against the entrance to the dome, there is another very lofty apartment with large, glass-windows. From thence we moved forwards through another door, plated over with silver, and came into a court which was nearly quadrangular, and the wall thereof no less than eighteen foot in height. On every side there were three niches, each painted with a variety of very lively colours, embellished with foliages in sculpture, or carved work. On the right-hand of us, there were several funeral monuments with raised coffins in them; some whereof, in particular, were very curiously decorated; and others again, on the left of us, which were separated by a flight wall against that of Sefi; where, (as we were informed) lie the remains, or ashes of divers illustrious princes, descendants from the royal families of that country. There is one apartment, on the right, and another on the left of the above-mentioned court, each of which is raised three foot above the ground, and vaulted over head, in the form of a dome. In the front, they are parted by a wooden balustrade towards the court, in one of the corners whereof, on the left-hand, there is a folding-door, which is not only plated over with silver, but has a chain, likewise, belonging to it all of massy silver. Here we were obliged to put off our shoes, before we presumed to enter in, or touch the ground-floor, which is composed of white-marble. All the other apartments have white-marble ground-floors, likewise; but then, they are covered with mats. Here we met with a considerable number of Persians, who were seated on stone-benches, both to the right-hand, and the left; for to these, it seems, is committed the whole trust and care of this superb-epulchre; and to these, likewise, we were obliged to give an acknowledgement, in case you are too sparing and parsimonious, in your acts of benevolence, as to let you know their sentiments, in very intelligible terms; but are apt to turn the tables upon you, and make an exorbitant demand of five, or six times the sum. However, when they find they have disgusted their visitants so far, as to provoke them to put their shoes on their feet again, in order to return; then they begin to be more humble, and willing to submit the gratuity to their own option. When we had been admitted through this door, we came into a small place, that

was vaulted in the manner of an half-dome: from thence, on the right-hand, we went through another door, which was embellished with a balustrade of gold, or at least, of silver, richly gilt, and came into a very flatly and solemn apartment, in which there were, at proper distances, fixed such a number of gold, and silver lamps, all burning, each of an ell at least in circumference, that there was no possibility of counting them. Here the floor was covered with rich carpets; and both on the right-hand and left, there were abundance of small reading-delfs, with books, as large as our usual church Common-prayer-books upon them. This apartment is two and fifty-foot in length, but in breadth, indeed, but thirty-four. The mausoleum of Sefi stands conspicuous at # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

at the upper-end of this grand room, and is raised on three steps above the floor; and the chandelier, or lamp that hangs over it, is all of the most refined, solid gold, and of an amazing circumference. Beyond this, we saw a balustrade, all of solid gold likewise, raised on one single step only, which, tho' not above an inch in thickness, is at least six feet and nine inches in length (exclusive of the fronton of the door) and near ten feet in height. This was a folding-door, through which we went into a small circular chapel, in the center whereof, stood the superb monument of Sefi, composed of marble, covered over with a grand, pompous pall, all of gold brocade, and crowned with a large gold vase at each corner. In this chapel, likewise, there are almost an infinite number of lamps; some made of silver, and others of gold. This sepulchral monument is three foot high, nine foot long, and four foot broad.

Before this, stood two other tombs, one whereof was of an infant: and two behind it; that is to say, five in all; namely, that of Sefi himself; that of his son Fedredin; that of king Tzenid, and a son of Fedredin, named Soltan Arder, who was fled alive by the Turks; another of a son of king Tzenid; and that of king Aider. The lamps that are thus fixed all round these several sepulchral tombs, are lit up every night; besides two large tapers, which are put into two large candlesticks, each of solid gold. Directly over the tomb of Sefi there is a small dome, covered over with gold, and on one side of it, another, which is inlaid with purple and green stones, all accurately glazed. Tho' some travellers have prematurely affected, in their accounts of this place, that no layman, not so much as the king himself, is permitted to enter in at the golden door, in order to see this monument of Sefi, yet, I know the contrary by experience. I must confess, I only just stepped in, without presuming to go too far, being fully convinced of the profound veneration they have for that sacred spot. Every step we made forwards, we found, required a fee, tho' we had paid pretty roundly at our first admission. We were forced to put our hands, in short, into our purses at every new door. To do them justice, however, the attendants are very courteous, and communicative enough; they will answer as many questions, as ever you shall think proper to

propose: and, so far were they from hurrying us, that they seemed highly delighted to find, that I pryed into every corner, and was so remarkably attentive to each individual curiosity that they flattered me.

At the entrance into this magnificent apartment, we found, that on the left-hand side, there were several small apartments, all fast locked up, wherein, as we were informed, there were divers other royal monuments included; and (amongst those of many other kings and queens) is that of king Ithmael, the son of Aidel; that of king Tamar, the son of Ithmael; that of king Ithmael, the second, the son of Tamar; that of king Mohammed Khodebend, the son of Ithmael; that of Ithmael Mirfa; that of Hemfa Mifta, and of the brothers of king Abbas, the son of Khodebend. These last mentioned monuments, it seems, have no decorations to strike the eye of any curious spectator.

As we went out of the grand salon, or hall, we turned on the right-hand into a passage that leads to the Kitchen, the door whereof, is, likewise, plated with silver. The kitchen itself, however, tho' very spacious, is by no means correspondent with the grandeur of its door. In the center of it there are two large wells; and in the wall, which is lofty enough, there are several nooks, or niches, for the reception of pots and kettles, and a great number of floors beneath. This is the place set apart for dressing the victuals of all such as are attendants, and entrusted with the care of the above described sepulchre. Here, likewise, they distribute what they call Peloe every night to some hundreds of poor people. # THE TRAVELS OF

My curiosity being thus fully gratified, I went back to the Meydoen, in order to take a survey of his majesty's gardens, each of which is separated from the other, by a wall, erected for that purpose, on one side of the sepulchral vaults above-mentioned. King Sefi formerly made that particular spot, it seems, his favourite place of abode, in a once pompous, and superb edifice, built all with stone, though at present, indeed, it is reduced to a heap of rubbish. There are here, however, not only two apartments still subsisting, with commodious chimneys in each, where-in some of the attendants perpetually inflict, that they were formerly part of the royal chamber, set apart for his majesty's own private use; but also some few others, and a small bagnio, or bath, but void of all decorations.

The first garden, which is of some considerable extent, is very irregular, and the flamboyantly neglected, it is plentifully stored with a great variety of fruits. However, there are no flowers, no plants to be met with, that deserve the least attention of the curious spectator. In various places, it is watered by several little springs, which run across it, both here and there.



As to the second garden, there is no fracture at all in it; neither is it so spacious as the former. The trees, however, in this, are much more lofty than those in the first. In a word, both are so little worthy of a stranger's notice, that he could never form an idea of so mean a spot of ground being once a royal garden.

From thence, we went directly to amuse ourselves with our fishing-rod, in a small river that runs gently along from the adjacent mountains. There we met with an aqueduct, or conduit, for a commodious conveyance of a sufficient quantity of water to the palace. This aqueduct was composed of earth, and raised only some few feet from the ground. On the top, there was a gutter for the water to flow down; and below, through a kind of reservoir, erected on purpose for the conveyance of it into the town; where it serves for watering the gardens as occasion requires. At some distance from this water-house, or refer-

The day following I set out on horseback, at about half a league's distance from the town, in order to make a draught of the prospect thereof, as it appeared on that side. I took my stand accordingly on a hill, which was the only commodious place, indeed, from whence I could have a satisfactory view of it; for in every other part, the trees obstructed too much my sight; and to confess the truth, even on the very spot which I made choice of, the prospect I had was somewhat imperfect. Just at this juncture, a shower of rain began to fall down in so heavy a manner, that I lost my labour, and was obliged to make the best of my way home, without making the least progress in my intended survey.

In my return, I saw a house, with a water-mill adjoining to it for grinding of corn: The water that drives this mill, fell from the summit of the loftiest hills thereabouts, to the westward of the town, which hills are eternally covered, it seems, with snow, and the water flows down through a canal, raised of earth, for that particular purpose. This water flows, torrent-like, below the house, and extends itself over the champaign, flat country, to the fourth-raft, where the conduit stands, which I have before-mentioned. These houses, have each a mill beneath, with two great mill-stones, which constantly turn on a piece of hallowed wood, where the corn, when ground, runs through a wooden pipe under the mill-stone, and the flower comes out on each side. The river runs hard by this house, under a large, lofty bridge, consisting of five arches; the lower part whereof is paved with large stones.

We shall now proceed to amuse our readers with an accurate, though compendious description of the city, which the inhabitants sometimes distinguish by the name # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

This city is situate on the north of Persia, and east of the province of Sherwan, in the ancient (g) Media, to the fourth of the (b) Caphian fca, and to the east of the town of (i) Tauris, or Tabris.

The buildings here are much more magnificent than those at (k) Samachi, notwithstanding they are composed of the very same materials. The Bazars here likewise, are much finer, and much more artfully covered. Here, however, they have no great dealings in gold fluffs, or in diamonds, as some will affect they used to do in former times, and as they do in other places. Here there are great numbers of mochs, embellished with domes; the chief, or most considerable of which, is, that called Mu-zyd, Mu-zhit, or Mazit Adine, or in plain English, their Sunday-Moche.

It is situate on the east-side of the city, and within the walls; and as it is erected on a rising-ground, it is very conspicuous, even at a considerable distance. It is divided into several parts, in each of which is performed divine service. The principal division is moderately large and circular, and covered with a dome, which is raised on a circular wall, tho' somewhat low, which rises from the body of the building, in much the same form as an European steeple. In the front of this moch, there is a bafon, or reservoir, which is furnished with plenty of such water as falls from the adjacent hills, from whence it is conveyed by pipes, which are laid under-ground; and this water proves a great refreshment to great numbers of persons who are religiously inclined, and resort hither to perform their devotions. There is not one, however, of all the ref, that can stand in any competition with this. In this city, likewise, there are several hamans, that is, bagnios, or baths. There are several streets in the town, indeed; but then, there are only three or four of them (where their principal shops stand) that are any ways spacious, or worthy of notice. As to the houfes here, they are all flat at top; and make a shocking appearance. There are more caravas at Samachi than at this place. The Indians, however, have three out of the small number that there are here.

As to the (l) Chinese, they have none at all; and trade, indeed, droops here very much. In divers parts of the town there are plenty of lofty alder-trees, and lindens; and the river runs on one side of it. All the roads, likewise, leading to, and from the town, abound with regular rows of young trees, which, as they had been but lately planted, must needs, in the proceeds of a few years, strike the eye very agreeably, and have a good effect. The most beautiful part of the town is the Meydoen, or square, where the sepulchral monument of Seff stands, as we have observed before. There are several mean, paltry houfes, both to the right and left, which are inhabited only by a pack of poor, beggarly mechanics. Most of the houfes, however, which are not situate in the Bazars, notwithstanding their mean, external appearance, have very commodious gardens, abounding with all sorts of fruit-trees; and in the suburbs, or out-skirts of the town, where houfes stand straggling, and at a considerable distance from each other, there are large spots of ground, that are full of trees. From hence it is, that the town may, with propriety enough, be laid to be of large extent; and, indeed, much larger than Samachi; tho' it does not contain near the number of houfes. It is situate in the center of a

spacious plain, which is at least, three leagues in extent, computing from the two extremities, and encompassed by lofty mountains, the highest of which is distinguished by the name of Sevalau, or Sebelahu, and is everlastingly covered with snow. This mountain stands to the weft, north-west of the town. There is another, called Chilan, which stands to the east, or fourth-east of the town. There is a third at a place called Sahand, and a fourth, distinguished by the name of Alvand, which stands at but a small distance from a place, called Hamadan, which is more lofty than either of the other three. These are commonly called the P P P. #  
THE TRAVELS OF

the Brothers, on account of the near ref resemblance, which they bear to each other.

In the mountains, that stand within a very small distance from the town, there are divers hot baths, which are in great repute with the inhabitants of those parts. One of them is not much above two leagues off; and a second about three; the others, indeed, are at a greater distance.

On my first arrival at this town, I could scarce walk along the streets, for the multitude of people that flocked about me; as my Dutch habit proved a perfect novelty to them. The fame in convenience I laboured under, when I took my survey of the sepulchral monument of Sei; but there, indeed, the attendants were reduced to the necessity of using rough means with the mob, that hovered, on the same account, all round about me. Neither was I perfectly free from a crowd of spectators, even at the caravan-fera where I lodged. And one Persian, in particular, was so curious, as to offer a small sum of money to procure a fight of me.

Notwithstanding I was thus incommoded, I drew a view of the town, from a rifling-ground, near the bridge, which I mentioned some time ago, and which stands on one side, to the fourth-west. The reader will find a prospect of it, as it is to be seen from without, in the plate hereto annexed, and numbered 48. I have distinguished the domes of the sepulchre of Sei, by the letter A. There are but three of the four to be seen; that which is invisible from that place, as it is smaller and lower, is covered with gold. The great moch of Adnie is distinguished by the letter B, and the letter C represents the bridge of eight arches, which stands on the river that runs across the plain. As the town is surrounded with such abundance of lofty trees, there is nothing more to be seen. In the plate annexed (No. 49.) I have given the reader an exact representation of the bridge that consists of five arches only.

On the 6th of October I went to the village called Kelgeran, which is some what more than half a league to the northward of the city; in order to go thither, I was obliged to pass by the sepulchral monument of Sei, from whence the road is full of alder-trees, and

lindens, on each side of a little river. This village is principally inhabited by the (m) Armenians, who have two churches here; but both are very small, and very dark.

As I went out of the town, I found there was a high-road, which was planted with trees on each side, and led directly to one of the king's gardens. This garden was inclosed with a large earth-wall only, and seemed to lie in as much disorder, and as much neglected as those above described. Notwithstanding this, there is plenty of good fruit in it; especially of apples, pears, and plums; the flowers, indeed, are very ordinary, and have no good qualities to recommend them. Over-against this, there is another garden, wherein stands an edifice, which tho' run to ruin and decay, has various apartments in it. At the entrance of this village, I saw the sepulchral monument of Seid Tzeibrail, the father of Sei above-named; in which royal dormitory are deposited, likewise, the venerable ashes of Seid Sala, the father of the before-mentioned Seid Tzeibrail, and those of his grandfather, named Seid Kudbeddin. This monument stands in a garden, furrounded, or inclosed with an earth-wall, and two large folding-gates, one in the front, and the other backwards. The latter comes out to the road; but the former is in the village. Again, this royal monument is quadrangular, tolerably lofty, and cased with small stones. There is a round tower on the top of it, tho' but low, which supports a verdant dome, inlaid with gold, and azure decorations, furmounted with golden balls. On each side of the walls, there are fix several windows; the highest whereof are exquisitely well wrought, beautifully painted, and embellished like the dome, and those underneath them, have each an iron-grate, and shutters to them within. There are three small cavities below the cornish, which are embellished with a rich variety of colours, and

A royal sepulchre\*

and in the centre of the th... there is a wooden-gate, wit... Above this door, likewise, the... in the form of a few... third-small windows in it.

the front is a very fine por... no nobody to apply to... took a draught of it thr... the gate, as well as I could... tion whereof the reader wil... number go.

In the village... front of this structure... perfectly even with the... tho' but fourteen foot... broad. There are fir... of this edifice; and, in... the groundfall of it, I... off my fines; in the fa... manner as I had done be... ment of king Sei; and, in... votes his the sepulchre... it a visit. When I was... apartment, which has a... door above, I found the... of with carpets. At a do... pinte to the feet, I had... sepulchre, which was rail... and flood in the center of... apartment. It was comp... indeed; but then, as they... inform me, the encha... solid gold. The pull th... it is of a rich brocade;... veral river, and golden... before, but over the door... ing, I was not

permitted... behind the door, where... stands eroded; yet, I... dling diffidently, and... could in making my obi... Whilst I was thus bu... taking this survey, my... Armenian, unfortunate... some angry words with... the place; and from... gage they came, in the... this quarrel I was great... with my utmost endeavor... the matter, and make th... if possible, in order to... consequences, that some... # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

and in the centre of the structure behind, there is a wooden-gate, with a step to it. Above this door, likewise, there is a decoration in the form of a semi-vault, with three final windows in it. This door, I perceived, was fast locked; and, that in the front is a very fine portal. As I could see nobody to apply to for admittance, I took a draught of it thro' the crevices of the gate, as well as I could, a representation whereof the reader will find in plate number 50. In the village, and near the front of this structure, there is a bafon, perfectly even with the ground; which, tho' but fourteen foot long, is sixteen broad. There are fix steps to the door of this edifice; and, in order to go over the groundfil of it, I was obliged to pull off my shoes; in the same ceremonial manner as I had done before at the monument of king Seft; and most of the devotees kiss the sepulchre, when they pay it a visit. When I was got into the first apartment, which has a curious glass-window above, I found the floor was covered with carpets. At a door, directly opposite to the first, I had a view of this sepulchre, which was raised fix foot high, and flooded in the center of a very elegant apartment. It was composed of wood, indeed; but then, as they were pleased to inform me, the enchafings were all of solid gold. The pall that is spread over it is of a rich brocade; and there are several silver, and golden-lamps, not only before, but over the door. Notwithstanding, I was not permitted to stir an inch beyond the door, where the monument stands erected; yet, I could see every thing distinctly, and was as curious as I could in making my observations.

Whilst I was thus busily employed in taking this survey, my guide, who was an Armenian, unfortunately happened to have some angry words with the attendants on the place; and from opprobrious language they came, in short, to blows. At this quarrel I was greatly concerned, and used my utmost endeavours to compromise the matter, and make them friends again, if possible; in order to prevent the fatal consequences, that sometimes attend the

like disorders. I knew very well, the inhabitants of this place were very vindictive, as well as proud and imperious; and that the governor of the province had spent no less than forty years in bringing them under due subjection; and before he could accomplish it at last, he was reduced to the necessity of fending some part of them away to (n) Ifaphan. Formerly they were so headstrong, brutish, and outrageous, that whenever they thought proper, they would take even wives away from their husbands by

force; neither would they regard whom they sacrificed to their rage and resentment, in case they met but with the least opposition. The merchants themselves, at that time, were not safe, even in their caravans, from the injuries and insults of those savage and untractable people. The Khan, however, at present, has found out, it seems, ways and means for giving a check to their usual insolence, notwithstanding he has only foot-guards, and no about three hundred horse.

On the second instant, the effects belonging to the merchants were carried to the village, called Adfgaernele, where the guide of the caravan dwelt, who made us lose, through his contrivance, or misconduct, the very finest part of all the season. On the ninth, however, he determined to set forwards; but as there had fallen before such a prodigious quantity of rain, he was under an absolute necessity of postponing his departure till the twelfth. Whilst I was here, several Armenian priests made their applications to me for my benevolence and free-gift of what I thought proper, towards the erection of a church, intended to be dedicated to St. John, as soon as finished, and which workmen were daily forwarding in an adjacent village. Accordingly, I made them a little present, which was gratefully enough received, and wished them all the good success that so laudable an undertaking very justly deserved.

On the eleventh, I made the necessary preparations for my departure, after a whole month spent at Ardvel before-mentioned, and sent my cargo to the caravan. On the twelfth, # THE TRAVELS OF

twelfth, as I arose by day-break, I met with a great number of Perfians, who, as they passed through the town, were all jovial and merry, on account of their safe return from (a) Mecca, where they had been a voluntary pilgrimage to the sacred mausoleum, or dormitory, of their great prophet Mohammed.

There it was, that the caravan began to set out in the afternoon; and as we faced to the southward, after we had crossed the plain, we got among some mountains, from whence we had the finest prospect imaginable, not only of the city, but of all the adjacent villages. Though every thing had a very good effect there; yet we were at too great a distance to discern objects quite so distinctly as we could have wished. The caravan halted at a village, called Sardale, which is near three leagues from the city; but such a sudden fog, or mist, arose upon us, at our entrance on the mountains, that we had but a very imperfect view of them. The soil of the lands adjacent to this village, which is of a moderate extent, is very fertile, and abounds with corn, which we found laid up in heaps, on all sides.

We set out from hence, at three in the morning, and accomplished our passage over the mountains; and when we were got at some considerable distance from them; those which were the highest, appeared to the eye, as if their tops had touched the very clouds. Even there likewise, the foil is moderately fertile; and the peasants there, who are very numerous, were very busily employed in tilling the ground with buffaloes, and oxen. At nine, after having passed through several little, incongruous villages, we came to that called Koraming, which is pretty extensive, and abounds with large heaps of corn.

There we halted in the plain, by the side of a rivulet, or brook, which runs across it; and there we espied a prodigious flight of small birds; fowls, nips, and others thrushes; of which I shot a considerable number: I killed likewise two small young wild ducks. The lands that lie all round these villages abound with

fruit-trees, as well as willows and alders. Here we waited for some of our companions, whom we had left behind; and in that interval I made a draught of the prospect, which the reader will find hereto annexed in plate 51.

Towards the evening, the fog fell heavy upon us again, and so continued till midnight; at which time we got amongst the mountains, but then, indeed, the moon favoured us, and shone fiercely bright.

On the fifteenth, in the morning, we came to a village called Fattaba. By break of day on the sixteenth, we moved forwards among the mountains. My two friends, the Armenians, who had tarried behind, overtook us, and joined us before it was dark; and on the seventeenth, after we had journeyed over several rocks, we halted among the mountains. That day we overtook our camels, which had set out before us; and at about half a league distance from thence we had a full view of the famous mount (p) Taurus, by the inhabitants called Cafelufan.

It extends itself a great way up the country, and is distinguished by a great variety of names, according to the several places which it crosses; in the southern parts of (q) Afia minor, however, it retains its first and most proper appellation. Some historians, indeed, confound it with mount (r) Caucaus. We began to ascend this remarkable mountain by three in the morning. We found it prodigiously steep, and full of rocks, with large fissures, and such precipices, as were enough to strike the boldest heart with terror. And as the path-way, or road, is very narrow, and consequently very dangerous, we were obliged to dismount and walk on foot. Though the passage over it, for the general, is accomplished in somewhat less than an hour; yet we were two hours at least in the completion of ours; as our caravan happened to be more

numerous than usual. As we descended, we saw such precipices, as must double the road in the night-time. When we got safe over this mountain, we came into a plain, # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

plain, which we found of a very considerable extent, and which we crofted to the left, and then proceeded till we came to another mountain, or at least another branch of mount Taurus, which in this place, divides itself into two parts, between which runs the river called Kifilofan, by some, and Kurb by others.

Its course, or stream, is very rapid, and its waters, at various distances, fall down among the rocks, like so many cascades, with a prodigious force. It has its rife, or spring, in the west, and empties itself into the Caffian-fea.

Over this river king Tamar erected a stone-bridge, ten paces in breadth, and in length no less than one hundred and fifty. This bridge is moderately lofty, and consists of six arches; three whereof are wider than the rest. There are three apertures, or openings, between four of them, and a fort of a semi-circular tower between the other two. At present, the river runs through only one or two at most, except the waters are caufally swelled beyond their usual height. When we had crofted over this bridge, we halted, in order to wait till the caravan, which was considerable behind, should overtake us: my friends, the Armenians, embraced this opportunity to regale themselves with a dish or two of coffee; but for my own part, I improved this short interval, by taking a draught of the prospect hereunto annexed in plate LII.

When we were all joined, we ascended the second mountain, or the other branch (as we observed before) of the Taurus, which is much loftier, larger, and more steep than the former: as we had been greatly fatigued, however, in our passage over the first, on foot; we were obliged here several times to stop, in order to recover our breath.

At last, indeed, when we got into a better path, we all re-mounted, and gained the summit by break of day. Two hours

after us, the rest of the caravan mounted their horses again; and by that time we had got about half a league farther, we came into a very fine, and well cultivated country.

By nine in the morning we reached the village called Kafiebeggideraffi; where we purchased grapes, for the first time, after the rate of four pence per pound. All the road beyond mount Taurus, as well as the foil is extremely good.



From thence we had a view of another mountain, called Sawalan, which is much loftier than the former, and everlastingly covered with snow; but in order to rest, and refresh ourselves a little, we halted here a whole day.

On the twentieth instant, we set forwards about three in the morning, the weather favouring us exceedingly; and by about seven, we came to a rivulet or brook, the waters whereof run down almost to the village called Jamkoela. There we met with some uncommon birds, called by the inhabitants Baeker-Kara. After that we passed through several villages, from whence we had a prospect of mount Taurus, at a considerable distance; and in much the same manner, as the reader will find it represented in Plate LIII.

On the twenty-second we traversed a wide plain, which was bordered, on the left-hand, by several hills and mountains, where the inhabitants obliged us with better grapes than those we bought at first, and of a more exquisite flavour.

On the twenty-third, we reached the town called Samgael; and after we had passed through it, and left it behind us for some considerable time, we halted once more; and there we were furnished with several pomegranates, which proved exceedingly fine, moderately large, and of a most beautiful colour. There likewise we purchased, at a moderate price, some very fine grapes, and other refreshing fruits. # THE TRAVELS OF

## **Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.**

1. Mausoleum, a famous, marble sepulchre, built by Artemisia, in honour of her husband Mausolus, king of Caria: it was thirty five cubits high, 44 foot about, and supported by thirty six marble pillars. As this was accounted one of the seven wonders of the world, all other rich and magnificent sepulchral monuments are distinguished from thence by the name of a Mausoleum.
2. Rotundo, at Rome, was a famous edifice there, so called, from its being built in a circular form both within and without.
3. Rome, see p. 108. n. g.
4. Perdia, see p. 64. n. a.
5. Turkey, see p. 203. n. e.
6. Ardevil, or Ardebil, see p. 233. n. e.
7. Media, see p. 214. n. e.

8. Cæsarian-fee, fee p. 66. n. q.
  9. Tauris, or Tabris, east long. 46. 30 lat. 38. 20, a city of Persia in Asia, in the province of Adirbeatzen, the ancient Ecbatana, the capital of Media. It is situated in a fine plain, surrounded with mountains, from whence there falls a rivulet, which runs through the city; lying 300 miles fourth-east of Erzerum, and 400 miles north of Isfahan. The old city was 15 miles in circumference, and had walls which were 70 cubits high. The present town is about 5 miles in circuit, very populous, and a place of great trade. As it stands near the frontiers of Turkey, it has been often taken and retaken. The Turks surprised it during the late civil wars in Persia, and exercised their usual barbarities on the inhabitants, killing an incredible number of them; but Kouli Kan has reduced it under the obedience of the Persians again, and purified the Turks into their own territories.
  10. Samachi, fee a description of it by the author in p. 209.
  11. China, fee p. 66. n. t.
  12. Armenia, fee p. 198. n. g.
  13. Isfahan, fee p. 109. n. m.
  14. Mecca, east long. 43. 30, lat. 21. 20, the capital of the territory of Mecca, and of all Arabia Felix, in Asia, and the place of Mahomet's nativity, situate thirty miles east of Sidin, the port-town to it on the Red-sea, 200 miles fourth-east of Medina. It is a large, well-built city, in the middle whereof stands the Kaaba, or house of God, which the Arabs believe was built by Abraham, and to which Mahomet obliged all his disciples to go in pilgrimage, once in their lives. This temple is but 15 feet long, and 12 broad, and 30 feet high; and there is a large court about it, encompassed with a piazza, in which the pilgrims perform their devotions, seldom entering the Kaaba, which is too small to admit many.
  15. Taurus, a mountain, which runs through the lesser Asia, from west to east into Persia.
  16. Asia, fee p. 127. n. x.
  17. Caucasus mount, fee p. 198. n. k.
-

## C H A P. XXXVI.

### **A Description of the City, or Town called Samgael, and of the several Places that must be passed through in the Way to that Place. The Author arrives at the City called Com.**

We were detained here all the next day; in order to wait for the custom-house-officers, who reside in the suburbs.

Though # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

Though Samgael has the appearance only of a country village; there are several very lofty and well-built houses in it, (considering the country wherein it stands) some, indeed, composed all of earth, and others with earth and stone intermixed. The Bazar belonging to this town is a very fine one, and well-worthy of a stranger's notice. That part of it where they keep their principal shops, but more especially those belonging to the drapers, where they vend large quantities of cotton-stuffs and cloths, is well-covered and vaulted. However, there are shops, in divers other parts of the town, which are covered, and a large number of mochs, that are embellished with domes; and that which is looked upon as their principal, or chief, is painted with a lively green, and with out glazed with a fine purple. There is one that is somewhat lofty, with a dome to it, which the (a) Turks, indeed, when they first became masters of the place, made use of as their place of public worship; but it is now run to ruin and decay. Tho' it is not, it is true, over spacious; yet it is pleasantly enough situated in a plain, with high mountains near it to the westward. As there is a stream of fine clear water; at about half a league distance from thence, our caravan thought proper to halt there for awhile, at a place that abounded with trees and gardens that were well walled round. I went to the north-east part of the town, and there took the prospect of it, as the reader will see in the plate number LIV annexed.

The letter A. points out the moch above-mentioned to be run to ruins. The letter B. represents the most distinguished moch, and the letter C. a large building, which is almost totally demolished. I did not observe any thing else in this place worthy my attention, as there were no traces, or footsteps, whereby I could form any adequate idea of its antiquity, tho', doubtless, it is ancient; and tho' it is well known, that it was in a flourishing condition in the days of Tamerlane the Great; but it was afterwards, it is true, entirely demolished by the Turks. There is but one public inn,

or caravanferai, throughout the whole city. It is a moderately large one, however, composed of earth and clay, and the river called Saganhacy runs to the east of it, and from thence rolls its waters amongst the mountains. There it was that I took the prospect which the reader will find in the plate number LV. hereto annexed.

This town is under the jurisdiction of a Daroega, that is, a Bailiff; and there, tho' you pay, indeed, the sum of thirty-pence for every horse-load of silk, or cloth; yet you are charged but with fifteen, for other commodities of less value. In the evening it began to rain space; and continued so to do till about an hour before day-break.

On the twenty fifth we proceeded on our journey, and the road, indeed, was very fine; for the officers above-mentioned had agreed to meet us at the place where we proposed to halt that day, in order to receive their customary dues. We had a distant sight of several villages as we journeyed on, but halted at a place called Kurkandy, which lies about three leagues distance, to the south-east of the town. In this little spot there is a branch of the (b) Taurus, which extends it self from north to south, towards (c) Curdistan, which is inhabited by a people called the Curds, who though they reside in villages, yet they infilt, that they have notwithstanding a fortress in the mountains called Keyder Byamber.

On the 26th we had a violent shower of rain, and traversed the plain in the very midst of it, journeying on towards the mountains; and by dawn of day we could discern a place called Sultania, which stood on our right, at about two leagues distance from the place where we had halted for some part of the night. This town is situated in a plain, near several mountains, which almost surround it, with that of Keyder before-mentioned on the right; as the guides, however, of our caravan had no business to transact there; and as there is no such thing as entering the town without paying some customary fees, we passed by it; but it was with abundance of re- # THE TRAVELS OF

reluctance, on my own part. They told me, indeed, in order to foote me, that they should halt at a place but a small distance from it; but finding, that they had no such real intention, I rode back towards the town, and halted at a commodious rising-ground near the east side of it, where I took the view of it, which the reader will find in the plate number LVI. hereto annexed.

There are four spacious mochs in it, the three principal whereof have large domes to them; and in one of them is the sepulchral monument of Sultan Mohammed Khodabend, who laid the foundations of it, as they pretend, about four hundred years ago: this (d) Maufoleum, they affured me, is very pompous and magnificent, and very beautifully built; and that the chapel belonging to it is decorated with gold and silver. The prospect of it from without has a very good effect.

There are neither gates nor walls to this town; and all the houses that are either in, or round about it, are built of earth, lime, and clay. There are eight or ten caravanseras, however, in it, and some few bazaars; but it must be confessed, they are not very considerable; neither can the place, with propriety, be termed a town of trade. Formerly, indeed, before it was demolished by Tamerlane, it was looked upon as one of the principal towns throughout the whole empire of (e) Perfa. As to the palace, which was once the most superb and magnificent building in it, there are no foot-steps of it now to be seen. There are the ruins, indeed, of an ancient stone-tower and gate, at about half a league's distance from the town; and there, it is highly probable, belonged to the old city, which is situate in thirty fix degrees thirty minutes of northern latitude.

It was two hours, if not more, before we could overtake the caravan, which had continued its regular progress; but at noon it halted, as well as we, at a village called Thalís, the parts adjacent whereof abound with what the inhabitants call Baeker-kaeraes, that is to say, birds, that

bear some near resemblance to our partridges, with this trivial distinction only, that they are somewhat larger, and their bellies and wings are of a whitish colour. These fly a considerable height, and in large flocks; but are seemingly fond of, and frequently seen hopping about such lands as are but newly manured. I had the good fortune to kill one of them; which proved a weighty one, was well fed, full of flesh, and when drest, was a most delicious morsel.

We pursued our journey from hence two hours before day-break, and after a progress of five hours, we reached a town called Gromdore; a town that is very extensive, abounds with fine trees, and fine gardens, and is situate by the side of a gently purling stream. Some of its houses are pretty lofty, and worthy of a stranger's notice.

From hence we set out again much about the same hour as we did the day before, and journeyed over the same plain. The mountains that furrowed it, we observed, were at the distance of a league, or thereabouts, from one another. The adjacent grounds seemed to be well cultivated, and there were a great number of villages all round about the country. The Peafants there make little dams, or mounds of earth, in order to enclose the water; and there are several conduits or reservoirs of water, for the refreshment of the land as occasion offers. After that we passed through two little villages, the mochs whereof had somewhat over them like our steeples, which in this part of the country is, we can assure the reader, a sight something novel and uncommon. These mochs are very broad at bottom; but at the top terminate in the form of a

spire. We were informed, that these were the sepulchral monuments of some particular saints, to whose memory these mochs were annexed.

About noon, we passed down a kind of hollow lane, which was encompassed, in a manner, by a kind of canal, or reservoir, about five or six feet in breadth, the water whereof overflowed its banks, in

two

The inhabitants of the place are fully furnished with all that a traveller can desire. We had a good meat, particularly some fowl, and many kinds of fruits, the principal of which were melons, of the best quality, and very large; and we had for our drink, a sweet beverage called *Tchouba*, which they call on Angelica, and which, to be sure, is very much one of our best drinks.

In this place we found a very large and commodious gate, the form of which is most beautiful; and the buildings are adorned with trees, and all the adjacent part of the place is pleasant. The two villages that we passed were near one another; the one being called *Tchouba*, and the other, *Thalis*. In both of these villages we found many people, who were very courteous and hospitable, and who gave us all the refreshments we could desire.

At the distance of about half a league from the town, we met with a number of caravans, and after we passed through a small mountain, we found ourselves in the midst of a plain, where we were received by a number of people, who invited us to their houses, and who gave us the best of their food and drink.

At the end of the day, we reached the village of *Thalis*, where we halted for the night, and where we were entertained by the inhabitants, who gave us the best of their food and drink.

In the morning, we set out again, and travelled for three hours, and then we reached the town of *Gromdore*, where we halted for the night.

In the morning, we set out again, and travelled for three hours, and then we reached the town of *Gromdore*, where we halted for the night.

In the morning, we set out again, and travelled for three hours, and then we reached the town of *Gromdore*, where we halted for the night.

In the morning, we set out again, and travelled for three hours, and then we reached the town of *Gromdore*, where we halted for the night.

In the morning, we set out again, and travelled for three hours, and then we reached the town of *Gromdore*, where we halted for the night.

In the morning, we set out again, and travelled for three hours, and then we reached the town of *Gromdore*, where we halted for the night.

In the morning, we set out again, and travelled for three hours,  
and then we reached the town of *Gromdore*, where we halted for  
for for for for for for for for for for for for for for for for  
for for for for for for for for for for for for for # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

two places particularly, to that degree, that all the lands from north-weet to fourth-caff were all covered.

In this place we found two villages, one named Parfcheim, and the other Touoeiky; this is the smallest of the two, and is surrounded with a mud-wall, like one belonging to a garden.

As we entered into it, we passed through a large gate. The former is spacious enough, abounds with trees and gardens, and all the adjacent parts are extremely pleasant. The two villages, where we told you just now the mochs and steeples, as it were, bear the same name, and are in the same district, or division, tho' at a considerable distance one from the other. Here the mountains terminate, or at least seemed to us to do so. That very day we made a progress of at least five leagues; and at three in the morning, we passed through a road, that abounded with hills and villages both on the right-hand and the left, from whence, as soon as daylight appeared, we could plainly see some mountains, which were all covered with snow. After that, we crofted over one little river no less than three or four times. The weather was very favourable to us till we reached as far as a place called Gihara, where we all sheltered ourselves under the ruins of a low wall: which is a practice by no means uncommon in these parts. In this town there are at least five hundred houses, but most of them very low, and built on such a rising ground, that a traveller, at a distance might very easily be deceived, and take it for a fortress; it abounds with trees and gardens; but it is surrounded almost with houses that are absolutely uninhabited.

In the Plate, (No. 57.) hereto annexed, the reader will find a prospect of the place.

The inhabitants of this town are plentifully furnished with all forts of provisions. We had as good meat, poultry, and fruit, as any one could wish to eat, and particularly some melons, of which I preferred some of the feed. There I shot a bird, which they call an Angoert; it resembled very much one of our ducks; but it is capable of flying higher, and as it walks, it fruts along with its head erected like an european cock, and naturally takes the water. The body of this bird is red; its neck is of a yellow hue, almost up

to its head; it is white, however, all about its eyes to the bill, which is all black; as to its wings they are particoloured; that is to say, white, red, and black. No sooner had I shot it but my dog brought it to me alive.

In number 58, I have given the reader a prospect of a small village; and in Plate (No. 59.) he has a representation of the bird above described.

In this part of the country, there is plenty likewise of Cotton-trees, and in Plate (No. 60.) I have given the reader a draught of one of its branches. The Pods, however, there represented, are in that condition, as they appear, when the fruit of it is not perfectly ripe; and one of the four the reader will perceive to be burst open, and full of cotton. Sometimes these pods are gathered, and sometimes again they fall themselves, when the Pod is burst and beginning to decay. As to their colour, when they burst, and flew themselves open, they have a very good effect by the white within.

Here we continued all the 30th day of the month, in order to give our horses proper rest. About noon (f), a Polish ambassador passed by me in his way from (g) Ifpahan to his own country. When I saw him, I was alone in pursuit of my game; however, as some of his retinue observed me to be in a German dress, they called out to me; but not regarding them, as taking it for granted they were Persians; two or three of them gave themselves the trouble to ride up to me, and informed me, in the Italian language, that they were (b) Europeans. Whilst I was thus accidentally engaged in discourse with them, the ambassador himself passed by. They asked me, what news from Europe? Whereupon I informed them that it was near six months since I departed from (i) Moscow; and by consequence I could give them no satisfactory answer in that particular. They had spent the night in the very next village. # THE TRAVELS OF

lange to that where we were, and desired me to recommend them to their friends at Isphahan, and promised to oblige me in the same manner as soon as they arrived at Moscow. After this cursory interview they proceeded on their journey. Their company consisted of about thirty persons, who were all on horseback, and had with them three or four flags, or small standards; as to the camels that followed them, they were about two or three and twenty in number, and hard laden with their baggage.

About three in the morning, we purfed our journey, and having advanced somewhat better than four leagues, we came to a large village called Salkfawa, which like the former, we found abounding with trees. On the right-hand lay the ruins of a once large and magnificent structure; and on the left the remains of a capacious caravanera, or inn, of which we have given our readers an exact representation in the Plate, (No. 61.) hereunto annexed.



Here we were detained some time, in order to discharge the customary duties; and in the interim I amused myself with my gun in shooting at pigeons, and met with sport sufficient.

As we journeyed on, we passed by a place that abounded with fena-trees, which strike the eye in the most agreeable manner; and as I had never met with any of them before in all my travels, I was charmed with them; and for that reason shall expatiate upon them in a more proper place.

In the village called Frafangh, we met with plenty of pomegranates, which are a very palatable and refreshing kind of fruit, and cheap enough in reason. On our departure from hence we passed over a hill, leaving the plain on our left, in order to get into the high road to (k) Com.

On the right of the last mentioned village there is another road which leads to Sawa, where we ought to have gone for the payment of our duties; but as that would have proved at least a whole day's journey out of our way to Com; and as they are liable by that means to discharge three several imposts, whereas they are open to the payment of one only by going the direct road to Com, this last, for the most part, is made choice of by the caravan.

When we had travelled for full five hours, we halted in a plain, which lay between several hills near the village called Hengeran, where they may very justly boast of their bread, and from thence we proceeded to a place called Saranda.

There, for the first time, we regaled ourselves with the wine of Ardevil, which is white, and the of a fine flavour, and extremely palatable, is not allowed to be fold. This village is encompassed (as it were) with wells, which are supplied with water by a subterraneous aqueduct in the village.

On the fourth of November, we purfed our journey, and after a tedious stretch of near seven leagues, we reached a place called Angelawa, about one in the afternoon, where we rested ourselves for near two hours before that belonged to the caravan; and this last mentioned village is no more than seven leagues distance at most from the city of Com aforesaid. This part likewise abounds with springs, or wells, which lie not above four or five paces one from the other; and the water that flows from them are conveyed under ground to the village. Perfa, in short, abounds with such subterraneous conveyances, springs, or wells. Here there are numbers of ravens, of a wondrous bulk to be met with; but as the soil in these parts are impregnated with falt-petre, the water has, by consequence, a brackish taste.

Tho' our camels set out in the night some considerable time before us; yet the officers belonging to the customs at Sawa, having seized upon one of them, which was laden with two bales of cloth, on account of our not having passed by that village; and

since this is under the selfsame jurisdiction or dominion; we were compelled to turn back, and stay where we were till the sixth instant, from whence we set out before break of day. As in our progress, we came upon a small trench, or ditch, of which we were not in the least aware as it was dark, several of our horses fell in, and mine amongst the rest; but, by good fortune, they were soon got out. # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

out again, without any considerable difficulty attending that occurrence.

About nine in the morning we reached the banks of the river called Sawafiaey, which flows from Sawa. This river in some places is very wide, and runs away to the fourth, in a plain between high grounds. By accident we unguardedly got into a fondy plain between some downs of loofe fand, where the passage is very dangerous. There are very lofty hills behind thefe downs, between which is the road that leads not only to Sawa but to Com likewise. Having had timely information, that the same officers who had made a feizure of our camels proposed to pay us a second visit; we came to a vigorous resolution of defending ourselves at all events; but they never ventured, whatever their inclination might be to repeat the attempt.

By about eleven, we came to a mountain that was very stony, the rocks whereof represent what is very amazing to behold, a great variety of objects of every kind. Tho' at a considerable distance I drew a prospect of them, together with the mountain itself, which lay on the right-hand of the town; and of this the reader will find it hereto annexed in Plate 62. The first bears a near resemblance to the

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

1. Turkey, fee p. 203. n. e.
2. Taurus, mount, fee p. 242. n. p.
3. Curdistan, the ancient Affyria, lies part of it in Asiatic Turkey, and part of it in Persia, having Turcomania, or Armenia, on the north, and Eyraca Arabic, or Chaldæa, on the south, in which province Nineveh anciently stood, on the eastern bank of the river Tygris, opposite to Mouful, fee p. 242. n. e.
4. Maufoleum, fee p. 242. n. a.
5. Perfia, fee p. 64. 4. n. o.
6. Poland, fee p. 63. n. m.
7. Ispahan, fee p. 109. n. m.
8. Europe, fee p. 127. n. dd.

9. Moscow, fee p. 23. n. a.
10. Com. eaf. long. 49. lat. 24. a city of Persia in Asia, in the province of Eyraca Agem, situated 100 miles north of Ispahan, is a large, populous city; but has suffered pretty much in the late civil wars, and those with Turkey.
11. Ardewil, or Ardebil, fee p. 233. n. e.

head and neck of an animal, and the left are equally marvellous to behold. In our passage thither we went through a small town, which abounded with houses indeed; but then they were all empty and abandoned. It is highly probable, however, that the inhabitants were at that time in tents in the fields, and feeding their cattle.

At the entrance into the town there is a large stone bridge; on one side whereof we saw a great number of tents pitched, and persons of all ranks and conditions in them, with horses near them, which were tied one to the other. These people, as we were informed, were upon a pilgrimage, with intent to visit the sepulchral monuments of some particular saints, and amongst whom, (as was observable enough) there were more women devotees than men. Our passage through the town to the end of the old walls, took us up at least half an hour. There we pitched our tents a-midst a parcel of ancient ruins. As the rest of the caravan lay under an indispensable necessity of crofting several narrow bridges, which had retarded them, they were at least two hours before they overtook us. We halted here all the next day, and the weather proved exceedingly delightful. # THE TRAVELS OF

## CHAP. XXXVII.

A succinct Account of the City of (a) Com, and of (b) Cachan, other- wife called Cahan. The Author arrives at (c) Iipahan.

WHILST I tarried here, and after I had sufficiently gratified my curiosity with taking a view of its ancient structures and ruins, of which I shall treat more at large in another place, I visited the inside of the city.

In the grand moch of Muzyd, other- wife called Ma-zyt-matfama, stands the sepulchral monument of Fatma-fora, the sifter of the great prophet Mahomet, and the wife of Ali. Near that stands another, wherein the remains of Abbas, king of Perfia is preferred, and the ashes of fe-veral other kings, and (amongst the left) tho' of Shah-fuliman, the father of Shah- hofein, the king now fitting on the throne. The architecture of these two mochs is of an exceeding fine fort; and each of them has a dome glazed with green. As we went into the town, we saw four columns of about thirty-six feet in height; the two first of which are united together,

and were part of some ancient edifice or moch. They are erected on a quadrangular wall, which is raised above the ground, much about the same height as the columns are, and the gate or portal to this wall is a large vaulted arcade. The two others stand at some considerable distance from each other, and are more damaged than those that are so united as before-mentioned. On the top of the two first, there is a fort of capital of no order at all, and three several facias round about them. Tho' to the eye they appear pretty equal, yet in reality they are more taper at the top than at the bottom; and over the capital they have a moulding of green and gold, but that is in a great measure defaced by time. They stand at some small distance from the Bazar, which makes but a very mean appearance; nay, the city itself has but very little to boast of; neither was I in the least fur-

prized to find it so ordinary as it really was, since 'tis a place of no manner of trade or commerce. Near the bridge, indeed, there is a sumptuous structure at the entrance of the town, which has a fine spacious court belonging to it, with a curious bafon in the centre of it. This building is a fort of moch or chapel, in which, as the inhabitants insist, are deposited, the remains of Imam Rifa's sifter, and those of Imam Anu-hammed, who flourished seven hundred and fifty years ago. This funeral monument is held in great veneration by the natives; because that illustrious lady, as they pretend, was a descendant of Mohammed; and for that reason there are frequently perfons of distinction interred in that ancient vault.

The bridge, which we have just been speaking of, tho' one hundred paces in length, is but eight only in breadth. There is a small brick parapet to it of two foot high only. This bridge, which is composed of small stones, has ten arches; and the river Comhay runs through some of them, tho' its waters be ever so low. There was an inundation, if we may credit the report of the inhabitants in this city, in the year 1591, by means whereof no less than 1200 houses were washed away; which fatal calamity being communicated to king Abbas, he gave orders directly for a dyke to be made, of two leagues at least in length, for the prevention of the like melancholy disaster for the time to come.

This city is divided into four and twenty districts or quarters, and contains in it at present, two thousand and one hundred houses; in each of which there is a well, or spring. But besides these, there are in the town and parts adjacent no less than three hundred Abanbaars, (as they call them). # CORNELIUS L.E. BRUN.

them) that is to say, cisterns or refer-voirs.

It has, moreover, four gates, and the like number of bazars, or market places; as also a meydoen, that is to say, a large public square, and several bagnios, or baths. There are likewise in and

about the city a great number of moschs and chappels. Tho' on this side, indeed, there are no antiquities to be seen; yet there are on the other, where our caravan halted, which was within the enceint or inclosure of the old town, formerly distinguished by the name of Chonana, standing in (d) Media, which extended, as 'tis generally supposed, as far as Cachan, and to a moun- tain, which served as a boundary to it; a large extent of land, called Arak by the natives.

In this place, tho' at some distance from the wall, there is a circular pyramid, which is in circumference about seventy-eight paces, and in height forty-eight, furnished with four sloping walls which have no steps to them. The entrance, or door to this round building is flopped up with a large heap of rubbish. Each wall is about a fathom in thickness; and the descent, taken obliquely, is about one fathom and an half: from thence each of them fetches a prodigious slope, and finks as deep into the ground, as it is above the surface, where the pyramid is both smooth and round. We could look into it, indeed, through some particular crannies, or fiffures; but there is no possibility of getting into it; and what is somewhat extraordinary; this was done on purpose that there should be no admission. In short, it is most pro- bable, that it had been formerly a grand fepulchral monument, and the reader may form an idea of it from the representation thereof hereto annexed in plate 63. On the right-hand of this pyramid, there are several other ruins, and amongst the rest, the remains of a chappel. Tho' the town- wall, which is greatly decayed, extends it- self a great way beyond these ruins; yet there is no such thing as distinguishing any particular part of it. At the distance, however, of about three hundred paces from the pyramid, as we returned to the

city, there is some part of this wall tol- erably whole, and flanked with round towers, which are greatly run to ruin and decay: there are ten of them in all; and each of them about forty feet in height; and at the bottom extremely thick and substantial. As the reader may plainly perceive by the representation of them in plate 64. To there he will find the ruins of a gate added, which was five paces in depth, and as much in breadth. The wall likewise was of the fame thickness. All the rest of the buildings are composed of earth, clay, and a great number of small stones, dried in the fun. I must freely confess, for my own part, I never saw any ancient structure of the like kind; but I am notwithstanding fully convinced that there are the ruins of the old city; and what inclines me to think so, is be- cause the ancients make frequent mention of the like structures of earth dried in the fun, and a fort of lime, composed of clay. The inspired penmen likewise observe, that those who were concerned in the erection of the tower of Babel made use of the same fort of earth instead of stone, and of clay in the room of lime. And the conclusion, in regard to this country, is the more natural; because the fun has here a prodigious power, and, by conse- quence is capable of drying up

earth to the nature or solidity of stone. I have a strong notion likewise, that there is chop-ped straw mingled with this earth in order to make it cement the better. The very same method of building is practised there to this very day; and let a stranger travel all over (e) Persia, he will find large quantities of this earth thus dried in the sun as above-mentioned; as also abundance of clay, wherewith they make their lime. It must be acknowledged, however, that their houses make but a poor, deplorable appearance, and are but of a short duration; neither do they ever concern themselves about the reparation of them, when they once begin to fall into decay.

From thence I took a tour to the north-west part of the city, where there are no rifling-rounds, and from that spot, I took # THE TRAVELS OF

the prospect of the city, as the reader will find it hereto annexed in Plate 65. The letter A, points out the moat which they distinguish by the name of Matfame. B, distinguishes that belonging to the king's; C, denotes the bridge with ten arches as above-mentioned; D, the moat of the grand fracture; E, the two principal columns of the building above-mentioned. The reader, by the same Plate, will plainly discern how the other columns are separated one from the other.

On the 18th of November, we proceeded on our journey, and left Com an hour if not more before break of day; and having passed by the old wall, we got into a plain, where there were villages all round about almost beyond number. When we had advanced about a league farther, we had a full view of two towers that were greatly run to decay. We spent all the day following in a small village, where runs a remarkable stream of water almost as clear as crystal, at about three leagues distance from the southern part of the city; and afterwards, when we had got a league beyond the place where we halted, we saw the remains of an ancient quadrangular structure, the walls whereof were very strong and substantial. This square building had been formerly (as we were informed) a strong fortress. On one side of this we perceived another, in which there were several apartments then subsisting. About a league and an half from thence, we had the prospect of a fine, spacious garden, encompassed by a square wall which was very lofty. By eight o'clock, or thereabouts, we got into a plain that was both rough and fertile, with mountains on one side of it, and small villages all round about it. On the ninth instant, we halted at a village called Sinfin, which was at the distance of near seven leagues from the place where we had spent the preceding night. This Sinfin is a village of some considerable extent, and there are several large fractures and caravanferas in it that are run to ruin and decay. From thence we moved onwards of our journey about two in the morning, and by break of day we met with several passengers in a place

where there were trees in abundance, and where the grounds about them were very well manured. As soon as we could see, we had before our eyes the city of Cachan, otherwife called Caffan, or Kaftan, at which town we arrived by seven in the morning. One part of our company went along with the caravan, into the suburbs, and the rest took up their lodgings in the city. The houses, however, in the outparts were very good and very regularly built, and much more spacious than those in the city, tho' it is looked upon as one of the Persian capital towns: and, to confess the truth, I had not seen any edifices till then that could stand in any competition with them. And as that city is situate at but a small distance from Isfahan, we found the inhabitants were much more polite, more courteous and compliant, than any we had passed through before.

This city lies in 35 degrees 51 minutes of northern latitude, and has various appellations; sometimes it is called Kaffian, and Kaffan; and sometimes again Kaffian and Caffan; and as to its situation, it stands at the extremity of a large plain, near the foot of a lofty mountain. I took my prospect of it from the north-west, in this plain, from which spot it makes, in my opinion, the most advantageous figure. On the left-hand of this city, stands a pyramid, very nearly resembling the ruined building I took notice of at Com. The reader will find the representation of it in Plate 66, hereto annexed.

The governor, or principal commissioner in this place, is distinguished by the title of a vizier, who is as an inferior officer, in point of dignity to a khan, as the latter is to a beglerbeg, to whose commands they are both subject. Nay, his power is so extensive, that it is customary for him to send them away to distant places, in case he judges it proper and convenient.

The town-walls are about 36 foot high, and there are seven several gates to it, exclusive of that of Daulet. There is a curious meydoen, or square, to the north-west; together with a fort of tilt-yard; above which there are two fine columns. On that which stands without, there is a staff # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

staff whereon a flag is generally hoisted, whenever there is a tournament appointed. This tilt-yard, or meydoen, is no less than seven hundred and seventy paces in length, and in breadth one hundred. As we went out of the gate on the right-hand, we had a sight of the royal garden, which is encompassed by a wall at least thirty foot high. This beautiful spot of ground is very spacious, and there is a fine canal, which is very regularly kept, that directly runs across it. It abounds with fine trees, and amongst the rest, a great number of pomegranate trees, all regularly ranged: there is a pleasure-house moreover belonging to it, which was erected by king Abbas the Great: there are four large gates to this wall, and two that are much smaller. From the first of them, which is near the town-gate, there is a passage into a spacious caravanserai, or

inn, which is principally frequented by the natives of (f) India. It is very large, and exceedingly beautiful, being thirty-six paces, if not more, in depth, and seven in breadth. The roof of it is adorned with a dome, whereon, after the Italian mode, there is a lanthorn; and, on the side there are two arcades, from whence we saw the apartment. When we had walked across it, we came into a court that was full an hundred paces in length, and fourcore in breadth, encompassed by a structure or edifice two stories high, which on each side has fifteen arcades in length, and ten in breadth; and underneath there are several apartments, one over the other; and besides these, there are several small rooms, or more properly speaking, clofets, which project, and have such a fine effect, that I must confess, I never saw any caravanserai that could stand fairly in competition with it. When we were got beyond this gate, we came to a second, which had a beautiful arcade; and as we found it open, I made bold to step into the garden, which abounded with trees, some smaller than others; of which, I presume, more than common care was taken: there was a third gate, which belonged to a very spacious, and very lofty structure above the garden-wall. From the fourth, we went into a wide court, which is covered all round, in order to serve as a shelter for horses in bad weather. There is no admittance into the garden but through the two small gates. There is another, indeed, on the other side, but then it is neither so fine, nor so large as the first; it is encompassed, however, as well as that, with proper walls. Over against this caravanserai, or inn, there is a flight of fifty stone steps, and underneath them, a kind of cistern, or reservoir for water; the walls, and vault whereof are composed of small stones, which are joined together in a very workman-like and elegant manner. The town-gate is vaulted likewise, and is four-score paces in depth, and has a dome to it, in the same manner as the caravanserai, or inn. From thence we went into a curious bazaar, which was neatly enough vaulted and plastered, and full of tradesmen's shops; such as confectioners, druggists, goldsmiths, farriers, bakers, fruiterers, and stalls for all sorts of herbs, &c. Each shop takes up a vault; and the whole is exceedingly neat, and very regularly built. This bazaar, in the center whereof there is a mint, runs directly across the town from one gate to the other. Near this, there are divers others, but more especially one that has gates to it, which are shut up, in which there is nothing fold but wearing apparel, and all sorts of filks. There is another likewise principally set apart for the silk-dyers, where we saw some of the most delightful colours.

These bazaars are all so well covered, that there is no danger of being incommoded, should it rain ever so hard; and there are customers for ever smocking very fo-berly in the coffee-houses, of which there are great numbers. On one side of these bazaars stand the caravanserais, into which you enter through a large gate that is vaulted; some of them are exceedingly fine, very spacious, and two stories high; with a flight of five or six steps



before each apartment; there are abundance of these inns in the town, where they make such large quantities of silk, silver, and gold stuffs, that they frequently make use of

The royal garden.

Bazar.

Coffee-houses.

Caravanserai. # THE TRAVELS OF

of seven bales of filk in a day; the weight whereof amounts to no less than one thousand five hundred and twelve pounds. The public squares here, which they call Meydoens, are but small; and there are several walls, like that in the royal gardens before-mentioned, in divers parts of the town. The mochs here have, for the most part, such towers as may with propriety be termed lofty ones; but few of them have large domes, and those that have, have no manner of embellishments to recommend them. We have told you before, that there are seven gates to the city, two whereof are always kept shut, and several meydoens.

Here they have a great variety of flowers and fruits all the year round; and the latter are sooner ripe in this city than in any other parts of the kingdom; infomuch, that here, there are melons, grapes, apricots, mulberries, pomegranates, cucumbers, and more particularly most delicious water-melons, to be purchased at a reasonable price even in the spring.

There are no less than threecore and ten aqueducts, (if we are not misinformed) through which water is conveyed into the town. There are, moreover, (according to the computation of the inhabitants) above one hundred and twenty bagnios, and an almost countless number of cisterns, or reservoirs for containing water, which lie low, and therefore there are several steps made on purpose to go down to them.

There are much the same number of mills here, and the number of houses amount at least to three thousand, which are divided into three several districts, or wards, in each of which there are one thousand; besides which, there are threecore several villages, which are dependent on, and under the jurisdiction of this single town.

There is a royal palace at Fien, where there is a fountain, or bafon, made, as we were informed, in the reign of king Suliman, the water whereof proceeds from a lofty mountain, called Rochi't Sahil, and is conveyed to Cachan by the aid and affluence of seven and twenty mills, which were erected in the reign of king Abbas. There is another fountain, which proceeds

from a high hill called Demawend, the waters whereof flow down towards Ket and Thabarahan, which the people here call it the river of Dzadzjeran, which runs, and discharges the left of its waters into (g) the Caffian tea. When we were got between Com and Cachan, we had a prospect of this mountain.

On the thirteenth, we departed from this city three hours before day-break, and crofted a fandy plain; on our left-hand, we had several small raised downs for several leagues together. We travelled fix leagues that day; and having rested ourselves for some considerable time, we moved forwards about two in the morning, continuing till in the same plain, which was bordered on our right-hand with such mountains as were covered with snow. By dawn of day we arrived at the foot of that which was the loftiest of them all, and crofted a river amongst the rest, and afterwards another plain; at the end whereof there was a village, and several others, not far from it which lay between the hills. When we had proceeded on our journey seven leagues, we arrived at a village called Ghor, situate at about a league's distance from the small town of Nathans. This village is a most delightful place; and I have therefore annexed a prospect of it in Plate 67. As it stands on a rising ground, it looks at a distance much like a fortref. On the left-hand thereof stands a moch, and an open plain, which extends itself farther than the eye can well reach.

From hence we set out, two hours at least before day-break, and about seven we came to a large plain, where there were five or fix villages, which lay by the side of each other, and two fine gardens; the last of which was encompassed by a substantial wall, in circumference, about half a league. To this garden, there was a dove-house appertaining, of which we shall have somewhat particular to say in another place. On one side of this garden, there is a large house which appertains to the king, and a small village called Pad-habath.

When we had traversed this plain, we got amongst a parcel of mountains; some where- # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

whereof were very lofty; and their tops, as we could plainly perceive, were all covered with snow. After we had proceeded about seven leagues farther, we came to a caravanfera at a place called Sardaham, where we were obliged to pay some customary dues. There we crofted a fort of torrent, or land-flood, which falls with a violent stream amongst the rocks; and the waters thereof, as they conffit of nothing but pure melted snow, are moft delightful. In Plate 66. we have annexed a project of this caravanfera, and another, which stands but at a small diftance from it. The former is a spacious edifice, built with ftone, about twenty feet in depth. The entrance into it is vaulted, and there is a ftep at the door, about three foot long. There is near the latter a fine spring, tho' 'tis but small.

About one the next morning, we pursued our journey as the moon shone exceedingly bright: and when we had passed the mountains, we got into a spacious, sandy plain, that was all bordered with hills. We passed by two other caravanferas in the night; the former of which was a large, beautiful building. After we had journeyed seven leagues farther, we came to a village called Riek, where we halted till three the next morning. No sooner were we departed from thence, but we rode over several plowed lands, and by break of day we reached Ifpahan. After I had rested and refreshed myself at a caravan-fera there, I made it my business to wait on one Mr. Kaftlein, who had the whole conduct and direction of the affairs belonging to our East-India company. At my first admission, I was received with all the testimonies of the sincerest friendship; and he assured me, that I might command whatever service he could do me. After I had tarried with him some considerable time, he sent one of his servants to conduct me to one Mr. Owen, who was agent there for the English East-India company, from whom I met with a like courteous reception. From thence I went to the caravanfera called Jedde, in the meydoen, or large square belonging to the palace. This caravanfera, which is the property of his majesty's mother, is the place where all the merchants of Armenia have their ware-houses, and keep their respective hops. And as it is the principal inn in all the whole city, and the most commodiously situated, I took up my lodging there, through our director's recommendation, for whom they testified a particular regard; and there I continued my quarters till my departure from the city. His majesty happened at that time to be abroad, and taking his diversion in the country with his concubines, or ladies of pleasure. After I had rode almost all over the city, and over Julia, which is the district, or peculiar quarters of the Armenians, I paid my respects to some of my particular friends and acquaintance, who were all natives of (i) Europe, but most of them of (k) France, and of the ecclesiastical order; who received me with all the complaisance imaginable, and soon after returned my visit. The very next day, Mr. Kaftlein, our director, invited me to dinner, and in the afternoon carried me with him out of town.

## Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

1. Com. p. 247. n. k.
2. Cachan, Cafan, or Kaftan, a province of Ruffia, bounded by the province of Permia on the north; by Siberia on the east; by the river Wolga, which separates it from Novogorod, on the fourth; and by the province of Moscow proper on the west.
3. Ifpahan, see p. 109. n. m.

4. Media, fee p. 214. n. e.
5. Perfia, fee p. 64. n. o.
6. India proper, fee p. 213. n. d.
7. Cafpian fea, fee p. 66. n. g.
8. Armenia, fee p. 198. n. g.
9. Europe, fee p. 127. n. dd.
10. France, fee p. 214. n. m.

Ttt C H A P. # THE TRAVELS OF

## **C H A P. XXXVIII.**

A Sea-Lizard, and divers other Curiosities. A very extraordinary Monument, with two Columns, which when one is spook, the other trembles likewise by the same Impulse. The King returns to (a) Ispahan, with a numerous Retinue. The customary Compliments on New-Year's-Day paid by the Author and his Friends to Mr. Kaftlein, the Director of the Dutch East-India Company. A succinct Account of a remarkable Fait observed throughout the Kingdom of (b) Perfia.

As the weather proved exceedingly fine, we took a tour through the whole city of Ispahan, in order to have a transient view of all its most remarkable curiosities; the principal whereof is (as the natives call it) their Chiaerbaeg, that is to say, their fine alley, or grand walk, and the next to it is that spot of ground, which is set apart for the Interment of the (c) Armenians and (d) Europeans, of which we propose to give our readers a particular description in a more proper place. We set out from town in great form, as it is the custom of the country. Mr. Kaftlein appeared first in person, with at least a dozen couriers, who were preceded by two interpreters. After him came his deputy, or second, who was the person that I followed, and all the rest of our company two and two, according to their respective stations. Tho' there were twenty-fix of us in all, twelve whereof went on horseback; yet our director, for the generality, had more attendants in the life-time of his comfort, who died about six months before our arrival at Ispahan, and had been interred in a very pompous and magnificent manner, under a rich sepulchral monument, which was open on every side. Her name was Sarah Jacoba Six de Chandelier; a descendant of an illustrious family in (e) France; and as to her character, she was universally admired for her good sense and polite conversation.

In the evening, as we came back, we met with two couriers in the fine walk above-mentioned, with lights in their hands some-what like our flambeaus, composed of large balls of cloth, well foaked in

oil, and fixed in a fort of an iron socket, fastened to the end of a long staff, with a circular copper-plate all tinned within, much like a faucer, for the reception of fuch oil as occasionally dropped from the balls. 'Tho' it was light enough in all confidence without them; yet this is a customary ceremony amongst fuch of the Perifans as are of high birth and distinction. In this formal manner we rode through the city; and being perfectly satisfied with my little, agreeable tour, I tarried for some time at Mr. Kaftelein's, in order to sup with him, and was entertained accordingly in the most elegant manner.

The next day he made me a present of a fea-lizard, which was both dry and whole, and much of the fame form and bulk of a common lizard. This fish is frequently caught, or rather taken in the Perian gulph, and the natives, who look upon it as a dainty dish, call it the Sock-anikaer. They assured me, that it was an animal, the flesh whereof was hot in the third degree; and when 'tis duly dried, they pound it to a powder, and intermix with it pearl, amber, saffron, and opium. When the ingredients are thus made up, 'tis a fine cordial, and a most specific restorative for a broken constitution. They are made up for the most part in pills; and few swallow more than one of them at a time. These pills are very seldom, if ever, exposed to public sale; since none but merchants, and such as have affairs at court to transact, #  
CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

transact, purchase them; and that too with a view only to make interest with those to whom they make their applications.

They have here likewise another fish, which the natives call Sjimma-jie, or Shirmah, that is to say, the Milk-fish, which nature has beautifully adorned with a vast variety of lively colours. The greatest part of its belly is yellow, its fins are of a vermilion red, and the rest of its body of a sky-coloured green. The flesh of it is very luscious, and almost as white as snow. The reader will find a representation of it in Plate 69. hereto annexed.

Mr. Kaftelein, moreover, obliged me with four feet of some little birds, or other animals, which had been found at Ifaphan, in a lump of amber-grease, of above thirty pounds weight, which the king himself had purchased, in order to melt into a ball, which, afterwards being set in gold, and embellished with several precious stones, he made a present of to the sepulchral monument of his great prophet Mohammed. From whence we may naturally conclude, that amber-grease is a fea-gum, that hardens, when thrown on the shore, and exposed to the air by any violent agitation of its waves. This very valuable gum is seldom found but in the eastern parts, and in the (f) Indies.

I had a bird likewise called a Paes-je-ich, brought me, which was much like an European duck, only its head, bill, and feathers, very nearly resembled those of a crow: the feet of it were broad at

bottom, and divided into three parts; the body of it was long, and tho' never so well dreft, the flesh of it is by no means palatable. The reader will find a representation of it in Numb. 70.

On the 23d instant, we went once more in form to the village of Kaladoen, which stands at about a league's distance from the city, in order to take a view of the magnificent sepulchral monument of Abdulla. To this Saint's particular care and inspection, (as we are assured by the natives) were entrusted the waters of Emoén Of-jeyn, who was one of the twelve disciples.

Some small matter before fun-fet we returned to the city, when it began to freeze all on a sudden to that violent degree, that the water which I had in my room was instantly congealed, notwithstanding it was perfectly warm at noon; and in the night there # THE TRAVELS OF

there fell likewise a small quantity of snow.

On the 28th instant, there arrived a native of Arabia from (i) Aleppo, with a letter, as he pretended from the bafhaw of that city to Mr. Kaftlein, our director, but as the manner in which he exprest himself, seemed perfectly confused, and as there appeared a certain wildness in his eyes, I concluded, that his brains were turned. He had the appearance, however, of one of the ecclesiastical order; and it is highly probable, that he had fled from (k) Turkey, on account of the trouble and confusion that the natives were in at that time; for news had been brought to Ispahan, some few days before we arrived there, that the grand signior had been actually deposed, and that fultan Achmed, his brother, had been advanced to the throne in his stead. Tho' this Arab was very well dref't, yet the present which he had brought with him was very mean and inlegant; for it consisted only of a pair of yellow boots, two or three handkerchiefs of little or no value; a small handful only of dates, and two or three flicks of wax.

Mr. Kaftlein did not much care to open his letter, since, tho' it was sealed, indeed, yet it had no direction upon it; neither was he much inclined to receive the present, being perfectly at a loss to determine the occasion of it.

On the thirtieth, we went out of town once more; and I cast my eyes about for some proper place from whence to draw a prospect of the city, as it appeared in the winter-season; for 'tis absolutely impossible to be done in the summer, on account of the multitude of lofty trees that totally hide it. We went up a rising-ground to take a view of a building that stood against a rock, of which we shall give a short description in another, and more proper place. There I met with several fringes and canals, which, tho' running waters, were perfectly frozen.

In the interim, the king's fervants and baggage arrived, and filled the chiaer-baeg to that degree with duft, that the alley was obliged to be watered. As Mr. Kaffelein had been informed of this occurrence, he

sent me and his whole family to the very spot which I had pitched upon for taking a prospect of the city, in order to have an uninterrupted fight of his majesty, who was to pass by that very place. We dreft ourselves accordingly to the best advantage we could, and our horses were very neatly caparioned, in which article the Persians are remarkably curious. We waited at least a whole hour at the Armenian burial-ground above-mentioned; but soon afterwards a great number of horsemen made their appearance; and the king's baggage, or equipage, were carried upon mules. Six elephants had been sent out some time before, in order to meet his majesty; four of which flopped in the chiaer-baeg, but the rest went on. About half an hour before sunset the king himself appeared, accompanied by the principal lords belonging to the court, and followed by a prodigious crowd of people. He rode at the head of them upon a fine chestnut horse, and passed by us near a small river, where we had posted ourselves on horseback in order to wait for his coming. We saluted his majesty in the most respectful manner, and he fixed his eyes very wisely upon us. As the river which he was obliged to go over was but narrow, most of his attendants forded it; for great numbers, who were ambitious of getting upon the bridge, fell off. We, in order to avoid that danger, turned off towards Jufia, but brought night home with us.

It is almost incredible to think what a multitude of people attend this prince on any public occasion; a stranger would think he saw an army before him. And the number of his camels is equally amazing; and for my own part, I must own I never saw so many at one view in my whole life before. Besides these numerous attendants, there was a prodigious crowd of spectators, not only on foot, but on horseback likewise, in the alley or chiaer-baeg before-mentioned. The king, in order to get to his palace, went thro' one of his gardens, preceded by two leopards, which always go with him when he takes the royal diversion of hunting, and divers falcons. His concubines came to town the # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

On the 14th of December, we spent the Christmas-day with Mr. Kaffelein, and on the 15th, we paid our visit to the monks of the three convents which stand in the suburbs.

Two days after that, as we were at the company's house, we saw a white crow, which had made its appearance there several times, but nobody could shoot it. It was taken at last, however, in his majesty's toils.

At the same time they dragged a small pond, wherein they caught four different sorts of fish, which are unknown in our European countries; namely, the Ghaer-maji, as they call them, that is to say, the afs-fish, which is marked in such a manner, as if a net was thrown over him; the sjir-ma-ji, or milk-fish, which is all spotted with scales; the farac, a fish, the back whereof is a lively green, and its belly white. 'Tis remarkable, that it swims for the most part on the surface of the water. The fourth sort consisted of one small fish only, that had not, as had been taken notice of by several, in the least made any encrass in its bulk for two years successfully. This, together with several others, I preferred in spirits of wine. All of them, however, more particularly when fried, are extremely well tasted.

On the first day of January, 1704, about thirty of us went to pay the usual compliments of the feast, according to the custom of the country, to Mr. Kaffelein, who not only made us dine, but stay supper with him, who entertained us in a most elegant manner, exclusive of the sweet-meats, and other little refreshments that were served up between the meals. As the (1) English agent was by some casualty or other somewhat indisposed, he could not make one amongst us. His second, however, and the principal officers of his house, together with Father Antonio Defiro, the resident from (m) Portugal, came, and spent the evening with us. That ecclesiastic was a gentleman of great merit, had seen a great part of the world; and not only knew it, but how to live in U u u

An extraordinary taper.

An entertainment given the author and his friends by the British agent.

Some few days after that, we were entertained by the British agent, much after the same manner as we had been on New-year's day by our own director; with this addition, however, that his chambers were discharged at every health; there was likewise a kind of concert of music in the Persian taste. About fun-fet, there came a native of (n) Georgia, who by profession was a dancer, and attempted, indeed, to amuse the company with some feats of activity; he turned out, however, but a bungling performer; one of his company, as a farther amusement, was fawaded up to that degree, in a white sheet, that no part of him was visible, but his arms, in imitation of two children, one personating a boy, and the other a girl. 'Tho' he was extended on the floor, like one that was dead; yet he made

---

*Remarkable fishes.*

1. January 1. New-year's day. # THE TRAVELS OF



made several comical motions, and kept pretty good time to the music that played during the operation. His hands were muffled up in the heads of the two fictitious children, who first kissed and embraced each other; but concluded the dull performance with a severe battle.

Mr. Kaftlein, our director, from whom I received several very distinguishing favours, after this entertainment was over, sent me above a dozen bottles of exceedingly fine flavoured white wine, of which he furnished me with plenty during my long stay at Isfahan, and entertained me besides almost every day at his own house with an elegant dinner and supper: but whenever I rose from table, and left my company, I constantly withdrew to my own apartment, and there applied my mind to those things in particular which I had in view, and which were my principal motives for undertaking so long, and so hazardous a journey. The wine which I just mentioned to be thus presented me, was some of the finest in all Persia; for those at Isfahan are shamefully neglected in regard to their fining. What liquor soever a stranger drinks there is extremely foul, and very unpleasing to the taste. No wines are fined there but those of Zjireaes, or Shirâs, which are the very best the country produces, and of which we shall fare somewhat farther in another place. Most of our Europeans, after they have resided in this country for some considerable time, seem as regardless as the Persians themselves, whether their wine be fine or foul, so that the body of it be but strong. The wine I was always furnished with was as clear as chrytal, had the flavour of Rhenish; and was noways inferior to the best claret I ever tasted at (o) Paris, or any part of France whatever. They have one sort of red wine in this city, that has the taste and flavour of that at (p) Florence. These wines are fined down in large earthen vases, or jars, instead of casks, as is customary with your wine-merchants in the island of (q) Cyprus; and after they have been duly fermented, they are racked off into large glass-bottles, such as will contain about four or five gallons. For the making of these wines, they select the very best grapes they can possibly procure, and are peculiarly careful in their manner of picking them; for all rotten ones, and such as are only bruised, are thrown aside, and totally excluded; from which practice their wines have a flavour peculiar to themselves, and such as no others can equally boast of. Besides, in order to preserve them, and still add to their delicious flavour, they make use of (r) cardemums and (s) sulphur. As to the rest, they never attempt to drink them till they are a year old, and some think them as good and as palatable, if not more so, when they are twice that age.

During the time I resided in this city, we received some important news from (t) Germany by letter, dated the 8th of November last, sent us from Aleppo, by couriers, employed for that purpose, by

the two companies of (u) Holland and England. These moffengers, or runners, as they are sometimes called, go in like manner to (w) Gomron, or Gomborn, and the parts adjacent.

On that day commenced the Beyram, that is to say, the grand, solemn fast, which is strictly observed throughout the whole kingdom of Persia, and continued for near a month, without any intermission, viz. till the return of the new moon, in the same manner as it is observed likewise throughout Turkey.

During these thirty days, they are strictly enjoined neither to eat, or drink, or so much as to take one single whiff of tobacco, in which they indulge themselves more, perhaps at other times, than any other body of people whatsoever, (or whereoeiver) from the dawn of day to the setting of the fun. However, to compensate for that severe mortification, they turn the night into day; and after some short acts of public devotion after fun-fest, which may continue perhaps for half an hour, or somewhat better, they may smoke, eat and drink, as much as they think proper, till day-break again. In all this, however, there is a certain form observed with respect to some particular circumstances;

Occasional Footnotes:

1. Isfahan, see p. 18.
2. Persia, see p. 64. 1. 2.
3. Armenia, see p. 19.
4. Europe, see p. 12.
5. France, see p. 12. # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

cumfances; for after they have tired themselves with smoaking, they indulge themselves with nothing but eating of fruits, sweet-meats, and such other trivial refreshments, till after twelve at night, or one in the morning: nethier are they permitted to blow their trumpets, or play on any other of their instruments of music at midnight, as they frequently used to do in former times. For these amusements, they must now wait with patience till four or five o'clock in the morning; but that time, indeed, they make as much noise with them as possibly they can, in order to awake their mechanical operators, and remind them of the busyness of the ensuing day. This noisy music, likewise, is a figure of no small service to those who reside at some considerable distance, by which it is intimated, that they may then bring into the city, without reverence, their various commodities, such as fowls, fruits, herbs, and other goods of the like nature; which may be done at all other times by midnight, if they think proper to frequent the market so early. Their trumpets likewise are blown for about half an hour before setting of the fun, in order to give notice to his majesty's guards to repair to their respective posts. It

is required, moreover, that every shop shall be clofe shut up by nine at night, at the farthest; and that every person that may be amusing themselves abroad may resort to their respective habitations; and about two hours before day-break, the Mollas, as the natives call them, that is to say, their ecclesiastics, whose province it is to give notice of the flat times for public worship from the tops of their mochts, begin to summon the people together; this ceremony is repeated at noon, and as soon as the fun is well fet. The Persians, likewise, compute their hours from the fun's rising to its setting; without the least regard how far the day or night is spent. In short, they reckon all by guefs, and never mind whether the day be either longer or shorter than the night.

Tho' the river, on the subseuent days was covered over with ice; yet one of Mr. Kaftlein's domestics caught somewhere at some distance from the city, a fifth of such a bulk as is seldom seen in those parts. It bore a near resemblance to one of our carp; but was near a yard long, and when draught, was a most delicious repaft. This fifth is distinguished, in their language, by the name of the Shirnathhi, as we have before observed.

After I had written several letters to my intimate friends and acquaintance in Holland, by the way of Aleppo, I went on the sixteenth instant with our director and his family to (x) Julfa, or Julpha, in order to be present at the festival of the confederation of the water, which was to be solemnized by the Armenians before the dawn of day. This festival in their language, is called the Goerooting, that is to say, the baptism of the crofs, and is observed on the sixth of January by the (y) Ruffians, as well as themselves. We arrived at Julfa, much about six in the evening, and went directly to one Mr. Sahid, who was our interpreter, with whom we lodged that night, and who entertained us with a very elegant supper. As soon as this grand ceremony is opened, which is about three in the morning, we repaired to the church of Anna-baet, which may with propriety be termed the cathedral church of the Armenians.

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

1. Ispahan, fee p. 109. n. m.
2. Persia, fee p. 64. n. a.
3. Armenia, fee p. 198. n. g.
4. Europe, fee p. 127. n. dd.
5. France, fee p. 214. n. m.
6. India, fee p. 219. n. d.
7. Arabia, fee p. 203. n. d.

8. Maufolem, fee p. 242. n. a.

9. Aleppo, east long. 37. 40. lat. 36.30. is the capital of the government, or beglerbeylic of Aleppo, in Asiatic Turkey, situate 70 miles east # THE TRAVELS OF

1704

east of the Levant sea, and port of Scanderoon, and about 100 miles west of the river Euphrates. It stands on four hills, in the middle of a pleasant, fruitful plain, being of an oval figure, and about three miles in circumference, the castle being on the highest hill in the middle of the city; the buildings of the town are better than in most cities throughout all Turkey, and they have a great many flatly mochs and caravanseras; it is well furnished with fountains and reservoirs of water; and their gardens and vineyards are well planted with grapes, oranges, apples, cherries, and other excellent fruit. The Christians have their houses and churches in the suburbs. There is a very considerable trade here for silks, camlets, and Turkey-leather. Every European nation almost has its factors here. The English factors are about forty in number, and live in a quadrangle, resembling a college, having their chapel and chappels, where they perform their devotions regularly as in Christendom, and at their leisure-hours they hunt, and use other sports with all imaginable freedom. About twelve miles south-east of Aleppo, is a salt-lake seven or eight miles over, having a dry crust of salt on the surface, which founds like frozen snow, when horses trample on it; and magazines of this salt are laid up in the neighbourhood of Aleppo. The Beglerbeg of Aleppo commands all the country between the Levant sea and the Euphrates; but the cattle has a governor independent of him.

1. Turkey, see p. 203, n. e.

2. England, see p. 91, n. f.

3. Portugal, the most westerly kingdom of Europe, situate between seven and ten degrees of west long. and between 37 and 42 degrees of north lat. bounded by the kingdom of Spain on the north and east; and by the Atlantic ocean on the west and south; being about 300 miles long and 100 broad. This country is not so hot as Spain, especially that part which lies on the coast, being cooled by the sea-breezes; but it is not so fruitful as Spain, being incumbered with some of the most barren mountains on that continent; however, towards the bottom of them, they are planted with vines, which produce a great deal of good wine. The soil also produces plenty of olives, as well as oranges and lemons; but neither their oils or their other oranges are so good as those of Spain. Their sweet oranges, however, which they introduced from China, and for that reason are called China-oranges, are the best in Europe. They

have not corn enough for their subsistence; but are supplied with it frequently from England and Holland. As to their peasants and country-people, they eat scarce any other but Indian corn; a very coarse food. The flesh of their cattle is generally lean and dry; but they have plenty of chestnuts, almonds, figs, and raisins. They make also a great deal of salt, of the sea-water, let into shallow pans; especially in the bay of St. Ubes, from whence they export a great deal, especially to America. The foreign trade of the Portuguese, confits either in the exportation of the produce of their own foil, viz. red and white port-wines, oranges, lemons, and other fruits; or in the exportation of the merchandise they receive from their plantations and settlements in Africa, Africa, and America; of which those from Brazil, in America, are much the most considerable; for besides vast quantities of sugar, tobacco, rum, cotton, indigo, hides, train oil, dying-woods, and drugs; they import vast treasures of gold, silver, and diamonds from Brazil, having lately discovered some very valuable mines of these precious minerals there; infamously, that the value of diamonds is fun considerably. But, notwithstanding Portugal is, or was at least formerly one of the richest kingdoms in the world, it is, however, the weakest. They have neither fleets, or armies sufficient to defend their sea-coasts or frontiers; and were it not, that the rest of the powers of Europe know it to be their interest to defend them against Spain, they would soon be swallowed up by that potent neighbour. This is a much better security than the double marriages contracted between the two crowns, in the year 1729. Portugal is an absolute monarchy, and the crown hereditary. There are assemblies of the states and cortes here, indeed, as well as in Spain; but they only serve to confirm the decrees of the prince. The public annual revenues of the kingdom amount to near a million sterling, clear of all pensions and salaries; but the king receives a much greater revenue from the produce of the Mines of Brazil, which it is scarce possible to make a just estimate of. There is no country to which the English trade to greater advantage; for tho' we import the greatest part of their wine, and fruit, they take our woollen manufacture in return, with which they do not only clothe the Portuguese of Europe, but the numerous colonies they have in Africa, Africa, and America; and many nations that formerly went naked, which the Portuguese have taught to clothe themselves, and conform to European custom. And 'tis certain, we have imported a great deal of gold from Portugal, tho' the exportation of it from thence

---

1704

there is prohibited, and ties by their government.

1. Paris, east long, 2.35 tropics of the King of France; or government of 100 miles fourth-east of north-east of Madrid, 550 n., 1200 north-west of Rome, 700 miles north-west of Rome, divided into three parts; France is the largest, fixate on



not answer a traveller's expectations at present. It is an archbishop's fee, and an university, in which 'tis said, there were 100 colleges, tho' there are but 54 at present that bear that name; and of these there are butten where exercises are performed. The Sorbonne is one of the finest colleges in Europe, from which the whole university is frequently called the Sorbonne. It is now very much up on the decline; other colleges and academies, being erected of late years by royal authority. The civil jurisdiction, and all the other privileges almost, which the Sorbonne had formerly, are taken from it. The academy of sciences is of much the same nature as that of the royal society of London. Besides which, there is an academy for refining and improving the French language; others for the improvement of painting, sculpture, and architecture; others for the exercise and improvement of all mechanic arts and manufactures; such as tapestry, Mosaic work, wrought plate, works of iron, steel, copper, brass, embroidery, &c. The chief manufactures of this city are those of gold and silver stuffs, wrought silks, velvet, gold and silver lace, ribbons, tapestry, linen, and glass. There are, according to a late French writer, 22,000 houses in Paris, many of which are seven stories high, and almost a family in every story; 52 parishes, 134 monasteries, of which 56 are inhabited by friars, and 78 by nuns; 979 streets; 14,000 coaches; and upwards of 700,000 souls.

3. Florence, east long. 12. 15. lat. 43. 30. the capital of Tuscany, in Italy, situate on the river Arno, 58 miles south of Bologna, 140 north of Rome, and 45 east of Leghorn and the Tuscan sea. It is one of the most elegant towns in Italy, and called Florence the fair, defended by a wall, and other modern works, besides three citadels of a round figure, and fix miles in circumference; encompassed on three sides with little, fruitful hills, full of villas and country-feats; and on the west side lies that rich and extensive valley, thro' which the river Arno runs as far as Pisa, and the Tuscan sea. Statues and fountains are seen in almost all their streets; their private buildings are lofty, their squares spacious, their churches little inferior to those of Rome, and their noblemen's palaces equal to any in Italy. The statues, paintings, and curiosities in the grand duke's palace, are the admiration of travellers. The duke of Lorraine and Tuscany is now sovereign of this capital; which, with the dukedom of Tuscany, was allotted him, when he ceded the dukedom of Lorraine to France. It is an archbishop's fee, and university.
4. Cyprus, the island of, fee p. 109. n. 1.
5. Cardamums, or Cardamomums, a fort of feed brought from the East-Indies, being of a sweet odour, and of a hot, biting taste, like water-creffes, from whence it derives its name.

6. Sulphur, or brimstone, a flat, unctuous mineral substance, fulful, and inflammable by fire; but not capable of being mixed with water.

7. Germany, fee p. 204. n. g.

8. Holland, fee p. 76. n. 6.

X x x

1. Gom- # THE TRAVELS OF

2. Gombron, or Gombron, east long. 55. 30. lat. 27. 30. the greatest sea-port town in Persia, situate in the province of Fars, or Far- sitan, on the frith, at the entrance of the gulf of Persia, opposite to the isle of Ormus, on the ruin whereof this town rose; and the English afflicting the Persians in taking the isle of Ormus from the Portuguese, then one of the greatest marts in the east, the government allowed the English some extraordinary privileges, and half the customs of the port; and till very lately a great sum in lieu of them. It stands about 30 miles north east of the Arabian coast, and about 300 miles south-east of Shiras. Besides the native Persians, it is inhabited by English, Dutch, Portuguese, Arabs, Jews, Armenians, Indians, Banians, and several other nations, of which the Armenians and Banians are much the greatest traders. It is an unhealthy place, which occasions most of the inhabitants to remove into the country during the hot season, the winter being the time for traffic. The gains that are made by the English East-India company, in carrying the merchandise of the Armenians,

3. Julfa, or Julpha (old) east long. 46. lat. 49. once the capital of Armenia, now in ruins, the inhabitants being transplanted to Ipahan, within a mile of which city, they have a town called New Julpha, by some looked up on as a suburb to Ipahan. Here they are encouraged, and not afflicted by the Persians to carry on a foreign trade with all the country of Asia, and are the most considerable merchants in the world. They suffer them also to profess the Christian religion; they have several churches in New Julpha, and come the nearest to the Greek church of any denomination of Christians.

4. Ruffia, or Mufcovy, see p. 7, n. c.

---

## CHAP. XXXIX.

The Solemnity observed by the (a) Armenians, when they baptize their crofts. The innate Antipathy which is very remarkable in Mules to Bears. The grand Festival, called the Gaddernabia, and



that of the solar Year; both observed by the (b) Persians. Other royal and magnificent Feasts. The manner of preserving the Stalks or Suckers of Rhubarb, and their medicinal Qualities. The Solemnization of the grand Festival, called the Bairam-kerbat, or Abraham's Sacrifice.

THIS solemnity was opened with a proper lesson, accompanied with hymns and masses, even till break of day; at which time, their priests, tho' before drest in black, (the bishop only excepted, who performed the office) put on their rich vestments of gold brocade; and the bishop likewise then covered his head with a mitre, which was richly embellished with pearls and precious stones. He held, moreover, a crozier, or pastoral staff, of a moderate size, in his right hand, which, tho' adorned as richly as his mitre, was covered over with a very fine white, embroidered handkerchief; he held another likewise in his left-hand; but that, indeed, was not near so pompous, or so richly decorated as the former. The assembly of the priesthood, on this solemn occasion, were in number about four and twenty, who went out from the church, in a regular procession, and in their rich habiliments, to another place, directly fronting the church, which was very lofty, and finely decorated, where over head hung two bells. Here they had a large copper bafon, or cistern, which was full of water, on one side whereof they read, and fung for the compass of a whole hour, or better; after which, the bishop, in a very solemn manner, dipped his crozier

---

The Armenian ceremony of baptizing their crofts. # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

fier three times successively into the bafon; after that, the proper attendant brought him a large vafe, or cup of oil, which he very formally threw into the water; and with that laft religious operation the folemny clofed. The ecclesiastics, however, who had affited, infantaneously ran to the cistern, thus bleffed, and wafted their hands and faces with the water; as did likewise all fuch of the Armenian laity as could get fufficiently near it: fuch too as were furnifhed with hollow canes filled them with this fanctified water. The fame folemny was obferved, not only in divers other churches, but even at a rivulet, which runs near (c) Julpha. However, it is proper here to inform the reader, that this religious ceremony muft never be attempted till his majefty's permiffion is firft obtained in form; and for that reafon, the Kalantaer, or Armenian burgo-mafter, takes care to petition for fome few days before-hand. Whereupon the king fends a fpecial meffenger to make a demand of two hundred ducats, which fum is annually paid by them for this act of indulgence; but on the receipt thereof his majefty fends them a proper guard to protect them from any infults, or riotous proceedings from the populace; and this precaution, 'tis true, is indifpenfably neceffary, fince there are vaft multitudes both of (d) Turks and Perfians, who, through

curiosity, throng about them, in order to see the procession. On this day, in particular, the crowd was so great, that the bishop himself would not have been able to have gone through the ceremony, had not the guards cleared the way before him, by violence and compulsion. There were seven bishops present on this solemn occasion, who, together with some other inferior ecclesiastics, reside in the episcopal convent belonging to the church of Anna-baet. This convent, which surrounds the church, consists of great numbers of small cells, or apartments, where there is nothing to be seen except a few niches; of no manner of use but to hold a book or two, and a small desk, before which they seldom stand, but sit upon the floor. The walls are white, and well taken care of; and what light

they have comes in on one side by two or three small windows, which are well glazed. The refectuary, or common-hall, may properly enough be called a long one, and is furnished with a pulpit, wherein some chapters are read by a proper assistant for that purpose, whilst the others are refreshing themselves at dinner. The chapel, from top to bottom is painted, and abounds with the representations of divers scripture-histories; but all of them are executed in a very artless and inelegant manner. Tho' their bishops are obliged to lead single lives, yet their priests may marry whenever they think convenient. The Armenians have two patriarchs, or arch-bishops; one resides here, and the other at Eetfinafin, that is to say, the three churches near mount (e) Ararat, which lies at the distance of about three leagues from the city (f) Erivan.

On this occasion we happened to be eye-witnesses of a very remarkable combat between two mules, and a large, black hog, which the former, through their innate aversion to all bears in general, had inevitably torn to pieces, had not a timely aid and assistance luckily intervened. Mr. Kaffelein, our governor, accounted, in a very rational manner, for this sudden and unexpected occurrence. This battle, said he, proceeded from the innate aversion which those creatures had to the black hog, from the too near resemblance that he bore to a bear. He assured us, that on his letting one of his mules loose one day upon a bear, by way of experiment, the latter was torn into pieces with the utmost fury and resentment in a few minutes. From this known antipathy it is, that the guides to every caravan, when they are apprehensive of any bears approaching them in their passage, which frequently attack their horses, set their unloaded mules directly upon them, who fly, like lions on their prey. At that very juncture, there happened to be a bear-ward making a show of one he had tamed, and trained up to play tricks, not far from the Chiaerbaeg, and a young Persian came riding near him by mere accident on a mule which, in an instant, on his scenting the bear, flew open mouth at him, and # THE TRAVELS OF

The next day they solemnized the festival of it, according to custom, after the same joyful manner, and his majesty that day made a grand entertainment at court, to which most of the foreign ministers were formally invited.

On the 8th was another grand festival, called the Gaddernabic, which is solemnized by his majesty alone; on which, according to custom, he gives audience to all his counsellors of fate.

At the same time, both their wives and daughters repaired with them to the palace; where his majesty detained such of them as he best approved of for several days and nights successively; which is looked upon as a peculiar honour, and such an act of indulgence as the ladies are not a little proud of. During the time, there were great rejoicings, and fine fireworks played off before the palace-gate.

On the roth, it is customary, for the courtiers to make their voluntary presents to his majesty, consisting principally of wax-works, artfully wrought up in the form of houses, gardens, fine flowers, or fruits. On that day the wind arofe, and blew at north-west, in a most impetuous manner; and prevails there, it seems, annually for some considerable time. This violent northerly wind is distinguished by the name of Baad-biedmufk, or Bed-mufwint, from a remarkable flower which always blows, at this particular season, on a fort of willow, from a bud that is not much larger than one of our small nuts. As small as it is, however, it is very odorous. The natives frequently distil from this fine-flavoured flower, a very delicious liquor, not unlike sherbet, or lemonade. This liquor is kept in bottles all the year round. This flower likewise is frequently dried by the ladies, and the powder of it scattered about their fine linen, in order to give them an agreeable scent. Great quantities of it, in short, are brought to market by people that refuse to sell in less than an hour. In the parts adjacent, as I never observed any such buds on our European willows, I have given the reader a representation,

On the 6th of February, the Persians, with pleasure, beheld the face of the new moon; at that instant, their long and solemn fast was over, and they proclaimed their joy the whole night long by a kind of concert of music. # CORNELIUS LEBRUN

tation of two different branches; one as it appears at this feason; and the other with its leaves, which never shoot out till the month of April. The winds, which cause these particular trees to blow thus, for the most part, continue till towards the end of the month; during which, the weather is not only very fine, but the heat of the fun is very intense.

On the first day of March we had several smart flowers of rain; and a strong wind immediately arising, it was remarkably cold; the weather, in short, proved variable, and continued so to be till the beginning of April.

On Friday, being the 20th of March, the Persians solemnized the grand festival of the solar year. Their bazars, or market-places, strike the eye in a very agreeable manner by candle-light; since all the shops in general are prettily decorated, but those more especially of the fruiterers and confectioners, which have a charming effect. There is plenty of all sorts of provisions likewise in the cooks-shops, which are sent about all the town over, which is an uncommon custom, and what I never saw practiced in any other country whatsoever. However, notwithstanding such a profusion, the shops are soon stripped of all their stocks, through the vast concourse of strangers, who resort from all parts to Isfahan on this solemn occasion.

As our master of the horse was a Persian, and well known at court, I accompanied him betimes in the morning to the palace, where his majesty intended to make a grand entertainment. The principal lords that were invited sat down to table much about ten o'clock; and rose again in less than an hour. All the provisions were served up in gold and silver dishes; in which the Persian king's magnificence principally consists. Each dish, of which there was at least two hundred in number, was covered; and when there happens to be more company, the quantity of dishes is frequently doubled.

Most of the guests, who were invited to this banquet, wore on that occasion a kind of turban, embellished with rich pearls and precious stones; this turban, they call *Tha-eits-timaer*: some, indeed, were adorned with the feathers of a heron, which are very beautiful in their kind, and very graceful. As soon as they are out of the grand salon, or hall, where the entertainment is made, they pull off these rich turbans, and put on those which they wear daily on their heads, and which are carried before them by their respective domestics.

During the time that this festival lasts, these courtiers make a very splendid appearance, but more particularly on this day, when all in general are dressed in new attire. At a small distance from the hall where his majesty gave the entertainment, there were a dozen of his humpter-horses very richly caparisoned; their saddles and housings, were fet with costly pearls and precious stones, and their bridles, all of massy gold. They were fatten'd on halters made of silk, which trailed upon the ground; but particular care was taken that no one should tread upon them. Though the twelve horses were white ones; yet one part of their bodies, their tails, and their feet were all painted over with either a bright red, or a yellow like an orange. I could not procure a sight of these beautiful creatures, till I put my hand in my purse, and bribed

their respective grooms. A rich, large carpet was spread near the place where they stood, whereon was seated a gentleman, to whose care they were more immediately entrusted; and on one side of him lay a golden hammer with which they were flogged; and a trough of the same metal, I could not, however, by a bribe, or any other interest whatever, procure admittance into the salon, where the entertainment was made; and was obliged to sit down contented with a commodious seat for seeing every thing that passed by.

During this festival, there are grand presents customarily made to his majesty, not only by the grantees of the court, but by the bays and governors likewise of particular places: these presents likewise of some rich commodities, such as gold, fine horses, camels, or mules; # THE TRAVELS OF

mules, which are carried to him separately by such citizens, as are employed by his majesty's express orders for that particular purpose. At the same time, these officers carry all round the grand square belonging to the palace ten or a dozen vessels full of straw, which are hung at the end of some certain long poles, in commemoration of a conquest which they had formerly obtained over the Aefbec (b) Tartars: after they have made this declaration, they lead a certain number of horses, all covered over with silk, but without any saddles, into the court belonging to the palace. As for my own part, I thought the finest sight of all was, the vast number of grantees who walked across the court in their return from the entertainment, amidst a large throng of spectators.

During the whole course of this festival likewise, which is continued for several days successfully, little presents of eggs are made by one grantee to another; and even the Maer-fefeldaeer is obliged to wait on his majesty, with some of them embellished with gold and silver, and painted in a very elegant manner. And these particular presents are held in great estimation amongst them.

On the 23d instant, we solemnized the grand festival of Easter at Mr. Kaftlein's, our director's, and the very next day the English agent, with a numerous retinue, came to congratulate him on that joyful occasion. He met accordingly with a very courteous and friendly reception, and it was full late before he departed. On the 25th, several other gifts were paid us; by which means, in short, we spent the remainder of the month, imperceptibly as it were, in innocent mirth and social congratulations.

About the beginning of April, our director received a present of some young aparagus from a particular friend, which was at that time such a novelty, that they had not then been brought to market, or, at least, three score of them could not be purchased

under a score of florins. This afparagus is always exceedingly dear in this early part of the season; and few care to be at the charge, unless they purchase them

with a view of preferring them to some persons of distinction, whose favour and interest they would willingly procure. We had, moreover, some shoots, or suckers of rhubarb presented to us preferred in the gravy of lamb, as another novelty worthy of our acceptance. They are very refreshing, and of a laxative nature, and at this time of the year, highly esteemed, and of a most delicious flavour. Their leaves are curled; and as to their colour, they are green, yellow, and somewhat inclining to the red; but their stalks are of a yellowish white. Some of them, indeed, are of a fine red, and two or three inches thick. As to their length, they are generally about a foot, or a foot and a half, and the tender part of the best of them is only fit to eat. As soon as they begin to shoot up, they are covered, like asparagus, close up with earth, and by that means they are soon brought to perfection. They are cultivated, as favourite plants, for his majesty's table, in the parts adjacent to the city called (i) Laer, or Lahor, the governor whereof is indifferently obliged to make his majesty a present of a considerable quantity of these shoots. The leaf of this plant is two or three fathom in circumference; and the root likewise as well as the leaf, is like that of the common rhubarb; but it has not equal strength with that which grows in the country of Uzbek, between (k) China and (l) Moscow. The Perfans eat the tender part of these suckers raw, with salt and pepper, in the same manner as the natives of (m) Italy do the suckers of artichokes; the taste whereof, tho' hot and biting, is very palatable and pleasant. The syrup, which is sometimes made of them, is very refreshing. My curiosity induced me to make a draught of this plant and its root; and I have casually met with some leaves of it, which have been a foot and a half in length, and others still longer. The root of this which I have here delineated had four slips, or shoots, which were grey and motled. It was sent me, by way of present, and as a curiosity, from the city of Julpha; where it had flooded, in a proper bed, for nineteen years successfully till the time I had it.

On the 7th of this instant, I fell such an impetuous fever with a headache that I could not withstanding the pain and the heat of the disease, nor yet to be able to write anything; so, the remaining part of the fever was the more violent, and I was very temperate.

On the 15th instant, I received their grand feit Bäräm-korbat, that of Abraham. Our well-apprized of my care, and two other persons, as wait on the place intended for the religious culture, and immediately

Their qualities, Aparagus a valuable present, Exceedingly dear in Spring. # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

On one side of the plant, the reader will observe, that I have drawn a particular fruit, when the feason is somewhat farther advanced, called by the Persians, Baudensjon, but by the (n) Europeans, Foekje-fockiefe. Sometimes it is of a purple, and at other times of a white colour. It is, for the generality, about the size of a cucumber, tho' there are some full as large again. It eats extremely pleasant, when cut into broth, or when fried in butter, or, in short, drest in any other way whatsoever. The shrub, or plant, that bears it, is transplanted whilst it is very young; and by that means the fruit of it is manifestly improved. Its blossoms are parti-coloured, viz. white, purple, and yellow; and tho', for the most part, it shoots but about a foot and an half above the ground, it has several small branches, which frequently bow down to the very earth through the weight of the fruit which hangs upon them: the reader will find in plate 73, a representation of one of these shrubs; as also of the other plant before defcribed. The leaves of the rhubarb are distinguished by the letter A. The root thereof by the letter B. And the left mentioned plant, called the Foekje-fockiefe by the letter C.

On the 7th of this instant April, there fell such an imputuous shower of rain, accompanied with hail, near Julpha, as covered the face of the whole country, notwithstanding it was scarcely discerned at the same time within the city itself, which was such an occurrence as had not been heard of for many years before. During all the remainder of the month, the weather proved very tempestuous, rainy, and uncertain.

On the 15th instant, the Persians solemnized their grand festival, by them called Bairam-korbat, that is to say, the sacrifice of Abraham. Our director, who was well apprized of my inqutive temper, gave particular orders to his master of the horse, and two others of his inferior domestics, to wait on me on horseback, to the place intended for the solemnization of that religious custom. On the Eve before, and immediately after fun-fet, the king's music had been heard to play, which continued till the very fame hour the next morning, without the least intermission, as his majesty's band is very numerous, and one part relieved the other at certain flatted hours.

At seven in the morning, I made the best of my way to the Chiaer-baeg, where his majesty was to pass, as he went across his royal gardens; and, in about half an hour's time at farthest, he appeared at the head of a long train of grandees, to the number of two hundred, if not more, all drest, in the most elegant manner, with the richest turbans on their heads, of which we have given the reader a sufficient description some time before. I planted myself, about the mid-way, as near as I could, where his majesty was to pass; and after I had gratified my curiosity with a full view of him, and his numerous train, I set spurs to my horse, and galloped away to the place called the Babarock, that is, to the Persian burial-ground, and the very spot whereon the ceremony was to be

performed; which was half a league distance at least, if not more, from the city. The whole ceremony consisted of nothing more than the bare sacrifice of one male camel, without spot or blemish; for otherwise it would be impure, and unfit for that religious service. The Daroega, that is the bai-liff of the city, or else his majesty himself, gives the first fatal blow with a long sharp-pointed lance; and when thus deeply wounded, he is instantly dispatched by several fabres and knives, in the hands of such perfons as are appointed for that solemn purpose: when thus perfectly sacrificed, they cut him up in sundry pieces, which are distributed amongst the several officers belonging to each division or district of the city; and as all parties concerned are ambitious of receiving their full dividend, or share, disorders on that account frequently arise, and prove fatal, as it happened on this very day: for I saw several laid breathles on the ground in the height of their quarrel and contention. For all of them repair to this public sacrifice armed either with fabres or clubs; and there is always such a concourse of perfons # THE TRAVELS OF

persons on horfeback, that there is no possibility of stirring one way or the other. For my own part, I had the good fortune to move off the premisses one of the fifth, and returned directly to the Chiaer-baeg, in order to see the multitude of spectators on their return into the city. At length when the fray was all over, and each party had secured as good a share of the sacrifice as possibly he could get; the whole multitude returned in triumph; each officer at the head of those belonging to his own peculiar district jumping and dancing; some waving their fabres, and others their bludgeons over their heads, with loud acclamations, and abundance of what we commonly call rough music. The first filce that is cut off from this spotless sacrifice is devoted to his majesty's service, which is conveyed to the palace on the point of a long spear. As for the rest, the return was made regular enough, not only without any noise or confusion, but with all the testimonies of the most perfect satisfaction. In the first place, the king's guards made their appearance, and after them came his majesty himself on horfeback, under a large parasol (as they call it) that is, a kind of umbrêlo, to screen him from the too intense heat of the sun. After him, came a long train of the grandees, or lords belonging to the court; followed by twelve of the king's fumpter-horfes, all richly caparisoned, and four majestic elephants. In all, there were no less, according to the nearest computation that could be made, than one hundred thousand persons of all ranks and degrees present at this solemnity; some on foot, some on horseback, and prodigious numbers on the tops of their houses. I was the only European, that appeared dressed in my own country mode. As soon as the king drew near, the way was presently cleared for him by dint of cudgel; inasmuch, that there were several horse-men that were drove into the water; some on foot, who got most heartily drubbed; and as for my own part, I found myself prodigiously fatigued, notwithstanding the whole ceremony was over by eleven in the morning, if not before; and notwithstanding the



whole multitude had crossed the town in form, and made their return in proper order. Previous to the carrying this religious ceremony into actual execution, the poor innocent, spotted camel, was led for ten days successively, covered with thorns, and other emblems of mortification, and preceded by attendants, with lances, axes, and a variety of other warlike weapons to denote his intended death and approaching execution.

On that day, there are no less than fifty thousand sheep all slaughtered, dressed, and eaten up in the city of Ispahan; and most of those who had the good fortune to procure a slice of the camel, took care to dress it with their mutton: however, there were some few, indeed, more religiously inclined than the rest, who hoarded up what they had got as a sacred relic, and kept it all the year round. It must be owned, it is true, that there are ten or twelve thousand sheep slaughtered every day throughout the year for the supply of their several markets; and that all persons, of what rank or degree soever, rich or poor, lie under an indispensable obligation to eat mutton on this solemn day. Some few days before the day of sacrifice, I met with such droves of sheep, that I could scarce get clear of them. The inhabitants of this city, moreover, consume an almost incredible number of lambs, not above five and twenty days old at most. This consumption commences in November, and lasts till the latter end of May, but more especially amongst the people of taste and distinction. The price of each of these lambs is for the generality, seven, eight, or nine moroedjies (as they call their coin) seven whereof are of about a crown value of our money; but the largest weight of any of them does not exceed twelve pounds. They are looked upon as the choicest viands throughout all Persia, especially amongst the richer sort, who seldom, if ever, eat any beef, or buffaloes; for notwithstanding large quantities of both, 'tis true, are brought to market; yet those provisions are for the most part purchased by none but their mechanics, and the other lower classes of their people.

Some # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

Some few days after this religious ceremony had been solemnized in the manner above described, his majesty went with his concubines into the country, and amused both himself and them with the sight of a large number of elephants swimming across the river, the waters whereof had swollen excessively high, by reason of the rains that had fallen very heavy some few days before.

On the 23d instant, the Persians held another festival, which they call Aidikader, on which (as they affect) their grand prophet Mohammed, declared to the people, that Ali, or Halli, the prophet, should be his immediate successor, and laid his positive injunctions on them to acknowledge him as such.

This was transacted (as they say) in Arabia the happy, near the village of Shomhadier, from whence the name of this festival is derived, which is observed by the Persians only; since the bare mention of it to any of the other Mohammedans is looked upon as a gross affront.

About this time the trees began to shoot; and there were such heavy rains fell down towards the conclusion of this month, that they not only damaged some houses, but totally washed away others. This misfortune, however, is not much to be wondered at; since the mason's work in this country is just like a sponge; and as the houses are all flat at top, it is morally impossible to keep them dry upon the fall of any impetuous showers.

As soon as the month of May, however, came on, the weather began to change for the better; and I went into the country with our director, with an intention to follow the course of the river; but the banks of it had been so overflowed, by means of the preceding heavy rains, that we were indispensable obliged to strike a-crofs the country, by a road, which in two hours time, led us to the pleasure-houfe, or rural-feat, called Goef-jeron, which is situate, eastward of the city, on the river of Zenderoe. To this pleasure-houfe there is a good garden, in which there is great plenty of fena and fruit-trees; and several that have been sent by the East-India company have halTed here, not only on their arrival, but at their departure from Ispahan. There are several good apartments; it is true, in this houfe; but many of them begin to run to ruin and decay. The parts adjacent, however, are exceedingly pleasant. In this garden there are four several fena-trees, at a small distance from each other, which cover a pavilion, where there is a small flight of steps in order to get into it. These trees are very short; yet their trunks are very thick; and two of the four are not less than 16 feet in circumference. The Persians look upon them with more than common regard on account of their antiquity, and peremptorily infilt, that Tamerlane the Great once repofed himself under the shadow of their wide-spreading branches.

We were in hopes of meeting with some game here; but as the rain began to fall heavy all on a sudden, we thought it most advisable to return to Julpha directly, without the least farther delay; which accordingly we did, and flied there till night came upon us. The weather proved very precarious the next day; and I was unfortunately feized with an intermitting fever. Tho' I had only some few fits of it; yet they were very fevere, and weakened me to that degree, that I felt the ill effects of them till the beginning of the month of June.

## Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

1. Armenia, fee p. 198. n. g.
2. Perfa, fee p. 64. n. o.
3. Julfa, or Julpha, fee p. 262. n. x.
4. Turkey, fee p. 203. n. e.
5. Ararat, the ancient name for the mount Caucasus, between the Euxine and Caspian seas, where Noah's ark refted.
6. Erivan, caft long. 45 lat. 40. 6. a city of Perfa, on the frontiers of Turkey; in Asia, in the province of Chirvan, situate 180 miles east of Z z z # THE TRAVELS OF
7. England, fee p. 91. n. f.
8. Tartary, fee p. 18. n. i.
9. Laer, or Lahor, capital of the province of Lahor, east long. 75. lat. 33. is situate on the river Ravione, on the streams which form the river Indus 300 miles north-west of Delli, and 800 miles north of Surat. It is a large beautiful city; once the feat of the empire; but the palaces are running to ruin since the removal of the court. It is now the frontier of the Mogul's country against Perfia, Koul Kan, or the Sha Nadir, having added the province of Affock, and all the provinces of India on the west-side of the Indus to the Persian empire. At this city ends that magnificent walk of shady trees which runs from the city of Agra to this place, being upwards of 600 miles, a plantation of great use as well as grandeur in so hot a climate, since these trees are a shelter to travellers from the scorching fun.
10. China, fee p. 66. n. t.
11. Mofcovy, or Ruffia, fee p. 7. n. c.
12. Italy, is situate between 7 and 19 degrees of east-long. and between 38 and 347 degrees of north-lat. bounded by Switzerland and the Alps, which separate it from Germany on the north; by the gulph of Venice on the east; by the Mediterranean sea on the south; and by the fame sea and the Alps, which separate it
13. Europe, fee p. 127. n. dd.
14. Ifaphan, fee p. 109. n. m.

## CHAP. XL.

An accurate, tho' compendious Description of (a) Ifaphan, and of all such Beauties, both in Art and Nature, as are to be met with in that extensive City, and the Parts adjacent, and which we flatter ourselves are well-worthy the Attention of the Curious.

TH O' Ifaphan is a very extensive city, provided the suburbs are included; yet it makes but a poor appearance from without, in regard either to the mofchs, towers, or flatly edifices that are therein erected; and the reason, in fact, is, be-

caufe in the Summer-seafon 'tis perfectly concealed, as it were, and over-shaded with great numbers of lofty trees. And as this is the real cafe, I was determined to wait till the Winter came on, before I drew a prospect of it; and even then, I could make

but # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

but an imperfect sketch of it, on account of the vast profusion of palm-trees, cypres-trees, and other ever-greens, which are so very lofty, and so thick of leaves, that they are at all times and seasons most delightful to the eye.

All the buildings throughout this city in general are of a grey colour, and have ter-races, or plat-forms over them. Tho' there is a wall, indeed, that divides the city from the suburbs; yet there is no possibility of distinguishing it, or perceiving the division, as the houses stand so thick and close together. All these are, doubt-less, great impediments to a person that is inclined to take a draught or prospect of the city, and the more so, as 'tis built on a level, or plain, infomuch that, in short, I was obliged to ramble a whole league from the place, in search after a proper rising-ground for that purpose; from whence I had not only a full view of (b) Julpha, which is situate on the other side of the town, the city, with all its append-ages, and the numerous little villages that stand round about it, but of all the fine gardens, which take up a vast extent of ground, and the lofty mountains likewise that surrounded them.

That mountain which lies the nearest of them all, and by the natives called Koe-foffa, is at least a league and an half's distance to the southward from the city. On one side of it, there stands a royal manion, or pleasure-house, which was first erected by king Sulliman, his present majesty's father, in which there are a great number of very fine and magnificent apartments; from whence we had a full prospect, not only of the city and the country all round about it, but likewise of a fine nursery of all sorts of trees, and a kind of cascade proceeding from a torrent of water that is

constantly falling from the adjacent mountains. This rural palace is called Tage Sulle-moen, that is to say, the throne of king Sulliman, and when I happened to be there a great number of workmen were very busy in making the necessary preparations. The reader will find I have annexed a representation of it, as it appeared to me from the foot of the hill. There are several other mountains in sight; but then they stand at a much greater distance from the city, which is situate on a level or plain, as I observed before, that is near five and twenty leagues from east to west. It is likewise five leagues in breadth and upwards. One may say, without any great impropriety, that it is boundless, particularly to the eastward; as is also the road to Shiras, whereon I met with divers fine villages, and delightful gardens. And tho' I travelled at least five leagues eastward, I could perceive no boundaries or limits.

This city has no less than ten several gates, which stand all open, and without any proper officers to guard them. In order to take a tour all round the place, I went to the gate called Haifian-abat, from a person of that name, and of high birth and distinction, who began first to erect a range of houses on that side. From hence I went to another gate called Derwas-cykaeron, that is to say, the gate of the deaf; that part of the city having been formerly inhabited by such principally as laboured under that infirmity and misfortune. I left this gate on the left-hand, in order to take a view of the bazar's, which are at a quarter of a league's distance, at least, from the former. The gate called Seydack-moedjoen is at much about the same distance, and on the east-side of the city, where there is a double wall; the outermost whereof is very low, and beyond it, there are no houses, and nothing to be seen but a few monuments, or tombstones. From this I went to another gate called Shoebarn, which stands to the westward; from whence, at about the same distance, I saw that called Togt-thie. The canal, which runs round one part of the city to the westward, and as far as the gate called Karoen, rises, that is, has its spring from this place. From thence I went about a quarter of a league, and saw the gate called Darideft, and at an equal distance from that called Darwafynow, that is to say, the New-gate. From thence I went to the gate called Darwafy Lam-boen, and then to that called Doulet, or the gate of Prosperity, which is that of the Chiacer-bag. The tenth is called Hadhfie. # THE TRAVELS OF

Hadhfie, which stands near the kitchen-gate of the royal palace. As soon as I had gotten round again to the gate before-mentioned called Haflan-aboet, from whence I set out, I pulled out my watch, and found I had been full two hours and an half in taking this tour. They are all of them composed of earth only, and have no out-works to defend them; nay, the very folding-doors to them are perfectly clumsy, and secured only by a few iron-plates.

This city (within the walls) is divided into two and twenty principal partitions, or wards; seventeen whereof are distinguished by the name of Mamerh-olla-fe, or Namet-hollers, and the five others are called Heydierie: they bear a near resemblance to those called the Nicoloti, and the Caftellani in the city of (c) Venice.

Each of the above-mentioned seventeen partitions, or wards of the first division, have distinct appellations; that is, the ward of gardens; so called, because in the reign of king Abbas the first, it contained gardens, and nothing else. The second is called Kerron, that is, the ward of the deaf; the third Daeh-bettin, that is, the division of the house of Melons; the fourth is called Sey-id Agmed-joen, from one of their celebrated doctors; the fifth Letvez; but from whence it derives that name I could never learn; the sixth is called Bafäer-Agues, that is to say, the Duck-market; the seventh Shaer-foi Kotba; that is, the cross way of Kotba; the eighth Seltoen-fenfhterie, so called from an illustrious prince of that name; the ninth Namo-afig, the signification whereof is the three incompatibles; the tenth Shoebare, but why so called I am at a loss to determine; the eleventh is distinguished by the name of Derre-Rabba-Kafim; that is to say, the ward, or division of the father Kafim; the twelfth is called Goude-Matföek-beek, but why I know not; the thirteenth Golbaer, that is, abounding with fine flowers; the fourteenth is called Meydoen-mier, that is, the division or ward of Mier-square; or the square of one of their doctors known by that name; the fifteenth Niema-wort; the sixteenth is called Derre-kock, that is, the spot, or place of pleasure; what the name of the seventeenth is I do not remember; the four that follow belong to the ward or district of the Heyderries; the first of these is distinguished by the name of Malenow, that is to say, the new part; the second is called Derredef, that is, the abandoned part; the third Hoefcynia, that is, the ward or partition of the ecclesiastics; and the last is known by the name of Togt-frie, that is to say, the keeper of the poultry.

The principal parts of the same general divisions without the walls are four only in number; the first is distinguished by the name of Abbas Abaet, from Abbas the Great, who was its founder. This division, of all the out-parts, is the most considerable; for none but persons of distinction inhabit this district; neither is there any difference made between this ward and those within the walls: this ward is situated to the westward; the second bears the name of Siems-Abaet, so called from the founder of it; the third Bied-abae, and the fourth Thie-roen. Besides these, there are two others belonging to the ward or district called Namet-olla-hie; the former is called Sheig-joeufus-fibenna, that is to say, old Joseph's mason. It is sometimes, however, distinguished by the district or ward of Sheig-febbennaes; and sometimes again by that of Telwaefkon.

Under these districts, or wards, several small sub-divisions are comprehended, which have their several and peculiar denominations. These two great divisions are forever at variance; forever incompatible, and disagreeing with each other. This opposition, however, is most conspicuous on their days set apart for processions; their most solemn festivals, and in such places as are of public resort. And as both are inveterate and pernicious; there are great tumults and disorders for the generality on these public occasions; and their enmity, in short, to each other frequently runs so high, that numbers are sometimes left breathless on the spot; but of this we shall take farther notice in another place. The rise of this implacable emulation, envy, or malice, proceeded first, as I am informed, from # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

from two ancient villages, that stood contiguous to each other, one of which belonged to the Heideries, and the other to the Namet-olla-lue, names that have hence been affixed, and by which the two contending parties are distinguished.

This city was formerly called Hifpa- han, Isfahan, or Afpahan; and was nothing more than an ordinary town, or village, till the reign of king Abbas the Great, who, when he had overcome Laer and Ormus, abandoned Cafbin and Sultania, and made Isfahan his favourite place of abode. The principal cause of this alteration, or change in his residence, was the advantageous situation of the latter, which now became the metropolitan city, and the favourite seat of the monarchs of (d) Persia. It is situated in the province of Irak, which is part of the ancient (c) Par-thia, and in the northern latitude of 32 degrees and 45 minutes.

This country in general is distinguished by the name of Persia, which is a great and renowned kingdom of (f) Afa, encompassed by the (g) Caspian sea, Zaga-thay, (b) Tartary, the empire of the (i) Mongulians, or Moguls, the India sea, the gulph of Persia, (k) Arabia the desert, and (l) Turkey.

His majesty's palace here is about three quarters of a league in circumference; and there are fix several gates to it; the first and principal of which is called Ali-Kapie, that is, the gate of Ali, or Hali; the second is distinguished by the name of Ha- ram-Kapie, that is, the gate of the Seraglio; both of them open into the Mey-doen, or large square, which stands to the northward. The third is called Moerbag-Kapie, that is to say, the gate belonging to the kitchen; because all the provisions, of what nature or kind soever, which are served up to his majesty's table, is carried through that gate; and the fourth is called Ghandag-Kapie, that is, the gate or entrance to the gardens belonging to the palace. Thro' this no one must pass to pass, his majesty himself, and his Kapatiers, as they are called, that is his eunuchs, or guardians of his concubines, only excepted. This gate leads into the Chiaer-bag. The fifth gate is called Ghajat-ganna Kapie, that is, the taylor's-

gate; because all those of that profession, who are in his majesty's service have their residence there; the sixth and last gate is called Ghanna Kapefie; that is, the secretary's gate; these two last lead into the northern part of the city. The greatest part of the Perbian grandees go through those gates into the palace, when they have an audience of his majesty; but more especially through the two first.

The citadel, called the Tabarock, is near half a league in circumference, and extends, in regard to the length of it, quite into the city, eastward; and meets with the wall thereof southward. The wall is lofty enough, but composed of mud only; and is flanked with a set of towers, that make a very mean appearance, though there are cannons indeed, mounted upon them; but then they are of little or no use; since they durst not discharge them for fear of throwing down the wall, which is run to ruin and decay; so far, that there are large crevices to be met with in divers parts of it, that any person may see quite through it. Tho' frangers are not permitted to enter into it; yet I am fully persuaded, that the reason of such prohibition is, in fact; because it is in a more wretched condition within, than it appears without: it is a spacious place, however, and has some few conveniencies within belonging to it.

As to what I have farther to say with respect to the rest of the city, I shall give the reader my free thoughts thereon, when I shall have closed my description of it; in order that what I have still to add in this place, may be more readily and clearly understood.

Now here, then, follows the description of it just as the reader will find it represented in the plate annexed (No. 74.) and as it appears from the prospect taken from the southward. The figure (1.) directs the reader's eye to a mountain: the figure (2.) denotes the new royal garden, which I saw when it was but just begun; it is of a very considerable extent. Figure (3.) distinguishes the river called Zendere. # THE TRAVELS OF

(4.) Points to the house of one of the principal (m) Armenian merchants of Julpha. (5.) Directs the eye to the Dominican church in the same town. (6.) Points to the church of St. John the evangelist, which belongs to the Armenians. (7.) To the Episcopal church, or cathedral of the same people, which has a small tower belonging to it. (8.) Denotes the church in the market. (9.) The church of St. Mary; all this in Julpha. (10.) Is a representation of the bridge, called Allawerdi-Khan. (11.) The Muzyt, that is, the royal mosque. (12.) The mosque, called the Torfolla, from one of their doctors. (13.) The Menare-Kambrinjie, which is a lofty stone tower. (14.) The Kella-Menaer, that is, the pillar of beasts' heads. (15.) The Tabaroek, or the citadel. (16.) The Hazaar-Sherip, or the grand royal garden. (17 and 18.) Point out the principal monuments, or sepulchres of the Persians, and their burial-ground called the Babaroek. (19.) The place, or ground set apart for the



interment of the Christians. (20.) Directs the eye to the royal river. (21.) To the mountains of Choroe, which are in part covered over with snow. And (22.) Points out the village, called Taliffia.

The Meydoen, or grand square, which is one of the principal beauties of the whole city, is a market-place, no less than seven hundred and ten paces in length, from east to west; and in breadth, from north to south, two hundred and ten. It stands to the southward of the royal palace, and to the northward of the Nachroechone, that is to say, the particular structure erected for his majesty's band of music. This building consists of two lofty galleries, distinct from each other, and between them stands the imperial gate, which is a curious piece of architecture, very lofty, and built strong with fine stones. Through this gate I went into the Bazar. There is a representation upon it of the remarkable engagement between King Abbas and the Uzbek Tartars. It is a painting, not a sculpture, and executed by a Persian artist. There is a clock over it that strikes the hours; which is the only one to be met with throughout the whole kingdom of Persia; and on the same side there is a pavilion of the machines belonging to the clock, which gives motion to some wooden puppets in a wheel; a wretched piece of machinery, which any European operator would look on with an eye of disdain.

A little farther to the eastward I came to the mosque called Shiglotf-olla, from one of their doctors of that name; who is registered amongst the number of their saints. This is one of the best in the whole city, and is decorated with a fine dome, covered on the outside with parti-coloured stones, incrustated with gold. It has a pyramid likewise, on which there are three golden balls. The front door opens into the grand square, and there is a flight to it of several steps. It is built in a circular form, and about forty paces in circumference, as the person assured me whom I employed to give me the exact dimensions of it; for a Christian must not presume, on any pretence whatever, to enter into that sacred place.

The royal mosque, called Shah-mazyt, stands on the western side of this grand square, and is deemed the principal of all the mosques throughout the whole city of Ispahan. This has a dome to it, like the former, and two doors in the front, with a pillar on each side. These columns run considerably higher than the mosque itself; the whole of parti-coloured stone, together with an incrustation of gold, which has a fine effect, and strikes the eye in the most delightful manner. There are several Persian characters in white all round about, and the dome has two pillars. This mosque is of a circular form as well as the others, and is eighty-five paces in circumference. In the court directly over against the entrance, there is a fine cistern, or fountain; and it must be allowed, that these two mosques are the greatest decorations that the Meydoen, or grand square can boast of. At about two hundred and fifty-six paces from this last mosque stands the gate, called

Ali-kapie; and the whole square, indeed, is surrounded with lofty edifices, and with porticoes or piazzas full of shops and artisans. Those which # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

are in his majesty's service, are on the court-side: and the much greater part of the square is (besides all this) taken up with tents, where all kinds of merchandise are exposed to fate; at night, however, they pack up all their goods as carefully as they can, and leave a watch behind them, who goes his flatted rounds in the night with his dog by his side. The clms that are planted here cast a shade over most of the buildings; and the place is continually thronged by people of all ranks and degrees; but more particularly by such people of distinction as are obliged to attend the court. Here likewise are frequently seen great numbers of quack-doctors, and their merry-andrews, or buffoons, tho' they fell no medicines at all, and do nothing more than amuse the crowd with idle, nonfenfical flories, for which they are tolerably well paid for their labour by their numerous spectators. Some of these mountebanks have their apes and monkeys, which play a thousand antic tricks, to attract the mob about them; for there is no nation under the copes of heaven, so fond of trifles, and buffoonery, as the Perfians are; for which reason, their coffee-houses, bazars, and other places of public resort, swarm with these idle jack-puddings, and quack-doctors.

In the center of this large square, or market-place, there is a large and lofty column, fet apart for their public diversions; and on the summit, or top of it, the prize for the most part is affixed, which for the generality confits of a golden cup, or something of the like nature. The parties, that contend for it, are obliged to ride by it full speed, and, on a sudden turn of the body, to throw away their arrows or darts, and then stop their fleeds in a moment. No one, however, but persons of distinction, and such as are dextrous sword-men are admitted to these martial amusements. He that gains the prize, grasps it fast in his hand, and then puts it upon his head, as a testimony of his conquest and superior skill. His majesty, moreover, makes him a compliment of some present or other, of more or less value, according to the regard he has for the victor. The customary

prefent, however, is a golden quiver full of arrows. These martial amusements, indeed, have been practised but seldom, since his present majesty's affection to the throne, his taste, or inclination, leading him quite another way; which is widely diftant from that of his predecessors, under whom this column was erected, and these tilts or tournaments encouraged.

In former times, the quality never failed of having a tournament, on the festival, called Nowroes, that is to say, the new solar year; a solemnity observed with the utmost strictness by the ancient kings of Persia; and, according to the annals, or registers of this country, even so far back as the days of king Darius.

On these solemn occasions, they always pulled down, and removed the numerous tents that generally stand here; and plowed the ground with oxen for twenty days, without intermission, before the festival commenced. The king was then seated on a kind of theatre or throne, which they call Talael, over the gate of Ali-kapie, which is very lofty, and the architecture thereof is executed in a masterly manner.

When the races were over, there came on the stage, a set of wrestlers and ropedancers; and after that, they had battles both of bulls and rams. On these days of public rejoicings, they had jugglers likewise; but his present majesty detests such operators, as his spiritual guides have intimated to him, that the toleration of such magic-tricks are not only immoral, but shamefully wicked and prophane; neither will he admit of any female dancers or courtesans, tho' they met with great encouragement from his predecessors.

In the plate hereto annexed, and numbered (75) the reader will find an exact representation of the Meydoen, or the grand market-place. This first prospect was taken from one side of the edifice before-mentioned to be set apart for his majesty's band of music. The letter (A) points out the Talael, or theatre, which stands over the gate called Ali-kapie. (B) Distinguishes # THE TRAVELS OF

guifies the royal moorf. (C) That other, called Shig-loft-alla. (D) Denotes the Wagitis-foi-act, that is to say, the pavilion of machines. There likewise are represented, not only the tents, but the column, or pillar for races. The second view, represented in plate (76,) was taken from the east, not far distant from the royal moorf. The letter (A) there points out the Talael, Ali-kapie. (B) The moorf, called Shig-loft-olla. (C) The pavilion of machines. (D) The house, or buildings, for his majesty's band of music. (E) The gate, called the Derre-harram, that is, is the Seraglio-gate, of which but little is seen. There the column or pillar stands in the middle of the grand square. All along the portico, or piazza, belonging to the palace, there runs, on each side, a ballustrade of painted wood, which contains no less than one hundred and nineteen pieces of small cannon; but then the carriages of them are most wretchedly out of repair; particularly in regard to the wheels. There is a canal by these pieces of cannon, which were brought from (n) Ormus, in the reign of king Abbas, who, by the aid and affluence of the natives of (o) England, made himself master of that island.

The gate of Ali-kapie is the entrance to the palace, which is a curious piece of architecture, and ten paces in breadth. It is more, however, in depth, with a lofty arcade, or vault, with curious niches on the sides of the wall. When I was got through it, I could see some lofty stone-walls, between which I got to the buildings and the garden. The gate, called the Haram, resembles this very much: it was erected whilst I was resident here, and was gilt in the front. The very first time I was at court, during the absence of his majesty and his concubines, I went through a gallery between these walls; and the entrance of it appeared to me to be very magnificent, and truly royal. From thence I went to the new Seraglio for the reception of the concubines, which abounds with small, magnificent apartments, the walls whereof were white without, and painted with flowers. At the end of this building, there is a large, and exceedingly neat apartment on the right-hand, encompassed with chambers, which at that time were not perfectly finished, but were getting in forwardness; by a great number of workmen. From thence I went into the hall, called the Fiel-feton, that is, the forty columns, in which his majesty, for the most part, gives his audience to foreign ministers; twenty of these columns, or pillars, are composed of wood; but then they are well painted and gilt: this hall is very spacious, and the walls of it are painted with a sky-coloured blue, embellished with foliages and flowers. Here I saw, likewise, some figures of European persons of distinction, in habits, like the natives of (p) Spain; but others, indeed, dress in a quite different manner. I saw likewise eight other columns, or pillars, in the back part of this structure; four on a side; and four other in an apartment which was locked up. Before this last-mentioned apartment is a large court-yard, full of fena-trees, and directly over against it another, much smaller; behind both, a fine bafoon, or fifth-pond, lined with large stones; and the court itself is paved with the very same sort of stones. This fifth-pond is one hundred and fourcore paces in length, and four and twenty in breadth. From thence I was conducted into another court, and after that to a great building, where there was a hall of uncommon dimensions, exceedingly light, as well as lofty; with large curtains to the windows, which fell from the ceiling quite down to the floor. My curiosity induced me to throw up one of those curtains, by which I perceived that the hall abounded with looking-glasses, and was embellished with fine pillars, or columns, composed of wood, indeed, but elegantly painted and gilt. This is the finest part by far of all the whole palace; and here likewise his majesty gives audience sometimes to foreign ministers. Before this hall stands several fine bafoons or fountains, and a large canal for watering the trees belonging to the garden: this palace has several partitions, and divers gardens distinct from each other. Here likewise I saw several very fine stone galleries; which were covered,

A magnificent building.

His majesty is peculiar, and keeps a great deal of that purpose at the place of roccone.

Their principal instrument is called the Karama, which bears a resemblance to the trumpet; and about five inches in the mouth-end; and about four inches in length. There is likewise a very fine kettle-drum, which is called the Koes, which has a depth five feet and upwards. The depth, however, is very much in times of war only. This instrument is called the drum very nearly resembling the kettle-drum: the instrument, which is a flat copper instrument, which is called the Koes, and which is called the kettle-drum.

They have, moreover, the instrument which is called the drum, and the instruments which are called the kettle-drum. These instruments are not of the same kind as those of the Ottomans, but the Ottomans have also an instrument which is called the kettle-drum, and which is called the drum, which has also an instrument which is called the drum, and which is called the kettle-drum. They have likewise an instrument which is called the drum, which is called the Koes, and which is called the kettle-drum.

They have, moreover, the instrument which is called the drum, and the instruments which are called the kettle-drum. These instruments are not of the same kind as those of the Ottomans, but the Ottomans have also an instrument which is called the kettle-drum, and which is called the drum, which has also an instrument which is called the drum, and which is called the kettle-drum. They have likewise an instrument which is called the drum, which is called the Koes, and which is called the kettle-drum.

They have, moreover, the instrument which is called the drum, and the instruments which are called the kettle-drum. These instruments are not of the same kind as those of the Ottomans, but the Ottomans have also an instrument which is called the kettle-drum, and which is called the drum, which has also an instrument which is called the drum, and which is called the kettle-drum. They have likewise an instrument which is called the drum, which is called the Koes, and which is called the kettle-d-d-d-d-d-d-d-d-d-d-d-d-d-d-d-d-d-d-d-d-d-d-d-d #  
CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

The exercises, that are principally practised by the natives of Pería, are riding, and darting what they call the Ainer, that is to say, the fine walk, or alley of Ifahan, which is one of the chief ornaments that capital can boast of. The term may with propriety, however, be construed likewise the four gardens. In order to go to it, I went through the gate, called Daer-wafey-doulet, that is the gate of prosperity, erected by king Abbas the great, situate to the fourth. That prince gave express orders to some of his counsellors of state, that they should erect such and such houses, at their own

private expenses, at the entrance into those gardens, all along this fine alley. One of these grandees or lords, whose name was Gemthe-Alli-Kan, erected, in pursuance of these orders, a magnificent structure, or building, in the form of a tower, over against one of the walks that runs along the river. The rest followed his example, and each strove to out-do his neighbour, by embellishing it with fine stone buildings, and amongst the rest, with a pavilion at the entrance; from whence his majesty, on his coming out of the gardens, might see all their magnificent buildings.

As I passed by these gardens, I saw (at about the distance of two hundred and fifty paces from the city-gate) two edifices directly over against each other, with great gates, which lead into the gardens; and in the middle, or centre of this fine walk, there is a large octagon baion; there are two other edifices likewise, resembling these, at the distance of three hundred and thirty-eight paces from thence, with a quadrangular baion; and when I had gotten about an hundred and seventy paces farther, I came to a cross-way, which extended as far as to the

His majesty takes great delight in music.

Their principal instruments are first the Karama, which bears a near resemblance to the trumpet; some of these Karamas are five inches in circumference at the mouth-end; and about four foot at the other; and in length, about seven foot six inches: inasmuch that, there is no possibility of making use of them without a proper reft. These give a very extraordinary, pleasing sound. The next instrument they call the Koes, which is a large drum, in depth five foot and upwards, and nine foot nine inches in circumference. This instrument, however, is very seldom, if ever used, in times of war only excepted, and such as beat it ride upon camels; the third instrument is called the Hool, which is a drum very nearly resembling ours. They have likewise what they call the Nagora, which is a small kettle-drum, and the nafier, or the trumpet. They have more over, an instrument, much like our harp-fichords; but their favourite instrument, and that which is most in use, is their kamon-fle, which is a kind of violin. They have also an instrument, called the Scorna, which nearly resembles our hautboys. They have, moreover, a great variety of flutes, and the morgnie, or harp, which is a flat copper baion, on which they strike, and make a great noise. They have, in short, besides all these, divers other instruments, the use of which are wholly unknown in any parts of (g) Europe. # THE TRAVELS OF

the walls of the gardens. This crofs-way abounds with benches, wooden chairs, and tables, and here in an evening I have seen great numbers of Perfians fmoaking their pipes, and drinking their coffee: here the ground has a declivity, where there are trees with wide-spreaddng branches, which afford the finest shade that can possibly be conceived; and accordingly, it is almost always

prodigiously thronged, both with gentlemen on foot, and others on horfback; who amuse themselves there with running of races, and other exercises of various kinds. When I had gone some considerable way farther, I came to a large stone-gate, which belonged to one of these gardens; and proceeding a little farther, I came to two other buildings, where people retire to fmoak; and after I had walked a little farther, I came to another crofs-way, where I saw two buildings, much like the former, and between them a square bafon; here likewise I saw several perfons fmoaking their pipes, and drinking of coffee; and here likewise were depofited a great number of bucklers, bows and arrows, which belonged to the Mamet-holladers, and the Hey-deries, of whom we have made mention before. At some considerable distance from hence, I saw another octogon bafon, abutting on a way, which is traversed by a fine river, on each side whereof are planted a prodigious number of fena-trees.

The high road extends above two hundred paces beyond this, all along the palace, and the royal garden, where there is a fort of menagerie, or place for learning how to ride the great horfe. About four-score paces from hence, stands the famous bridge of Alla-werdi-Khan, so called from the name of its founder. The road near it is no less than one thousand seven hundred and fifty one paces in length, and threecore and eight in breadth; embellished on each side with fine fena-trees, which were planted in the reign of king Abbas the great, that is to say, above one hundred and forty years ago. That part where these trees are planted is five paces in breadth; and is raifed a foot and an half, at least, above the way, or road itself, which is very fandy. This way, thus raifed, which runs

between the wall of the garden and thefe trees, is paved with large brick; and the canal, that croffes the Chiaer-baag, is lined with the fame materials. On the fides of thefe trees, which are all regularly planted, at the diftance of about ten foot only from one another, there is an aqueduct contrived to water them.

The bridge, called Alla-werdi-Khan, which is fuate on the river of Zenderot, is five hundred and forty paces in length, and seventeen in breadth, and erected with large stones. It has three and thirty arches; some whereof stand on land; which, in this place, is extremely hard, and the water, when it is high, runs under them. On this bridge, there are no less than ninety three several niches, some whereof are open, but others flopped up; and each end is flanked with four towers. There are parapet-walls, composed of bricks, with holes throughout the whole length from one end to the other; in so much I have ever beheld; with several very neat summer-boufes upon it, at each end. At the diftance of about four hundred and sixteen paces from this bridge, there is a kind of cascade, or water-fall, received by a bafon, which is threecore paces long, and forty broad. Near this water-fall, there are eleven large stone steps, which are in a wretched and ruinous condition;

and at no great distance from them, is a large road, some trees, and a slope-way, which afterwards becomes perfectly plain and level. At some small distance from hence, I came to two other pleasure-houses, and after that, to twelve more, two and two, at an almost equal distance, one from the other, quite to the end of this fine walk or alley, which is of the same breadth in all places, and is bounded by his majesty's great garden, which extends as far as here, from the above-mentioned cascade. On each side, there are one hundred and forty-five fena-trees, with some mulberry-trees between them; and from the extremity of the bridge to the end of the alley, it is two thousand and forty-five paces; to which, when the length of the bridge itself is added, which is five hundred and forty # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

forty paces, and the way on this side, which is one thousand seven hundred and sixty one, the total will amount to four thousand three hundred and thirty-five paces. This fine and pompous alley abuts (as we have hinted before) on his majesty's great garden, where there is a magnificent building, painted like the rest without, and decorated with fountains of foliage and flowers. The entrance into the garden is exceedingly pleasant; the middle walk is embellished with a fine canal, which has a sloping fall, and jets of water. This garden is very spacious, and abounds, not only with fine walks, but with great numbers of fruit-trees, which, though they charm the eye, and have a fine effect, might be greatly improved by some other decorations. It is two thousand two hundred and eighty paces long from north to south; and from east to west one thousand five hundred and forty-five broad. It is distinguished by the name of Hafeen-ferip, that is to say, the garden of a thousand paces. Here I saw several very lofty towers, but composed of earth, which are made use of as dove-coats, the dung whereof is a very proper manure for their melon-beds.

The reader will find the first representation of the Chiaer-baeg, which was taken from the west, in plate (Numb. 77.) I took the draught of it by the side of the river called Zenderot, or Zajandoret, which has its fountain-head from four large springs, or wells, called Chert-zefme, AE, that is to say, the source of springs. This place stands in mountains, which are five days to the westward of Ispahan. There are some people who allow it to spring from two several places; the first whereof is only three from this capital city, in a village, called Dambina; and the second, where I have already said it rises; as for the rest, it loses its waters three days to the eastward of Ispahan, in a marsh-ground which is called Gou-honie. In this prospect, or view, every article therein contained is distinguished by figures; for instance, number (1.) directs the eye to the gardens, which run along the fine walk or alley belonging to the Chiaer-baeg; to-

gather with the way, or road, that leads to the bridge. Figure (2.) points out the bridge, called Alla-werdie-Khan. (3.) Shews that particular building which was erected in the reign of king Sefi, in



order to be the residence, or place of abode of a holy Dervis, who had been sent from (r) India, but refused to come. Figure (4.) directs the reader to the house, where they wash the bodies of such as are dead. (5.) Points out the building that belongs to the Chiaerbaeg. (6.) The edifice, called Gemphilalli-Khan. (7.) A dove-house. And (8.) the river called Zenderot.

The second representation, which I have here annexed, is the prospect of the Chiaerbaeg itself, near the bridge, which the reader will find in plate, (Numb. 78.) the letter (A.) points out the king's garden, (B.) the bridge. (C.) The house, where they wash the bodies of their dead. (D.) The river. And (E.) distinguishes the mountains, called Koe-foffa. The other buildings are represented to the right and left, in the very same manner as they stand in the Chiaer-baeg.

The third prospect, which I took was from the bridge, on that side where the garden-gate is; and there stands the tower for collecting the wind for the refreshment of the lodgings in the Summer-feason, by virtue of some particular pipes which come out from the roof, and convey the air into the several apartments. There likewise are to be seen the fountains and the walks which lead towards the building, which stands on the left-side of the city gate, and to the right of the wall belonging to the palace-gardens. This view the reader will find in plate (79.)

The fourth prospect, which was taken from the other end of the bridge, and shews the way, or road, beyond it; together with the building on both sides; as also, the cascade, or water-fall, and the bafon, and the way which leads to the end of the building belonging to his majesty's great garden, the reader will find in plate (Numb. 80.)

The fifth prospect, which was taken from the other end, and included in plate 81, shews the front of the building belonging to his majesty's great garden, which runs along the fine walk or alley belonging to the Chiaer-baeg; to- # THE TRAVELS OF

longing to this garden, and the canal, the waters whereof roll along by the front-gate.

The bridge called Shiras, likewise, is a fine piece of architecture. It stands about a quarter of a league from the gate of Halfen-abet, whose name it bears, and is on the east side of the city. It is one hundred four-score and eight paces in length, and in breadth sixteen. It is built with free-stone, and has forty-two niches on each side; some whereof are open and others not. It has twenty arches, under which the river runs, when the waters are high; and on the sides eight other arches, that is, five to the right, and three to the left. The building upon the middle of this bridge is open on each side, and I went through it, in order to get to the bridge above. To the eastward, which is the most commodious situation for making a drawing of this bridge, there is a fine smooth way,

which is eighteen feet in breadth, and fronts its arches. From hence one goes down to the river by twelve steps, when the water happens to be low, as for the most part it is during the Summer-feast, infomuch that, horces frequently ford it with all the ease imaginable. This, however, is so much the more surprising, as the waters of this river sometime swell to that degree, and are so rapid, that they throw down, and sweep away whole houses in an instant; as was the unhappy cafe in the month of April, which was in the year 1699. These steps, which we have just mentioned, are divided into nineteen parts, and separated from each other by a canal, or paffage, through which the river runs; some of these divisions, however, have but seven or eight steps; and on this bridge there is a fine building under which people walk, and cross it. That which appears at the foot of the bridge is made use of as a front-gate to the king's garden on the city side; on the other side, there is another, much like the former, concerning which we shall speak farther in a more proper place. The reader will find this bridge represented in plate (82.). The figure (1.) points out the bridge in general. (2.) The garden of Bagenafar. (3.)

That of Sadet-abad. And (4) the river called Zenderost. There is nothing can possibly strike the eye in a more delightful manner, than the prospect to the eastward taken from a commodious situation on this bridge, and, in a fine evening, the eye is farther entertained with the view of an almost infinite number of perfons of both sexes, and of all ranks and degrees in life, taking their refreshing walks on the banks of the river, more especially near the Cascade, and in the charming way, which runs along the arches of the bridge, some on horseback, others on foot; and others again smoothing their pipes, and drinking their coffee, which are ready prepared by proper hands for the accommodation of all passangers, who are inclined to indulge themselves in those innocent amusements. The garden of Sadet-adab is situated to the south-east of the city, and extends itself as far as to the westward of this bridge; so that it contains a large extent of ground: in this garden, there is a magnificent haram, that is, a feraglio, built with stone, near the banks of the river; where there is, likewise, another bridge, with a rail, or balustrade, in the room or stead of a parapet. This stands directly over against a garden, and in order to go into it, people are obliged to cross the bridge, which has seventeen arches. There was some time ago a still more magnificent edifice erected a little above the forementioned haram; but it was casually burnt down to the ground in the preceding Summer, whilst his majesty was personally present. On one side of this structure, there is a curious talaal, that is to say, a kind of gallery, or amphitheatre, which lies perfectly open on three sides, where the king gives sometimes audience to his foreign ministers; and behind it, there is another grand and pompous building, which is no less than forty paces in length, and three and thirty in breadth; and the talaal, itself, is thirty-six paces by forty-two. There are two steps in front, each of which is two

foot and a half in height; in the center there is a marble bason, about eight paces by fix. In going somewhat farther, I came to a place, which was raised three foot, but

---

## CORN

but without any steps to much like it, as I pass further, on the side of the building from which the apartments; and here, as before, four paces by fix there are fix several portches, as large as the like gentlemen and ladies; each holds a glass of wine and gracefully extends the wife, I saw two portraitraffs on the two walls, and from each other Spanish dreis, and the tale, perhaps a century ter, however, was, in my right, or arid in his pit the reef, it is all gilt from and embellished with and animals of divers over, decorated with two lurs, painted much after in a variety of colours, agreeably enough, and he effect. I have obliged representation of them in the letter (A.) distinguish the letter (B.) points out the gloo; (C.) the bridge river.

When his majesty is current of the river by timber, in the canals, bridge, called Halfin, convey the water to one

## Occaphe

1. Vipatam, see p. 109.
2. Julia, or Julpha.
3. Venice (the city 45.40. the capital of the Venice, and of all the Venice, 120 miles north of Nium, and 2.50 east of T. Laguenes, five miles from the grounds, which the tea has leaving a great number of # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

but without any steps to it; and another much like it, as I passed along a little farther, on the side of the walls belonging to the building from whence I went into the apartments; and here likewise was a bason, four paces by fix. On the walls, there are fix several portraits, in proper niches, as large as the life: these are of gentlemen and ladies; four of whom are dreft, after the Spanish mode, and each holds a glass of wine in the right-hand gracefully extended. Here, likewise, I saw two portraits of ladies, painted on the two walls, at but a small distance from each other: one in a modern Spanish dress, and the other in a habit in taste, perhaps a century ago. The painter, however, was, in my opinion, no adept, or artist in his profession. As to the raft, it is all gilt from top to bottom, and embellished with flowers, foliage, and animals of divers kinds. It is, moreover, decorated with twenty columns, or pillars, painted much after the same manner, in a variety of colours, that strike the eye agreeably enough, and have a pretty good effect. I have obliged my readers with a representation of

them in plate (83.) where the letter (A.) distinguishes the talal; the letter (B.) points out the haram, or ferglio; (C.) the bridge; and (D.) the river.

When his majesty is present, he stops the current of the river by dykes, composed of timber, in the canals, or openings of the bridge, called Haffan-Abæt, in order to convey the water to one side of the talal;

At a small distance from which there are a few trivial pleasure-boats, in which, he amuses himself with his concubines in rowing them round about it.

As I happened to be in a lofty Summer-house in the garden, from that commodious situation, I was tempted to draw a prospect of the bridge belonging to the Chiaer-baeg. The reader will find it here annexed in plate (84.) The ferglio is distinguished by the letter (A.) The bridge which stands opposite to the garden on the other side by (C.) That of the Chiaer-baeg itself by (C.) And the river, and another bridge at a greater distance from the city, by the letter (D.) This bridge last mentioned is known by the name of Sharefton, and has not only ten arches, but a large edifice on one side of it, which passengers must go through, in order to cross it. The prospect here on all sides is perfectly charming; and the river, which winds here all round about it, is full of rocks.

I have but one observation more to add, and that is; that at the distance of about five days journey to the fourth-west of the city of Ifaphan, there is the source, or fountain-head of the river called Aeb-chieran, to be met with on a lofty flat mountain; the water whereof is the best I ever tasted. This river produces abundance of fish of various kinds; but is most remarkable for its fine trout. Its waters empty themselves into the river (5) Euphrates.

## **Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.**

1. Ifaphan, see p. 109. n. m.
2. Julfa, or Julpha, see p. 26. n. x.
3. Venice (the city of) east long. 13. lat. 45. 40. the capital of the Dogado, or duchy of Venice, and of all the Venetian dominions, is situate 220 miles north of Rome, 150 east of Milan, and 250 east of Turin, standing in the Lagunes, five miles from the continent; these Lagunes are supposed to have been marshy grounds, which the sea has encroached upon, leaving a great number of little islands, or spots

of earth above the water, on which the fishermen of Padua built their huts; but when the Goths invaded Italy, in the fifth century, several considerable families of Padua and Aquileia retired hither, to secure themselves from an enemy they could not resist, and laid the foundation of this great city upon seventy-two of these little islands, 'tis said, at first; but Venice stands upon a much greater number at this day, and is so happily situated, that no army can approach it by land, nor any hostile fleet by sea; the avenues to these islands being so exceedingly difficult, that they have not thought it necessary # THE TRAVELS OF

## 1704

Necessary to enclose the city with a wall; nor has any power attempted to besiege it since it was founded, which is now twelve hundred years, and upwards. Nothing can appear more beautiful than this town does: as we approach it either from the continent or the sea, we behold this fine city, with its numerous palaces and lofty towers, rising out of the waters, as it were, washed by the flood on every tide, nothing intervening to obstruct the light. The circumference of the city is about six miles, and the inhabitants are computed to be near two hundred thousand. The canals are so numerous, that you may go to any part of the town by water; and there are four hundred and fifty bridges over them; the principal bridge, called the Rialto, lying over the grand canal, composed of one arch, (which makes one third of a circle) ninety foot wide. None of the bridges but this have rails.

There are not quays on the sides of all the canals where people can walk; for sometimes the canal fills the whole street from one side to the other.

The piazza of St. Mark, 'tis said, is not to be paralleled for the magnificence of its buildings; and the houses upon the grand canal are most of them elegant palaces, with marble fronts, adorned with pillars of the several orders of architecture. Their rooms are usually hung with gilt leather, or tapestry, and their bedsteads are of iron, which secures them against vermin, so troublesome in London. But these advantages are attended with some great inconveniences. They have no good cellars for their wines; all their water is bad, but what is brought from the continent; and their canals, in the heat of Summer, create very offensive smells.

The sovereign power is lodged in the nobility. There are about fifteen hundred noblemen at present, who constitute their grand council, or assembly of the states, and are styled noble Venetians, whose honours descend to their posterity.

The doge, or duke of Venice, is clothed in royal robes, and has the honours of a sovereign prince paid him; but has very little share in the government. As the legislative power is lodged in the great council, there are several other councils to whom the administration of the government is committed; and there is one council, or state-inquisition; which has a power of imprisoning, and putting to death the greatest nobleman, even the doge himself, if they apprehend him to be dangerous to the state, and that without bringing him to an open trial, or giving him an opportunity of making his defence. And though the noblemen of the city of Venice are vested with very great powers and privileges; yet the ancient nobility on the continent have scarce any; nor are they respected at all at Venice for the titles they bear of marquisses, counts, &c. These the Venetians endeavour to depress, and even to extirpate, as the Dutch do those of Holland.

The annual revenues of the Republic are computed to be one million two hundred thousand pounds sterling, and their forces may amount to twenty-four thousand by land. They can equip a fleet of thirty men of war, one hundred galleys, and ten galliasses, as 'tis said; but they seldom engage the Turks at sea, without foreign assistance. A noble Venetian is always generalissimo at sea; but they make choice of some foreign general for the land-service, who is attended by several senators, without whose concurrence he can transact nothing; and they chuse to employ Swiss, Germans, and other foreign troops in their wars, rather than their own subjects; but they desire to be at peace with all their neighbours, if possible; not only because they apprehend themselves weaker, but war hurts their traffic; which is their chief support, though it was much greater formerly, when they brought the merchandise of Asia from Alexandria, and distributed it to all the countries in Europe. Still the manufactures and produce of their country furnishes them with merchandise to traffic with. They make wrought silks of various kinds, brocades, gold, and silver stuffs, and damask, as well as velvets. They export wine, oil, fruit, Venetian steel, copper, glass, essences, turpentine, &c. And the goods, which they purchase in Turkey are taken off by the Germans.

As to their religion, it is that of the Roman catholic; but it can scarce be called popery, as the pope has so little authority at Venice. Their church has two patriarchs; the one of Aquileia, and the other of Venice; and these are subject entirely to the temporal power.

The republic of Venice is as arbitrary in ecclesiastical causes, as the states of Holland. The pope is looked upon but as a temporal prince at Venice, and their patriarchs are little more than cyphers. And though they have a kind of inquisition, that court can put none of their decrees into execution, without the leave of the state. The Venetians are neither governed by priests, or monks; men of such professions, indeed, may enjoy the diversion of

masquerading, during the carnival; they may keep concubines, fling upon the stage, and take what liberties they please, in case they interfere not with the government: and the nuns of Venice have not a much better reputation than their clergy. Their patriarch was # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

was about to refrain their liberties taken in those houses, and began with the nuns of St. Laurence; but they told him, they were noble Venetians, who had made choice of that way of life as most convenient, and would not be subject to his regulations; and the senate interposed, and required the patriarch to desist.

1. Perfia, fee p. 64. n. o.
2. Parthia, a country of Afa, formerly so called, situate almost in the middle of the modern Perfia.
3. Afia, fee p. 127. n. x.
4. Caffian fea, fee p. 66. n. q.
5. Tartary, fee p. 18. n. i.
6. Mongulians, or Moguls, fee p. 158. n. i.
7. Arabia, fee p. 203. n. a.
8. Turkey, fee p. 203. n. e.
9. Armenia, fee p. 198. n. g.
10. Ormus, east long. 56. lat. 27. 30. an island at the entrance of the gulph of Perfia, in Afia, situate opposite to Gomborn, on the continent, 240 miles fourth-eaft of Schiras, and 370 fourth-eaft of Ispahan. This island is thirty miles in circumference; while the Portuguese poffeled it, it was the richest magazine in the whole world: they made it the center of trade between Europe and Afia. Here the fine spices, and other merchandizes of the eaft were laid up, and afterwards distributed to the rest of the world; and here the Portuguese built one of the moft elegant cities in all Afia, but some thing above one hundred years ago, the Dutch dispossessed the Portuguefe of most of their settlements in India; and the Perfians, by the affiance of the English, expelled the Portuguefe from Ormus; for which the English Eaft India company were allowed great advantages in the Perfian trade, and even suffered to share the revenues of the customs, on that side, with the Perfians; and till the late civil war, received between three and four thousand pounds per annum, in lieu of them.

As to the island of Ormus itself, it never produced any thing but falt, which grows in a folid crust, two inches deep upon the surface of the earth; and the hills appear, at a distance, as if they

were covered with snow; nor is there a drop of fresh water on the island, but what is preferred in cisterns, in the time of the rains. The Portuguefe used to fetch their water from

the continent. Upon the demolition of Ormus, the great Sha-Abbas, Sophi of Perfia, removed the trade to Gomborn, on the opposite shore, and gave it the name of Bander-Abaffi, or the port town of Abbas.

1. England, see p. 91. n. f.
2. Spain, (in which Portugal may be comprehended) is bounded by the Bay of Biscay on the north by the Pyrenean mountains, which separate it from France, on the north-east; by the Mediterranean sea on the fourth-east; and by the Atlantic ocean on the west, lying between ten degrees west, and three degrees east long, and between 36 and 44 degrees of north lat, being about seven hundred miles in length from east to west; and five hundred in breadth from north to south. It is very much incumbered with mountains, of which the Pyrenees that divide France from Spain are the chief. The rest may be looked upon as branches of the Pyrenees under different names, which run through the country from east to west; but they are generally well planted with trees, and between them are a great many fruitful valleys; and there is this convenience in a variety of mountains and valleys, that the mountains are always cool, when the valleys are excessively hot. The air is esteemed healthful in both, the weather being usually settled, and the heavens serene, unless in the spring and autumn; nor is the sun often obscured by clouds: the winter is so moderate in the valleys, that they have very little occasion for fires nine months in the year; but then, in the months of June, July, and August, the heats are very troublesome in the valleys and fancy plains; and there is a great scarcity of water, most of their springs and rivulets being dried up.

The soil of Spain produces excellent wheat and barley, and they have rich pasture grounds, their wool is the best in Europe, and used by other nations in their finest cloaths. They abound in wine, oil, and silk; and no country produces better oranges, lemons, raisins, citrons, prunes, figs, capers, chestnuts, almonds, and pomegranates. The soil also produces flax, cotton, sugar, and saffron; and they have rich mines of quick-silver, copper, lead, iron, and sulphur; and the iron and steel of Biscay is esteemed the best in Europe: formerly the Spanish mines yielded the Romans more gold and silver, than any other country under their dominion, tho' now these mines are lost or exhausted, or the Spaniards have such plenty of these minerals in their American plantations, that the Spanish mines are not worth # THE TRAVELS OF



worth the working. They import more silver from them than all the world besides. But with all these advantages, Spain is poor, and but thinly peopled; for which several reasons are assigned; as first, the celibacy of the clergy, and the locking up of many of both sexes in monasteries. 2. The expulsion of so many hundred thousand Moors and Jews, as they did about three hundred years ago. 3. The wars they carried on with most of the powers of Europe, as well as Africa and America, for two hundred years. 4. The draining of their country every year of so many men to supply their American plantations; where none but native Spaniards are admitted to the chief offices and commands. And 5. their poverty may, in a great measure, be ascribed to their pride and indolence; none of them fear submitting to laborious employments, since the wealth of America flowed in upon them; but their neighbours, the French, attend them in the quality of servants, and even manage their husbandry, and manufactures in several provinces.

The Spaniards also export great part of the produce of their country unwrought, purchasing the silk, woolen, and linen manufactures of other nations, to supply their plantations; or rather, they act as factors for the French, Italians, English, and Dutch, in the disposal of their manufactures; and at the return of the galleons, pay the proprietors with the treasure they import from the West-Indies.

The king of Spain's dominions are the largest that are possessed by any one monarch; so extensive, that, as one of his predecessors boasted, the sun never sets upon them all. Besides their territories in Europe, he possesses the best part of America; a fine, rich country, the provinces whereof lie contiguous, and extend six thousand miles and upwards in length from north to south. He is sovereign also of those rich, and numerous islands fourth-east of the coast of China, in Asia, called the Philippines, from whence he imports all the rich merchandise of the east; and in Africa he is master of Ceuta, Oran, and several other places of consequence on that coast.

The king of Spain is an absolute prince; for the every province almost was governed by its peculiar laws about three hundred years ago, which could not be repeated or suspended, but by the consent of the states; nor could the king raise taxes without their concurrence; yet they have now lost their privileges, or rather, their great men bartered them away, and folded themselves and their posterity to the crown; and now the cortes, or states, which consist of the nobility, clergy, and representatives of the commons, only meet to confirm, and record the decrees of the court, which will compel their concurrence, if they should refuse it. The crown descends to the eldest son of the king; and if there be no sons, to the females, according to their seniority; and the reigning prince seems to have a power of devising it, to what branch of the royal family he pleases, if he has no issue; at least the title of the late king Philip, duke of Anjou, depended on the will of his

predecessor, and he enjoyed it accordingly, notwithstanding the royal family of France had relinquished their claim to that crown by solemn treaties. The king of Spain is never crowned, like other sovereigns, but the cortes, or states, assemble, and recognize his title, at his accession; which is all the ceremony used on his advancement to the throne.

Spain is naturally well defended, being surrounded by the sea, and the Pyrenean mountains; however, the king has of late kept up a standing army of 40,000 men, when he was in full peace, and probably he has three times that number in arms, when he is at war. This prince also has very much improved his navy, being able to fit out a considerable fleet of men of war; he has so much occasion for them in distant parts of the world, that we have scarce ever seen more than thirty men of war in one fleet; but thus much we have seen to our cost, that they fight much better than we expected, and are not contemptible enemies as they were some few years ago. The royal revenue also has been improved since he had a French prince upon the throne; for so much was dispensed of formerly to unnecessary officers, that it is said, not more than five millions per annum sterling came into the king's treasury; but how much the public revenues are advanced, is not easy to calculate.

As to the religion of the country, the Spaniards are the most bigoted papists in Europe; and the inquisition no where exercises its authority with greater tyranny.

1. Europe, see p. 127. n. dd.
2. India, (proper) see p. 213. n. d.
3. Euphrates, the finest river of Turkey, in Asia, has two sources to the northward of the city of Erzerum, in Turcomania, in 40 degrees odd minutes north lat, which streams unite three days journey below that city, where it will carry small vessels, but the rocky channel renders the navigation difficult. It runs at first from east to west, through the province of Turcomania, or Armenia, but then meeting with mount

#### Concerning the King

There is no more to be added to the story of the king of Persia, than what has already been recorded. His subjects are subject to the laws of the country, and not of any other power. He is perpetually guarded by a body of white ones that are stationed at the four walls of his palace; and he is instructed in any affair of importance. He is kept in confinement in every house that he enters, and he is not permitted to go to every occurrence that may happen. He keeps the court-tutor with him to teach him writing, and the court-tutor is a man who knows all the ceremonies of the

Mahometan religion. He is kept in prison for three days, and then he is released; and when he arrives, in his age, he is given the black eunuchs, to attend him.

mount Taurus, turns to dividing Armenia from Nushirvan, which flows down to the sea, through the provinces of Syria, Armenia, and the Black Sea; and it is in the midst of these provinces that the king of Persia resides. The court-tutor is a man who is instructed in the Mahometan religion, and who is able to answer all questions that may be put to him. He is the most learned man in the country, and he is the most respected.

He is kept in confinement in every house that he enters, and he is not permitted to go to every occurrence that may happen. He keeps the court-tutor with him to teach him writing, and the court-tutor is a man who knows all the ceremonies of the Mahometan religion. He is kept in prison for three days, and then he is released; # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

## **CHAP. XLI.**

Concerning the Kings of Perfia, their State-Affairs, and the respective Officers of the Crown.

THERE is no monarchy, throughout the known world, more arbitrary and despotic than that of the kingdom of (a) Perfia. The king's will alone is his law; he rules perfectly without control, in all articles, except in matters of faith; for he durst not alter, it seems, any of their established doctrines. As to the lives and estates, indeed, of any of his subjects, however dignified or distinguished, he can dispose of them at his pleasure.

It is requisite, that the king shall be one, who was born in the Seraglio, which is perpetually guarded by black eunuchs, tho' by white ones without: he is brought up, without the least benefit or advantage of a liberal education, within the four walls of it, in an absolute state of confinement. He neither knows, nor is instructed in any affairs of moment, or importance. He is kept a perfect stranger to every occurrence of weight, either at home or abroad. He may, in short, very justly be compared to a plant, that hangs its drooping head, and is in a languishing condition, without one single ray of the sun to give it life or vigour.

When he arrives, indeed, at a certain age, a court-tutor is affigned him out of the black eunuchs, to instruct him in reading, writing, and the grounds and principles of the Mahomedan religion: he is taught all the ceremonies that relate to his purification; the daily practice of ablutions; and the method he is to observe both in prayer and fasting. 'Tis a duty incumbent on this tutor of his, to infill into him a reverential awe of their great prophet, and his twelve Imans, or apostles, to fill his head with all their miraculous

operations, and to inspire him with an inveterate aversion to the Mahomedan Turks, and to the great Mogul, whom the Perfians not only detest, but load with the most bitter curses, imagining that such imprecations are meritorious, and looked upon, in the eye of heaven, as an acceptable service. This prince, however, is indifferently kept ignorant of what is transacting either in his own, or foreign courts; and so far is he from being encouraged in the study or practice of any one single virtue, that, in order to prevent him from making any useful reflections, or any improvement in his mind, he is left from his infancy, in the hands of the fair fex, and indulged, in short, in every sensual enjoyment his heart can wish. His tutor, not contented with thus shamefully gratifying him in all his vicious inclinations, and corrupting his morals, countenances and encourages him moreover, in the odious practice of chewing opium, and drinking what they call Kockenar, that is, the pernicious juice of poppeys, into which is infused amber, and such other ingredients, as have a natural tendency to the provocation of lust; and tho' enchanting and delusive for a time, sink him at length into an absolute and perfect state of infensibility. This, in short, is his whole course of life, be it longer or shorter, to the day of his father's decease. When that revolution happens, indeed, he is instantly removed from the Harem or fergio, # THE TRAVELS OF

glio, and seated on the throne, to which he is duely entitled, either by succession or by will. Upon his first accession, the whole Persian court attend him, and fall prostrate before his feet, and shew him every testimony of the most abject submission. Surprised thus, all on a sudden, at this their unexpected homage and veneration, he views this new scene of pomp and grandeur, like one in a dream; and is perfectly incapable at first of comprehending the whole drift and design of it: however, by degrees, it becomes familiar and habitual to him; at last, he begins to reflect, and form some adequate idea of his high station. He now sees, indeed, that all around him are studious who shall please him most; who shall procure the largest share in his favour and affection; but still no one attempts to give him the least good counsel or advice. And so far is every artful courtier from endeavouring to open his eyes, that he wilfully keeps him in ignorance, and studies only the promotion of his own private interest; and when his Attemaед-doulet, that is to say, his Prime-minister, has any peculiar favour to solicit at his hands, he always takes care to intimate, that his request is perfectly disinterested, and that he has nothing in his view but the good of the public. This, however, he never attempts, till he finds his majesty in a perfect good humour, and indulging himself with a pipe of tobacco. And, in order to succeed in his petition, either for himself or his friends, he never fails of practising the art of flattery, and fulfilling himself his majesty's most loyal flatter and victim. If the king, however, happens to converse with him about his state-affairs, or any business of real moment or concern, the artful courtier turns a deaf ear to all he says, and endeavours to divert

the discourse, by proposing something widely different from it, and what he conceives will strike his majesty's humour and inclination best: and when this minister finds his majesty at any time more inquisitive than ordinary, he takes particular care to furnish him with some delicious viands or another; or to send a band of the best fingers and dancers forthwith

to amuse him, and divert his thoughts; great numbers of both kinds being retained at court for that particular purpose. If neither of these answer the ends proposed, he exhibits a bull, or ram-baiting, or, in short, some diversion or another, that shall strike his fancy. When these sports, or pastimes are thus exhibited, his majesty views them from the Taniel, which is over the gate, called the Ali-kapie, which fronts the great square that belongs to the palace. Now any amusements of this nature are, for the most part, more engaging and acceptable to a young prince, who is illiterate, and inexperienced, than concerns of state, which are often very intricate and abstruse. At last, when he finds these pastimes flat and insipid, he withdraws into the feraglio, in quest of new pleasures; and in case any affairs of importance have been proposed to be taken into consideration, they are of course postponed to another time: inasmuch that, this prime-minister of his, is under an indispensable obligation, to attend twice a-day at least, at the door of his majesty's apartments, in order to embrace every favourable opportunity of opening matters to him, or rather of artfully, or casually, as it were, drawing his prince into the consideration of such affairs as are most requisite to be dispatched; and this must be done too, at such times only as he is no ways discontented, but in a perfect good humour; for was the minister to act otherwise, and abruptly to make his applications about business, it is very probable, that he would incur his majesty's heavy displeasure, notwithstanding the happiness and welfare of the whole empire then lay at stake, and depended on an immediate consultation. For which reason, he very seldom, if ever, fails of attending his majesty, when he seems inclined to go abroad: for at such excursions, he sometimes finds his matter inclined to listen to any reasonable proposition. In all other respects, there is no interposition known to his pleasures; the greatest beauties that are to be met with throughout (b) all Georgia and (c) Armenia are selected for his service, and conducted into the feraglio. And when his majesty makes # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

makes any of those excursions, perhaps for some leagues round about, he turns out all the male-inhabitants out of their houses, wherever he comes, that he may have a free and uninterrupted liberty, either of hunting, fishing, or amusing himself, as his inclination leads him, with their wives or daughters. The present regent wholly addict himself to drinking, and indulges himself so far therein, that he will sometimes fit whole days and nights successively over his bottle. And in this manner the Perian princes dream away, as it were, the first years of their reign, without the

least regard either to the prosperity of the state, or their own honour; and the grandees belonging to the court embrace every opportunity that offers, with the utmost eagerness, by that means, to enrich themselves, and advance their friends and relations, through their interest, to the most important employments.

The governors of the respective provinces follow the example of the grandees, and enrich themselves by all kinds of rapine and oppression; nay, they are such extortioners, that they will sometimes make bold with the revenues of the crown itself; and as they suffer the grandees to partake privately of their plunder, they are connived at by those who are the favourites at court, and his majesty's more immediate attendants. And those illegal and clandestine practices are constantly carried on with impunity, till the prince on the throne makes choice of some able and experienced minister, in order to stop the torrent of such violent proceedings, and make a reformation. Upon such a prudent choice, he begins to open his eyes, and take a survey of his state-affairs (as far as nature has been indulgent, and blest him with discretion) but through the force of ill habits, he frequently relapses into his original course of indolence, ease, and infusibility, and indulges his former vicious inclinations without control. At length, indeed, by that time he is advanced to the age of between thirty and forty, he seems to rouse out of his long lethargy, to shew some tokens of reflections, to employ his thoughts on the most weighty concerns of the empire, and to entertain an idea of their importance, in proportion to that degree of judgment with which providence has thought fit to invest him. In consequence of such serious considerations, he applies his mind to the immediate reformation of such practices as he overlooked in his younger years, but at present is convinced were shamefully oppressive, and provides for the health and prosperity of his subjects. It too often happens, however, that such prudent measures are taken too late; death intervenes, and puts a stop to all his paternal and indulgent intentions; and the state sinks once more into its primitive state of misery, and groans under the weight of tyranny and oppression.

The prime-minister of this powerful and expensive empire is distinguished (as we have already observed) by the name, or title of Attamead-doulet, that is to say, the protector, or the head, and principal supporter of the whole empire. He is called, moreover, the Vifer-azem, that is to say, the kingdom's high-steward; since he supports and upholds almost the whole weight of the kingdom.

This minister, who has always more business on his hands than is in his power to execute, is exposed to a thousand very shocking and unhappy accidents, and is obliged to be perpetually on his watch, lest he should be supplanted by those who are his competitors, and look with an eye of envy on his happy situation; or left he should fall into disgrace, and lose that good opinion which his master had conceived of his conduct. Accordingly, he

makes it his principal, or chief study to please him, and get the ascendancy over his mind, and to avoid all such words or actions as may give him the least umbrage of jealousy or suspicion. 'Tis, with this view, that he is forever guilty of the most fulsome flattery, extolling his master, not only above all other earthly princes, but rendering him thereby altogether insensible of the ill state and ruinous condition of his national affairs. He takes # THE TRAVELS OF

1704 takes particular care to conceal from him all such occurrences as are disagreeable, and disadvantageous to him and his subjects, or at least, to mention them in the most tender manner; and, on the other hand, to aggrandize, and expatiate on every piece of news that has the least tendency towards the decrease of his glory, and the suppression of his enemies. By these partial proceedings it is, that this prime-minister is enabled to aggrandize his family, and advance his favourite friends to the highest offices, or employments in the kingdom. Nor does this artful politician ever fail of finding out ways and means for the ruin and disgrace of some, as well as the promotion of others; and this is no difficult task at all, since there is not a grandee, poffe'd of an high and lucrative post, but is guilty himself, in some degree, of clandestine practices. He has, moreover, a thousand favourable opportunities of serving those who are attached to his interest, and who make him privately a partaker in the profits of the outrages which they commit. He likewise can fend them, when he fees proper, royal robes, by the officers of his household, who never fail of receiving some rich present on those public occasions, which serve them instead of wages, or at least, greatly to advance such salaries as are but low. The governors, not only of provinces, but of cities likewise, are very solicitous of procuring such tokens of public honour, though they purchase them sometimes at a high rate, by private fees; since, by that means, those who are under their jurisdiction, are over-awed, and durst not complain of their oppressive measures, when they find they are such favourites at court, as to obtain such public badges of honour and respect. It is after this manner, that their Attamaed-doulet, or prime-minister, is in perpetual agitation for the maintenance and support of himself and his family; to pull down some, and raise up others, according as he is influenced by love and affection, or by aversion, or contempt. However, notwithstanding all his artifices and precautions, he is seldom, if ever, easy in his mind, (as we have hinted before) since he

1704 cannot be perfectly well affiured of the fidelity of any one person whomsoever, even of those who have the strongest ties of gratitude to be true to their trust: nay, these last too often prove the foremost to hasten his ruin and destruction; especially, when they find his situation is precarious, and he has met with some preceding shock.

Infidelity and ingratitude are two vices that have gained such an ascendancy over all the Persians in general, that even children will presume to cut off the ears, or disface their very parents; nay, they will stretch their inhumanity and impetuosity to so high a pitch, that they will murder them, without the least remorse, in case they have but his majesty's orders for that purpose: and that with no other view, than being substituted in the posts of which they were posse'd, an act of barbarity, that is too often, and too shamefully practised by those impious wretches. In short, as the fortune of his prime-minister is entirely dependent on the humour, or caprice of his fickle master, who obeys the dictates of his passions, without the least controul, however inconsistent with right or reason, he is frequently a perfect stranger to his own downfall: tho' it is actually carried into execution the very next day. Tho' this prime-minister, *durante bene placito*, is the greatest subject in the whole empire; yet, at the same time (as we have hinted before) he is absolutely one of the most abject slaves in life; he has not one moment's peace of mind, and is ever under the most fearful apprehensions of losing his royal master's grace and favour: 'tis he that must answer for all the calamities and troubles that attend the fate; and it is not in his power to stop the mouths of all malcontents.

The officer, next in dignity to this Attamaed-doulet, or prime-minister, is distinguished by the title of Koertfe-bafhe, that is, general of the curds, who are a body of troops, selected from among the natives of (d) Turcomania, or original Tartars, an ancient race of intrepid soldiers, who live under tents in the country by themselves, and are all shepherds by profession: that tho' these troops are dispersed all

1704 all over Persia; yet they have no others: they are a general of war and bows and arrows.

The next grand officer, is a man called Agaie, that is to lay, Georgians, and other tribes that are armed with bows and arrows.

## The Infidelity and ingratitude of the Persians.

The Turkgitchi-agai, general of the body of the Mongols, is collected out of the people of that country, and are armed with bows and arrows.

[illegible]



Divan-bafhe, the head, or chief of the Turks, who is called the  
Divan-bafhe, the head, or chief of the Turks, who is called the  
Divan-bafhe, the head, or chief of the Turks, who is called the  
Divan-bafhe, the head, or chief of the Turks, who is called the  
Divan-bafhe, the head, or chief of the Turks, who is called the  
Divan-bafhe, the head, or chief of the Turks, who is called the  
Divan-bafhe, the head, or chief of the Turks, who is called the  
Divan-bafhe, the head, or chief of the Turks, who is called the  
Divan-bafhe, the head, or chief of the Turks, who is called the  
Divan-bafhe, the head, or chief of the Turks, who who who who  
who who who who who who who who who who who who who who  
who who who who who who who who who who who who who #  
CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

all over Perfia; yet they are mingled with no others: they are all  
horfemen, and their weapons of war are no more than bows and  
arrows.

The next grand officer is their Coular-Agafe, that is to say, the  
general of the Georgians, and other white flaves, who are armed  
with bows and arrows, like the former; and are an order of  
soldiers, which was first erected by Abbas the Great. The rest in  
order are as follow.

The Tufingtchi-agaf, that is to say, the general of the body of  
mufqueeters, who are collected out of the country from amongst  
the fronteget, and the most laborious of the common people. Tho'  
these serve in the field on horfback; yet they fight on foot. This  
order of foldery was like-wife established by Abbas the Great.

These three generals, in former times, were under the command  
of one whom they call their Sepha-fer, that is to say, their flated,  
or fixed chief: now, however, they are under a Seraa only, that is, a  
chief, or commander, appointed for any one particular expedition;  
after which he is difcharged, and then rewarded for his extra-  
service.

Their next officer in rank is their Nazir, as they call him, that is to  
say, the head steward, or chief, not only of his majesty's  
household, but of those likewise, to whose care the king's guests  
are particularly entrusted.

The next in order after the Nazir, is the Mierfichaaer-bahe, as they  
call him, that is to say, their grand, or chief hunt-man.

The next to him is their Mirachor-bahe, that is to say, the chief  
matter of the horfe.

Among the principal officers of fate must be reckoned, likewise,  
those who are called the Divan-beggi, that is to say, the head, or  
chief of the council of justice, who passes final sentence, in all

caufes, both criminal and civil, except in such petty caufes as are but of small consequence, which are referred to the officer, called the Deroga, of the place where-ever they happen.

Their next officer in rank is called the

the Muflaffe-elmenalik, that is to say, master of the accounts and finances, where there is an office erected for the regiftrung, not only of the Perfian troops, but of some certain officers likewise, and such governments as the Begler-begs, the Khans, and Sultans, are in poffeffion of for the maintenance and support of their dignity and household; but as a recompence, or compensation for such grants, they are under an indifpenfable obligation, to keep up a certain number of troops on foot; and to pay such a certain fum as should be annually impofed upon them: the prince, moreover, reserves one part of these royal-ties to his own use.

The next officer is called the Vacka-nuvicz, that is to say, the regifter of all public events, who keeps a diary of whatever occurs throughout the kingdom, and in all the provinces round about.

Their heads, or principals of his majesty's phyficians, by them called the Numeftum-bahfes, are fill in great repute with their matter; these, indeed, in former times, had, in a great measure, the regulation of the prince's conduct, but at prefent their authority is trivial, and they have very little, if any influence over him.

All these officers have a right and title to fit in the royal palace. The head, or principal of those who lay no claim to that particular privilege, is called their Shik-agafi-bahe, that is to say, the principal, or chief of the porters, or grand master of the court. 'Tis this officer's peculiar province to inspect the palace, and regulate the rank and order of his majesty's household. This grand inspector carries in his hand for the generality a golden staff, embelliched with diamonds, and watches every motion, as it were, of his majesty, in order to know in a moment his will and pleasure. Wherever he is perfonally preffent, there he executes the king's orders # THE TRAVELS OF

1704 orders himself; but where matters are to be executed at any considerable diftance, in that cafe, he employs his Yafools, as they call them, that is to fay, his meffengers, or ufhers. This officer likewise acts in the capacity of a matter of the ceremonies; for 'tis he who conducts all foreign ministers into his majefty's prefence, by supporting them under the arm, and afterwards conducting them to the place appointed for their fitting, provided they are to be honoured with that act of indulgence.

Neither this officer, nor the chamberlain, called their Megter, has the right or privilege of fitting in the palace. This chamberlain wears a purfe by his fide, in which he has several fine handkerchiefs, a watch, divers antidotes, and a great variety of

posperifous herbs for his majesty's use. The cloaths which the king for the generality puts on is entrusted to the care of this officer, who attends him when he dresses; and seldom any one, that is not an eunuch, is admitted to this post; and the reason is, because he frequently attends his majesty when he goes to the Haram, or feraglio, which reflects a singular honour upon him, and commands respect.

We must not here omit their Begler-begs, as they are called, that is to say, their grandeze, or lords of lords, each of whom is a governor of some great province, or country belonging to the state. These superior lords have, for the generality, their Khans and Soltans under them, and sink the major part of the revenues of their respective provinces, referring only a handsome present, or compliment to be made his majesty at proper seasons. They are indispensably obliged, however, as we have hinted before, to support and maintain a certain number of troops for his majesty's service on all occasions. Tho' they owe, indeed, an allegiance to his majesty; yet, in all other respects, they act as petty sovereigns in their respective provinces. Of these governors, there are about fifteen or sixteen in different parts of the empire; and so considerable is one of these posts, that the person who stands possessed of it, is invested with an order in the royal palace before the grand huntsman, and immediately after the chief of the musqueters on the one hand, and the grand-master of the household on the other.

Tho' the Khans and Soltans, who (as we have already observed) are subaltern officers to these grandeze; yet they are governors of provinces as well as they; and there is but a trivial difference between the two former. They take care likewise to sink the revenues of the land that lies in their particular districts or departments. These inferior governors, like the Begler-begs, are obliged to maintain a certain number of troops for his majesty's service, when required; and some of them, indeed, are dependent on their Begler-begs, or grandeze.

These officers, who are called Dervaises, are the governors of such particular countries, as are distinguished by the title of his majesty's domain, which are appropriated for the maintenance and support, not only of the court, but of some certain troops likewise; and these have the care and inspection of the annual revenues, or produce arising from those countries. They have, moreover, certain salaries allowed them out of those revenues; and they make presents, and pay their compliments occasionally to his majesty like the rest.

Besides those grandeze, and inferior governors of provinces, there are governors likewise of particular forts and cities, who are dignified and distinguished by the name and title of Derogas. Those who are invested with this post in large cities, such, for instance, as Ispahan, or any other of equal note, have much the

fame authority and trust as those who in France bear the title and character of Lieutenant civil et criminel. When those carry their office into execution, they are absolutely impartial; for they show no more respect to one than another, but punish all delinquents alike, and keep the fines for their own use.

Their officers, called the Calentaars, are the chiefs, or heads of the populace, that is to say, the principal magistrates in little towns and country villages: their authority, # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

authority, however, extends over none but the common-people in cities, and more particularly at Ispahan. These magistrates, properly speaking, are protectors of the populace, and plead their causes before their courts of justice. 'Tis the peculiar province of these officers to settle and adjust the taxations, both ordinary and extraordinary, on the common-people; in the execution of which, they take into their serious consideration the abilities, or poverty of the respective inhabitants, and remit the money, so raised, to the proper officers appointed to receive those public collections.

These magistrates have certain officers under them, called their Ked-chodaes, that is to say, masters of parishes, or the inferior districts, who act according to the instructions they receive; and in much the same manner as their chiefs do, they protect those who live under their care and inspection, and collect the money due from them according to their respective taxations.

The principals, or magistrates of small villages, exercise the very same power and authority as the Calentaars, in such as are larger, and in towns. These officers are called Regies, that is to say, regents.

These officers, who are called Shaban-ders, that is to say, collectors of the duties on all kinds of merchandise or commodities in their sea-ports, are magistrates of more consequence and importance than those last above-mentioned. Each of these keeps an exact account of what he collects, and sends a copy of it to the Mufto-facfa, his inspector, who enters it immediately into his public register; and the sums, so respectively received, are appropriated for the court's subsistence. These collectors, or what we may with propriety call them, Custom-house officers, have flat salaries, but no part of the monies they collect. Formerly their office was annual; but the duties at present are farmed out for seven or eight years together, and from hence they levy no less than twenty four thousand Tomans per annum, that is at least a million of French livres, and

The next officer of moment is their Me-liktuzaer, that is to say, the chief of their merchants, who bears that title, by virtue of his passing a final determination on all such mercantile proceedings as are brought before him; this officer has, likewise, the inspection, not only of the weavers, but of the tailors belonging to

the court. Though he acts, indeed, under the Nazir; yet the provision of the clothing, and such other articles of the like nature, as are for his majesty's own use, are all entrusted to his care. He is supervisor also, or inspector-general of all those who are empowered to dispose of the finks, and other manufactures which belong to his majesty in foreign parts.

After this head, or chief of the merchants, we must introduce their Raach-daers, as they are called, that is to say, the surveyors of their roads. These officers farm a certain compa of their high-ways, and, by virtue of such purchase, receive a certain duty on all such wares or commodities, as pass within their particular districts, of which they keep an exact account; and these duties are entitled their Raaggdarie. These farmers are under an indispensable obligation, at all proper times, not only to repair their roads, or high-ways, but to secure all passengers, who pay them toll, from being robbed, and to make good all such effects as they shall be casually plundered of within their respective divisions, according to their valuation, or prime cost, in case the delinquents cannot, within a reasonable time, be brought to justice. However, in such cafes, where a discovery of effects lost is duly made, they deliver only two thirds thereof to the proprietor, and reserve the remainder for their own use. These officers are, likewise, for the reasons above-mentioned, bound to maintain and provide, at their own expence, a certain number of watchmen, properly armed, to patrol in the night-time, and in times of danger, in order to prevent all insults and disorders, and, if possible, to detect all free-booters, and bring them to condign punishment. # THE TRAVELS OF

punishment. This regulation, it must be allowed, is a very important one; but woe-ful experience demonstrates, that, through the neglect thereof, the traveller is too often utterly ruined and undone.

Besides all the officers above-mentioned, the Perfians have certain governors in their great castles, and other fortresses throughout the kingdom, as for instance, the governor of (e) Ormus, Candelar, &c. who are called in their language, Koetewaels. The power, however, of these officers is for the most part limited; and they have their dependence on those, who are governors of the particular province, where-in such castles are respectively erected.

The term Koetewael, signifies the head, or chief of the watch, who patrols the streets, accompanied by his subaltern officers, during the night-time, in order to prevent all clandestine proceedings, robberies, or murders, and to secure those, who are actual delinquents, or suspected to be parties concerned. The officer, at Ispahan, and several other cities in Perfia, is distinguished by the name of Agghaas.

Their next officer of note is by them called their Muktefib, that is to say, the inspector-general of their markets; whose peculiar province it is to regulate the price of their provisions, or, indeed, of any other commodities or wares, brought thither in order to be exposed to public sale. 'Tis his business likewise to examine and pry into their weights and measures, and to punish those who by clandestine practices defraud their neighbours by making use of false ones, and such as are under the standard.—No sooner has this officer settled and adjusted the price of provisions, and other commodities, for the day, (for this is a daily duty incumbent on him,) he carries an exact inventory, or catalogue of them, sealed up, to the palace-gate; and there the ordinary, or common accounts are entirely regulated according to his valuation.

Nor must we forget to make mention of another officer, called their Mehemanderbahfi, that is to say, the chief, or principal of those to whose care and conduct his majesty's guests are from time to time entrusted. This officer, with propriety enough, may be filed a master of the ceremonies; for it is his duty and province to go out of town, in order to receive such as act in the capacity of ambassadors from foreign princes or as envoys; or, in short, as strangers of quality, and distinction. He is to take particular care that they are treated with due respect, and want for no necessities that they can in reason be supplied with. As to other matters, it is left to the discretion of foreign ministers, whether Christian or Mahomedan, without favour or affection, (since both are treated at the Perfian court on an equal footing) to fend for whatever they stand in immediate need of, to his majesty's store-house; or to receive (as they judge most convenient) the value thereof in ready money once a week. 'Tis this officer's business likewise to carry their messages to his majesty, and his ministers, and to usher them into his majesty's presence, whenever they are admitted to have an audience. He is, moreover, obliged to pay them visits from time to time, to converse with them, and lift out of them, as far as he can within the bounds of decency, the principal aim and intention of their arrival; and for what reasons they take up their residence at court; in order to enable him to give as satisfactory account as he can to his majesty's ministers of state: but when there happens to come an ambassador either from the (f) Port, or from the king of Indoitan, or any other Mahommedan powers of illustrious birth and character, they send likewise one of the grandees belonging to the kingdom, to wait on them, as a Maitre d'hôtel is sent in (g) France, that is to say, a Gueft-keeper; and such grandee is to acquire himself of all the functions, or duties of the Mehemanderbahfi, with respect to other ministers.

Besides all the preceding officers, there is another of no small consideration, called their Mammar-bahfi, that is to say, the chief, or principal surveyor of his majesty's buildings. 'Tis the peculiar

province of this officer, to fix a price upon most of such houses as are exposed to public sale, in order to prevent (as much as possible) # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

possible) those disputes that frequently happen on those occasions, or to hinder any frivolous or evasive pretences to a right of making void the contract, as if the party who was the purchaser had been imposed upon, and had been taken at a disadvantage by the vender, and, in short, that the sale was collusive, and not made according to form; such practices being countenanced by the Mahommedan laws, when the price of the premises has not been settled and adjusted by this superintendent or surveyor.

We shall now proceed to give a succinct account of their ecclesiastical employment, or posts of preferment in their church; and their first and principal spiritual officer is their Zedder, that is to say, their high-priest, or archbishop; who is their chief or head likewife of all those who jointly reap the benefits and advantages arising from the immensely valuable effects that are from time to time confiscated to the public worship. In former times, indeed, this high ecclesiastical post was entrusted to the care and conduct of one man only, but the late king Suliman divided it, and appointed two Zedders; the one, who has the charge and management of all such legacies as are bequeathed to the priests, by the kings of Periā. This officer is distinguished by the title of the Zedder-chus; and the other is called the Zedder-memalick, who has the trust and disposal of all such other bequests as become due to them from the last wills or testaments of private persons. Each of these Pontiffs have a separate court, where they act as judges in civil causes, according to the institutes or directions of their canon law. These two, moreover, have the disposal of most of the church benefices; but more especially of those two other officers, called the Siech-el-ilaan, and Kafte-mute-well, that is to say, inspector of the moofchs, and such burying-grounds: and the like as have been consecrated in form. These are posts or employments of such dignity, honour, and importance, that whenever it happens, that they are personally present at any royal assembly, they take the upper

hand of the Attamaed-doulet himself. The Siech-el-ilaan and his brother-officer differ but little from each other with respect to the monies entrusted to their care; but the former is, notwithstanding the others superior. In all other respects, their functions are nearly the same, and they are mutually a check one upon the other. All contracts between private persons must pass through their courts, and all mandates, and other writings of weight and importance must have their respective function.

Next to these two pontiffs is their Muzifid, as they call him, that is to say, their legislator, who is superior to all other ecclesiastics, not only because he is more learned; but because he is looked

upon with the highest veneration and esteem by virtue of his office. He is their spiritual guide; it is he who settles and adjusts every important article of their faith; it is his peculiar province to determine the true and genuine sense of such parts of the Alcoran, as appear intricate and abstruse; and what they call the Hedges of their Prophets and Imams. The Perians carry, in short, their veneration for him to that pitch, that their most learned divines acknowledge, without the least hesitation, that the Mahomedan government of right belongs to him, and that his majesty himself, as absolute as he is, ought to be deemed no other than the executor of his most sacred orders, by virtue of which delegated power alone it is, that he wields the sword of justice, by which he is indifferently bound to chastize, and punish all such as are refractory and disloyal, notwithstanding he is, in reality, invested with no power of his own. The reason on which they found this article of their faith is this; namely, that all true believers are directed by the divine will, which is revealed to their Muzifid, during the absence of a prophet, or an Imam. It is impossible, according to their creed, for the Almighty to reveal his most sacred will to temporal princes, whose hearts are so far engaged, and lost, as it were, in the enchanting pleasures of this world, that their thoughts are fixed on nothing but # THE TRAVELS OF

but the gratification of their fensual appetites, and consequently, are altogether regardless, and unconcerned about the falvation of their precious and immortal souls; that princes, in a word, who thus indulge themselves, are so far from having any knowledge of the Deity, that they are strangers to themselves, and are perfectly negligent and remiss in regard to such things as pertain to eternal life.

The high opinion which the laity in general have entertained of the fancility and profound wisdom of the clergy, is the principal reason, why all of them, without exception, are the greatest hypocrites in the world; for they make it their whole study to keep the vulgar in awe and error, and to establish (as much as in them lies) that profound veneration, which through their ignorance, they conceive and profess for them: inmuch, that notwithstanding they are influenced by the most boundless ambition; yet in the presence of a layman, they are absolute differmbers, affected to be feigningly mortified, and regardless of all fulbluany enjoyments; they humble themselves, and act like holy hermits, with no other view than to be exalted; and would fain be thought to despise those worldly trifles, which, with the utmost eagernes they pursue. In a word, by their outward austerity and deportment, any one might be deceived, and apt to imagine, that they aspired at nothing in this life, and that their hearts were fixed on the ineffable joys of that which is to come. These artful priests, when at home, will gather a considerable number of young people together, in order to instruct them in the things that relate to another world, and to point out to them the sure path



that leads to paradise; and in order to gain a stronger ascendancy over them, and to convince them that their warmth and zeal for their spiritual welfare is entirely sincere, unaffected, and without the least self-interested view, they treat these poor deluded children, of both sexes, with a more than ordinary tenderness and paternal affection; they connive at their little irregularities, are never angry with them, or give a check to the violence of their passions; are very grave,

and make use of but few words; and, in short, act with so much precaution, with such an air of profound wisdom and facility of manners, as is perfectly rapturous and engaging.

As to their habits, they are white, and made of camels or goats hair; they wear likewise large turbants, which make them look low, and meagre: they affect an extraordinary simplicity, when they appear in public, and have no other attendant than one servant, who walks with a book in his hand behind them; they move, for the most part, slowly along and keep their eyes fixed, as it were, upon the ground, as persons in deep contemplation. They frequent the mosques almost daily, where they make long prayers, with a seeming fervency of devotion, and frequently withdraw into a private corner, where they catechize the younger sort; and sometimes they deliver very pathetic discourses to a crowded audience. By such fancified stratagems as these, it is, that they engage the hearts of the unthinking populace, and strike even the king himself with such a terror, that he would, on no account, be guilty of practising the least innovations in their religion, for fear of incurring the displeasure and vengeance of these fancified differmers. Many instances of this kind are easily to be produced; nor can there be a more convincing proof of that veneration which the laity have for them than this; namely, when they happen to be present at any royal assembly, they have the privilege of sitting but at a very small distance from the gentlemen of the sword.

The department of the nobility, who reside at court, is widely distant, it is true, from theirs; they are extremely courteous and complaisant; and affect a freedom, which is very engaging; but then they are as errand hypocrites as the former; for there is not the least sincerity in all their discourse; their tongues bely their hearts. They devote themselves entirely to their pleasures; their habits, their equipages, are all very grand and magnificent; and so excessively fond are they of enriching themselves, that without a very valuable bribe, or present, no favour whatsoever can be

Their habits. The hypocrisy of their courtiers.

The hypocrisy of their courtiers.

Occasions. (a) Periaë, see p. 64, a. (b) Georgia, in Asia, see p. 104. (c) Armenia, see p. 198. (d) Turcomania, the antichristian countries. # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

be procured from them. In all other respects, indeed, they are affable, and good-natured enough. They will cringe and creep however in the most fervile manner, to those from whom they hope to receive any favours; and in case they have any competitors, who endeavour to obstruct their solicitations they are very malicious; and when it happens they find themselves successful, they treat those who opposed them with the utmost inhumanity; embrace every opportunity of blasting their reputations, and casting a veil over those good qualities of which they know them to be possessed; and, in short, never sit down contented, till they have found out some secret devices, that shall infallibly ruin and destroy them. On the other hand, they are guilty of the most fulsome flattery towards such as stand possessed of the most important employments, and are the favourites of fortune. To these they will ascribe a thousand perfections, that they know, in their confidences they never were possessed of; but in case any of these should in process of time happen to fall into disgrace, they will then infilt over their misfortunes, and treat them with as much indignity, as before they had done with the most abject adulations. In a word, so unhappy is a courtier in disgrace, that those who stand deepest in his debt for favours formerly received, shall frequently be seen his most implacable enemies, and be the foremost in bringing about his total ruin and destruction.

Their men of letters, or as they are frequently called, their pen-men, deport themselves, for the generality, much after the same perfidious manner. They are imperious and self-sufficient; and for ever envious of those who are persons of real merit. These will cajole and care not of

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

1. Persia, see p. 64. n. a.
2. Georgia, in Asia, see p. 107. n. d.
3. Armenia, see p. 198. n. g.
4. Turcomania, the ancient Armenia, is now a province of Asiatic Turkey. Its capital city is Erzerum.
5. Ormus, see 283. n. b.
6. Ipahan, see p. 109. n. m. # THE TRAVELS OF

## C-H A P. XLII.

A succinct Account of the Ceremonies observed at the Interment of any King of (a) Persia. A Character of the King then regent. When the Author arrived at (b) Ispahan or Shapawn. His Majesty's Portrait, or Picture; and the agreeable Habits, or Dresses, of the Perrians of both Sexes.

Notwithstanding it is an established custom, to conceal the decease of a Persian king till his immediate successor is firmly seated upon his throne; yet no sooner had Suliman, the father of his present majesty, departed this life, but the melancholy news was spread far and wide almost instantaneously, through the indiscretion of his chief, or first physician.

That prince died on the 29th day of July in the year 1694, in the 48th year of his age, after he had reigned near 30 years.

No sooner was the report confirmed, but the officers belonging to the crown, and the grandees, or principal nobility of the kingdom, immediately possessed themselves of the palace; and took all the care they possibly could to secure peace and tranquility within the court. No people of any rank or distinction were to be met with in the open streets; and all the shops in general throughout the city of Ispahan were close shut up.

On the first of August his majesty's corpse was laid on a wheel-machine, which was covered all over with a most pompous and magnificent pall of gold cloth, and conveyed from the palace to a chapel, at about a league's distance from Ispahan, and from thence to Com, in order to its being deposited in the sepulchre of his royal predecessors. All the grandees of the kingdom, attended the deceased on foot, one of the officers belonging to the

---

The death of king Suliman.

Mis funeral.

---

crown, by name Mierfa-taher, and a dignified ecclesiastic only excepted, who, through the infirmities of old age, were permitted to ride on horseback. The grandees, or lords, were followed by the gentlemen of the robe, and the pennmen, who chanted a most doleful ditty as they moved solemnly along. A large body of soldiers succeeded these, who attended his majesty's remains to the chapel, with their flambeaux, which fmoaked indeed, tho' they gave no light. All those who had attended the coarfe so far, having first rent their garments, returned home-wards, and left a sufficient number of their friends and relations to attend the body to the sepulchre above-mentioned in the dead of the night.

The guards of the palace were directly doubled, in order to prevent any tumult or disturbance, which might casually arise on so public an occasion, especially in a city so populous as Ispahan, and so crowded with inhabitants of various nations. In the interim, the crown-officers gave express orders to their most judicious Astrologer, as is the constant custom of the country, to inform them of the most propitious, or favourable moment for the inauguration, or infalment of the new king; being fully persuaded, that by such a proper confutation, his majesty would make no attempts to injure, or oppress his subjects; especially on his first accession to the throne. There was not a single drum or trumpet to be heard # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

heard, or any other noise whatever, that might in the least interrupt the solemnity of their public mourning, till their Magi, or wife men had made their declaration, which was postponed to the 6th day of August on which the critical moment was unanimously settled and adjusted.—This was the happy time appointed for the new king's solemn coronation, that is to say, the eldest son of the deceased Suliman.

This successor, upon the expiration of his father, was instantaneously removed from the Seraglio, and locked up in another apartment appointed for his reception, where he was closely confined till his accession to the throne, where all the grandees belonging to the court attended round about him, in order to throw themselves prostrate at his feet. Upon this all the houses and shops throughout the city were instantly opened, which, till then, had been closely shut up; and there were bonfires in every street, and grand illuminations in every window; with divers other demonstrations of public joy.

The new king, who, by the Persians is styled their Soltan-hoffein, sent, on the next day after his coronation, royal robes to all the grandees and lords of the court, who, till then, wore no other garments than those they had torn before; and upon the reception of these presents, the mourning for the deceased was at once all over. After this, not only the drums and trumpets, but every other instrument of music was heard in almost every corner; and these public rejoicings continued, according to custom, without any intermission, for forty days successively.

His majesty, at his accession to the throne, was about four and twenty years of age, of but a moderate stature, though well made; and the features of his face were perfectly manly and handsome. I had so many opportunities of viewing him with attention, during my residence at Ipahan, that the idea of him being firmly imprinted in my mind, I was enabled to draw his picture, in which attempt I was generally allowed to have hit the true likeness, and to have succeeded beyond their expectations. Though his majesty was, when I saw him first, in a summer dress; yet I chose, upon

mature deliberation, to delineate him in his winter-robés, which are much more magnificent, and give him, in my opinion, a more graceful and majestic air.

He may with ease be distinguished, by virtue of the large, and immensely valuable jewel in his turban, which is embellished; moreover, with three feathers, plucked from the wing of a black heron; as the reader will find by turning his eye on the Plate (85) hereto annexed.

This young prince takes such a peculiar delight in building; that, upon a modest computation, he is reckoned to have expended, within the compass of ten years, no less than four or five millions of money; notwithstanding the costs and charges attending his fine gardens, and all his houses of pleasure are no ways included in the account. When he has an inclination to erect any new edifice, his will is made publicly known by found of trumpet, that such as are attached to his interest may attend, and contribute towards the completion of the intended building. Upon this general summons, artificers of all forts flock to court from all parts, in order to offer their service, through loyalty, without any expectation, or hopes of reward; nor do the grandees, or lords of the court, ever fail of fending other workmen at their own expense.

Such inhabitants, as are natives of (d) Armenia, are indifferently obliged to pay in their contributions, likewise; and to my own certain knowledge, they raised no less than three hundred tomans, that is to say, near one hundred and twenty thousand livres, towards one fingle garden, that was compleated during my residence at Ipahan.

Notwithstanding this taste of his for building; he is so addicted to venery, and indulges himself to that degree, in the gratification of every unruly and inordinate passion, that he is perfectly regardless of his state-affairs, and the welfare of his subjects; and thro' his vicious example, there is but little justice administered throughout all his extensive dominions. Licentiousness reigns in every part; and # THE TRAVELS OF

the most vicious meet with no control. The natural consequence of which is, that the high-ways, or public roads, which were formerly as safe and secure as possible, now swarm with mercilest villains, and the worst of freebooters.

Through this foible of the prince, not only the ecclesiastics, but his eunuchs likewise, who are the very scum and refuse of the earth, and altogether unworthy of the least employ or preferment, have too great an ascendancy over him. These last reptiles, are but guards at best of the haman or seraglio, the place wholly devoted to the gratification of all his majesty's most brutal lusts; and their air and mein, have something in them, moreover, peculiarly shocking. These are the men, however, who have his majesty's ear

at all times; and are so much in favour, that even the counsellors of state are obliged to court and care for them. What a mortifying circumstance it is, that persons of illustrious birth and the greatest consideration, can by no means secure their royal master's good graces, or stand possessed of their high posts or employments with any certainty of continuance, unless they will submit to such mean, such shameful, and, in a word, such fervile adulations!

They are not all, however, of such low, groveling, submissive spirits. Instances may be produced of some of their illustrious personages, who scorn to cringe and fawn thus, or disguise their real sentiments on any consideration whatsoever. Some years ago, there was a nobleman of Georgia, by name Rustam-khan, a nobleman of real merit, and possessed of one of the most important posts in the kingdom; namely, that of generalissimo of his majesty's armies, and governor of Tauris, formerly known by the name of Ecbatana, the capital of Media, who had the courage and intrepidity to tell his majesty, at a grand entertainment in the presence of the principal grandees at court, that his majesty was brought up in perfect ignorance, and what was worse, he would for ever continue in that unhappy state; and, in short, as he was wilfully blind, he could not prevail on himself to act the

hypocrite, or serve him any longer. Upon this act of presumption, as it was termed, he was immediately deposed, and by his majesty's express orders closely confined the very next day to his own apartment during pleasure. In the interim, however, his friends were so fawning and solicitous for his release, that they had procured the royal promise for his restoration. Accordingly, they all congratulated him upon their good success; but he was so far from making them, as they expected, his grateful acknowledgments, that he rejected their too officious services, and openly declared that he scorned to serve so illiterate a prince; and actually perfected in that unalterable resolution to his dying day.

A certain grandee, by name Mocfa-beek, formerly an Armenian by profession; but whose grandfather had embraced the Mohammed faith, drew a more severe mortification upon himself than the former, in the year 1704, whilst I was resident at Isfahan, for discovering his sentiments too freely, and speaking without reserve. This nobleman, who had been preferred to some of the most important employments in the kingdom, and particularly to that of governor of Tauris before mentioned, after he had been general of his Majesty's Circassian as well as Georgian slaves, came on some private occasion to Isfahan, where his majesty asked him what affairs, at that juncture, could bring him to court; and commanded him to return forthwith to his government without presuming to make the least ex- portation; and from thence to repair, with the utmost expedition, to Esterabad, a town of Mazanderan, and there put himself at the head of his army, and

there-with to march directly against the Turkomans, who had invaded that province, and carried away not only the inhabitants, but their effects likewise. Upon this he told his majesty, that he was very sorry that he could not possibly comply with those commands, for he had been fully convinced, that his grandees and other noblemen, then residing at court, did not act as became them, or as persons that had # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

had any sincere regard either for his majesty himself, or the welfare of his subjects; and that he was well assured, that their whole aim and design in prevailing on his majesty to fend him on that errand, was no other, than to ruin and destroy him; and that therefore, in case it was absolutely necessary that he should fall a sacrifice to the malice and resentment of his enemies, he had rather submit to the will of fate, and dye at once, than to fall ingloriously after his departure. This he spoke so openly, and after such and unguarded manner, and confirmed the truth of what he, after being so strong and convincing arguments, that he exasperated his majesty so far, that proper officers were sent to his apartments on the sixth of September then following in order to secure him; and accordingly they executed their commission with the utmost rigour; for they first bound him, and then carried him publicly through the streets upon a mule to the place appointed for his confinement, and clapped their signet on all his effects: however, notwithstanding all this insult and disgrace, he was in a few days afterwards discharged, on the milder condition of his voluntarily confining himself in his own house.

Many other instances might be produced of the foibles, and want of discretion in this unhappy prince, who, by his rash, and arbitrary proceedings, exposes himself so far to the contempt of all his subjects; that scarce any of them scruple to declare, in the most open manner, they have nothing of a king, but the bare name. And it may, with justice, indeed, and good reason be said, that no country, where a child, or an illiterate prince sets on the throne, can possibly be happy. The younger brother of this weak prince, who has an apartment in the palace, and is a man of sense, and intrinsic merit, when he hears of his majesty's daily acts of indiscretion, cries out (as I am credibly informed) I cannot conceive what my brother does with the crown. And one day after his majesty had sent him a bottle of wine, the young prince returned it back with an air of contempt, saying, he did not stand in want of a little liquor. Now to those who are ignorant of the customs and maxims of the Persians, those matters, so widely different from the methods observed in other countries, may appear strange, and will scarcely be believed. I shall mention but one foible more of this unhappy prince, and that is, tho' he is addicted to gaming, if he loses but a trifle, he begs of the party who won it, to take no notice of his loss to the Nazir, who is the officer appointed to pay him.

In order, however, to cast a veil over the other foibles of this illiterate prince, we will enter on another topic, and clothe this chapter with a succinct account of the various habits which are worn by the Persians of both sexes. But here we must make one general observation, in the first place; namely, that their habits are all much shorter than those worn by the Turks, and each is different, in proportion to their respective stations, or degrees in life. The habit, for instance, of the gentleman of the sword bears no resemblance to that which is worn by those of the robe; and the drees are equally various in regard to their comforts. There is, moreover, a very visible difference in the habits of their virgins, from those who are settled in the conjugal state. As to the drefs of their men of the robe, the reader will have a clear idea of it by casting his eye on the plate (No. 86) here annexed. The turban, likewise, or the mandiel, as they call it, which they wear on their heads is greatly varied. Some wear them of one colour; others of another; according as their taste or fancy directs them: some are striped; others are wrought with gold and silver: others again, are as white as snow: those which are worn by their ecclesiastics are by much the largest, indeed; yet they are exceedingly neat, and plaited in the most accurate manner. Their drees, in short, throughout, is very grand and magnificent, and their vestments are for the generality, flowered; but these rich garments, according to my fancy, become their ladies much better than themselves. And to speak my sentiments freely, and without reserve, I think the drees of a Turk is # THE TRAVELS OF

is much more modeft, much better under- flood, and gives him a more manly and majeftic air. The Perfians, in all other respects, never vary their fashions, and fill prefere that air of grandeur which was prevalent in the days of king Alexander. Their nobility, or other perfons of high rank and diftinction, very feldom, if ever walk, but ride on horfe-back, with their running-footmen on one fide of them. And there are fo frequently mimicked by gentle- men of lower rank, and leffer fortune, that they are forced to run deep in debt, in order to indulge themselves in fuch acts ofplendor, and extravagance; but then it muft be allow- ed that they feldom think of difcharging them, unlrefs they find themselves compell- ed. Thefe grandees, and fuch as roll in riches, decorate their horfes bridles with mafly gold ; and others in much lower circumfance copy after them in proportion. They have their callion (as they callit) that is to fay, their pipe carried con- ftantly after them ; which, with more propriety of expreffion, may be termed, their bottle of water, through which they draw the smoke of their tobacco. This callion is embellifhed with gold, and makes a very neat appearance. Such as are of a lower rank or clafs adorn them only with fliver, indeed ; but then they have them carried after them in the fame pomfous manner as the former. The bridle of our director's horfe was a golden one, and his callion was embellifhed with the fame pre- cious metal : His deputy's likewife was the



fame ; and fo, in short, were the bridles of all fuch as frequent the court ; where they are only looked upon in proportion to the grand figure they can make.

The drefs of the ladies, however, (as I hinted before) feems, to my thinking, much more agreeable. The comforts of their robe-men, wear a bandage on their foreheads moft richly deckt all over with pearls and precious flones : This bandage, for the moft part, is four fingers in breadth; and goes but half way round the head. On the other hand, the con- forts of fuch as are counfellors of ftate wear their bandages all round, in the manner of a crown, which they call their

borfhiboroe: This is frequently decorated with a plumage, plucked from the wing of a black heron, and several bunches of flowers with golden leaves. To this ban- dage, or crown, they add a jewel, which falls on the forehead; and is faftened by a flring of pearl which comes under their chin; and as to their hair it hangs down their backs in ringlets. Thefe ladies, like- wife, wear a white veil, embroidered with gold, which falls over their shoulders. They have, moreover, their necklaces of pearls and pretious flones, together with rich chains of gold, which fall down to their very girdles, with a fmall box of perfume. Their upper garment is generally either a gold or silver brocade; fome- times, indeed, it is perfectly plain: And under this, they wear a veft, which falls down below the girdle. Their shifts are made of taffaty, or fome other fine filk, embroidered with gold. They wear draw- ers, likewife, and under-petticoats made in the loom; as alfo bufkins, which come up about four or five inches above the angle; thefe too are made of velvet em- broidered, or fome other more coftly stuff. Their flippers are made either of green or red fhagreen which is painted; and the heel is raifed of the fame colour, lined, and embellifhed with little flowers. Their girdles, which are about two or three inches broad, are adorned with pearls and pre- cious flones; and upon their breaths they wear a variety of rich ribbons, which fall down as low as their girdles. The reader will find one of thefe fine ladies drefs in all her gaiety, in order to pay a vift, in the plate (No. 87.) hereunto annexed. In winter, they wear over all this, a gown, lined with a cotton-cloth, which falls down about a foot below their girdles; and when it is exceffively cold, indeed, they were a gown of fliver or gold brocade, lined with fable, or fome fur of the like nature. When they appear in the ftreets, they are covered from head to foot with a white veil; infomuch, that nothing of their face is fenn except their eyes, as the reader may fee in the plate before-mentioned. This veil, for the generality, is all of one piece. They wear bracelets, like wife,

The vari- cut habits, or dreffes of their court la- dies,

C O R wife, of precious thones and their fingers are perf rings.

The lottes of but a mi inferior to thefe, drefs in proportion to the hushands; and the wi and men of the fword, fomething of the like cloaths, which have a and thiike the eye in t manner.

To the dreffes of the gentlemen and ladies, or parts of thofe they call to fay, his majefty's po- wife in the capacity of

Occafion

1. Perfia, fee p. 64.
2. Ifpahan, or Spaha
3. Com. fee p. 247. 1.
4. Armenia, fee p. 19
5. Georgi, in Afia, f
6. Turis, or Tabris, in

The grand Funeral ration of the De and Fatima, the the Natives of ( Arrival of an (d) Ottoman P

O N the fixth day commenced th yam, which was inf then great St. Hufkin tainon, or mourning ment they cizzen the new moon. All the pear in deep mount # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

wife, of precious stones upon their arms; and their fingers are perfectly loaded with rings.

The ladies of but a middling flation and inferior to these, dress themselves richly, in proportion to the substance of their husbands; and the wives of the nobility, and men of the sword, wear a filk net or something of the like nature over their cloaths, which have a charming effect, and strike the eye in the most agreeable manner.

To the dreffes of the abovementioned gentlemen and ladies, I shall add the habits of those they call their yafools, that is to say, his majesty's porters, who act likewise in the capacity of gentlemen-ushers.

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

1. Persia, see p. 64. n. 0.
2. Ispahan, or Spahawn, see p. 109. n. m.
3. Com, see p. 247. n. k.
4. Armenia, see p. 198. n. g.
5. Georgia, in Asia, see p. 107. n. d.
6. Tauris, or Tabris, see p. 242. n. i.
7. Media, see p. 214. n. e.

8. Armenia, see p. 198. n. g.
  9. Circassia, see p. 199. n. q.
  10. Mafanderan, a province of Persia, usually comprehended in Gilan, the ancient Hyrcania, situate on the fourth coast of the Caspian sea.
- 

#### CHAP. XLIII.

The grand Funeral Solemnity ordained by the (a) Perfians for the Commemoration of the Decease of their favourite Saint Hufscin, the Son of Ali and Fatima, the sole Daughter of Mohammed. The Manner in which the Natives of (b) Armenia receive their Friends at (c) Julpha. The Arrival of an Envoy or Ambassador from the Grand Vizier of the (d) Ottoman Port.

ON the sixth day of May the Perfians commenced their grand funeral pomp, which was instituted in honour of their great St. Hufscin; and their lamentation, or mourning begins on the moment they discern the least glimpse of the new moon. All the city in general appear in deep mourning, and all the testimonials of public sorrow are expressed for the death of so venerable and so righteous a man, which happened (according to tradition) in the year 1027, at which time Mohammed was indifferently obliged to fly from (c) Mecca to (d) Medina Talmabi, which (according to their calculation) was no less than one thousand one hundred and eighteen # THE TRAVELS OF

eighteen years ago, in order to screen himself from the resentment and persecution of his foes.

This most venerable saint lost his life in (g) Arabia Deferta, as he was taking his flight accompanied by twenty-two of his disciples, or followers, near a certain place called Kierbila, where his monument is erected, and to which the Perfians, who look upon him as their true, or head Imam, refer from all parts, both far and near, in order to pay him the tribute of their more than common veneration and esteem. And it must be allowed, that king Abbas the Great acknowledged frankly, and with a kind of secret pride, that he was a descendant of that illustrious family; the natives of (b) Turkey, however, think he is no ways entitled to that honour.

This public mourning, or general lamentation is continued for ten days successively, without the least interruption. The populace make their appearance in the open streets, in small bands or companies, of about ten or a dozen of them, in the most pitous plight, being, at least, half naked; and as an addition to their seeming forrow, they blacken their faces all over, and look like a pack of our common chimney-sweepers in (i) Holland. They make, in short, a most hideous figure; and affecting a very mortified air, they chant their most doleful ditties to the found of certain

castagnets, such as we have before-mentioned to have been played upon by female dancers in some other countries. The martyrdom of this their darling saint is represented by perfons well furnished with arms, and by an image of him, which is not only very large, but hollow, and put into motion by some person within, appointed for that purpose, and who is not over-artistfully concealed; for his legs are visible enough to the most incurious eye. The parties concerned in this pious droll, farce, or piece of mummary, as it may properly enough be termed, seldom fail of receiving some petty gratuity, or reward from the spectators, which confits, however, of but some small pieces of silver, of no great value. There are some of them, indeed, now and then, who are more bountiful and beneficent, in proportion to the high veneration they conceive of his personal merit. As for the reft, during these uninterrupted days of forrow and lamentation, they preach openly in the streets, both morning and evening; but more especially in such parts of the city, where there are cross-ways and such other places of most reft, which they inclose with tapestry, and cover with their carpets. They decorate likewise the walls of the city with bucklers, and other warlike arms of various denominations, and the pulpits at these times, are raised five or six steps at least, for the accommodation of those who constitute the audience on these solemn occasions. These orators, thus mounted in their rostrum, take care to have some manuscripts in their hands, on which they frequently cast their eye, whilst they are expatiating on the important and marvellous actions of this their saint. An inferior preacher, who stands some few steps only lower than the former, harangues the populace, in his turn, with his elogies of Hufsin, which he chants with as loud and distinct a voice, as one of our European parish-clerks. The respectful places, set apart for these public acts of devotion, are for the generality, full of feats, or benches; and as my curiosity inclined me to become one of their auditors, I was soon accompanied thither by some of my friends. No sooner were they sensible of our intention, but they furnished us, very courteously, with commodious feats; and this they did with the more alacrity and readiness, as they professed a more than common value and regard for our director, who was universally beloved at (k) Ifaphan. I listened with a seeming attention for near half an hour; and I could plainly discover, that what was at that time delivered by their orator, had such a strong influence over the affections of their auditors, that most of them appeared dissolved in tears. At the corner of the wall where my friends and myself were seated, a large figure had been planted, which was tolerably counter- # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

terfeited, and well stuffed with straw, who perfonated one Omar, the affulin, or murderer of Hufc'in, whom the populace burnt at night, in divers parts of the city. In several considerable places, thefe panegyrics, or fermons as they call them, are delivered likewise in the dead of the night, upon certain theatres, erected for those particular purpofes, with laths, on which they hang above a thoufand lamps, but in fo awkward and carelefs a manner,

that the wind, in case there happens to be a brisk gale, blows three parts in four of them out directly. As to the spectators of this night pageantry, they are not to be numbered.

On the Sunday following, we solemnized the grand festival of Whiffentide, at our directors, to whose apartments came two bands, or small companies of young lads, all much of the same stature, and all very faintly dressed in order to dance before him and his company, according to custom, on that occasion. These lads had small flicks, or wands, in their hands, which they struck one against another, during the dance which was exhibited to vocal music only, that is to say, to the fingering of two or three men, who were their overseers. These young dancers threw their arms almost every moment over their heads, with the utmost velocity, and assumed such a variety of airs and attitudes, as proved perfectly entertaining.

Another band more numerous than the former, proposed to have followed them, in order farther to amuse us; but they met unexpectedly with a first range band, belonging to some other district, or division, who obstructed them in their design by a close attack; inasmuch that they could not come; besides they were obliged to attend the court that night.

But to return to our more melancholy subject. The solemnity of this funeral pomp, or public mourning consisted principally in a grand procession, which was exhibited the very next day; of which I had an uninterrupted sight, as I happened to be at a shopkeepers house in the Bazar, or market-place, when it passed by the door.

This grand procession was opened by some few officers on horseback who belonged to the Deroga; and these were followed by a set of fingers, who had each of them a taper in his hand; and each was dressed either in black, or purple, conformable to the nature of the solemnity, and the doleful lamentations that were made; some of these were half naked; and others carried a black standard which was furled up. After them went three camels; on the first rode two lads more than half naked; on the second rode three one behind the other, and on the third, the image of a woman, covered up close, with a little lad. After them came five camels more, on each of which were seven or eight other little boys, who were almost naked likewise, and seated in cages, composed of lath, and these were followed by two ensigns. Then appeared a chariot with an open coffin, in which was contained a dead corpse; after that went a second, which was covered with white, and accompanied by fingers; and a third after the two former, laden with incense, having two men and four little lads in it; each having a book in his hand, and a small table before him. This last chariot was encompassed with a parcel of tinned lamps, or what at least appeared to me to be such, and followed by a large standard which was furled up, and twelve soldiers duly armed;

each having a helmet on his head; these were followed by two little lads whimsically dressed up, with feathers and bells. After these boys, went a young prisoner on horse-back, accompanied by no less than one and twenty others, fifteen whereof were chained, and five, indeed, only pinioned. When these prisoners had passed by, there came a fourth chariot, all covered with sand, out of which appeared six heads all in a bloody condition; but no bodies to be seen; inasmuch that one might imagine that they had been cut off. In this chariot there were two persons dressed. In a fifth which immediately followed, was carried the body of Hufc'in himself, represented by # THE TRAVELS OF

by a man clad all in armour, with a sabre in his right-hand. This person was covered all over with blood, in order to strike the passions of the populace, who seemed at least so deeply affected, that the lamentations and tears, the sighs and groans, and other hideous out-cries on this occasion were shocking beyond description. And it must be acknowledged, that there cannot possibly be any thing more affecting than this sight; and notwithstanding we were conscious to ourselves, that the whole was both idle and ridiculous; yet it was not in our power, so much as to smile at the folly of it.

This chariot was followed by a great number of young persons; some pinioned; and some again with their arms at liberty, attended by a guard well armed with clubs, or flaves, with which from time to time, they threatened to bruise them; upon which, they would cringe and bow down their heads as naturally as if they dreaded the approaching blow. These were followed by another large chariot, drawn by men, covered, like the rest, all over with bloody sand, whereon there were two dead bodies, and four others, whereof nothing was seen but their heads. In this last chariot went six turtle-doves backwards and forwards. From another that followed this, came out arms and legs, and in it likewise were two lighted tapers. Then a third, with six heads, and two persons dressed, followed by another, with a dead body in armour in it, and a man, perforating one who was very sick, and seemingly at the very point of death. Then went two enigms; and a horse, with his fiddle hanging down, attended by two drums and several fiddlers. After them followed another chariot, whereon were two coffins, and two little lads, each with a book in his hand, who from time to time very affectionately embraced them, and played their part of the farce exceedingly well. Another chariot of an extraordinary size followed this, in which were contained no less than ten or a dozen dead bodies, of which no parts were to be seen except their bloody arms and legs, together with five or six prisoners, followed by a

young man on horse-back pierced through with arrows. This person was all over blood, seemed to be a stranger; and to all outward appearance perfectly faint, and ready to drop on the ground. After him a coffin appeared, covered all over with black

cloth, attended by fingers and dancers, who seemed to conduct it in triumph; and after them were carried three lances, each of which was embellished with precious stones. Then followed a horfe, laden with bows and arrows, a turbant, and a large standard; and five horses more after that, laden with bucklers, bows and arrows, and three javelins, on the points whereof appeared a hand. And to clofe this grand melancholy procession, came a- nother horfe richly caparisoned, whereon there were three pair of pigeons. This horfe, however, was not in its proper place.

After I had been an eye-witness of all this melancholy though pompous show, I prevailed on a good-natured ecclesiastic to give me the interpretation of this mystic procession. In the first place, he told me that the turtle-doves which I had observed on one of the chariots, represented those, which in reality, fat upon the body of Huffyin soon after he was murdered; and that those self fame turtle-doves, all smeared with his blood flew away to Medina where the fitter of St. Huffyin lived, who, upon the first sight of them, was fully convinced of his untimely end; for he had foretold it, it seems, before-hand.—He acquainted me farther, that the chariot with the two coffins attended by the two little lads, who had each of them a book in his hand, represented the two sons of Huffyin, whose names were Ali-afker, and Ali-Echbar, who, as they tell you, were both slain with arrows.—That the young man, pierced through with arrows, was intended to represent the latter.—That the coffin, covered with black was that of St. Huffyin himself; and the chariot with six heads, by which fat two perfons drefled, represented his children.—That the iron hand, fixed at the point of the javelins, was the signal of war which the chieftains or partisans of the Perian Mohammedans wore # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

wore, in former days, upon their standards, and that the five fingers on that hand represented Mohammed, Ali Fatima, the daughter of Mohammed, Ali the wife, Huffin and Huffcin the Saint: so that it is evident each part of this long, pompous, melancholy procession has reference to the murder of Huffcin, and his twenty two disciples or followers, who were slain with him, and afterwards canonized as well as himself, for martyrs by the Perrians.

It is very surprising, that those persons, whose heads, arms and legs, appear openly in the several chariots above-described, should, for the many hours this mournful solemnity lasted, be able to act their parts so naturally, and seem as lifelike as perfect statues. Most of the heads, moreover, had long beards, and their necks appeared to be so squeezed, that one would really imagine the head to be actually severed from the body; and what is still more surprising, their very eyes seemed to be fixed in their heads, and without the least visible motion.

In order, however, to their acting this part of infensibility in so natural a manner, I have been informed, that on this melancholy occasion, the parties concerned are obliged to swallow down a certain quantity of a particular liquor, which intoxicates them to that degree, that they are totally deprived of their senses for the time being. And there is no room for imposition in this particular; for I could visibly distinguish the head of wax (whereof there was but one) from all the rest: And it must be allowed, moreover, that the Perrians are peculiarly artful in these pantomimical representations.

The next morning we went to the same place, by break of day, in order to be spectators of the remainder of this grand and solemn procession; but his majesty did not come till two hours after we were feasted.

This second day's solemnity, was a kind of parade of the two districts, or divisions of the city, who carried divers ornaments suitable to the mournful purpose in procession. In the first place, there appeared, in the same manner, as the day before, a small number of the deroga's officers on horse-back, followed by several young fellows armed with flaves, and crying out, as they skipped and danced along, O, Huffcin! Huffcin! After these came a band of instrumental music, with some drums, followed by the citizens of divers wards: the first company appeared armed with drawn fabres, and shields; and those who followed, with staves very elegantly painted. All in general were very neatly dressed in velvet vestments, with rich fathes, and fine turbans; and all marched in exact order: all the visible difference between them consisted wholly in the grandeur and magnificence of one dress from another. One particular party of these citizens, who were nearly of the same rank and degree in regard to substance, had prepared for themselves a very pretty machine, or resting-place, not much unlike a common coach, which was adorned with looking-glasses, hung with fabrics, poniards and other arms; some mounted with gold, and others with silver, which had a very good effect, and struck the eye in a charming manner. There were others, however, which were still loftier than this, and had no coverings or tops to them, were open within, and decorated with a greater number of glasses. The greatest and most considerable of these several companies goes on before the rest; there were no less than five of these resting-places, or machines, like coaches as we hinted before, exclusive of that which was erected between two buildings at the Chiaer-baeg. This was embellished throughout with, or more properly speaking, composed of looking-glasses, in the form of an altar, with folding-doors, which when thrown open displayed all the decorations within; this was a very lofty machine; and as soon as his majesty appeared at the building which belongs to his second garden, in which there is a long



gallery, one of their doctors or preachers mounts the rostrum. This altar, or resting-place, was kept standing for three or four days successively. It consisted of divers pieces, which

The parade of the two districts of the city. # THE TRAVELS OF

which were made to fit, and were put together on the spot; for it would have been a fruitless attempt, to have aimed at moving the whole at once through the city-gates.

This grand procession was succeeded by another that commenced, or opened with some standards, and a great number of horfes; some whereof had their heads adorned with large plumes of white feathers, and others were very richly decorated, and laden with fine vestments, fables, shields, and a variety of other warlike weapons. Some again were drest even with turbants, plumes larger than the former, and other pompous decorations. These horfe were followed by a large band of fingers, musicians, and dancers, these left waved certain flags over their heads, as they danced along; others carried pikes, which were embellished with tufts and ribbons. The procession appeared afterwards as it did the day before. The parties concerned therein frequently halted; and as they fung threw straw that had been chopped finall, all over their heads, crying out at the same time O, Huffle! Huffle! Some of the train carried a drawn fabre in one hand, and a shield, or buckler, in the other; the rest had laves at least ten feet in length, which were very neatly painted and richly gilt. Though these seemed to breathe nothing but vengeance and destructive war; yet the Deroga, who was personally present, accompanied by above a thousand horfemen, takes particular care, that nobody shall fall to blows; for he posts his officers, in order to prevent all tumults and disturbances, at proper distances; some in the van; some in the center; and others again in the rear of their grand procession. He plants others likewise in the way, through which they are to pass; and the several districts are obliged to advance gradually one after the other. In short, he takes all the care imaginable, to prevent riots and disorders, and all quarrels and contentions that might possibly arise, in respect to rank or degree in the march, where the paffes are narrow; and soldiers with fire-arms are posted, at proper distances, for that particular purpose.

And it is highly requisite, indeed, that such precautions should be taken; since the Perfians entertain a firm notion, that all such as should lose their lives on such solemn occasions, go directly to Paradise, without any intermediate state. And, for that reason, in case any murders happen to be committed at such public feasts, there is no enquiry made after the delinquents; and those, therefore, who owe their neighbours a secret grudge, and want an

opportunity to satiate their revenge, very seldom, if ever, fail of taking the advantage of these solemn processions, much after the same manner, as the natives of Italy do their public carnivals.

From hence it is, that such as are wise and wary, and are under no indispensable obligation to attend the procession, keep close at home, for the most part, during the last days of the solemnity; but more especially those, who are known to be Turkish Mohammedans; for they are professed enemies to Hufflein, and the friends of Omar, whom the Persians perfectly abhor. They bear not that implacable malice against any other nations, not even against the natives of India, who are Heathens; for to these they pay nothing to affront them.

On this public occasion, however, there is a prodigious concourse of people, not only of inhabitants of the city, but strangers whose curiosity leads them to become spectators. At this juncture indeed, it happened, there were no tumults or disorders afoot; no casual transactions that created the least trouble or confusion, which was somewhat extraordinary and remarkable, if we consider the implacable hatred that subsists between the two opposite parties, who have no mercy on each other whenever it is their fortune to meet together.

On the nineteenth instant I set out with some friends to take a view of the Christian burial-ground where we tarried till break of day; and from thence went to his majesty's new-garden, which is very spacious, and encompassed with an earthen-wall. We there saw several fountains which were nearly finished, and a curious nursery of young # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

young trees, roses, and parterres, abounding with flowers, but such only as were of the common sort.

From thence we went to Julpha, to one Mr. Sahid's country-seat. This gentleman (as we have hinted before) was interpreter to our company. He received and entertained us in the most friendly manner, notwithstanding there were near fifty of us in number. All the walks in his garden, which were illuminated with candles, made a very beautiful appearance. The next day we paid visits to several of our director's friends; for he was to depart from thence in about a month's time, and return no more. There he took leave of the principal Armenian merchants, of the patriarch, and most of the gentlemen there who were natives of (n) Europe. We had near fifty of these visits to make, which took us up three whole days; for go where you will, you are treated with confectionaries, and all manner of the most pleasing sweet-meats, which are brought you in little pretty wooden boxes, very elegantly painted, and embellished with all kinds of flowers, of which the Persians in general have been at all times exceedingly fond. After that you have incense and rose-water brought you, with which they perfume the whole room. They take especial care moreover, to

furnish you with a callion to smoke with, coffee, bedmus, as they call it, and divers other pleasant, hot liquors; and after dinner is over, you are entertained with plenty of fruits, and such other dainties as the fcafons afford. As for the Christians there, they bring you out their brandy, and other

The arrival of a Turkish envoy.

strong liquors in the morning, and wine in plenty of various kinds in the afternoon. Inomuch that, one visit only must of neceffity take up at least an hour.

Having paid all our visits in form, we returned to Ipahan, where we were informed, that an envoy, or ambassador from the Grand Vifer of the Ottoman Port was arrived the day before, but, as it were incog, not having above half a dozen domestics in his retinue: that it was conjectured, the principal part of his errand was to demand of his majesty, a free pafage for the march of some Turkish forces, which the Grand Signior was determined to fend into (o) Georgia, where the inhabitants, for several years then laft paft, had peremptorily refused to pay the customary subsidies, which the natives of that country are indipenably obliged to remit to the Port. The Grand Signior, has frequently sent a number of Turkish forces on that occasion; but they have met with no small obstructions from the Georgians, in some particular defiles and narrow paffes, where they knew perfectly well that they should meet them. Thefe the Turks distinguish by the name of Baffa-tjoegs, that is to fay, bare-heads; because they wear nothing to cover their heads but a small cap which is open at the crown, through which they thrust some treffes of their hair in order to keep it on as tight as may be. They distinguish by the fame appellation likewife, all the country which they inhabit, that is to fay, all the lands that are situate between Turkey and Gurgifan.

## **Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.**

1. Perfa, fee p. 64. n. a.
  2. Armenia, fee p. 298. n. g.
  3. Julfa, or Julpha, fee p. 262. n. x.
  4. Port (Ottoman) fee p. 196. n. g.
  5. Mecca, fee p. 242. n. o.
  6. Medina Talmabi, caft long. 40. 35. lat.
- 
1. 1. a city of Arabia Dcferta, situate 200 miles north-wft of Mecca, called the city of the Prophet. For here Mahomet

was received, and protected by the inhabitants, when he was driven from Mecca; and here he was first invested with regal power; and here is a magnificent moft, or temple, in which is Mahomet's tomb, furrunded by a filver grate, or palifade; but the flory of his coffin being hung up to the roof

# THE TRAVELS OF

## CHAP. XLIV.

A succinct Account of the Paintings in Perfa. The Customs observed there, in regard to Births, Marriages, Deaths, and Burials. The current Coins of the Country. A vast Consumption of Sugar in the City of Ispahan only.

I had some thoughts of amusing my readers in this chapter with a short view of the religion as by law established in (a) Perfa, but upon mature consideration, as divers travellers have expatiated before me on that topic, I imagined the attempt would be needless, if not impertinent; since it could only be a repetition of what is already universally known. I shall content my self therefore with this one transient observation thereon; namely, that it bears a very near affinity to the religion professed all over (b) Turkey; with this remarkable exception, that the Turks look on all kinds of paintings as abominations; and the Perfans, on the other hand, are passionately fond of them, and deem those, which are judiciously executed, very valuable furniture for their parlours, or halls; especially such as represent fine horses, hunting matches, all kinds of birds and beasts; or a great variety of the choice flowers; and with these (as we have hinted before) they embellish the walls of almost every apartment they are possest of.

Nay, they have professed painters among them; and there were two great masters of that art, in his majesty's fervice, whilst I was resident at (c) Ispahan. My curiosity led me to pay one of them a visit; who received me very courteously; and upon a critical review of his various performances, I found he was a greater proficient, than I thought he was. His operations, indeed, confisted chiefly of birds in diftemper; that is to say, his colours were mixed with some gleyw substancess, only, and not with oil: however, they were elegantly neat.

It is true, he had very little knowledge of what we call lights and shades; but then the Perfans in general have no idea at all of them; from whence it naturally follows, that their most accurate paintings are imperfect.

This gentleman, whilst I was with him, was very busy in copying, for the use of his majesty, a book of the most curious flowers, which had been printed in (d) Holland; and as to the colouring of them, I perceived that he was indebted to the judgment of an ecclesiastic, who had formerly been a practitioner in (e) Italy: and

it must be allowed that no country can boast of finer colours than the Perfans. I perceived, that he was possessed of a small quantity of lake, that had been brought from Holland. The Perfans make ultramarine themselves; and it is doubtless, the finest blue that can possibly be purchased; for they have the stone in their own country, or at least they are fup- # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

plied with it, by the painters of (f) Armenia. There are some painters in Persia, who make it their principal employ to stain canes with a particular gum, which strikes the eye well, and has a very pretty effect; and to embellish their standishes, which are made in the form of boxes, whereon they draw a great variety of beasts, birds, and flowers; or else such other ornaments, as their fancy directs, and then paint them with the utmost neatness.

Perfons of distinction there, likewise have all their valuable books very elegantly bound, and embellished with a great variety of figures; some of men and women in various dresses, others of birds, beasts, fish and flowers of all forts in miniature; and each in the finest colours that can possibly be conceived. They have some books, indeed, that abound with immodest pictures, and are fit only to be viewed by the ladies of the Haram, or seraglio, of which they are extremely fond; for such as are immensely rich amongst them, are apt to indulge themselves in every lawful pleasure, without controul. I met with one of these luxurious posture-books, in a visit I paid, not long before my departure from Ispahan, to a grandee, and a great favourite at court; the drawings, however, were very heavy, and artless, and had nothing to recommend them, but their obscenity, and their various embellishments in gold and silver, and the most lively colours.

Though the Perfians are highly delighted with rich trifles of this immodest stamp; yet they are so naturally avaricious, that even their ministers of state, would scruple to purchase such a toy, and are seldom possessed of them, unless they get them into their hands as a bribe for some expected favour.

A little before my arrival at Ispahan, there came an able and experienced painter to court from (g) Germany. As this European artist had resided for several years at (b) Rome, where he had all the opportunities that could be defined for studying the works of the most celebrated Italian maisters, he was employed to paint some curious history-piece, but what the subject in particular was, indeed, I cannot at present recollect. The picture, however, at last, was universally approved of, both by his majesty, and the connoisseurs at court, and exposed accordingly to public view in the palace, as a finished piece. But neither his majesty, nor any one of the admirers of this most excellent performance, ever thought of the operator, or made him the compliment of the least trifle for the immense pains he took in the completion of it. And, indeed, that artist, be his profession what it will, or the place of his nativity where it will, that travels into Persia, with a view of

raising his fortune by his skill in any particular science whatsoever, will find his expectations most shamefully balked, and be soon convinced to his cost, that he had entertained a too favourable opinion of the natives of the country.

The sciences, in short, are there either egregiously neglected, or absolutely unknown; and there are but very few instances to be produced, where the Persian monarchs have had either any taste for them, themselves, or the least generosity or inclination to encourage those that have. Generosity, in a word, is an absolute stranger in Persia.

In the year 1652, we had a glaring instance of this royal weakness, in respect to one Mr. Cuneus, who was a counsellor in ordinary, in the service of the Dutch East India Company, who sent him to the Persian court in order to negotiate an affair there of the last importance. Amongst other presents, which they sent by him to the then Persian king; there was one very valuable picture, in which were represented a great number of warriors, or Heroes, all properly equipped, on horse-back. As the Persians are extravagantly fond of fine horses, the company naturally imagined, that this picture of theirs would meet with a very favourable reception at court; but his majesty, instead of accepting it as a rich and valuable present, asked, with coldness and indifference, what was the purchase of it. Mr. Cuneus, the agent, ima- # THE TRAVELS OF

imagining it would be improper to put a price upon it equal to its intrinsic value, appraised it (if we may be allowed the expression) far beneath its worth; whereupon his majesty determined to have it, and gave him his own price.

To these two instances several others of the like kind might with ease be produced; but we shall reserve them to another opportunity, and at present shall treat of their customs, with respect to their births, marriages, deaths and burials.

As soon as a child (whether male or female) is about four days old, they send for one of their ecclesiastics, to whom the parents declare the name they have determined to give him; and then the priest, with abundance of solemnity, blows it three times successively into the infant's ear; and then, after the performance, of a ceremony or two more, the solemnity is over, and the parents devote the remainder of the day to innocent mirth, and the entertainment of their friends on the joyful occasion.

It is not customary amongst the Persians to circumcise their children till they are about seven or eight years of age; and sometimes older, according to the humour or caprice of the parents, and never on the eighth day, as is the general custom amongst the Jews. After the operation, thus long deferred, they entertain their friends in the most elegant manner, in proportion to their substance; and testify all the outward joy imaginable on so

happy an occasion of having a child of theirs admitted a member of their Moslems, that is to say, of their true believers, according to the law of their great prophet Mohammed, as it stands recorded in their Koran, or as it is otherwise called their Al-Koran.

As to the customs observed at their weddings; when a man is inclined to take a wife, he never makes his applications to his mistresses, the object of his wishes, but to her parents, or relations; and when the terms are fetted and adjusted, they fend for one of their ecclesiastics; who asks the intended bridegroom, whether he will take the woman to be his wife? To which, when he has answered in the affirmative, he then turns to the intended bride, and proposes the same question to her; and when she has answered yes, as the former had; the parson, or ecclesiastic, immediately fits down, and draws up the marriage-articles himself; for the Persians have no notary-publics; by virtue of which settlement, the bridegroom aligns over a certain sum of money to proper trustees for the use of his wife, who, by this marriage-contract, when duly signed by her husband, stands forever legally posseffed of this dower; even tho' her husband should, in process of time, think proper to leave her; an indulgence admits of: and in case of his decease, his heirs are indissolubly obliged to pay the sum agreed on, together with one eighth of his personal estate. Moreover, in case the woman should die first, and leave any issue behind her, the husband, provided he thinks proper to marry again, and has issue by that second venter, is obliged to give the first wife's children their mother's dower, and an equal proportion of his own substance, which is to be divided amongst them all, share and share alike.

When a Christian, or any other person, who is not of the Persian persuasion, becomes a proselyte, and embraces the articles of their faith, he inherits not only all the fortune which his father had possessed of, but that of all his relations too, exclusive of all others, who have not proved apostates like himself. And if it should happen, that two Christians should renounce their own religion, and embrace the Persian faith, at one and the same time, the next heir of the two enjoys alone the fortune of his Christian relations who die unconverted.

The Persians, by their law, may take as many concubines as they please, or at least, as many as they can keep; and whenever they think proper to dismiss any one of them, the female thus discharged, must have no commerce (according to their law) with any other man, till after the expiration of forty days; for fear she should prove

---

The customs at birth.

The circumcision of their children.

The customs observed at their weddings.

Their concubines. # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

prove with child. As for the rest, all the children of such concubines are looked upon as legitimate issue, and by consequence, are legally entitled to a proportionate share of the father's substance with the other children.

When the parents of a maiden give her away in marriage, they bestow on her such a portion as they think most proper and convenient; and the daughter engages herself, by a writing drawn up for that particular purpose, to lay no claim from thenceforward to any effects that they shall happen to leave behind them, whereof she acknowledges she has received her part or share; and thereby disclaims all right or title to any share with her brothers or sisters in what is to be their sole property hereafter.

When this portion is paid to the bridegroom, all her cloaths in general, and as much of her other effects as conveniently may be, are put upon horses, and the remainder is conveyed from her parents house by proper persons employed for that purpose; who carry along with them, likewise, a large quantity of conferves, and other dainties. This ceremony, may, with propriety enough, be termed a proceffion, which is more or less pompous and magnificent, according to the rank and distinction of the parties concerned; and is always accompanied by a band of music, be the hands more or less. This ceremony however, is not performed till some few days after the nuptials have been consummated; and, on this joyful occasion, a proper apartment in the husband's house is first pitched upon, and elegantly illuminated, as the proceffion is always made when the night is far spent. The men enter this apartment first, and the women follow them in due form.

Their grandees likewise provide themselves with wives, who are for the most part, waited on by the husband's concubines; and these wives are honoured with the title of Khanas, which bears a very near affinity to that of Khan, assumed by their comforts. At their meals, they sit at table by themselves, and are waited on as others customarily are, by their husband's

The children of both, however, are equally legitimate, and are equal partakers in their father's fortune; and whenever it happens that one of these concubines is safely delivered of a child, whether male or female, it is very observable, that the lawful wife is overjoyed on that happy occasion, in consideration that her consort's honour is greatly advanced by that production, who, when he has an inclination to favour her with his company, in the first place, sends one of his eunuchs to her apartment, for each has a separate one, with express orders for her to bathe and purify herself, which orders she very readily and punctually obeys, and



then drests herself to the best advantage for the reception of her lord. These concubines eat in common together; but no other company is admitted to join them.

The king takes to himself as many wives as he thinks proper; and makes his choice of them, for the most part, out of the maidens who are natives either of (i) Georgia or (k) Armenia, or such other Christian maidens as he approves of most. There is a perfect equality between all these royal comforts; and the first son that is born of either of them is immediate heir to the crown, without the least regard to the happy lady who is his mother: nor does this important circumstance give her the least preeminence over the other comforts.

Whenever this prince takes the least delight to any one of his royal comforts, and it is his will and pleasure to turn her out of the feraglio; in case she has had no child by him, he marries her to whomsoever he deems convenient, and frequently to some private person of no rank or quality at all.

I shall now proceed to the customs which are observed by the Periāns at their respective deaths, and the days of their interment.

In about three or four hours after the decease, either of a man or woman, a Mola, as they call their ecclesiastics, is sent for, who runs through a certain number of prayers, and performs some other offices of his # THE TRAVELS OF

his holy function; and immediately afterwards the body of the deceased is put into a coffin, which is carried away directly to the washing-place, which stands always in an out-house, set apart for that particular purpose, in order to be there washed and purified: the bearers are for the most part common porters; and these are preceded by fingers, and others with flaves in their hands, as also rods and streamers: the relations follow the dead corpse, and as they move solemnly along, they rend their garments, tear their hair, beat their breasts, and act the parts of persons in despair. The remains of such as were persons of high rank and distinction, are surrounded by several of their ecclesiastics, and others, who are hired to bawl out their doleful dirges. The friends, likewise, that attend them make most pitious lamentations; but these outward marks, or testimonies of the deepest sorrow, are too frequently infrequent, and more the effects of custom, than any real sorrow that affects them to such a violent degree. Neither the friends, nor relations change their usual dress, on these melancholy occasions, except those who precede the corpse; and some few others, who flap down one end of the pleats, or folds of their turbants. As to the rest they do not move regularly two by two, but promiscuously, without the observance of the least order or decorum.

After they have been at the washing-place, and have purified the body to their satisfaction, they make use of some cotton, with which they stop up all apertures, such as the ears, the nostrils, and the mouth. All the difference that is observed in the interment of a man from a woman is only this; namely, if the person deceased be a man, the body is washed in form by his own sex; and if a woman, by her's; and they are carried directly from the washing place to the grave by the persons only who attended at their ablution; at the grave, indeed, there is a kind of funeral service, and some other petty ceremonies conjoined thereupon. After this the remains of the deceased are wrapped up in a winding-sheet, and committed to the earth, taking particular care, at the same time, that the body rests on its left-side, with the head directly to the east and the feet to the west, and with the face always turned towards the sepulchre, or tomb of their great prophet Mohammed. After these precautions, they erect a vault of earth, or clay over the body, and fill up the grave, on which they place a head-stone, or erect a monument, and very often a dome over it, in case the deceased was a person of high birth and distinction.

Sometimes his majesty himself will honour their remains with a royal sepulchre, which is afterwards looked upon as sacred, and from thenceforth approached with a peculiar veneration. Some of these sepulchral monuments are erected in the form of a temple, with fine azure domes over them, which are all glazed, and have a charming effect.

As to the Perisan money, the greatest part of their current silver coin, is that, which they call their Hafian-denaire, that is to say, a piece of the value of ten Mamoedjes, that is to say, of eight-pence, German money. They have likewise a coin, called by them Daazajes, or a piece of the value only of five of their Mamoedjes; another called Paenzajie, of half the value only of the former; they have still smaller pieces, called their Abbatories, the value whereof is no more than of two Mamoedjes; and others again of one, whereof there are two forts, which were coined by his present majesty's predecessors; and these they call Mamoedjes-haviele; there is great plenty of this last-mentioned coin all over the country, because there are no merchants, who think it worth their while either to carry, or send it into foreign parts. It is current, in short, over all his majesty's dominions, for foreign commodities as well as their own manufactures, nor is any other indeed made use of. They have, moreover, a coin, which they call their Zaesus, that is one moiety or half part only of a Mamoedje. His majesty caufes but very few, if any, to be coined of the two first kinds above-mentioned, and then only for the service of the poor, and that only at

Occasional

1. Perisa, fee p. 64.

2. Turkey, fee p. 109.
3. Nipkhan, fee p. 109.
4. Holland, fee p. 76.
5. Italy, fee p. 210. # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

at some certain times of the year. These laft are likewife very fo farce, that they are feldom to be feen any where, but in the hands of the curious; becaufe there is fome trivial difference in their value and weight from the Mamoedjies, and the Zaejies, which are coined at prefent. The true reaon whereof is this; namely, that thefe three laft coins were reduced to a juft standard in the years 1684 and 1685. The officers of the mint, however, have diminifhed the value of them, out of their infatiable thrift after riches, to which the indolence and neglect of the government contributed not a little. Nor had the grievance been ever remedied at all, if the people, who murmured at it, had not made their complaints to the minifters at court, who, in order to make them eafy, and prevent any public tumults, broke several of thofe officers, and fubftituted others in their room, who rectified what had been done amifs by their predeceffors; nor can this ft ep be wondered at, fince they were difcharged, without any punishment annexed, for their midlemañors. These coins are not current at all in the way of trade, in which nothing will pafs but their Mamoedjies-havaife, a coin that was flampet under the antient kings. As this is the cafe, the merchants look out for them as diligently as poffible, and will fometimes give one, two, or three; nay fometimes even fix per cent. for them beyond their intrinsic value; infomuch that, they carry on a prodigious trade with this coin, which is hoarded up by the tradefmen, as foon as ever it appears in public, who fend it away directly to (l) Surat, where they find it turns to a much better account than if they purchafed ducats.

The Perfians have likewife two forts of copper coin, the largett whereof, and that which is one tenth part of a Mamoedjie is round; the fmaller, which is long, is worth no more than the twenty fifth part of a Mamoedjie.

There is but very little gold coin, if any, to be met with throughout all Perfia. I have feen, however, fome ducats there, but then they are very farce and very light.

All the wares or commodities that are brought from (m) Gomron, or Gombron, and the money fent thither by bills of exchange, are negotiated by Banians, or Indian brokers, and the money is carried to the (n) Eaft-Indies all in ducats.

The king of Perfia is, by contract, oblig'd to deliver every year to our Dutch East-India company, one hundred bales of silk; each bale to contain four hundred and eight pounds, Dutch weight; amounting in the whole to four thousand eight hundred weight.

And the company, by way of return, send no less than twelve hundred chests of sugar to Ifpahan; each chest containing one hundred and fifty pounds weight, in the whole eighteen hundred thousand pounds weight; all which is consumed in that last-mentioned city only.

As soon as the over-see and other inferior officers have received the aforefaid silk, they sort it, and make it up in lesser bales, which they send to Gomron before-mentioned upon horses; and from thence ship it off to (o) Batavia.

---

## Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

1. Perfia, see p. 64. n. o.
2. Turkey, see p. 203. n. e.
3. Ifpahan, see p. 109. n. m.
4. Holland, see p. 76. n. c.
5. Italy, see p. 210. n. m.
6. Armenia, see p. 198. n. g.
7. Germany, see p. 204. n. g.
8. Rome, see p. 108. n. g.
9. Georgia, in Asia, see p. 107. n. d.
10. Armenia, see p. 198. n. g.

### 1. Su- # THE TRAVELS OF

1. Surat, east long. 72. 20. lat. 21. 30. a city, and port town of the hither India, in Asia, in the province of Guzerat, or Cambaya, situate on the river Tapte, ten miles east of the Indian Sea, 160 miles north of Bombay, and as many south of Cambaya City, being defended only by a flight wall, and some antique forts, and is about three miles in circumference, but very populous, and vastly rich. The English, French and Dutch have their factors here, and trade very largely: but the Moors, Armenians, Banians, Arabs, and Jews, are much greater merchants. The English president lives in the state of a prince; has his

coaches, palanquins, and led-horses, richly equipped; and when he goes abroad has his guards, and a numerous retinue; the Europeans finding it necessary for their officers and servants to make a grand appearance among the eastern people. The president is usually governor of Bombay, and of all the English settlements upon the western coasts of India, and has almost as much respect paid him as the governor of Surat.

The Mogul gives his trading subjects all imaginable encouragement, as well as those foreign merchants who refer to his ports, though he be an absolute prince; but the Dutch are left unfed, and pay the least customs; for, if his officers demand more than they think fit to pay, they have a fleet of men of war in India, with which they block up his ports, and compel the government to submit to their terms.

1. Gomron, or Gombron, see p. 262. n. w.
  2. India (proper) see p. 213. n. d.
  3. Batavia, east longitude 106. south latitude 6. the capital of all the Dutch colonies and settlements in India, and an excellent harbour, situate on the north east part of the island of Java, south-east of the island of Sumatra, and south-west of Borneo. It is a most beautiful city, built with white stone, and canals, planted with evergreens, run through their principal streets. The inhabitants are a mixture of many nations, whom the Dutch have removed from other oriental islands, and a large colony of the Chinese, many thousands of whom were lately massacred, and their wealth seized by the Dutch, who are so powerful both in ships of war and land forces at Batavia, that they command all the Indian Seas, and put what terms they please upon the powers of Asia, whose countries lie in those seas, and on the European merchants that traffic thither, which is evident from their monopolizing all the fine spices in the east.
- 

## **C H A P. XLV.**

A short Description of some of the most remarkable Birds in (a) Perfia; as also of some of its various Productions, namely, its Trees, Fruits, Plants, and Flowers; with the current Price of its Provisions, of which there is Plenty; concluding with a succinct Account of a particular Drug there, or Kind of Gum, distinguished by the name of Mummy, which is very valuable, and unknown to many even of the Natives themselves.

Having expatiated as far as I thought proper on the various customs peculiar to this country in the preceding chapter; I shall proceed in this to entertain the reader with a succinct account of

its various productions; and accordingly, I shall begin with a description of those particular birds of which I have given distinct representations in plate (No 91) hereto annexed.

That which is distinguished by the capital (A) is by the natives called the angaert, of which I have made some mention before in the course of my travels: as I painted this, however, from the life, I found upon examination, a material difference in this from those before treated of; for this had a black collar about the neck of

Pl. 91. The angaert. # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

of it; and its wings were greener than any of the species I ever saw before. Those birds which are marked with a capital (B) are turtle-doves, which, like the former, have a black ring, or circle round their necks, and for that reason are called by the natives, Fargter-toog-begerde, that is to say, turtle-doves with black collars about their necks. Those again distinguished by the letter (C) are called simply Fargters; and that marked (D) is distinguished by the name of Chaeg-feb, that is to say, the green crow. Those which we have distinguished by the capital (E) are called by the natives Gonsjeszerde, which seldom make their appearance till the corn begins to shoot up; then they build their nests in it, and when the harvest draws near at hand, they withdraw to some more commodious situation, by natural instinct. Of these last, there are no less than four or five different sorts.

In the Plate (No. 92) hereto annexed the bird that I have distinguished by the capital (A) is a spotted turtle-dove; and has streaks both of black and white about its neck: this bird resides, for the most part, in the mountains.

That distinguished by the capital (B) is called an Alla-fargter, that is to say, a green turtle. The mark (C) points out a bird that is spotted with black and white, and called there Mahi-geeck, that is to say, the fisher; and their reason for that distinction is this: because it never abandons, or flies from the banks of the rivers, or lakes, as that called the gull very frequently does. The capital (D) points out two other Mahi-geecks, which are but small birds, and are blue and green on the beak; the feathers on their breasts are of an orange colour, and bear their name; because they are seldom, if ever to be met with, but on such trees as grow by the water side. The body of the bird, distinguished by the letter (E) is of a lively green, but its neck is yellow. The capital (F) shows a bird that is black and grey, intermixt with white, and spotted with yellow. It is called the Dregtken, that is to say, the wood-pecker; because it keeps forever pecking at the tree whereon it perches; and strikes it, at the same time, with such force, that the sound thereof may be distinctly heard at a considerable distance. That bird which is distinguished by the letter (G) is marbled both before and behind; but his breast is streaked with white and grey. This is called the Morje-infir, or the Becco-fico, and delights in

being warm. Its note is exceedingly sweet; and when killed and dressed, it is a very luscious morsel, but then it is very seldom to be met with.

In the Plate (No. 93) hereto annexed is delineated the bird called the Backer-Kara. This, however, is universally known all over (b) Turkey; and is frequently met with in the island of (c) Cyprus. This bird is somewhat larger than a partridge; its flesh too, when dressed, is much whiter, and the taste of it is far more delicious. As to the rest, the back of it is parti-coloured; its breast is white and grey; and its neck is streaked; as may plainly be perceived by the Plate (No. 94) hereto annexed. The two birds which are delineated in Plate (No. 95) are called Bolbol; and the notes of both are so sweet, that the nightingale herself scarcely excels them. They were drawn from the life; their heads were black and white; but the rest of their feathers are grey, excepting those on the belly, which are yellow, and the tip of the tail which is white.

We shall proceed, in the next place, to give our readers a short description of such trees, fruits, plants and flowers, as are in these parts, worth the attention of the curious.

And among all their trees, that of the fena, which is unknown in any other country, is of the highest esteem. The natives of (d) Ifaphan will assure you, that the very first which was ever brought thither, came from a place called Icedf, which is situate about seven or eight days journey from that city. Some of these truly valuable trees are twenty, and others about five and twenty palms in circumference; more particularly those that are standing in the Chiaer-baeg; there are some few again, however, which I have met

# THE TRAVELS OF

met with by accident, that have exceeded even the last dimensions. For the generality they rise to the height of between forty and fifty feet, and stand as erect as the mast of any ship, with no branches, some few at the very top only excepted. The bark of this tree is of a bright grey colour; and its leaves are exactly like those delineated in the plate (96) hereto annexed. The carpenters here make gates, doors, and window-flutters, with the planks of it; the inside is marbled with yellow, and is in high repute all over the country. A single tree of the largest dimensions is worth an hundred rixdollars, at least, if not more.

The piftachio nut-tree is likewise of a large bulk. It has a fine head, and abounds with fruit. The leaves of it bear a near resemblance to those of the laurel; with this difference only, that they are larger, and somewhat rounder. In Plate (No. 97.) is delineated a branch of it which is distinguished by the letter (A). Its bark is of a mixed colour; when in its full vigour, 'tis red and yellow; but before it comes to maturity, it is yellow mixed with a lively green. As to the leaves thereof, they are yellow and red. Of the nut-shell are made comfits, which are highly esteemed here;

and as to the kernels, they are gathered frequently before they are near ripe, and pickled, much after the same manner as the Dutch do green cucumbers in (e) Holland. In the mountains there are several of these trees to be met with; but then the nuts which they produce are very small. From the bodies, or branches of these trees, when wounded, flows a kind of gum, which the inhabitants take care to catch in a clay-cup, which they keep for that particular purpose. This gum has the exact smell of terebenth, or turpentine, and is of much the same colour. This is carefully collected in the month of August, and afterwards put up in little leather bags for public sale. This gum is looked upon as a most excellent ointment.

The third tree, most in vogue here, is what the natives call the Semaeg. This bears a near resemblance to the alder-tree,

with this difference only, that the leaves thereof are somewhat shorter, and are more fibrous. Add to this, that they are pointed in their roundness. I have distinguished the fruit of this tree by the letter (B) which resembles, in some measure, the tail of a cat, and is full of small excrescences. As to the taste of it, 'tis as four as verjuice. The cooks there make use of it in their sauces; and when it is dry, it is frequently pounded to powder, and eaten with roast-meat. Their apothecaries likewise make use of it, and mix it with rose-water, in order to rinse the mouth and gums; for it is looked upon as an excellent preservative against the fcurvy.

The Persians have, moreover, a shrub, which they call Kakienet, or Akekinthie, that rises only about two feet above the ground; the branches whereof shoot out so far that they can scarce support themselves. Each branch bears a number of fruit (some more, some less) which resembles a bell that is clofed in. As to its colour, it is both within and without of a deep red, like a Seville orange. The letter (C) points out a branch of it, laden with its fruit. This fruit is medicinal alfo, and when dried is an excellent fryptic. The apothecaries make it up into small cakes, called Trocifichi-Alkekingi, which sometimes are converted into pills, by being previously boiled in water and turpentine mixt; and then they are usually swallowed down by the patients in a glass of wine.

Their Annaeb (as they call it) is a tree of tolerable growth; the fruit whereof resembles the olive before it is ripe, but becomes afterwards as red as a cherry. It has a very pleasant taste, notwithstanding it is made use of medicinally like the former. The letter (D) points out a branch of it; and all the drawings were taken from nature.

The principal fruits that are to be met with in Persia are almonds, piftachio-nuts, and peaches, of which last they have five or fix different forts; some large, others small; some whereof will part from their stones, and some again will not.



Those

Thofe that part with their stones are called Sheff-aloce; and are tinged by the name of thefe; others again are called plumbs, others again are called cos; but the small part of a yellow-coloured fruit, are called Zanz-loe.

As to cherries, this is abundant with them; the cherries, which are like apricots, and of which the kernels are diffing the Giulas; and the latter are called bale.

[illegible]

Those that part with their stones readily are called Sheft-aloë; the others are distinguished by the name of Hoe-loe; some of these are covered with a blue like plums; others again are much like apricots; but the small ones are for the most part of a yellowish hue.

They have ten or a dozen forts of their apricots; each of which has a name peculiar to itself; but in general they are called Zarda-loe.

As to cherries, this country does not abound with them; they have some few; however, which are like those in (f) Spain; and the rest like black morellas; the former are distinguished by the name of Gielas; and the latter are called the Aloe-baloë.

The Perfians have, however, apples in plenty of divers forts; to which, in general, they give the name of fien; they have pears likewise; and thofe too, of various kinds, and the Bergamot,

amongst others, winter-pears, and summer-pears; some of which are exceedingly large; as are some of their Bergamots just mentioned which will keep good all the year round.

They have plums likewise in abundance, and of these too four several sorts and different colours; namely, white, red, blue and yellow. They eat the white plums, before they are well half ripe with salt; but their blue ones are the very same as the Brignoles in (g) France.

They have quince-trees, moreover, of three different sorts, the fruit whereof is exceedingly agreeable, and eaten as apples or pears. These the natives call their De-bée. They are for the most part very large, and as proper for preserving, as to be eaten directly from the tree. They have likewise walnuts and small nuts in abundance.

**They have plenty likewise of pomegranate-trees, the fruit whereof is very delicious and refreshing. some of these trees, however, bear no fruit at all, and produce a large red flower only, not much unlike a poppy. some of these trees have their leaves streaked with white, and make a beautiful appearance; others again are per-**

fectly yellow. My curiosity induced me to paint several of them in their proper colours, as the reader will find them drawn in plate (g8) And in plate (g9) I have given him a representation of a very pretty tree; the branches whereof bend down to the very ground: This is called the Biede-Makalagie, and the leaves of it, are long, fine and thin.

Their figs, are but small; and besides, they are all of one sort.

As to their grapes, they have ten or a dozen sorts of them; which are called, in general, their Angoer; notwithstanding each sort has a name peculiar to itself. As to their colours, some sorts are blue, others white; and as to their form or shape, some are long and others round. All of them, however, are very large. some again, quite different from any I ever met with in my travels before. Great quantities of these are dried annually, and, then converted into comfits; thus prepared they close them up in little earthen pots, and send them to Batavia and the parts adjacent.

The method they observe in the potting them is this; in the first place they are very curious, in their choice of the finest fruit; then they put them in a neat stone-jar, and cover them with rose leaves; after that, they cover the mouth of the pot with substantial paper, or thin leather, in so close a manner, that no air can gain admittance; when they have proceeded thus far, they let them stand untouched for some days; after which they break the neck of the jar, or vessel, and take away the rose-leaves; and separate the grapes; which when sufficiently dry, they put them into a fresh jar, and then send them to such markets either far or near as they see most convenient. The rose-leaves are spread over them with no other view than to give them an agreeable flavour: but in the removal of them particular care is always taken that none are left behind, for fear they should in time have a bad effect on

4 M the # THE TRAVELS OF

the fruit. At the same time that they send these their potted grapes away to foreign parts, they export their almonds and pistachio-nuts to the (7) Indies, from whence they receive sweet-meats and other dainties in exchange.

There is as great a profusion of plants and roots in Persia, as there is of their fruits.

They have no less than five and twenty different sorts of melons; they are called, indeed, Garbie-fa, in general, notwithstanding each has a name peculiar to itself. They are all, however, excellent in their kind. Some are so large, as to weigh twenty pounds apiece; which all the year round are kept up, in such cool and close places, but more especially in the summer-time, as that the rays of the sun can have no influence over them. And for that purpose they take care to have a sufficient quantity of snow by them, which they have the art of condensing into ice for the refreshment of their wines. These large melons are called Garbie-fai-belgiens. The first melons that make their appearance are for the most part perfectly white; and though more wholesome than the rest yet they are but little regarded as they are unpalatable and insipid.

They have plenty, moreover, of water-melons. There are no less than four or five sorts of these; some white and others red; the name by which they are distinguished is the Hindoen.

They abound, likewise, with what they call their small citruls; some whereof are streaked with green and black, and strike the eye agreeably enough; others again are marbled with a variety of colours; and are much of the size of a china orange. The reader will find that I have given him in the Plate (100) hereto annexed, an exact representation of this last fruit; together with some sorts of their peaches; and another fruit in particular, which they call Chamama; that is to say, of the form of a woman's breast; and as

to its colour of a lively red. I have preserved the stone or seed of this fruit, and a bunch of those particular grapes, which I before hinted

were uncommon; and not all on a fine, though on one and the same Turk.

Perfia produces likewise, in great plenty, all sorts of carrots, beetroots, and parsnips, radishes, horse-radish, turnips, topinambers, mushrooms, and coly-flowers of an extraordinary bulk; some whereof will weigh between twelve and fourteen pounds apiece; they have favours also of asparagus, artichokes, celery, leeks, onions, shallots, water-cresses, dragon-wort, parsley, chervil, mint, coriander, aniseed, fennel, purflane, marjoram, sage, borage, cabbage-lattice, and fennel; as also roman lettuce, which has a long leaf, and is eaten by the Perfians, as apples, in the hand; this root in particular is exceedingly sweet, and perfectly agreeable to the taste: neither is there the least want either of rue or spinach.

I shall now proceed to a further account of their flowers. This country produces tulips and carnations in abundance; but then they are not to be boasted of for their beauty. The Perfians have likewise their lilies, their tube-roses, the narcissus, and several sorts of jonquils; their hyacinth, the marvel of (x) Peru, the mallow, the sun-flower, the musk-flower, violets and marigolds; most of which, as their own are but very indifferent, are brought to Perfia, from (l) Europe. They have moreover, the flowers of saffron, of all sorts; though the finest come from (m) Mafanderan. notwithstanding both white and red roses are very common there; yet they make large quantities of rose water, which are sent away to India, and other foreign parts. Notwithstanding such exportation their home-consumption of it is very considerable; for the Perfians are great admirers of perfumes; and never fail to sprinkle their guests, at any public entertainment with this sweet-scented innocent liquors, as it leaves no stain behind it.

They have also two sorts of jessamine. The best bears a near resemblance to the same flower in (n) Italy with respect to form; but then there is a wide difference in point of smell. The other is more common, # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

mon, and runs up some trees to a great height; but it seems to embrace the fennel-tree with more affection than any other. Nothing can strike the eye in a more agreeable manner.

Besides all that has been hitherto mentioned, Perfia abounds with all the necessary articles of life, and particularly with a great variety of poultry both wild and tame. There you may purchase a fine fat hen for six-pence, a pullet for four-pence, and a partridge for a shilling. Of these indeed, some are not much bigger than a quail, or a pigeon. A wild duck there may be bought for about seven-pence or eight-pence, and other fowl in proportion. Their

capons are excessively fat, and scarce; and indeed few purchase them, unless they have an intention to make presents of them to any much respected friend.

They have snipes and woodcocks likewise in plenty; several sorts of wild ducks, teal, cranes, wood-pigeons, turtles, larks, thrushes, and partridges, the heads whereof are all red. These last are only to be taken either by the hawk, or to be shot flying.

Though the Perfians abound in cattle yet every kind of deer is scarce and costly enough. You may buy good beef for about three half-pence a pound; but as few Perfians of any substance will eat it, almost all that is killed is carried to (o) Julpha, and fold there amongst the Christians. The price of mutton and goats flesh is much the same, in the summer season; but as the winter approaches it grows dearer. In this country there are abundance of wolves and foxes; but then they are very small.

Their bread, and wheat, for the most part, is sold for about three farthings a pound, and their barley, if not winnowed, may be purchased cheaper. Rice, indeed, is commonly about two pence a pound.

The Perfians, as they have no oats, feed their horses with barley; they have Spanish wheat, however, in plenty, which they dress before it is ripe; and after they have sprinkled it over with salt water, they cry it about the streets as common as any other commodity.

The butter, which they make use of in their sauces, &c., is generally sold after the rate of a florin for two pounds; but their fresh butter, indeed, which is exceedingly good, will bear a better price.

The oil, which is used there generally for the same purposes, is made of the feed of what they call the Kousjae, and bears a near resemblance to our European olive oil; but the smell of it, indeed, is much stronger. The price is usually about five farthings a pound. They have another sort, however, extracted from the feed which they call the Kousjit, which is double, much better; but then it is double the price.

Maize-feed, which by the East Indians is called Kajang, is much in vogue, and frequently made use of in their sauces; Perfia produces, moreover, great plenty of red and white beans; but then they are small, and bear some resemblance to those in Turkey, as also of white and grey peas, small black beans with which they feed their horses, and green peas of the growth of Europe.

Wood in this country is very scarce and very dear. You cannot purchase twelve pounds of it only, under four-pence or five-pence; and coals in proportion bear the same heavy price.

For which reason, the poorer part of the inhabitants make use of the dung of their camels, horses, cows, &c., when well dried, for their firing, instead of wood, or coals: nay the Armenian merchants themselves at Julpha make use of the same expedient; for otherwise their firing would be more expensive than their victuals. As to their turf, indeed, or camels dung, it is reasonable enough; for they can have two thousand weight of it for about thirty-pence. This camel's dung is chiefly made use of for heating their ovens, in which they bake most of their meat in this country, which is attended with very little trouble and but a small expense. The general use that is made of this camel's dung, and all other turf of the like nature, contributes not a little to the cleanliness of their high-ways, or common-roads, which are free to be cleansed from all such kind of # THE TRAVELS OF

of filth not only for the purpose of firing as above-mentioned, but for the cultivation likewise of their lands. Nay some of the poorer fort will apply human ordure to the same use.

They have a particular root, called rugnas, which I had almost forgot to mention. This is the same which the Indians call Solyman-doftyn, and this they find in the province of Shirwan, and in the parts adjacent to the city of (p) Tauris, or Tabis.

They carry on a great trade to the Indies with this single commodity, where one year with another, they send no less than three hundred packs of it, each pack containing one hundred and fifty pounds weight and upwards. Twelve pounds of it, bare weight, which they call the Man-fha, is for the most part, worth twelve Mamedjies, which is equivalent to five florins or two rixdollars.

They send likewise, to the Indies from Tauris before-mentioned, and from (g) Cafbin, or Cafwin, one year with another, seven or eight hundred hampers of what they call Zernig, that is to say orpiment, or auripigmentum. Each of these hampers contain about one hundred and fifty pounds weight, or better; and each pound, according to its degree of goodness, is worth from three quarters of a crown to three half crowns. This orpiment is much used by the Persian painters; but it is appropriated, however, to divers other purposes. They send great quantities of it, likewise, if I am not mistaken, into Turkey.

Moreover, this country produces a very precious drug, to which some of the Persians themselves are perfect strangers. It is a sort of gum, which they call mummy, and find it in some certain ruins and grotts near the city of Laer, or Lahor. It is soft, and as black as pitch; but has a much more agreeable smell, and drops from the rocks. That which affords the best is locked and sealed up: and no one except the governor of the city himself, and some few of the

grandees are permitted to go in, and collect a part of it for the king's use. And as all of them together do not collect above eight or ten ounces of it throughout

the year, it muft of courfe be a very feare and valuable commodity.

This gum is a fovereign specific where any bone happens to be broken; and fuch is its fecret virtue, as I have been affured by adepts in medicine, that though a man's bones should be ever fo unfortunately bruifed or even broken, it will give the patient relief in the compafs only of four and twenty hours. For this purpofe they melt a little pile of this gum, about the bigneſs of a pea in a ſpoon, and mix it up with butter. This the patient is ordered to take inwardly, in the firſt place, and then to apply the fame quantity, or rather more to the part affected, or in proportion, according as the caſe requires: and for a broken leg, they uſe flints, and then bind it tight about with a linen roller.

The diſcovery of this very valuable medicine is aſcribed to a ſportſman, who had broken the leg of a flag, which notwithstanding made itſcape. This ſportſman, as the ſtory was related, returning to the chace the very next day, ſhot, as he imagined, at another flag, but was much ſurprized, when he found it was the identical creature whoſe leg he had broken the day before; and more ſo, when he perceived that the wound was almoſt cured.

This report being indutfriouſly ſpread abroad, the fuddenefs of the cure was at once aſcribed to the virtue of this mummy, as the affair was tranſacted near the ſpot where this healing elixir drops. Many experiments on other wounds was made afterwards with this gum, and had always the defired effect, which was fufficient doublets to eſtabliſh its reputation.

The Perfians find another fort of this gum in the province of Loreftan, which answers the fame happy end, indeed, but then its virtue is not ſo conſpicuous, nor is the wound ſo fuddenly healed. The difference between theſe two fort of gums is known immediately by putting a ſmall quantity of each on a red hot coal: the ſmoke of the former has a very pleafant ſmell, whereas that of the latter favours greatly of pitch: the moſt convincing proof, however, is procured by breaking the leg of a fowl, and then by making an im- # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

immediate application of the gum as above directed. This experiment has frequently been made. In a word, as this mummy, or gum, is wholly and ſolely the property of his majeſty, and as the produce of it is ſo very ſmall, it is not eaſy to be procured, much leſs to be purchased.

Thoſe, however, into whoſe hands this pretious commodity is entrusted, do ſome-

## Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

1. Perfla, fee p. 64. n. o.
2. Turky, fee p. 203. n. e.
3. Cyprus, (the island of) fee p. 109. n. l.
4. Ifaphan, or Spahawn, fee p. 109. n. m.
5. Holland, fee p. 76. n. c.
6. Spain, fee p. 283. n. p.
7. France, fee p. 214. n. m.
8. Batavia, fee p. 314. n. o.
9. India, (proper) fee p. 213. n. d.
10. Peru, formerly a powerful empire, now a province of Spain in fourth America, is situate between sixty and eighty one degrees of west long, and between the equator and twenty five degrees of south lat. being near two thousand miles in length, from north to south, and from two hundred to five hundred broad; bounded by Popayan on the north, by the mountains of Andes, or Cordilleras, which separate it from the country of the Amazons and Paraguay, on the east, by Chili, and La Placenta on the fourth, and by the Pacific Ocean on the west. The capital city now is Lima, formerly Cufco. The land next the fea is high; the fierras, or mountains, beyond which, run parallel to the former, are still higher, and the Andes, beyond thefe, are the highest mountains in the world. The land near the fea is, for the most part, a barren desert, except some valleys, into which they turn the streams from the hills; the hills beyond, alfo, are generally barren; but between the hills are very extensive, fruitful valleys, yielding almost all manner of grain and fruits; and

times fend a small quantity of it privately to a prime-minifter, or fo; by way of present.

That of Loreftan may with lefs difficulty be procured; as there are larger quantities of it in that province; and I flatter my felf, if I am not greatly deceived, that I have some of the former as well as the latter.

the weather temperate. The mountains of the Andes are cold, being covered with snow the greatest part of the year.



The fea, which borders on Peru, is called the South Sea, but more properly the Pacific Ocean, from the constant ferene weather on this coast from four degrees fourth lat. to twenty five. Nor is there ever any rain on this coast, or the fea near it, unless within four or five degrees of the line, where they have always rain, when the fun is vertical, as in other parts of the globe near the line: on the fierras, or hills, distant from the fea-side, the rains fall when the fun is vertical alfo; and on the cordeleros, or high mountains, farther from the fea, it rains or snows, two thirds of the year. Their vintage is in the fair fealon, and their vines thrive best in those valleys near the fea, where there is little or no rain, and which are watered by rivulets that fall from the hills, and are collected by the husbandman, and turned into his fields and gardens. Near the equator there grow cedars, cotton-trees, coccas, sugar-canes, palms, and a great deal of good timber; but very few forest-trees in any other part of Peru. The most valuable tree the natives have, is that which furnishes them with Kinguina, or peruvian bark; and this grows chiefly in the province of Quito, on the mountains, near the city of Quito, about five degrees fourth of the Equator, and is of the size of a cherry-tree, bearing a long, reddish flower, from whence arises a pod with a kernel like an almond; but the fruit does not seem to have the like virtues as the bark; they have trees, alfo, that afford this kind of bark in Potofi, in one and twenty degrees fourth lat. Maiz, or Indian corn, was their principal food; and of this alfo they made drink; but the Spaniards have introduced wheat and barley, which they thrive very well here; and their vineyards, which they have planted, yield plenty of grapes, where they can be watered; # THE TRAVELS OF

but the country is so hot and dry, that the foil will produce no grapes where it is not watered. They have ripe grapes whenever they please, where they have an opportunity of watering them, by turning rivulets into their grounds; they make excellent wines, which cannot be done in any other country between the Tropics. The Spaniards have planted almost all the fruits which grow in old Spain; and these thrive very well here, as well as rice, and the produce of the kitchen-garden. A great many excellent balms, gums and drugs, alo found here, and particularly that, called the balm of Peru. But what the Spaniards value this country for most, is the prodigious treasures of gold and silver they have drawn from thence for two hundred years past: from the mountain of Potohi alone, which lies in twenty two degrees of fourth lat. there was drawn two thousand millions of pieces of eight, the first forty years they were wrought; there are also rich mines of quicksilver in Peru, and some precious stones; particularly emeralds, and turquoises. As to animals, there were not in Peru, or any part of America, any horses, cows, elephants, camels, affes, mules, sheep or hogs; and but one poor species of cur-dogs, before the Spaniards arrived; but they have since carried over all manner of European animals almost, which are exceedingly multiplied: but they had a breed of animals, which the natives call pacos, and guanacas, and the Spaniards peruvian sheep; because they bore

some resemblance to our European sheep, but larger, and used to carry burdens, having no other beasts of burden; their flesh also is very good meat. They had another beast called vicunas, which the Spaniards named goats, because they were something like our goats; but they have no horns, and are swifter than deer; they had also red and fallow deer, and some few lions, bears and tygers; but neither so large, or so fierce as those of Europe; and there were great numbers of monkeys; but they had neither cats nor rats,

though the last have multiplied so much since the Spaniards came over, that they sometimes destroy their crops of grain in Peru, as they do in the island of St. Helena; nor were there any tame fowls or poultry here, till they were imported. They had all manner of wild fowl almost, and a great variety of birds, particularly parrots, and a fowl called a coodwer, so large, that they measured fifteen or sixteen feet, with their wings extended: these would kill and devour cattle, and sometimes children of ten or eleven years of age; but there are few of these fowls.

The Peruvians were idolaters, and worshipped the sun chiefly; but the Spaniards have compelled them to turn Christians, and professed another kind of idolatry, on pain of the inquisition; many thousands of them were murdered by the Spaniards, after their arrival, on pretence of their infidelity, and refusing to submit to the pope, or the king of Spain; but, in reality, to become masters of their treasure, and usurp the dominion of the country, where to this day the Spaniards oppress and tyrannize, not only over those that are defended from the Indians, but the Crioli, who are defended from the Spaniards themselves.

1. Europe, fee p. 127. n. dd.
2. Mafanderan, fee p. 301. n. k.
3. Italy, fee p. 210. n. m.
4. Julpha, or Julpha, fee p. 262. n. x.
5. Tauris, or Tabris, fee p. 242. n. i.
6. Cafbin, or Cafwin, east long. 48. lat. 36, a city of the province of EyraC Agem in Per-fia, in Asia, situate 180 miles north of Ispahan.
7. Laer, or Lahor, fee p. 210. n. i.

CHAP. # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

## CHAP. XLVI.

A succinct Account of the Town, or Suburb of (a) Julpha. Of the Habits, or Drefi, of the Natives of (b) Armenia. Of the Customs observed by them at Births, Marriages and Burials. Of their peculiar Way of Life, and the Manner in which they educate their Children. Of the Natives of (c) Europe, who reside in the City. And lastly, of such Ministers as attend at the Court of (d) Persia, in the Name of their Christian Masters, for the Transaction of their public Affairs.

The town, or suburb of Julpha, near (e) Ispahan, is divided into several parts, or districts; but more particularly into the old and new colony: the former, which is distinguished by the name of Soeg-ga, is inhabited by the most substantial merchants; and we are informed, that their ancestors reforted thither from very remote parts, and even from the frontiers of (f) Turkey, in the reign of King Abbas the Great; and that that prince affigned over some certain lands to them for their better maintenance and support.

They tell us likewise, that the Gowres, who were the ancient disciples of Zoroaster, settled there also, together with some particular strangers, of whom we shall speak more largely in the prosecution of these our travels.

New Julpha is situated higher up, and subdivided into divers districts. The first division is that called Gaif-rabat, or Koets, which is full of stone-cutters, whose principal employ is the erection of stone edifices and sepulchral monuments. The second is principally inhabited by weavers, and artificers in stuffs; most of them Persians, tho' there are some few natives of (g) France amongst them. The third is called Toeft, or Sampha-baet. This district belongs to the old colony, and is inhabited partly by mechanics, and partly by merchants. The fourth is called Eriwan, which is full of people in low and neccessary circumstances. The fifth, sixth, and seventh are called Nagt-fiewaen, Siachfa-baen, and Kaffket-fe. These three likewise are full of the same low class of people, and are distinguished by no other names than those of the several districts to which they particularly belong.

Old Julpha is of much larger extent than all the other districts put together, and contains about two thousand families; some of which are exceeding rich, and others very substantial merchants. They have their own Kalantaer, as they call him, that is, their burgo-maester, or chief magistrate, and others, whom they call Betgoedaes, that is to say, heads, or chief superintendants over their respective districts, who act as judges, and pass final sentence in all common causes; but such cases as are of great importance are referred for the decision either of his majesty

himself, or some of his council of state; and after their final sentence, indeed, they are carried into execution by the before mentioned Kalantær, and heads of the districts.

Old Julpha is the right and property of his majesty's grand-mother, whom they distinguish by the name of Nawaf-ali, which is a title that the king frequently confers on persons of high birth and distinction: all the other districts, however, above particularly taken notice of, are under the jurisdiction of their Nagaf-bahi, as  
# CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

and other figures of note; some drest in Perian habits, and others in such as are worn in (t) Spain; each at a proper distance one from the other. On the roof, which was flat, there was a fine terrace; from whence there is the most delightful prospect that eyes 'ere beheld; and king Abbas the Great, when living, used frequently to amuse himself on that terrace. The next house I went to was that called Hodfhe-agamact, which is almost as lofty, and as elegantly decorated as any of the former: this has a very beautiful apartment that looks into the street; it has likewise, spacious windows, and a fine terrace over it. The two next houses, distinguished by the names of Hodfhe-Ovannis, and Hodfhe-Murfa, some in no respect inferior to the former. Some of these houses have an elegant marble fountain, with a cascade either in their best apartment or before the door.

All these several houses are exceedingly neat, and very carefully kept; the floors of each room were covered with rich carpets, and the chairs in them adorned with cushions of gold and silver brocade. The front-gate of most of these houses are purposely very small, and so contrived partly to prevent the Persians from riding into them on horse-back; and partly to conceal their grandeur and magnificence within. The principal streets of this town are decorated with fine fena-trees, which are regularly planted on each side.

The Armenians, in regard to their dress, differ but very little from the Persians; it must be acknowledged, however, that they are not altogether so neat, neither are their turbants so prettily plaited. Besides, they are not indulged in wearing those after the Persian mode, nor with appearing in green slippers.

As for such of the Armenian women as are ladies of distinction; they generally wear, like the Persian women, a half-band upon their foreheads, embellished with pearls and pretious stones. Under this band they were a golden chambara, richly decorated, which is about two fingers in breadth; and down the sides of their cheeks, they have a score at least of golden ducats, and other decorations, or trinkets, enriched with pearls. This chambara comes underneath their chins; and the lower part of their face from the nose, is covered with a veil, which they fasten behind their heads. They wear another veil likewise, besides this, about

their necks; the ends whereof are embroidered with gold and silver. This also is fastened behind the head; and neither of these, when they appear in public, are taken off. They have still a third, which is embroidered, likewise, and covers their necks, and is thrown over the two former. This too is fastened to their heads, and falls down to the bottom of their upper vestments; which for the generality are of gold brocades, and lined with fables. Their under-garments are of flowered stuffs; and they have a third short vestment, that but just reaches to their knees. Their shifts are made of embroidered taffata, or some other rich stuffs; and are somewhat shorter than their upper vestments. Under these shifts, they wear drawers, of a fine striped fatin, with bufkins, or boots, after the Persian fashion, and flippers, either yellow or red; for they are not indulged in wearing of green ones, any more than the men. Their girdles are made of thin plates of gold, or silver embossed, and are for the most part about four or five fingers in breadth; and under this, they wear a silk one with a buckle; for the rest, some of these ladies have their girdles fet with pretious stones. They wear generally two or three gold chains about their necks; by one whereof hang small boxes of perfumes, and by another, a great number of ducats. To these chains, they add a coral necklace; and to every third bead, they hang either a fingle, or a double ducat. They wear likewise golden bracelets, and rings in plenty on all their fingers. In summer time, instead of the furred gown, they wear a shorter vestment without sleeves, which scarcely falls down to their knees. The reader may see the representation of one of these gay ladies, thus richly drest, in the Plate (No. 101). # THE TRAVELS OF

The maidens dress much after the same manner as the married women, their veils only excepted; the former wearing two; namely, one which covers the greatest part of their face, and a second that hides their necks and breasts; whereas the latter wear only the left. As to the rest they wear a kind of diadem upon their foreheads; embroidered with gold and silver, and inlaid with pearls, or pretious stones.

In a word, when the Armenian women make their appearance in public, they differ in nothing material from the Persian ladies, but this; namely, they are indifferently obliged to conceal their faces with some part of their cloaths, which they hold up with their right-hands for that very purpose.

It is high time, however, to drop this topic, and proceed to the particular ceremonies, observed here at births, marriages, and deaths.

Whenever one of these ladies is brought to bed, her first care is, to find a proper godfather; and after the expiration of some few days, the midwife or nurse carries the new-born babe to church, in order to have it baptized. Accordingly, the priest, during the whole ceremony, pronouncing a certain form of words, in much

the same manner as ours do in Europe. After this, the babe is anointed with holy oil, first upon the head, then on the mouth; then again on the breast, the neck, the hands, and feet; after this thorough unction, the infant is wrapped up again in its swaddling cloaths, and conveyed to the altar, where the eucharist, or sacrament, is crammed into his mouth.

When this ceremony is over, he delivers it to the godfather; who covers it with a stuff-mantle, provided by him for that purpose at his own expense. When they have gone thus far, the company return, preceded by several priests, each holding a crofs in one hand, and a taper in the other,

and finging some portion of the gospel to the found of the instrumental music. In this manner, the godfather follows the procession to the house where the child's parents reside; holding likewise a lighted taper in each hand; and after he has delivered up his little godson into his mother's arms, the remainder of the day is devoted to mirth and gaiety amongst the friends and relations.

The same godfather for the most part, stands for all the children, be they more or less; and if a child happens to be born within a few days either of Easter, or their grand festival of baptizing the crofs, the parents are obliged to have the infant baptized on the same day.

There is one circumstance in this ceremony that is too remarkable to be omitted; and that is, that neither this godfather, nor any of his near relations, can marry with any of those belonging to the infant to the third or fourth degree of consanguinity. And when it happens that a girl and a boy of two different families have been represented by the same godfather, even they are prohibited from intermarrying with each other.

The ceremonies observed at their marriages have something in them very peculiar, and whimsical enough: the parties never run through a formal time of courtship, as is customary in most European countries; but the parents, on each side, are the match-makers, and the marriage articles, as by them settled and adjusted, are held good and valid, and never disputed by the bridegroom or his bride. The former on his wedding-day, hires a band of music, and invites some of his most intimate friends and acquaintances to his house; and each guest has a taper put into his hand by a proper domestic or attendant. In the midst of this, a whole group of young girls make their appearance in the street and dance to some cheerful tune, played by haut-boys, accompanied with drums, who are followed by women in years, laden with rich wearing apparel, pearls, and pretious stones. As soon as these dancers are got to the bridegroom's place of abode, they fasten a crofs of green fatting upon his breast; and after that the

Their marriage ceremonies.

---

men and women  
who are of the  
same nation, or  
at least who  
have been  
educated  
together, and  
who, by mutual  
consent and  
agreement,  
have come to  
the same age,  
are allowed to  
marry each  
other, and the  
parents never  
object to it.

When the whole  
company have  
returned to the  
bridegroom's  
house, they all  
present  
themselves to  
him and his  
relations, and  
each takes a  
place by the  
side of the table,  
where they  
remain until the  
wedding-feast is  
over.

And as the  
wedding-feast  
draws to a  
close, the  
bridegroom and  
bride are  
brought before  
the parents of  
both families,  
and the  
ceremony of the  
marriage is  
performed. The  
bridegroom  
takes the bride  
by the hand,

and leads her to the altar, where they are joined together by the priest, who pronounces the words of the marriage.

After the marriage is performed, the bridegroom and bride take their places at the table, where they are seated by their respective parents, and the feast begins.

And as the feast is going on, the bridegroom and bride are served by the guests, who, in turn, are served by the priests and other attendants.

And as the feast is drawing to a close, the bridegroom and bride are brought before the parents of both families, and the ceremony of the marriage is performed. The bridegroom takes the bride by the hand, and leads her to the altar, where they are joined together by the priest, who pronounces the



words of the  
marriage.

After the  
marriage is  
performed, the  
bridegroom and  
bride take their  
places at the  
table, where  
they are seated  
by their  
respective  
parents, and the  
feast begins.

And as the feast  
is going on, the  
bridegroom and  
bride are served  
by the guests,  
who, in turn, are  
served by the  
priests and  
other  
attendants.

And as the feast  
is drawing to a  
close, the  
bridegroom and  
bride are  
brought before  
the parents of  
both families,  
and the  
ceremony of the  
marriage is  
performed. The  
bridegroom  
takes the bride  
by the hand,  
and leads her to  
the altar, where  
they are joined  
together by the  
priest, who  
pronounces the  
words of the  
marriage.

After the  
marriage is  
performed, the

bridegroom and  
bride take their  
places at the  
table, where  
they are seated  
by their  
respective  
parents, and the  
feast begins.

And as the feast  
is going on, the  
bridegroom and  
bride are served  
by the guests,  
who, in turn, are  
served by the  
priests and  
other  
attendants. #  
CORNELIUS LE  
BRUN.

men and women  
who are invited  
to the solemnity  
withdraw into  
separate  
apartments,  
where they are  
entertained in a  
very elegant  
manner, with  
conferves, and a  
profusion of all  
forts of liquors.  
Then the  
apparel  
belonging to the  
married couple  
are delivered to  
them in two  
distinct baskets;  
together with  
some trinkets of  
but small value,  
in order to be  
made prefents  
of to the young  
people who  
make a part of  
their guests.  
After these

distributions,  
the priest  
pronounces a  
formal blessing  
on the wedding-  
cloaths, which,  
when over, the  
intended pair  
retire to put  
them on. The  
bridegroom,  
thus gayly  
equipped, takes  
a set of his  
friends, with  
two or three of  
his nearest  
relations, along  
with him to his  
spouse's  
apartment,  
where he is  
received, or  
congratulated  
by her father or  
brother, or some  
other near  
relation, who,  
after a few  
wholesome  
admonitions, in  
regard to the  
conjugal state,  
add their  
warmest wishes  
for their mutual  
health and  
happiness. The  
young maidens  
before-  
mentioned,  
then, after  
another cross of  
red fatten on the  
bridegroom, and  
the women  
bring him a  
handkerchief,  
one corner  
whereof he is to  
take hold of, and  
the bride of the

other. Now the  
bride is covered  
with an  
embroidered  
veil through  
which you may  
notwithstanding  
see all her fine  
cloaths, and her  
face is covered  
with red taffaty,  
which hangs  
down to her  
very feet. And in  
this maf-  
querading-drefs  
(if I may be  
allowed the  
expression) she  
is accompanied  
by a great  
number of  
women,  
disguised after  
much the same  
manner, whilst  
the bridegroom  
is preceded by  
all the men; and  
thus in a kind of  
procession, they  
go to church;  
each with a  
lighted taper in  
his hand. When  
the whole  
company are  
got in, the  
relations take  
the  
handkerchief  
away from the  
bridegroom; and  
then each of  
them repairs to  
the feat  
assigned him.  
As soon as mafs  
is begun, the  
father  
confessors  
appear, before

whom the young  
couple are  
catechized in  
form; after  
which they go  
up to the altar,  
where the priest  
address himself  
first to the  
bridegroom, in  
words to this or  
the like effect;  
Will you have  
this woman,  
thus offered you  
to be your wife?  
Will you honour  
and cherith her,  
whatever  
casualties may  
attend her  
hereafter? Will  
you comfort and  
take care of her,  
in case, in time  
to come, she  
shall happen to  
be either blind,  
lame, or  
otherwife  
afflicted in  
mind, body, or  
estate? When  
the man has  
answered in the  
affirmative, he  
turns to the  
woman, and  
asks her the  
very same  
questions. As  
soon as she has  
answered yes  
likewise, the  
priest joins their  
hands, and after  
that their heads;  
which one of the  
bridesmen bind  
close together  
with a  
handkerchief,

and then he  
covers them  
with a crofs. In  
the mean time  
they read over  
the office for the  
occasion, and  
say the  
customary  
prayers: when  
those are  
concluded, the  
priest takes off  
the crofs again;  
and administers  
to them what  
they call the  
sacrament of  
the altar; and  
then every one  
retires to his  
own place. As  
soon as mafs is  
over, they go in  
procession  
home from  
church; the  
priests walking  
before the new  
married couple,  
accompanied  
with their band  
of music, hired  
for the purpose,  
the bridegroom  
and bride still  
continuing to  
have the  
handkerchief  
above-  
mentioned  
round their  
necks, and  
being followed  
by their friends  
whom they  
invited. No  
sooner are they  
arrived at the  
bridegroom's  
door, but they  
are prefented

with a large  
bowl full of  
herbet, with  
which they  
entertain, not  
only all the  
priests, but all  
their guests in  
general, each of  
whom is  
perfumed, or  
sprinkled with  
rose-water,  
which is taken  
out of a silver  
pot. After this,  
the men and the  
women are  
conducted to  
their separate  
apartments in  
expectation of  
their dinner;  
which, when  
ready, is served  
up at different  
tables, the men  
sitting at one,  
and the women  
at the other.  
This  
entertainment is  
placed upon a  
large carpet,  
spread upon the  
floor, on which  
they sit,  
according to the  
mode or custom  
of the orientals.  
They are all  
served with  
conferves, and a  
variety of the  
choicest liquors,  
in the first  
place, and  
afterwards with  
plenty of  
different viands.

There is one  
circumstance,  
however, that  
the reader  
ought to have  
been before  
acquainted with,  
and that is,  
when the  
bridegroom and  
the bride have  
received the #  
THE TRAVELS  
OF

the sacrament  
of the altar, they  
are kept from  
each other's  
company for  
three or four  
days  
successively;  
but in case the  
sacrament has  
not been  
administered to  
them, then the  
company  
conduct them  
the very same  
night to the  
bridal bed-  
chamber, and  
after they have  
perfumed them  
with a little  
rose-water,  
withdraw, and  
leave them to  
their own  
private  
conversation.

Some few days  
after  
confirmation of  
the nuptials, the  
parents produce  
whatever they  
had promised  
for her dower,  
which confits,



for the most  
part, in apparel,  
gold, silver,  
pearls, and  
precious stones,  
in proportion to  
their substance  
and condition.  
To these  
valuable  
commodities  
they add  
likewise a great  
variety of sweet-  
meats and the  
choicest fruits,  
which are  
brought in fine  
wooden pails,  
accompanied  
with a proper  
band of music,  
as has been  
before hinted  
with respect to  
the Persians.

This ceremony,  
however, is  
sometimes  
postponed till  
the birth of the  
first child, and,  
in that case, a  
cradle and all  
other requisites  
for the  
accommodation  
of the infant are  
added to the  
sweet-meats,  
&c. Sometimes,  
indeed, the  
bridegroom and  
bride go to  
church on  
horse-back, and  
return from  
thence in the  
same manner.  
Moreover, on  
some particular

occasions, these nuptials are solemnized in a very private manner, in the dead of night, and in the presence only of two or three of their nearest relations.

Of all the customs, however, that are observed amongst the Armenians, no one appears more uncommon, or fantastical to me, than that of giving away their children in marriage during their very infancy; inasmuch that there are but few of them single after ten or twelve years of age at most. Nay, sometimes the parents betroth them, in form, before they are ten months old; and it is no uncommon thing for marriage-contracts to be made for children even in their mother's womb. And the reason they allege for it is this, that in case

a girl should be  
unmarried, for  
she is in danger  
of being taken  
from her  
parents, and  
locked up in the  
feraglio; a  
misfortune,  
which they  
endeavour to  
prevent by such  
premature  
contracts. There  
are many  
instances,  
however, to be  
produced,  
where parents  
have proved  
disappointed,  
notwithstanding  
this  
extraordinary  
precaution.

As I have, in a  
former part of  
this work, taken  
notice of the  
ceremonies  
observed by  
them at the  
interment of  
their friends  
and relations, I  
have this one  
custom only  
farther to add;  
namely, that on  
these  
melancholy  
occasions, the  
women are  
always present  
as well as the  
men; and that  
their priests and  
deacons chant  
out their funeral  
dirges as they  
walk in

procession.  
There are  
generally four  
bearers, who  
carry the  
deceased upon a  
bier; but they  
have sometimes  
eight, and  
sometimes  
twelve, when  
they have far to  
go, in order to  
relieve each  
other, as  
occasion shall  
require. These  
bearers are  
always persons  
in low  
circumstances,  
and attend for  
hire. The body is  
deposited in the  
grave without  
any coffin, with  
the head raised  
up, in some  
measure, and  
then the priest  
throws earth  
over it three  
several times in  
the form of a  
cross.

When the  
company return  
from the  
funeral, they go  
to the habitation  
of the deceased,  
and are there  
entertained  
both at dinner  
and supper.

Nay, two priests  
and two  
deacons, for  
forty days  
successively go  
every morning

to the grave,  
and there not  
only read over it  
some portion of  
the sacred  
scripture, but  
sing some select  
hymn, extracted  
from the psalms  
of David,  
adapted to that  
melancholy  
occasion. These  
have their daily  
fees for this  
funeral service;  
which are  
higher or lower  
in proportion to  
the  
circumstances  
of the deceased;  
inasmuch that,  
sometimes a  
pompous  
funeral amongst  
them proves  
very expensive.

Notwithstanding  
the Armenians  
are thus over-  
superstitious in  
their  
observance of  
external forms,  
they are still  
most shamefully  
remiss in other  
articles of much  
greater  
importance; but  
more  
particularly in  
what relates to  
the education of  
their children;  
who are  
sometimes  
arrived to the  
age of manhood,

before they are  
able to rehearse

---

Are shamefully remiss in the education of their children. #  
CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

hearfe the Lord's prayer, or the articles of their belief. This, indeed, is not to be fo very much wondered at, considering how early they enter into the matrimonial state: for sometimes they are fathers of children, whilst they are but children themselves; so that, their thoughts being employed about their family-concerns, before they have any opportunities of receiving instruction, 'tis morally impossible for the poorer fort especially to make any considerable improvements. In short, what human probability can there be, that a mother, who has had no manner of instruction herself, should be capable of cultivating the minds of her little infants? And it must be acknowledged, that in cafe a woman amongst them should chance to have any share of wit, genius, or beauty, it is a circumstance extremely uncommon. This observation I have frequently made about my self; but more especially at their funeral solemnities; at which times, there are frequently two or three thousand of them assembled together, who look like such a number of thoughtful matrons, paft all their beauty and bloom, before they have attained even the age of twenty. And this is still the more surprising; because they have the Perfian ladies before their eyes as patterns for their imitation, who are for the most part finely shaped, exceedingly handsome, and free from all affection in their department. Their air, their gait, their drefs, are all perfectly agreeable; there is, in short, a peculiar grace in all their words and actions; and even the manner wherein they adjust their veils, which conceal their charms, has something in it extremely pretty and engaging.

It must be allowed likewife, that the Turkish and Grecian ladies are no ways inferior to the Perfians, in regard to their various attractions; whilst, on the contrary, but very few of the Armenian ladies have any air, gait, or shape, or any other charm to allure you. And what contributes not a little to this misfortune is, the linen with which they conceal their mouths. For by that practice, their cheeks appear to be bloated; but besides, they are women

for the generality, but of low stature, and their shapes are clumsy.

If you meet an Armenian woman in the town of Julpha, she will most assuredly turn her back upon you, which is such a monftrous act of ill manners, that even a Mahomedan woman would blush to be guilty of it: in a word, they are not only rude to strangers, but equally unmannerly, when in company with their neareft relations. In cafe they are offered a glass of wine by a friend, whom they ever so much respect, they no fooner accept of it, but they turn their faces towards the wall, and drink up their liquor, let the glass be ever fo large, or ever fo full. From this referred or

affected department, this uncommon care to conceal themselves from the sight of a man, any one might be apt to imagine, that they are strictly virtuous, and as chaste and cold as so many Dianas; but he that shall make that conclusion, will find himself most grossly mistaken; for too many of them will turn prostitutes for filthy lucre, will dress themselves in men's apparel, and ride on horse-back with their mothers to Ispahan, where they carry on a small clandestine trade, whilst the poor ignorant fool of a husband imagines them proof against all temptation, and himself safe, as he knows they will not unveil their charms to no man living. This was not the case in the days of yore; for Judah, we are told, concluded that Tamar was a harlot, because she covered her face with a veil.

As to the Armenians (of the male sex) their thoughts are wholly taken up in avaricious views, and in making haste to be rich; and when they have hoarded up immense treasures, they are full ambitious of making all the advantages that can possibly arise therefrom. Their thirst after gain is insatiable; without the least regard to any of the social duties of life, or to what is transacting in any other part of the known world.

No country under the sun, in their idle opinions, can stand in competition with Persia; they look upon it as the sole source, or fountain, of all arts and sciences, though they know no more how to form

# THE TRAVELS OF

form an adequate idea, either of the one or the other, than a blind man can distinguish one colour from another. For notwithstanding many of them are very substantial merchants, and travel half the world over in hopes of treasuring up one bag of gold upon another; yet their curiosity never carries them so far as to make any curious enquiries either into nature herself, or the nature and constitution of the very country wherein they reside; neither will they, indeed, take the least pains, or put themselves to the needle's expense (as they call it) of prying into the beauties of Persia itself.

They have no knowledge, but what they gain by hearsay; and I observed, that not one of those Armenians, who were my fellow-travellers, ever attempted, or thought it worth his while, to survey those curiosities, which I fought after with so much affluity and concern. For which reason, whenever I was inclined to gratify my taste that way, I always made my application to strangers, and exerted the strength of my purse with them. Whenever, in short, I consulted them, it was, when I found them in their bazars, or markets, the courtesies of which, it must be allowed, they understand to the utmost perfection. Trade, in a word, is the only thing within the verge of their understanding; but all other articles are absolutely beyond the sphere of their weak comprehension; their minds (as I have hinted before) were never improved by any liberal education. As soon as ever they have

attained the accomplishments of reading and writing, such of their masters as reside at Julpha, fend them on errands; and whenever they either go to, or return from Ifaphan, for the most part, they ride double, on a horfe, a mule, or an afs, which is a custom peculiar to themselves.

When they have dealings with the Perrians, on their market-days; in their little shops, in the city, where they retail cloth by the yard, or even a lefs quantity, they durft not drink wine, or any spirituous liquor whatsoever, for fear they should be

discovered by the smell; inasmuch that they groan under a heavier weight than even the (k) Greeks do under the Grand Signior. And forasmuch as this worfe than (l) Egyptian bondage daily encroaches upon them, it is greatly to be feared, that every privilege, how small soever, will foon be taken from them, unless they shall think proper to turn apostates, and become profelytes to the Mahommedan religion.

And this their unhappy situation must be ascribed in a great measure to the bitter quarrels and debates which rage as it were amongst themselves, not only between some of their bishops, but even their patriarchs, who are at perpetual variance with each other, as well about the economy of the church, as about the articles of its creed. And when these religious differences run high, the Perrians are ever ready to embrace such favourable opportunities for calling them to account, and loading them with fresh fines and intolerable impositions.

Two flagrant instances of this despotic power of the Perrians happened whilst I was resident at Ispahan. If such unhappy discords and diffensions did not so frequently arise amongst them; if they were not such inveterate and implacable enemies one to another, they might accomplish many very valuable and important ends; for they are possessed of immense riches; and high bribes command great favours in this country; but it is impossible to express that enmity and hatred with which they pursue each other; some faint idea however, may be formed of it from an instance to which I myself was a witness.

Two brothers had happened to have some high words about some occurrence in trade, which is (as I have hinted before) the very foul of an Armenian. And the only thing that he understood. A vigorous law-fuit you may be sure, was instantly commenced; and the eldest, who was in the actual possession of the matter in debate, and capable of making rich presents to the judges,

Their reli-gious dif-fentions.



Not a few of the Perrians who had accompanied me to Mecca, in order to the tomb of Mohammed, whilst I was Great numbers of the Perrians who had accompanied me to Mecca, in order to the tomb of Mohammed, whilst I was

The party aff (which time to be blind) upon it, as they declared against him, declared he was blind. And he, though he had the utmost of their esteem, could be of no advantage to him. He would never hear him either again. Could inveterate hatred be ever carried

The elder brother, who with a French lady at (l) left her, and from the two little daughters brought by her there, used to cut out to meet him, and his safe arrival in Per- fingle Armenians think to welcome home, or pligim on his safe return.

So great is the profit of the Mohamme- dian monks (both nature of compelled to embrace # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

judges, did not fail to gain their interest in his favour, and carry the caufe.

The party caft (who happened at that time to be blind) upon fentence being paft against him, declared openly, that he was over-joyed that he had loft his fight; since it would be the greateft mortification that could befall him in this world ever to caft his eyes upon his brother, and that he should think it no affliction to him to be as deaf as he was blind, that he might never hear him either fpeak, or be fspoken of again.

Could inveterate malice and mortal hatred be ever carried to a higher pitch? The elder brother, who had intermarried with a French lady at (m) Paris, where he had left her, and from whence he had brought two little daughters which he had by her there, to beg the favour of his protection against the irreconcilable rage and repentment of his blind brother, who ufed his utmost interest and endeavours to have him fecured under the cuftody of the Mohammedan judges, as he had done once before, and from whose hands he could never poffibly efcape without being moft unmerrily baftonaded.

Not a few of thefe Armenians have already renounced their Christian faith, and embraced the errors of the Mahomedan church, with no other view than to gratify their boundlef thrift after riches, and become favourites at the Perifian court.

One of thefe apoftates in particular, who had accompanied the pilgrims to (n) Mecca, in order to pay his devotions at the tomb of Mohammed, returned from thence, whilst I was refident at Ifpahan. Great numbers of the Armenians went out to meet him,

and congratulate him on his safe arrival in Perfa; whereas not a single Armenian thinks it worth his while to welcome home, or care for a Christian pilgrim on his safe return from (o) Jerufalem.

So great is the power and authority of the Mohammedans in Perfa, that two monks (both natives of (p) Portugal) were compelled to embrace the Mohammedan faith: one in the year 1691, and the other in 1696. The first, whose Christian name was Emanuel, assumed that of Huftein-Celiebek, that is to say, the slave of Huftein, and the other (Anthony by name) was distinguished by the title of Ali-Celiebek, or in other terms, the vassal of Ali.

The convent of these two Portuguese fathers is a very fine, spacious structure, situated in the city; and full of very commodious apartments; there was only one of them, however, resident there, whilst I was at Ispahan, that is to say, father Antonio Defflero, of whom I have given the reader some account in the preceding part of this work.

There are, moreover, two French capuchins, whose convent is likewise situated in the city.

The Carmelites likewise have a very fine convent there, with a spacious garden thereto belonging; there was but one of them however, there, a native of Poland, in my remembrance.

There are, besides there, two others, whether natives of France or (q) Denmark, I cannot peremptorily determine, who came thither from Rome, and live in a little habitation together in Julpha; and there are four Jesuits also, who have erected a little chapel, after the (r) Italian mode, in that town, at their own expence, together with a very fine house and gardens at but a very small distance from it.

Besides these, there are three Dominicans, who have lately erected a new chapel at their own expence.

There are several other Europeans, moreover, resident at Julpha. Though most of them, indeed, are natives of France, yet there are three in the town, who were born at (s) Geneva; their names were Siorde, De Finot, and Bafar; the first was a goldsmith by profession, but, the other two dealt in watches and clocks. There are two physicians likewise in the town; one Hermét by name, a Frenchman. The other a native of (t) Smyrna. All the above-named Europeans, De Finot only excepted, are married to Armenians of mean extraction, and can scarcely get a lively- # THE TRAVELS OF

1794

livelyhood by their labour; for there is little or no business in Perfa (as I have hinted before) for such as are strangers.

The Perfians, indeed, have several very able and experienced physicians; as also adepts in the mathematics amongst themselves; they are perfect strangers, however, to the art of surgery; and give but very little encouragement to such strangers as are of that profession. Nay, even those who are employed at court, are but very little regarded; for their salaries are paid them only in bills upon other cities, which they are obliged sometimes to discount at one third loss, and sometimes more.

'Tis observable, that a stranger has no manner of prospect of advancing his fortune by marriage in this country; since there is scarce a single instance of an European that ever married into any Perfian family of substance or distinction. It is observable, likewise, that whenever any Europeans intermarry with the Perfians, they immediately conform to the customs of the country, and never introduce their wives into the company of strangers. This sudden alteration in their department is most conspicuous, indeed, amongst the French; for such as are natives either of (u) England or (w) Holland, retain the customs of their forefathers.

A remarkable instance of this I saw myself in Mr. Kaftelyn, our Dutch director, whose consort, tho' a Perfian both of birth and fortune, was a lady of distinguished merit, esteemed by every body; and when he died, the loss of her was universally regretted. She appeared always with her daughter, who was about ten years of age when I was there, at her husband's table, which was open to all the Europeans in general; but whenever he paid them a visit at Julpha, not a wife of theirs was to be seen. And, in short, they retain nothing of their native country, but the language.

This is not the case, however, with such strangers as reside at (x) Constantinople, Smyrna, and other places under the dominion of the Grand Signior, where the Greek women, with whom they intermarry, conform with all the readiest imaginable, to the customs and manners of their husbands, or, indeed, to the particular religion, which they respectfully profess, and take care likewise to train up the children they have by them in the same tenets; whereas the Armenian women, whom we have been speaking of, after marriage, show no conformity at all, but profess the same religion as their mothers did before them, and infuse the same principles into their children.

I am conscious to myself, indeed, that I might here be confronted with the instance of that celebrated traveller, by name Pietro della Valle, who, though a native of (y) Rome, intermarried with a lady born at (z) Bagdet; but love will some times triumph over discretion, and there is no general rule without an exception.

In all other respects, I have nothing farther to add, in regard to this remarkable adventure, and this single marriage, which was consummated in the very same convent where I resided at my return from the (aa) Indies; since I should be very loth to say any

thing that might tend to the dif reputation of fo celebrated a Roman, and one, who has left fo many very valuable remains behind him.

The Armenians, however, are not the only perfons who have renounced their religion, and embraced Mohammedifm for gain. Several infances may be produced amongft the (bb) Georgians, both rich and poor, who have followed their mercenary and ungodly example; and thefe laft, in deed, are as little regarded by the Europeans as the former.

I fhall here take the liberty, before I bring this chapter to a conclusion, to introduce a remark or two in regard to fuch public miniflers as attend at the Perfian court, with credentials from fome of the Chriftian powers; and amongft whom (it muft be ingenuoufly confefted) there are fome, who are altogether unworthy of that honourable title; and are, in reality, no better than envoy s, or common couriers. And it muft readily likewife be acknowledged, that they reflect but very little ho- # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

honour on their masters from whom they come; since the principal aim and design of their journey is no more than this; namely, that they may be freed from paying the customary dues or duties on the several merchandizes or commodities which they bring along with them; a privilege, which is granted without the least hesitation, to all in general who are sent with such letters to the Perfian court.

They are furnished likewise, wherever they go, with all such carriages as they have occasion for, and have, moreover, a daily stipend, or pay, in proportion to the number of their attendants, during their residence at court; but then that allowance is so inconsiderable, that any one, who bears the character of a minister, might very well blush to accept of. It cannot upon the whole, be any matter of wonder, that the Armenians should be employed by the

## **Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.**

1. Julfa, or Julpha, fee p. 262. n. x.
2. Armenia, fee p. 198. n. g.
3. Europe, fee 127. n. d.
4. Perfa, fee p. 64. n. a.
5. Ifpahan, fee p. 109. n. m.

6. Turkey, fee p. 203. n. e.
7. France, fee p. 214. n. m.
8. India, (proper) fee p. 213. n. d.
9. Spain, fee p. 283. n. p.
10. Greece, the present Rumelia, and the ancient Hellas, is situate between 20 and 26 deg. of east long, and 36 and 44. deg. of north lat. bounded by Romania, or Thrace, Bulgaria and Servia, towards the north; by the Archipelago on the east; by the Mediterranean on the fourth; and by the Adriatic, or gulph of Venice on the west; being about four hundred miles long from north to south, that is to say from the mountains of Argentum, or Scodras, to cape Matapan, or Caglia, in the Morea, and near as much in breadth, viz. from the Adriatic fea to the Archipelago; generally a temperate,
11. Egypt, fee p. 33. n. a.
12. Paris, fee p. 261. n. o.
13. Mecca, fee p. 242. n. o.
14. Jerufalem, fee p. 85. n. d.
15. Portugal, fee p. 260. n. m.
16. Denmark. This kingdom was formerly elective, until the year 1659; it was then made hereditary in the person of Frederick III. and his posterity. The capital city is Copenhagen, 160 miles from Hamburgh; 80 miles from Amsterdam, and 580 from London.
17. Italy, fee p. 210. n. m.
18. Geneva, an ancient city in the duchy of Savoy.
19. Smyrna, an ancient city in the Leffer Asia.
20. England fee p. 91. n. f. # THE TRAVELS OF

## **CHAP. XLVII.**

The Apostacy of some Dutchmen from the Christian Faith. The proclamation of the Korog, and the penalty annexed thereto in Cafe of Non-Compliance. The Intrepidity and Resolution of an Armenian, his cruel Death, and inhuman Treatment afterwards by the Perfians.

A Bout the latter end of May, I took a walk with one Mr. Bakker, who was our director's deputy, into the fields in pursuit of game, but more especially of a certain bird, called in (a) Perfia the Morg-Sacka, that is to say, the water-carrier, which had been observed to hover frequently over the river that runs by the meadow side. We got a fight of him, according to our wish; but he happened to be too high, and at too great a distance for our shot to reach him. I was not a little chagrined at this disappointment, having never seen the bird before, notwithstanding it is often to be met with on the banks of the (b) Wolga; as also at (c) Afracan, and near the shore of the (d) Caspian sea.

This bird is extremely large, and has a capacious pouch which he fills with water; and, if I am rightly informed, he very generously distributes his liquor amongst his brother birds, where he finds they stand in need of it. As we found, however, our expectations balked in that kind of sport,

On the first day of June, three natives of (e) Holland arrived at (f) Ispahan, who had defected our East-India company's ship, which they rode at anchor in the harbour of (g) Gombron, and had embraced the Mohammedan religion in hopes of raffing their fortune. They found themselves, however, very grossly mistaken in their avaricious scheme; for they were soon reduced to the utmost distress, having met with no soul on the road that would give them the least-affliction or relief: nor did they meet, indeed, with any better treatment on their arrival at Ispahan: Heaven, as one would be apt to imagine, being determined to punish them severely for the renunciation of their faith, for filthy lucre.

In the fifteenth of June, they arrived at the city of Ispahan; I heard upon listening to it with attention, I found it was the Korog, and that their offence was the renunciation of their faith, for filthy lucre.

On the said fifteenth, the Korog was proclaimed, and the penalty annexed thereto in Cafe of Non-Compliance, to be a death by fire, and the burning of their bodies after their death. And to make the punishment more cruel, they were to be chained to a horse, and the horse was to be set upon them with a whip, which they were not allowed to resist, but to be beaten as long as they could not die.

In the course of that day, they were brought into the mosque, and the Korog was read to them in the presence of the Imam. And the Imam said to them, "O ye unbelievers, ye have renounced the faith of God, and have embraced the religion of the infidels. Ye shall therefore be punished according to the law of the Korog." And the Korog was read aloud to them, and they were commanded to repeat it.

And when they had repeated it, they were bound to the horse, and the horse was set upon them with a whip, which they were not allowed to resist, but to be beaten as long as they could not die. And when they had been beaten till they could not die, they were set on fire, and their bodies were burned after their death.

And the Korog was read aloud to them, and they were commanded to repeat it. And when they had repeated it, they were bound to the horse, and the horse was set upon them with a whip, which they were not allowed to resist, but to be beaten as long as they could not die. And when they had been beaten till they could not die, they were set on fire, and their bodies were burned after their death.

And the Korog was read aloud to them, and they were commanded to repeat it. And when they had repeated it, they were bound to the horse, and the horse was set upon them with a whip, which they were not allowed to resist, but to be beaten as long as they could not die. And when they had been beaten till they could not die, they were set on fire, and their bodies were burned after their death.

And the Korog was read aloud to them, and they were commanded to repeat it. And when they had repeated it, they were bound to the horse, and the horse was set upon them with a whip, which they were not allowed to resist, but to be beaten as long as they could not die. And when they had been beaten till they could not die, they were set on fire, and their bodies were burned after their death.

And the Korog was read aloud to them, and they were commanded to repeat it. And when they had repeated it, they were bound to the horse, and the horse was set upon them with a whip, which they were not allowed to resist, but to be beaten as long as they could not die. And when they had been beaten till they could not die, they were set on fire, and their bodies were burned after their death.

And the Korog was read aloud to them, and they were commanded to repeat it. And when they had repeated it, they were bound to the horse, and the horse was set upon them with a whip, which they were not allowed to resist, but to be beaten as long as they could not die. And when they had been beaten till they could not die, they were set on fire, and their bodies were burned after their death.

And the Korog was read aloud to them, and they were commanded to repeat it. And when they had repeated it, they were bound to the horse, and the horse was set upon them with a whip, which they were not allowed to resist, but to be beaten as long as they

could not die. And when they had been beaten till they could not die, they were set on fire, and their bodies were burned after their death.

And the Korog was read aloud to them, and they were commanded to repeat it. And when they had repeated it, they were bound to the horse, and the horse was set upon them with a whip, which they were not allowed to resist, but to be beaten as long as they could not die. And when they had been beaten till they could not die, they were set on fire, and their bodies were burned after their death.

[illegible]

In this their most deplorable state and condition, they presented themselves before our director's gate, in hopes of meeting with his pity and compassion; but he ordered them to be gone that moment, and make their application to those whose religion they had so impiously embraced. Though they obeyed his orders at that juncture, yet they ventured soon after to come again, with their earnest supplications that they might be once more entered into the company's service; since they most sincerely repented of their past apostacy and defection; and humbly petitioned to be admitted again, tho' unworthy, into the bosom of the Christian church; but that request, he told them, was not in his power to grant them; however, if they would return to Gombron; and throw themselves upon the company's mercy, notwithstanding they had so justly forfeited their lives by their misdemeanors; yet he would indulge them so far, on that condition, but on no other, as to write to the director there, and desire him to send them back again to the (b) East-Indies. With that hard condition they all very readily complied, and unanimously declared, that they had much rather run the risk of being tried, and sentenced to the severest death, rather than to be starved, and perish in the fin, of which they had been so inadvertently guilty. Upon this open declaration, they were not only refreshed, but comfortably clothed; which act of indulgence, they seemed, at least, very gratefully to acknowledge; and soon after, with all the testimonies of unfeigned joy, they returned to Gombron, and from thence were sent to the Indies accordingly, where, beyond their defects, they procured their pardon, both for their apostacy and defection.

On the fifth instant, whilst I was very busy in drawing a survey on the river of the Chiara-baeg, that is to say, the fine alley of Iphahan; I heard a confused noise, and upon listening to it with some degree of attention, I found it was the proclamation of the



Korog. This out-cry is intended to give notice to all people in general, that his majesty is near at hand, accompanied by his concubines, and that they must withdraw without the least hesitation, on pain of the severest punishment. Whereupon I removed my quarters amongst the rest, with all the expedition I was capable of; but his majesty past by soon after. He was preceded by an officer on horse-back, who rode full speed, in order to disperse all such, as had no opportunity of getting out of the way in due time; and he instantly came up to me, and directed me to a proper place of retirement. I instantly obeyed his orders, and took a long tour, in order to get into the city again; where all the avenues of the streets, through which the king and his concubines were to pass, were lined with guards, to prevent all persons, without distinction, from passing that way; inasmuch that, it was with no small difficulty that I reached my lodgings.

The very next day I went to the same place, and met with the very same obstruction as before; and, moreover, I perceived, that some of the avenues to the Chiara-baeg were spread with some certain clothes. When a man happens, on these extraordinary occasions, to be surprised, he must move directly; but it is customary, to give all people previous notice for keeping out of the way, or quitting even his habitation whether by night or by day, as long as the Korog, or proclamation, continues. And for my own part, I have been forced frequently to abandon the Caravanferai, or inn, where I lodged on that particular account.

Not long after this, there arrived two gunners from the Indies, whom Mr. Kaftelyn had sent for, in order to enter into his majesty's service; but when the king was informed of their arrival, he gave them to understand that one of them was sufficient to answer his purpose; and even that one was employed but a very short time, and the salary or wages allowed him for his attendance was so mean and trivial, that one would almost blush to mention the sum. This gunner, indeed, who was first clothed before he was introduced, had no great matters to do; all his business, it # THE TRAVELS OF

it seemed, was only to shoot at a mark, with some few pieces of cannon; a diversion to which his majesty at that time was a perfect stranger; but the reader is here to observe, the Perfi ans were as long in preparing the requisites for this trivial exercise, as we should be in the erection of a fort. This gunner, indeed, was soon discharged; for he was not duly qualified to hit the taste of the Perfi ans; for they are not to be pleased, unless the party employed be very affi dious, and makes his applications with abundance of humility and respect.

On the seventeenth instant, the moon was in a great eclipse; appeared reddish, and its light was almost totally darkened.

On the twenty-fifth there were some clouds in the sky, after a series of fine weather, during which, there was nothing like one to be seen; but then they were of a lively blue, without the least gloom or shade; which is no uncommon occurrence in this country.

About the beginning of July the wind began to blow hard, and bleak; but then they were soon succeeded by an excessive heat.

On the third instant, the inhabitants began to open their shops, which for five or six days successively had been close shut up, on account of a solemn mourning that is universally observed at this feast. At this particular time, which, if I am not mistaken, is by the Persians called Wagme, all such as have any animosities subsisting between them, endeavour to bury them all, as much as possible, in oblivion, and to renew their former friendships, if it suits with their private interest; but otherwise, their confidences are not so tender but they can retain their resentments.

Much about this time, an unhappy quarrel arose between some of the English agents' domestics, and some certain Persians; and from high words they proceeded to hard blows. The Persians, fired with resentment, and vowing to be revenged, invidiously asserted that one of their countrymen had been killed by a native of (i)

Armenia, who was retained in the service of that minister; whereupon all the shops in the district wherein he resided, were close shut up.

The populace, animated with the notion of this pretended murder, made their bitter complaint to the high bailliff, who was a native of (k) Georgi, and had been formerly a Christian. This high bailliff, without any orders procured from his superiors, at once summoned the English agent's interpreter, who by birth was an Armenian, and obliged him to sign a paper, whereby he bound himself either to find out the person who had committed this flagrant crime, or in default thereof to pay a certain fine in money. To this paper the treacherous interpreter very readily set his hand, notwithstanding he was conscious to himself that there was no such outrage committed, and even fixed the murder on one of his own countrymen; which he did with the greater ease, because his master, who by his authority might possibly have appeared the firm, at that time lay sick in his bed. In the interim the Persians cried aloud for vengeance for the death of one of their poor, worthless natives, who had only been baffled for his insolent department: and they treated the franks (which is the name by which they distinguish all the natives of (l) Europe in general) as murderers, and made their complaints of them accordingly at court. Not satisfied with these rigorous proceedings, they carried, with still greater rage and resentment than before, the effigies of a dead body to the Chiær-bæg, in order

to exasperate and inflame the minds of the common people; and even obliged their own prime ministers to make a formal demand of the pretended murderer, from the English agent, who had sheltered and concealed him.

At the same time, that agent received an order for the discharge of all his Mohammedan domestics in general; whereupon the English required eight days time to take this affair into their consideration; which demand was complied with accordingly.

In the mean time the poor innocent Arme- # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

Armenian had concealed himself in the town of Julpha, where he was betrayed by the agent's perfidious interpreter before-mentioned, who brought him before the officers of justice, and they committed him to prison: the implacable mob, however, no ways appeased by this his unjust confinement, infolently demanded that the prisoner should be instantaneously delivered into their hands, and the officers were compelled to submit.

As soon as they had got him into their own clutches, they consulted together what step to take next, in order to bring him to condign punishment. Some few, who were cooler and more compassionate than the rest, were for having him differently charged, and made a pretence of to the king: the major part of them, however, being too hot, obstinate, and perverse, opposed this motion to the last degree, and drawing their sabres, hauled him away, in open defiance both of law and justice. But what incensed the unruly multitude more than all the rest, was, that they had used their utmost endeavours to bring him over to the Mohammedan persuasion, and added thereto their fair promises of life and liberty, and an advantageous match into the bargain, in case of compliance; but all their artifices proved altogether ineffectual; for notwithstanding he had immediate death before his eyes, yet with the utmost intrepidity and resolution, he rejected all their infamous offers. And when some of his brother Armenians, who had renounced their faith before, exhorted him to feign a compliance only, he heroically contemned their advice, and openly declared, be the consequence ever so fatal, he would never (coward-like) deny his Saviour and his God: upon which the incensed Persians flew upon him, like so many tigers, and not contented with depriving him, in the most unmerciful manner, of his life, they dragged his dead carcass to the great square belonging to the king's palace; where the most inveterate of them thinking it impossible to insult his remains enough, or vent a sufficient number of imprecations on his devoted head; they tore out his bowels, and threw them away with all the marks of infamy and contempt; nay the very women added fuel to the fire, and could not forbear joining with pleasure in their savage treatment.

In this ignominious manner, died this Christian hero, this faithful servant, who had never abandoned his master during the whole course of his illness, but gave him constant attendance day and night. The name of this unhappy domestic, or martyr, was Gregory Affaor; and notwithstanding his surprising intrepidity, as above related, and his steadfastness in the Christian religion, he was but a youth under twenty years of age.

The proper officers, however, at last, gave orders for carrying the poor mangled carcass to Julpha, where it was interred in the church of St. Saviour, which is the finest in all that district; and an Armenian merchant erected soon after a sepulchral monument over him, at his own expense, in order to transmit his memory down to late posterity; and at the same time, to testify that unfeigned affection and friendship, which he bore him before he fell a sacrifice to the fury and resentment of a pack of barbarians.

It is no difficult matter to conceive what a terror this tragical, this barbarous and inhuman murder must infuse into all the strangers in general that refided at Ispahan; and it had such an effect, that but very few of them durst venture out of their habitations for some considerable time, for fear of exposing themselves to the rage and resentment of a merciless multitude, who were drunk, as it were, thro' the connivance which they met with in the commission of so flagitious a crime. It must be acknowledged, indeed, that before this unparalleled outrage, the Persians always paid a peculiar regard both to the English and the Dutch.

As a great part of the company's goods were expected to be brought to Ispahan from Gombron, proper perfumes were sent to meet them, according to custom, and to convey them into our warehouses. # THE TRAVELS OF

And this method is taken in order to prevent the Perfians from insulting those who bring them, and turning them out of their way; which, as it was nothing more than common, they took care to do it at this juncture.

Our people, perceiving they were not only insulted but attacked by a parcel of barbarians, and their bales thrown down upon the ground, were determined to do themselves justice, and oppose them to the utmost of their power.

In this fray, it unluckily happened, that the son of the king's first physician, was present, and received some few blows with a cudgel. As the Perfians at this time were the weakest party, they had immediate recourse to complaints, and demanded satisfaction for the injuries that they pretended to have sustained; and our director, to whom they made their applications for redress, promised that justice should be done them, after a proper examination had been made in so important a matter: whereupon they very readily withdrew; but the next day refuted their complaints; and one of his domestics being proved guilty of an

assault, he caused him to be secured in their presence, and ordered that he should be bastinadoed on the soles of his feet: however, no sooner was the punishment begun to be inflicted on the delinquent, but his accusers interceded for him, and kindly declared that they were perfectly satisfied. This gentle proceeding was widely different from that which they had exerted but some few days before against the domestic of the English agent, who had been guilty of nothing more than applying the cudgel a little too warmly on the back of a worthless, insignificant rascal, which, however, very unhappily cost the poor, innocent domestic his life.

To conclude, as this nation is so very hard to be pleased, and are so implacably vindictive, it behoves every European minister, who attends at the Persian court, in order to transact the public affairs for

which they are sent thither by their respective powers, to maintain the dignity of their character with a high hand, and not to put up with the least affront, or suffer themselves to be any ways insulted without some condign punishment inflicted on the aggressors. Of all the ministers, with whom I have had the honour at times to be personally acquainted, there is no man that ever kept up his publick character better, than one Mr. Hoogkame, with whom I travelled to (n) Constantinople many years ago. He was some time after that, sent by the East-India company into Persia, and was there universally esteemed. He was once, however, embroiled in a very troublesome affair, with one of the principal grandees, and a favourite at court, whose domestics, it seems, had some quarrel with those of my friend. Upon their coming to blows, the Persian grandee laid his hand upon his faivre; upon that our minister, with a pistol in his hand, protested, that if he offered to draw his sword, he would shoot him that moment through the head: whereupon the grandee gave orders to his servants to be quiet, and immediately withdrew. And it must be owned, that he acted the prudent part in so doing; for his party was much the weaker; and the minister was attended by some European soldiers, against whom the Perfians would scarcely have been able to maintain his charge. Besides those soldiers took care to support their master's dignity by making a pompous figure, and by a resolution that removed all obstacles in their way; and in so scornful and imperious a nation, such a conduct is highly requisite.

And accordingly, the Perfians shewed such a deference and esteem for him; that wherever he appeared, his passage was never after obstructed; nay the court and the king himself paid as great a regard for him as the Europeans themselves, and to this very day they mention his name with honour. # CORNELIUS LE BRUN. ## Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

1. Perfia, fee p. 64. n. o.

2. Wolga, or Volga, fee p. 28. n. f.
  3. Afracan, fee p. 62. n. i.
  4. Câpian fca, fee p. 66. n. q.
  5. Holland, fee p. 76. n. c.
  6. Ifaphan, or Spahawn, fee p. 109. n. m.
  7. Gomron, or Gombron, fee p. 262. n. w.
  8. India, (proper) fee p. 213. n. d.
  9. Armenia, fee p. 198. n. g.
  10. Georgia, in Asia, fee p. 107. n. d.
  11. Europe, fee 127. n. dd.
  12. Julfa, or Julpha, fee p. 262. n. x.
  13. Constantinople, fee p. 196. n. g.
- 

## **CHAP. XLVIII.**

The English Agent dies. The Ceremonies observed at his Interment. A succinct Account of the Preparations made for a public Rejoicing on Account of the remarkable Intermarriage of the King of (a) Perfia's little Daughter of three Years of Age to the Grandson of his Majesty's Aunt, who was but five. The Manner observed by the Natives of (b) Armenia at a Time of Mourning. A short Description of an ancient Fortress: As also, of the Mountain called Sagte-Rultan.

About this time, the Perfians were busy in the solemnization of their grand festival, called Babafods-ja-adier, that is to say, the feast of the invincible father of the divine worship, a particular title conferred by them on one of their saints, who was put to death by Omar.

Some short time after this, there was another Korog, in the parts adjacent to the royal palace, with express orders for all who resided within the verge of the court to go directly out of their private habitations, as well as those, who lodged in any public caravanseras, or inns. The same orders were issued out again about two days after that, his majesty being inclined to divert himself without the walls of his palace, in company with his concubines.

The music, on this occasion, commenced in the evening, and the band continued playing all that night and the next day.

On the twenty first of August Mr. Owen, the English company's agent, died in the fortieth year of his age. He was a gentleman of strict virtue and honour, and universally beloved. The very next day, we paid him the last testimonies of our sorrow and respect, and attended his remains to the place allotted for the interment of all Christians in the following manner.

Our director's deputy (as the director himself happened to be confined to his chamber through a severe fit of the gout) went by break of day to the habitation of the deceased, accompanied by all our director's family: there went fourteen horses likewise, two whereof were led, covered with black cloth, and preceded by a #  
THE TRAVELS OF

a trumpet with thirteen runners. The matter of the horse to the deceased appeared, in the first place, accompanied by his interpreter, and several others; followed by three fumpter-horses, covered with black cloth, and with plumes of white feathers on their heads; then went fourteen persons on horse-back, attended by ten or a dozen servants, all on foot, with a trumpet before the fumpter-horses; after these, appeared those belonging to our director; after them, the body of the deceased, covered with white silk; and a black velvet pall thrown over it. It was deposited on a bier, which was carried by four bearers, who were at proper times relieved; as the place of his interment was at some considerable distance from his habitation. Next after the corpse went the deputy of the deceased, attended by ours, and by all the Dutch, amongst whom I was one; as also, by father Antonio Defiero, the resident there for the king of (c) Portugal, and all the English Armenian merchants who were then resident at (d) Julpha. We proceeded in this order through the Chiaer-baeg. Each of us had a white silk scarf thrown over our shoulders, which was knotted at the bottom, and hung down to the ground. These were given us at the deceased's house. Each of us had likewise another scarf of white gauze given us, which were fastened on our hats. There were some of the company, indeed, who had no hats, and those wore their gauze scarves around their waists. The whole procession consisted of forty persons on horse-back, and about thirty servants on foot. The French were in waiting for us at the burial-ground, accompanied by a small number of Monks, and the body was interred about seven o'clock, at which time the English company's deputy read over the funeral service, according to the custom observed in (e) England. When that service was over, each of the company threw in a handful of earth into the grave which was filled up afterwards by the proper diggers. We returned in the same order as we came; and were entertained at the house of the deceased, where those who came back with us were served with

scarves, like those which had been given us before. One was sent likewise to our deputy, who (as we have observed) was indisposed. After a very genteel entertainment the company withdrew.

Some few days after the solemnization of this funeral, I saw all the Bazars, or shops, embellished with little bands of parti-coloured paper, tinsel, several little figures, and other bagatelles. All the shops in the evening were illuminated with little lamps; and in divers places, the burghers, or citizens, were under arms.

These declarations of public joy were occasioned by the intermarriage of a little prince, the king's daughter, who was but three years of age, with the grandson of his majesty's aunt, who was but five. And these illuminations, &c., were made on account of the young princes being at that time conducted to the palace of that lady, where she was to receive her future education.

This, perhaps, is the only instance that can be produced of a marriage of this nature, between children who are Persians by extraction. Such matches, indeed, may be frequently met with amongst the Armenians. That lady, his majesty's aunt, and sister to the king his father, is called Zynab-Beggum. She intermarried with the son of Soltan-Galiefia, who was a great favourite of Abbas the Second.

On the twenty second of August, I went to Julpha, where I tarried till the twenty sixth; a particular day, wherein the Armenians solemnize their grand festival called Soerp-gaets, that is to say, the feast of the crofs, in commemoration of Christ's crofs, which was discovered on Mount (f) Calvary, by St. Helen, who was the mother of Constantine the Great.

In order therefore to the solemnization thereof, their wives, about two or three hours before break of day, assemble themselves together at the burial-ground, appointed for the interment of Christians only, and take care to bring with them, a sufficient quantity of wood, coals, tapers, and incense. When they are thus got together, they kindle fires at but a small distance #  
CORNELIUS LEBRUN.

diffance from the sepulchral monuments of their deceased friends and relations; upon which they set up lighted tapers, and kept continually throwing incense into their fires; making at the same time the most hideous lamentations, and addressing themselves to the Manes of those who lie down in peace within their graves, with more or less fervency and zeal, in proportion to that love and affection which they owed them when in the land of the living. Some of them even prostrate themselves on the tombs of their departed husbands, which they seem with ardency to fold within their arms, and pour out on the cold stone a whole flood of tears. Such amongst them as are in flourishing circumstances, or persons of high birth and distinction, will decorate a tomb-stone



with five or six several tapers, and fetch such heavy sighs and groans, as, if sincere, would melt the most obdurate heart, and tempt one to partake in their affliction.

As my natural curiosity inclined me to be a spectator of this grand, tho' melancholy solemnity, I set out for the burial-ground, accompanied by the son of our interpreter, with whom I lodged, about two hours before break of day. I was perfectly astonished at the sight of the tombs there, and at the prodigious number of mourners that were assembled together on that solemn occasion: and whilst I continued at some considerable distance from them, the whole appeared to my imagination, as the ruins of a town that had been reduced to ashes by some destructive fire; and the burial-ground in particular, as a spot of ground to which those inhabitants who were so happy as to escape the flames had fled for refuge, in the dead of the night, with links and other proper lights, in order to find out, if possible, their different friends or relations, or the remains of their substance unconsumed; like persons inconformable, in short, and in the deepest distress. Notwithstanding the husbands keep at home, whilst their wives are thus employed in this frightful service, and pouring out their most pitious lamentations; yet I observed, that there were some men amongst them, though their number was comparatively small, and some priests likewise, who offered to assist such with their supplications, and other acts of devotion, as were willing to pay a pecuniary consideration, which was more or less, as their circumstances would admit. The poorer sort will bestow sometimes six-pence upon them: a substantial citizen's lady will deposit perhaps twelve-pence, and a person of distinction will advance in proportion to her dignity and station.

And as these priests in particular are dressed all in black, they make an odd fantastical group amongst a parcel of women in their white veils. The number of women, who resort to this Christian burial-place, on this solemn occasion, amounts, for the most part, to three thousand and upwards; and the number of little fires that are thus kindled, and thus incessantly fed with incense, raises such a smoke as spreads itself as far as Isphahan. Notwithstanding this solemnity was a night-scene; yet I took a draught of it, in the left manner I was able; and the spot I pitched upon for my stand was that part by the tomb-stone of our director's late deceased consort, which fronted the city; a representation whereof the reader will find in Plate (No. 102.) hereto annexed.

The ceremony continued till about two in the morning. Upon my return, I found the way crowded with people of all ranks and degrees; and met with several ladies who were going to pay the tombs a second visit.

No sooner was the fun up, but the populace thronged to the same place of rendezvous, but with no other view than to smoke a pipe or two, and spend the remainder of the day in such different amusements as they thought proper.

In the evening of the last day of August, I went to our director's, in order to go with his deputy, to the mountain called Koeoffa, where lie the ruins of an ancient fortress. We set out on the first of September about four in the morning, and by seven reached one part of that mountain, where # THE TRAVELS OF

where we were obliged to dismount, because our horses could carry us no farther. My companion, who took but little delight in walking, left me there, and went to the Christian burial-ground, in order to wait for my return. At about eight o'clock, I went up the mountain, accompanied by a huntsman and a servant of our director's, who were provided with fire-arms; and by ten we arrived at an old gate-way, by one side whereof lay the ruins of a wall, which in times past extended to the northward quite to the foot of the mountain, in that place where it is steep. This gate was more worn out on the right. The reader will find a representation of it in Plate (No. 103) hereto annexed.

At the distance of about a quarter of a league from hence, we met with the ruins of another structure, which was totally demolished, though they assured me it had once been a stable. From thence I perceived several fragments of an ancient wall which extended a considerable way southward upon the top, or summit of the hill from east to west, and to the northward towards the city, which stands but at a small distance from it. It might, indeed, have passed for a kind of fortress by nature, without the aid or assistance of any art whatever, being extremely steep from top to bottom; and to confess the truth, it never had any wall on that side.

About eleven o'clock we reached the very summit, but not without some toil and fatigue. There I discovered the ruins of a building, which had been no less than eight and twenty paces in length, though very little of it was at that time remaining. The wall was four feet thick at least, and continues still pretty lofty in some places, where are the remains of some arcades still to be seen within. The summit, or top of this mountain, likewise, is no more than twenty eight paces in breadth from north to south, and sixty four in length from east to west, and falls sloping away to the eastward.

As to the left, it extends in length to the southward, from whence the ancient walls of the fortress, which were there formerly as they appear to the northward, are still to be seen; of which the reader will find a representation in Plate (No. 104.) hereto annexed.

I took the draught of all this with greater care and exactness than usual; because there are some travellers who affirm, that Darius was resident in this fortress when Alexander attacked his army in the plain a second time. I went down thither about noon, and there to the southward I made a draught of the outward ruins that are still subsisting of this structure, where are still to be seen two semi-circles, in the form of towers.

In the Plate (No. 105.) hereto annexed, the reader, on turning his eye to the rock, may visibly discern the very spot of ground whereon this fortress was first erected.

The huntsman, whom I took with me for my guide, would fain have gone down the mountain on the north side, as it was by much the shortest way; and used all the motives he could think of, to induce me to follow him; but the rock appeared to me so steep, and so much like a precipice, that my courage failed me; and I durst not indulge my curiosity so far, as to venture the breaking my bones in the adventure. I could not, however, with all my persuasions, prevent my other attendant from following his example, which he feversely repented in but a few minutes after; for I had scarce loft fight of my two fool-hardy companions, but I found the last was obliged to stop; and I could hear him bawl out to me at a distance, for God's sake, Sir, do not presume to follow us. Where he stooped, he was forced to continue for some considerable time, being incapable of stirring one foot either backwards or forwards. I advised him to be as cautious and careful as possible; but of two dangers, to attempt the climbing

At the foot of this mountain lies a grotto, wherein there are remarkable springs, that keep continually trickling from the rock. A great [g] Indians, who are generally gushed by the tide of the mountain, in consequence of a grand festival, in consequence of

Occ

- 
1. Perfia, see p. 6.
  2. Armenia, see p.
  3. Portugal, see p.
  4. Jullia, or Juphia. # CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

ing up again, rather than to follow his fellow-fervant who defended with the intrepidity of a fool, and the agility of a cat. For my own part, I thought, according to the old proverb, that the fartheft way about was the nearest way home; and accordingly, I chose rather to take a tour round about for two leagues at left to the eastward, between the mountains; inasmuch that it was past three o'clock before I reached the burial-ground above-mentioned, as the spot agreed on between my friend and I for our meeting, in whose care we had left our horses.

When I had rested and refreshed myself for some time after my danger and fatigue, we returned to the city, with a resolution, to visit the next day some such other curiosities, as I imagined worthy of a traveller's attention; especially as I was determined to take my leave of my landlord and the city towards the latter end of September.

Accordingly, we set out by day-break for the mountain of Tagte-Ruftan, which lies a league and an half at least from the city; and on the summit or top thereof we met with the ruins of a particular building, first founded by an able and experienced warrior, of whom there are very large encomiums upon record.

At the foot of this mountain there is a grotto, wherein there are three or four remarkable springs, the waters whereof keep continually trickling down the sides of the rock. A great number of the (g) Indians, who are known and distinguished by the title of Banians, resort annually, on April-day, or soon after at least, to this mountain, in commemoration of a certain holy hermit, who for many years successively reft in a cell not far distant from the rock, if not a cavern of it; and, indeed there is for the most part, some one dervise, that is to say, some one St. or another, that makes it his place of abode. This grotto is filled with flaps of stuffs of all forts of colours, which are brought hither by perfons labouring under some fevere affliction or other, for the relief whereof they resort to these waters, as is a custom generally observed (as I have hinted already) by all the inhabitants of the eastern nations. The reader, in Plate (No. 106) will find an exact representation of this grotto.

About half a league from this place, on that side which fronts the city, is a certain mountain, from whence the Persians extract those hard, blue stones, with which they erect their sepulchral monuments.

I saw several of them myself thrown down from the top of the mountain directly on the plain, without the least visible damage; but such as are of the larger size are rolled down those sides of it which are steep, indeed, but then they have a gradual descent.

From hence there is a very fine prospect to the westward between the mountains and the plain, not only of a number of handsome villages, but of several spacious gardens intermixed, which have a fine effect.

The reader will find I have hereto annexed a representation of it, together with the mountain, on the top whereof stands Ruftan-houfe. Having thus gratified my curiosity, I returned, well-pleased to the city.

## **Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.**

1. Perdia, fee p. 64. n. a.
2. Armenia, fee p. 198. n. g.
3. Portugal, fee p. 260. n. m.
4. Julfa, or Julpha, fee p. 262. n. x.
5. England, fee p. 91. n. f.
6. Calvary Mount, near Jerufolem, fee p. 85. n. d.
7. India, (proper) fee p. 213. n. d.

FINIS.